

Mouton Grammar Library

A Grammar of Qiang



Mouton Grammar Library 31

Editors
Georg Bossong
Bernard Comrie
Matthew Dryer

Mouton de Gruyter
Berlin · New York

A Grammar of Qiang

with annotated texts and glossary

by

Randy J. LaPolla

with

Chenglong Huang

Mouton de Gruyter
Berlin · New York

Mouton de Gruyter (formerly Mouton, The Hague)
is a Division of Walter de Gruyter GmbH & Co. KG, Berlin.

⊗ Printed on acid-free paper which falls within the guidelines of the
ANSI to ensure permanence and durability.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

LaPolla, Randy J,
A grammar of Qiang / by Randy J. LaPolla.
p. cm. — (Mouton grammar library ; 31)
ISBN 3-11-017829-X (alk. paper)
1. Khyang language — Grammar. I. Title. II. Series.
PL4001.K6L36 2003
495'.4—dc22
2003023822

ISBN 3 11 017829 X

Bibliographic information published by Die Deutsche Bibliothek

Die Deutsche Bibliothek lists this publication in the Deutsche Nationalbibliografie;
detailed bibliographic data is available in the Internet at <<http://dnb.ddb.de>>.

© Copyright 2003 by Walter de Gruyter GmbH & Co. KG, D-10785 Berlin.
All rights reserved, including those of translation into foreign languages. No part of this book may
be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including
photocopy, recording or any information storage and retrieval system, without permission in writing
from the publisher.
Printed in Germany.

Acknowledgments

This project was funded by the National Science Council of the Republic of China (Grants No. NSC 85-2418-H-001-002 P2 and NSC 85-2418-H-001-005), by the Chiang Ching-kuo Foundation (Grant No. RG005-D-'93), and by the "Project for Research on Endangered Languages of the Pacific Rim" of the Japanese Ministry of Education, Science, Sports, Culture and Technology. Revision of the manuscript was supported by a grant from the Research Committee, City University of Hong Kong (Grant No. 9030548). I would like to thank these organizations for their generous support. I would also like to thank Matthew Chen, Dean of the Faculty of Humanities and Social Sciences at City University, and C. C. Cheng, Head of the Department of Chinese Translation, and Linguistics, for approving a generous publication grant for this book.

Of course this book would not have been possible without the help and hospitality of Huang Chenglong and his family, as well as other residents of Ronghong Village. For this I am extremely grateful.

The initial project that led to this grammar being written was initiated and organized by Ho Dah-an, now of the Institute of Linguistics, Academia Sinica. I would like to express my deep appreciation to him for taking that initiative. I would also like to thank Alexandra Y. Aikhenvald, Bernard Comrie, R. M. W. Dixon, Jonathan Evans, Peter Lester, Ying-chin Lin, James A. Matisoff, and Yoshio Nishi for taking the time to give me extensive and very helpful comments on an earlier draft of this book. Bernard Comrie in particular went carefully through three different drafts and each time sat down with me to go page by page through the draft to explain his comments. For this I am extremely grateful. All of these people helped improve the final output considerably, but of course bear no responsibility for the remaining imperfections.

Table of Contents

Acknowledgements	v
List of tables, figures, and plates	xii
Abbreviations	xiii
1. Introduction	1
1.1. The land	1
1.2. The language	2
1.3. The people and their culture	5
1.3.1. The people	5
1.3.2. Architecture	6
1.3.3. Food	7
1.3.4. Clothing	9
1.3.4.1. Men's clothing	9
1.3.4.2. Women's clothing	10
1.3.5. Family and kinship relations	11
1.3.6. Religion	14
1.3.7. Mobility	15
1.3.8. Livelihood	16
1.4. Previous work on Qiang	16
1.5. The data and their presentation	17
1.6. Typological profile	19
2. The phonological system	21
2.1. Consonants	21
2.2. Vowels	25
2.2.1. The basic inventory	25
2.2.2. Diphthongs and triphthongs	26
2.2.3. R-coloring	28
2.3. The syllable canon	30
2.4. Phonological processes	31
2.4.1. Initial weakening	31
2.4.2. Stress and its effects	33
2.4.3. Vowel harmony	35
2.4.4. Epenthetic vowels	36

2.4.5.	Assimilation	36
2.4.6.	Free variation	37
3.	The noun phrase	39
3.1.	Structure	39
3.1.1.	The noun	42
3.1.1.1.	Gender marking	48
3.1.1.2.	Diminutive marking	49
3.1.1.3.	The kinship prefix	49
3.1.2.	Pronouns	50
3.1.3.	Locational nouns	58
3.1.4.	Definite, indefinite marking	59
3.1.5.	Numerals and quantifiers	62
3.1.6.	Classifiers and measure words	65
3.1.7.	Number marking	69
3.2.	Nominal relational morphology	70
3.2.1.	Topic	71
3.2.2.	Single direct argument of an intransitive verb	74
3.2.3.	Actor of a transitive verb	76
3.2.4.	Topic of a copula clause	81
3.2.5.	Undergoer of a transitive verb	81
3.2.6.	Goal or recipient of a ditransitive verb	85
3.2.7.	Standard of a comparative construction	88
3.2.8.	Standard of an equative comparative construction	89
3.2.9.	Predicate noun phrases	90
3.2.10.	Benefactive	91
3.2.11.	Source	92
3.2.12.	Instrument	94
3.2.13.	Comitative, conjunction	95
3.2.14.	Possessor in a possessive clause	97
3.2.15.	Genitive	99
3.2.16.	Whole-part relations	101
3.2.17.	Price, value	102
3.2.18.	Extent, distance	103
3.2.19.	Inclusion, exclusion, addition	103
3.2.20.	Locative, directional phrases	106
3.2.21.	Temporal phrases	110
3.2.22.	Form-function summary of relational marking	114

4. The verb complex	119
4.1. Structure	119
4.2. Verb types	121
4.2.1. Intransitive, transitive, reciprocal	121
4.2.2. Causatives	124
4.2.3. Intransitive state predicate verbs (adjectives)	128
4.2.4. Existential/locative verbs	133
4.2.5. 'Come' and 'go'	136
4.2.6. Auxiliary verbs	136
4.2.7. The copula	138
4.3. Verbal morphology	139
4.3.2. Person marking	141
4.3.3. Direction marking	154
4.3.4. Aspect	161
4.3.4.1. Prospective aspect	161
4.3.4.2. Perfective and imperfective aspect	164
4.3.4.3. Change of state aspect	165
4.3.4.4. Experiential aspect	167
4.3.4.5. Repetition	168
4.3.4.6. Continuative aspect	169
4.3.4.8. Habitual aspect	171
4.3.4.9. Resulting state	171
4.3.4.10. Simultaneous actions	172
4.3.5. Illocutionary force	172
4.3.5.1. Declarative	172
4.3.5.2. Imperative and prohibitive	173
4.3.5.3. Interrogatives	179
4.3.6. Mood	186
4.3.6.1. Optative	189
4.3.6.2. Intentional	189
4.3.6.3. Debitive (Obligation)	190
4.3.6.4. Potential	195
4.3.7. Evidentials, degree of certainty/authority	197
4.3.7.1. Direct evidential	198
4.3.7.2. Inferential/mirative marking	200
4.3.7.3. Hearsay marking	204
4.3.7.4. Evidential strategies	206
4.3.7.5. Correlations with other grammatical categories	207

4.4.	Adverbials	211
4.4.1.	Degree marking adverbs	211
4.4.2.	Negation	214
4.4.3.	Adverbial phrases	215
5.	The clause and complex structures	221
5.1.	Structure	221
5.2.	Nominalization and relativization	223
5.3.	Complementation	229
5.4.	Coordination and disjunction	237
5.5.	Other complex structures	239
5.6.	The structure of narratives	246
Texts		249
	The Creation of the World (Qiang, with gloss)	251
	The Creation of the World (English free translation)	252
	The Legend of the Origin of All Things (Qiang, with gloss)	253
	The Legend of the Origin of All Things (English free translation)	255
	An Orphan (Qiang, with gloss)	256
	An Orphan (English free translation)	266
	Uncle Snake (Qiang, with gloss)	269
	Uncle Snake (English free translation)	273
	The Story of a Lazy Man (Qiang, with gloss)	275
	The Story of a Lazy Man (English free translation)	296
	The Old Man of the Chen Family (Qiang, with gloss)	300
	The Old Man of the Chen Family (English free translation)	325
English-Qiang glossary arranged by semantic field		329
	Natural phenomena	331
	Animals (wild)	334
	Birds	335
	Animals (domestic)	336
	Insects	337
	Fish, frogs, and turtles	338
	Plants	339
	Farming	341
	Food	341

Food preparation	343
Eating and storage utensils	344
Cloth and clothing	345
Buildings and structures	347
Furniture	349
Tools	349
Trade and business	351
Town and road	352
Travel	353
Language and communication	354
Religion	355
Festivals	355
Games and play	356
Bodyparts	357
Actions involving bodyparts	360
Grooming	363
Life, death, and illness	364
Warfare	366
Kinship	366
Types of people	368
Verbs of interaction between people	370
Stative verbs (adjectives)	374
Time phrases	379
Location phrases	380
Movement	382
Quantifiers	383
Pronouns	384
Adverbs and particles	385
Index to the English glosses in the glossary	389
Notes	421
References	433
Index to the grammar	443

List of tables, figures, and plates

Plate 1:	Map of Sichuan Province	xv
Plate 2:	Photo of Ronghong Village	xvi
Plate 3:	Watchtowers of Heihu Village	xvii
Table 1:	The Qiang orthography	4
Table 2:	The Qiang consonants	22
Table 3:	The Qiang vowel inventory	25
Figure 1:	The Qiang syllable canon	30
Figure 2:	The structure of the Qiang noun phrase	39
Table 4:	The Qiang personal pronouns	50
Table 5:	The Qiang demonstrative pronouns	52
Table 6:	The Qiang reflexive pronouns	56
Table 7:	Locational nouns for ‘above’ and ‘below’	58
Figure 3:	The structure of the Qiang verb complex	120
Table 8:	The Qiang person marking suffixes for intransitive verbs	141
Table 9:	The Qiang non-actor person marking suffixes	143
Table 10:	The Qiang person marking suffixes for transitive verbs	144
Figure 4:	The structure of the Qiang clause	221

Abbreviations

1	first person	HABIT	habitual action marker
2	second person	HORT	hortative marker
3	third person	HS	hearsay marker
ADJ	adjective (stative verb)	imp.	imperative verb form
ADV	adverbial marker	IMP	imperative suffix
AGT	agentive marker	INDEF	indefinite marker
ASP	aspect marker	INDTV	indirect directive marker
AUX	auxiliary particle for monosyllabic Chinese loan words	INF	inferential/mirative evidential marker
BEN	benefactive marker	INT	interjection, intensifier ¹
CAUS	causative suffix	INST	instrumental marker
Ch.	Chinese	lit.	literally
CL	classifier	LOC	locative marker (includes the use of the locative markers to mark temporal or other relations)
COM	comitative marker	LNK	clause linker
COMP	comparative marker	n.	noun
CON	continuative aspect marker	NAR	narrative (hearsay) form made up of the inferential and hearsay particles (this abbreviation is used in the stories to save space)
COP	copula	NEG	negative prefix
CSM	change of state marker	NEG.IMP	negative imperative (prohibitive) prefix
DAT	dative marker	NOM	nominalizer
DEF	definite marker	NUM	numeral
DEM	demonstrative pronoun		
DIR	directional prefix		
dl	dual		
DTV	directive particle		
EMPH	emphatic sentence-final particle		
EXC	exclusion particle		
EXP	experiential particle		
GEN	genitive marker		

PART	clause/sentence final particle	WH	interrogative pronoun
perf.	perfective form of a verb	†(...)	a gloss that appears in parentheses with a dagger in front of the parentheses
PERF	perfective marker		glosses a Chinese code-mixed stretch of text (possibly very short). Only clear examples of code mixing rather than loan words are marked this way.
pl	plural		Items that have a dagger but no parentheses are items that may be either code mixing or loans.
POST	postposition		
PRS	prospective aspect suffix		
PTB	Proto-Tibeto- Burman		
Q	question marker		
RCA	relevant condition achieved marker		
RECIP	reciprocal form		
REFL	reflexive form		
REP	repetition ('again') marker		
REQU	request marker		
RESULT	this form marks a transition in the Texts, and was often translated by the Chinese word <i>jiéguǒ</i> 'result'	⊗	allofam marker (marks two reconstructed forms as being related variants in the protolanguage)
sg	singular		
Tib.	Tibetan		
TOP	topic marker	/ vs. ~	In the glossary, a slash (stroke) between forms means the two forms are assumed to be different words, whereas a tilde between forms means they are assumed to be different pronunciations for the same form.
U	bound non-actor marker (e.g. '2sgU' means 'second person non-actor marker')		
singular			
V	verb		
v.	ambitransitive verb		
vi.	intransitive verb		
VIS	direct (usually visual)		
evidential	marker		
vt.	transitive verb		

Plates

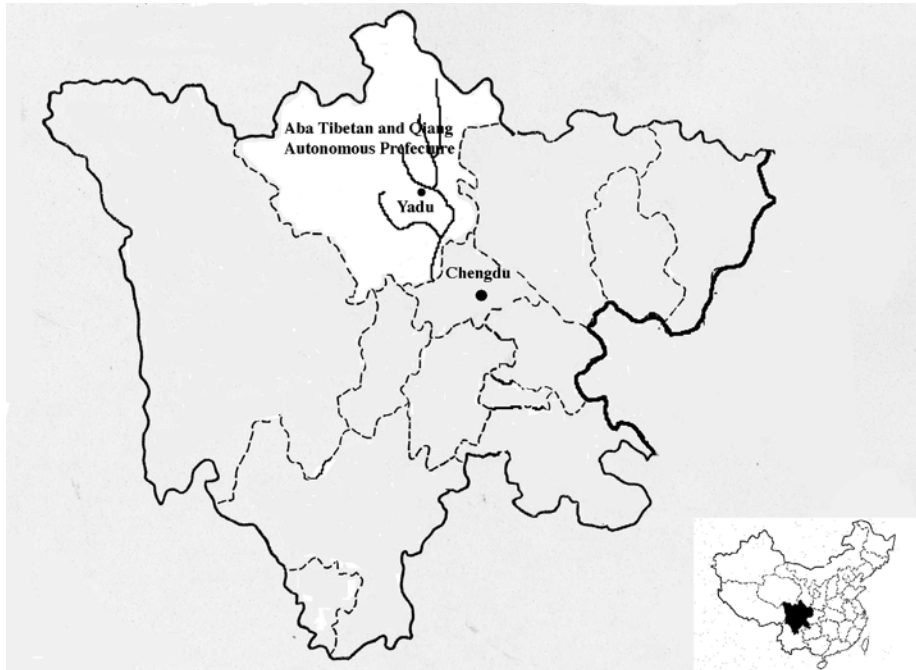


Plate 1: Sichuan Province, showing
Aba Tibetan and Qiang Autonomous Prefecture,
the Min River and Yadu Township



Plate 2: Ronghong Village



Plate 3: Watchtowers of Heihu Village

Chapter 1

Introduction

1.1. The land

The speakers of the Qiang language live in Aba Tibetan and Qiang Autonomous Prefecture, on the eastern edge of the Tibetan plateau in the northwest part of Sichuan Province, China (roughly 103 to 104 degrees longitude east and 31 to 32 degrees north). The entire prefecture covers 4046.35 square kilometers. The Qiang people mainly live along the Min River and in tributaries in the counties of Mao, Wenchuan, Heishui, Songpan and Beichuan, all contiguous areas in the southeast of Aba Prefecture (see Plate 1). A small number of Qiang people live in Danba County of Ganzi Tibetan Autonomous Prefecture, to the west of Aba Prefecture, and in Shiqian and Jiangkou of the Tongren area in Guizhou province, to the east of Aba Prefecture.

The entire area is very mountainous, with many mountains 4,000 meters (13,000 feet) high. The Qiang build their villages on the top or side of the mountains, with generally one village (often thirty-odd families or less) per mountain side. In many cases there are no roads to the village, and as the villages are often 2,500-3,500 meters up the mountain, the only way to get to the village is to climb a steep path.

The weather is generally cold in the winter and cool in the summer. It is usually dry and windy and the temperature varies greatly between day and night. Weather conditions also vary greatly between the mountains and the valleys; in the springtime, there is still snow up in the mountains, but flowers are already blooming down in the valley. The weather in different valleys also varies. In those below 2,500 meters the weather is relatively warm, with very little rain. In those valleys above 2,500, the weather is cold all year round, with an average temperature of five degrees Celsius. Above 4000 meters it is very cold all year, often with snow ten months of the year. The topography and varied weather conditions contribute to the stunning beauty of the landscape.

The geographic features, weather conditions and soil composition also contribute to the abundance and peculiarities of the natural flora and fauna of the area. The mountains are heavily wooded. Ginkgo, camphor, Chinese hemlock, and Chinese little leaf box trees grow wild in the valleys, as do 189 types of grasses and bushes, including some rare medical herbs such as *Cordyceps sinensis*, *Fritillaria thunbergii* (unibract fritillary bulb; “chuan bei”, a popular sore throat remedy), and *gastrodia elata*. The Qiang will pick these for their own use and to sell. Forty-one types of wild animal, among them endangered species such as the giant panda, the small panda, the golden monkey, the wild donkey, and the musk deer, can be found in the area.

1.2. The language

The Qiang language belongs to the Qiangic branch of the Tibeto-Burman family of the Sino-Tibetan stock. Some of the characteristics of the Qiangic branch include having a cognate set of direction marking prefixes; quite degenerate, though clearly cognate person marking paradigms; and radical loss of syllable final consonants, but preservation of complex initials and clusters.²

Sun (1981a:177-78) divides the Qiang language into two major dialects, Northern Qiang and Southern Qiang (see Wen 1941 for an earlier classification into eight dialects). Qiang speakers living in Heishui County and the Chibusu district of Mao County, including those designated by the Chinese government as Tibetans, are said to be speakers of the Northern dialect. Sun further subdivides the Northern dialect into the Luhua, Mawo, Cimulin, Weigu, and Yadu subdialects. Qiang speakers living in Li County, Wenchuan County, parts of Mao County other than Chibusu, and Songpan County are said to be Southern dialect speakers. The Southern dialect is also subdivided by Sun into the Daqishan, Taoping, Longxi, Mianchi, and Heihu subdialects. Liu (1998b:17) adds Sanlong and Jiaochang to the list of Southern subdialects. Recent fieldwork as part of the Qiang Dialect Map Project (funded by City University of Hong Kong and the Research Grants Council of Hong Kong) has called into question some aspects of this classification. In particular, dialects in Songpan County and the Sanlong area of Mao County are now considered to be within

the Northern dialect area. The dialect situation should become clearer with the completion of the Qiang Dialect Atlas Project.

Until recently there was no writing system for the language. The Qiang carved marks on wood to remember events or communicate. In the late 1980's a team of Qiang specialists from several different organizations developed a writing system for the Qiang language, based on the Qugu variety of the Yadu subdialect of the Northern dialect. In 1993 the government officially acknowledged the writing system.

The writing system uses 26 Roman letters to represent the 42 consonants and eight vowels in that variety of Qiang. Twenty of the consonants are represented by single Roman letters while the remaining 22 consonants are represented by double Roman letters (the letter *r* is not used as a single consonant). Five of the vowels are represented by single letters while the other three are represented by double letters. (See Table 1, overleaf).

The promulgation of the writing system has not been successful, and one of the main reasons is the complexity of the Qiang sound system and the concomitant complexity of the writing system. It is quite difficult for adult villagers, especially the illiterate peasants, to remember all of the letters and combinations representing different types of consonants and vowels. Another factor is the diversity of Qiang dialects. As the writing system is based on the Qugu variety of the Yadu subdialect of the Northern dialect, those who are not Northern dialect speakers resent learning another variety of the Qiang language in order to read and write (ideally they would eventually be able to write their own dialect, but would learn the script using the Qugu dialect). A third and very important factor is the fact that even if somebody masters the sound system and is able to read and write using the writing system, there are no reading materials available to make what they have learned useful.

Education in the Qiang areas is all in Chinese, though in recent years there has been a movement to implement bilingual education. Many of the children now can go to school, but the children often have to travel great distances to get to school. They will often live at the school, either for one week at a time, if the school is relatively close, or for months at a time, if it is farther away. Local educators have noticed that even with the opportunity for free education offered by the central government, there has been a continuously high drop-out rate among children from

remote villages. One reason, they believe, is that most of the children from the remote villages cannot cope with the school education because teaching in the schools is all in Chinese and they cannot speak Chinese. The call for a bilingual approach in education mainly refers to the use of spoken Qiang as a medium of instruction in the lower grades alongside Mandarin in order to facilitate the learning of Chinese. Another reason for the high drop-out rate is the fact that while schooling is technically free, the schools charge various fees and the cost of room and board, so it can be prohibitively expensive for the villagers.

Table 1: The Qiang orthography

Qiang	IPA	Qiang	IPA
A a	ɑ	L l	l
AE ae	æ	LH lh	ɬ
B b	p	M m	m
BB bb	b	N n	n
C c	tsh	NG ng	ŋ
CH ch	tʂh	NY ny	ɲ
D d	t	O o	o
DD dd	d	P p	ph
DH dh	dz̥	Q q	tch
E e	ə	RR rr	ʐ
EA ea	e	S s	s
F f	f	SH sh	ʂ
G g	k	SS ss	z
GG gg	g	T t	th
GV gv	q	U u	u
H h	x	V v	ɣ
HH hh	ɣ	VH vh	fi
HV hv	h	VV vv	ɛ
I i	i	W w	w
IU iu	y	X x	ɕ
J j	tɕ	XX xx	ʒ
JJ jj	dz	Y y	j
K k	kh	Z z	ts
KV kv	qh	ZH zh	tʂ
		ZZ zz	dz

In general, Chinese has been the main language of education and communication with non-Qiang people. The spoken form of Chinese used is the Western Sichuan subdialect of Southwest Mandarin, while the written form used is that of Standard Modern Chinese. The Qiang have been in contact with the Han Chinese for centuries (see Sun 1998). However, in the past, only the men who left the Qiang area to trade or work or had to deal with Han Chinese on a regular basis would learn Chinese. Children below the age of fifteen rarely spoke Chinese, but now with more universal access to Chinese schooling and to TV (which is all in Standard Modern Chinese), even small children in remote villages can speak some Chinese. Now very few Qiang people cannot speak Chinese, but there are many Qiang who cannot speak the Qiang language. In many villages by the main roads, and in some whole counties in the east of Aba Prefecture (where contact with the Han Chinese has historically been most intense), the entire population is monolingual in Chinese. The tendency toward becoming monolingual in Chinese is becoming more prevalent now than ever before due to strong economic and social pressure to assimilate, and to the popularization of free primary and secondary education in Chinese. The number of fluent Qiang speakers becomes smaller day by day. Qiang is therefore very much an endangered language. The culture of the Qiang people is also in jeopardy of disappearing. This loss of the Qiang language and culture was noted as early as the 1940's (Graham 1958; see also Sun 1988), and accelerated greatly after 1949. It is hoped that the linguistic and cultural information presented in the present volume will serve as a record of some part of this vanishing language and culture.

1.3. The people and their culture

1.3.1. The people

In most studies of the Qiang, especially those written in China, there is an assumption that the people classified by the present Chinese government as the Qiang living in northern Sichuan can be equated with the Qiang mentioned in Chinese texts dating back to the oracle bone inscriptions written 3,000 years ago. A more careful view would be that the ancient "Qiang" were the ancestors of all or almost all of the modern Tibeto-Burman speakers, and the modern "Qiang" (who call themselves

/z me/ in their own language, written *RRmea* in the Qiang orthography), are but one small branch of the ancient “Qiang”. They in fact did not think of themselves as “Qiang” (a Chinese exonym) until the early 20th century. It is clear that the culture of the stone watchtowers (see Plate 3), which can be identified with the modern Qiang people, has been in northern Sichuan since at least the beginning of the present era. Being in this area, the Qiang people are between the Han Chinese to the east and south and the Tibetans to the west and north. In the past fighting between these two larger groups often took place in the Qiang area, and the Qiang would come under the domination of one group or the other. At times there was also fighting between different Qiang villages. The construction of the watchtowers and the traditional design of their houses (with thick stone walls and small windows and doors; see Plate 2) give testimony to the constant threat of attack.³

The majority of Qiang speakers, roughly eighty thousand people, are members of the Qiang ethnicity, and the rest, approximately fifty thousand people, are a subgroup of the Tibetan ethnicity.⁴ These ethnic designations are what they call themselves in Chinese. In Qiang they all call themselves */z me/* or a dialect variant of this word. Not all members of the Qiang ethnicity speak Qiang, and as just mentioned, not all of those who speak Qiang are considered members of the Qiang ethnicity.

1.3.2. Architecture

The traditional Qiang house is a permanent one built of piled stones and has three stories. Generally one nuclear family will live in one house. The lowest floor houses the family’s animals, and straw is used as a ground covering. When the straw becomes somewhat rotted and full of manure and urine, it is used for fertilizer.⁵ A steep wooden ladder leads to the second floor from the back of the first floor. On the second floor is the fireplace and sleeping quarters. Beds are wooden platforms with mats made of straw as mattresses. The third floor has more rooms for sleeping and/or is used for storage. A ladder also leads from there to the roof, which is used for drying fungi, corn or other items, and also for some religious practices, as a white stone (flint) is placed on the roof and invested with a spirit. The fireplace, which is the central point of the main room on the second floor, originally had three stones set in a circle

for resting pots on, but now most homes have large circular three or four-legged iron potholders. In some areas, particularly to the north, enclosed stoves are replacing the old open fires. On the side of the fireplace across from the ladder leading to the second floor there is an altar to the house gods. This is also the side of the fireplace where the elders and honored guests sit. Nowadays one often finds pictures of Mao Zedong and/or Deng Xiaoping in the altar, as the Qiang are thankful for the improved life they have since the founding of the People's Republic and particularly since the reforms instituted by Deng in the late 1970's and after.⁶ Traditionally the Qiang relied on spring water, and had to go out to the spring to get it. In recent years pipes have been run into many of the houses, so there is a more convenient supply of water, though it is not like the concept of "running water" in the West. There are no bathrooms inside the house, though in some villages (e.g. Weicheng) a small enclosed balcony that has a hole in the floor has been added to the house to function as a second story outhouse. Many villages now have electricity, at least a few hours every night, and so a TV (relying on a large but inexpensive satellite dish) and in some cases a VCD player can be found in the house. All TV and VCD programs are in Chinese, and so the spread of electricity has facilitated the spread of bilingualism.

In the past each village had one or more watchtowers, six or seven story-high six- or eight-sided structures made of piled stones. The outside walls were smooth and the inside had ladders going up to the upper levels. These allowed early warning in the case of attack, and were a fallback position for fighting. In some villages underground passages were also dug between structures for use when they were attacked. In most villages the towers have been taken down and the stones used to build new houses.

1.3.3. Food

The main staple foods are corn, potatoes, wheat, and highland barley, supplemented with buckwheat, naked oats, and rice. Wheat, barley and buckwheat are made into noodles. Noodles are handmade. Among the favorite delicacies of the Qiang are buckwheat noodles cooked with pickled vegetables. Because potatoes are abundant in the area, the

Qiang have developed many ways of cooking potatoes. The easiest ways to cook them is by boiling or baking (that is, placing the potatoes into the ashes around the fire). The more complicated and more special ways of preparing them involve pounding boiled potatoes in a stone mortar and then shaping the mashed potatoes and frying them to become potato fritters or boiling them with pickled vegetables. The latter is eaten like noodle soup, the same way as noodles made of buckwheat flour are eaten.

Since corn is also quite abundant in the area, the Qiang have also developed different ways of eating corn. Corn flour is cooked with vegetables to become a delicious corn porridge. Corn flour mixed with water without yeast and then left in the fire to bake is the Qiang style of corn bread. This bread is often eaten with honey. Honey is a delicacy in the Qiang area. It is not easy to come by as they have to raise the bees in order to collect honey. Another important item is salt. Because the Qiang live in the highlands, salt was traditionally difficult to come by, so when you are invited to eat in a Qiang family, the host will always try to offer you more salt or will see to it that the dishes get enough salt.

The Qiang also grow walnuts, red and green chili peppers, bunge prickly ash peel (*pericarpium zanthoxyli*), several varieties of hyacinth bean, apples, pears, scallions, turnips, cabbage, and some rape. Crops are rotated to preserve the quality of the fields, some of which are on the mountain sides and some of which may be on the side of the stream found at the bottom of many of the gorges between the mountains. Qiang fields are of the dry type and generally do not have any sort of irrigation system. Aside from what they grow, they are also able to collect many varieties of wild vegetables, fruit, and fungi, as well as pine nuts. They now eat rice, but as they do not grow rice themselves, they exchange other crops for rice. Many types of pickled vegetables are made as a way of preserving the vegetables, and these are often cooked with buckwheat noodles or potato noodles in a type of soup. Vegetables are also salted or dried in order to preserve them.

While grain is the main subsistence food, the Qiang eat meat when they can, especially cured pork. In the past they generally ate meat only on special occasions and when entertaining guests. Now their economic circumstances allow them to eat meat more frequently. They raise pigs, two kinds of sheep, cows, horses, and dogs, though they do not eat the horses or dogs. Generally there is only one time per year when the

animals are slaughtered (in mid-winter), and then the meat is preserved and hung from the rafters in the house. The amount of meat hanging in one's house is a sign of one's wealth. As there are no large fish in the streams and rivers, the Qiang generally do not eat fish. In the past they would hunt wild oxen, wild boars, several types of mountain goat, bears, wolves (for the skin), marmots, badgers, sparrows, rabbits, and musk deer (and sell the musk). They used small cross-bows, bows and arrows, pit traps, wire traps, and more recently flint-lock rifles to hunt. Now there are not many animals left in the mountains, and many that are there are endangered species, and so can no longer be hunted.

The low-alcohol liquor made out of highland barley (similar to Tibetan "chang") or occasionally corn or other grains, called /ci/ in Qiang, is one of the favorite beverages of the Qiang. It plays a very important role in the daily activities of the Qiang. It is an indispensable drink for use on all occasions. It is generally drunk from large casks placed on the ground using long bamboo straws. For this reason it is called *zājiǔ* 'sucked liquor' in Chinese. Opening a cask of /ci/ is an important part of hosting an honored guest.

1.3.4. Clothing

1.3.4.1. Men's clothing

At present only a few of the older Qiang men still wear the traditional Qiang clothing except on particular ceremonial occasions. One item of traditional clothing still popularly worn by men and women is the handmade embroidered shoes. These are made of cloth, shaped like a boat, with the shoe face intricately embroidered. The sole is made of thickly woven hemp. It is very durable and quite practical for climbing in the mountains. In the summer men often wear a sandal version of these shoes with a large pomp on the toe. These shoes are an obligatory item of a Qiang woman's dowry when she gets married. In many villages, embroidered shoe soles or shoe pads are still a popular engagement gift of a woman to her lover. Recently some women have taken to selling them as tourist souvenirs as well.

Another item still popular among the Qiang men and women as well is the goat-skin vest. The vest is reversible; in the winter it is normally worn with the fur inside for warmth, and when worn with the fur out, it

serves as a raincoat. It also acts as padding when carrying things on the back.

Qiang men often carry a lighter (traditionally it would be flint and steel) and knives on a belt around their waist. The belt has a triangular pouch in front. There are two types of these triangular pouches: one is made of cloth and intricately embroidered, another is made of leather (the skin of a musk deer). Men sometimes will also wear a piece of apron-like cloth (also embroidered with a floral pattern) over their buttocks, to be used as seat pad.

1.3.4.2. Women's clothing

The majority of Qiang women in the villages still wear traditional clothing. Qiang women's clothing is very colorful, and also varies from village to village. The differences are mainly manifested in the color and styles of their robes and headdresses. Headdresses are worn from about the age of twelve. Women in the Sanlong area wear a square headdress embroidered with various floral patterns in wintertime. In the spring, they wear a headband embroidered with colorful floral patterns, and wear a long robe (traditionally made of hemp fiber) with fancily embroidered borders, and tie a black sheep-leather belt around the waist. Women of the Heihu area wear a white headdress, and are fond of wearing blue or light green robes (the borders are also embroidered with floral patterns). Women from the Weimen area wear a black headdress and a long robe. The border of the robe is embroidered with colorful floral patterns. They also often wear an embroidered apron (full front or from the waist down) and an embroidered cloth belt. The headdress worn by women of Mao county and the Muka area of Li county is a block-like rectangle of folded cloth, with embroidered patterns on the part that faces backwards when worn. Women in Puxi village of Li county wear plain black headdresses, oblong in shape with the two sides wider than the front. In the Chibusu district of Mao county women wear brick-shaped headdresses wrapped in braided hair. They braid their hair, and at the tip of their braid sometimes add a piece of blue fake hair braid in order to make the braid longer (if necessary), and then coil the braid around the headdress to hold it in place.

Clothing of those living near the Tibetan areas bear the influence of the Tibetan ways of clothing.

Other than the headdresses and the robes, Qiang women are also fond of wearing big earrings, ornamental hairpins, bracelets, and other silver jewelry. Jewelry pieces of those who are wealthier are inlaid with precious stones like jade, agate, and coral. They often hang a needle and thread box and sometimes a mouth harp from their belt.

Babies wear special embroidered hats with silver ornaments and bronze and silver bells, and a small fragrance bag.

1.3.5. Family and kinship relations

Although in the Qiang language traditionally there are no surnames, for several hundred years the Qiang have been using Han Chinese surnames. The clans or surname groups form the lowest level of organization within the village above the nuclear family. In one village there may be only a few different surnames. The village will have a village leader, and this is now an official political post with a small salary. Many of the traditional “natural” villages have now been organized into “administrative” villages comprised of several “natural” villages. Before 1949 (as early as the Yuan dynasty—13-14th century), above the village level there was a local leader (called *tǔsī* in Chinese) who was enfeoffed by the central government to control the Qiang and collect taxes. This leader could also write his own laws and demand his own taxes and servitude from the Qiang people. The Qiang had to work for this local leader for free, and also give a part of their food to him. His position was hereditary, and many of these leaders were terrible tyrants and exploiters of the people. Some of the Qiang traditional stories are of overthrowing such tyrants.

Kinship relations are quite complex, and while generally patrilineal, the women have a rather high status, supposedly a remnant of a matriarchal past. Only men can inherit the wealth of the parents, but women are given a large dowry. Marriages are monogamous, and can be with someone of the same surname, but not within the same family for at least three generations. The general practice is to marry someone of the same village but it can also be with someone outside the village. Increasingly Qiang women are marrying out of the villages to Chinese

or Qiang living in the plains to have an easier life, and many of the young men who go out to study or work marry Han Chinese women. In the past marriages were decided by the parents of the bride and groom, although now the young people generally have free choice.

The traditional form of marriage in the village is characterized by a series of rituals focused around drinking and eating. It consists of three main stages: engagement, preparation for the wedding, and the wedding ceremony. The rituals start when the parents of a boy have a girl in mind for their son. The parents will start the “courtship” by asking a relative or someone who knows the girl’s family to find out whether she is available or not. If the girl is available, they will move on to the next step, that is, to ask a matchmaker to carry a package of gifts (containing sugar, wine, noodles, and cured meat) to the girl’s family. This is only to convey their intention to propose a marriage. If the girl’s parents accepted the gift, the boy’s parents will proceed to the next step, asking the matchmaker to bring some more gifts to the girl’s parents and “officially” propose. If the girl’s parents agree, then a date will be set to bring the “engagement wine” to the girl’s family. On that day, the girl’s parents and all the siblings will join in to drink and sing the “engagement song”. Once this is done, the couples are considered to be engaged, and there should be no backing out. After being engaged, the girl should avoid having any contact with members of the groom’s family.

Before the wedding, a member from the groom’s family will be accompanied by the matchmaker to the bride’s family, carrying with them some wine which they will offer to the bride’s family members and relatives of the same surname, to have a drink and decide on the date of the wedding. Once the wedding date has been set, the groom, accompanied by the matchmaker and carrying some more wine, personally goes to the bride’s family to have a drink with the bride’s uncles, aunts and other family members.

The wedding ceremony itself takes three days, and is traditionally hosted by the oldest brothers of the mothers of the bride and groom. On the first day, the groom’s family sends an entire entourage to the bride’s place to fetch the bride. The entourage usually consists of relatives of the groom and some boys and girls from the village whose parents are both still living, with two people playing the trumpet. They carry with them a sedan chair, horses (in some cases), clothing and jewelry for the

bride. The entourage has to arrive in the bride's village before sunset. They stay there overnight. The next day, the bride has to leave with the group to go to the groom's family. Before stepping out of her family door, she has to cry to show how sad she is leaving her parents and family members. One of her brothers will carry her on his back to the sedan chair. Once the bride steps out of her parents' house she should not turn her head to look back. She is accompanied by her aunts (wife of her uncle from her mother's side, and wife of her uncle from her father's side), sisters and other relatives. Before the bride enters the groom's house she has to step over a small fire or a red cloth (this part of the ceremony varies among areas). The bride enters the house and the actual wedding ceremony starts. The couple will be led to the front of the family altar, and, just like the wedding practice of the Chinese, the couple will first make vows to heaven and earth, the family ancestors, the groom's parents, the other relatives, and finally vows to each other. There is a speech by the hosting uncles, and the opening of a cask of highland barley wine. There will then be dancing and drinking. As the cask is drunk, hot water is added to the top with a water scoop, and each drinker is expected to drink one scoop's equivalent of liquor. If the drinker fails to drink the required amount, he or she may be tossed up into the air by the others in the party.

Before the couple enter the room where they are to live, two small children (whose parents are both still living) will be sent in to run around and play on the couple's bed, as a way of blessing the couple to soon have children.

On the third day the bride returns to her parents' home. When she leaves her newlywed husband's village, relatives of the husband wait at their doorways or at the main entrance to the village to offer her wine. The bride's family will also prepare wine and food to welcome the newlywed couple. The groom has to visit and pay respects to all of the bride's relatives. The bride then stays at her parents' house for a year or so, until the birth of the first child or at least until around the time of the Qiang New Year (see below). The groom will visit her there and may live in the woman's house. She returns to her husband's family to celebrate the birth or the New Year, and stays there permanently.

In recent years there has been movement away from traditional style marriage ceremonies towards more Han Chinese style or Chinese-Western-Qiang mixed style marriage ceremonies.

1.3.6. Religion

The Qiang native religion is a type of pantheism, with gods or spirits of many types. To this day when a cask of /ɕi/ (barley wine) is opened, a ritual is performed to honor the door god, the fireplace god, and the house god. Flint stone (called “white stone” in Qiang and Chinese) is highly valued, and when a house is built a piece of flint is placed on the roof of the house and a ceremony is held to invest the stone with a spirit.⁷ The fireplace at the center of the house is considered to be the place where the fireplace spirit lives. Before each meal, the Qiang will place some food near the iron potholder for the fireplace spirit. The iron potholder is treated by the Qiang people with great respect, and cannot be moved at random. One cannot rest one's feet on it, or hang food there to grill. Most important is that one cannot spit in front of the potholder. When the Qiang drink barley wine or tea, or eat meals, an elderly person who is present has to perform the ritual of honoring the god of the fireplace, that is by dipping his finger or the drinking straw into the barley wine and splashing the wine into the fireplace.

Every household has an altar in the corner of the main floor of the house facing the door. It is usually ornately carved, and its size reflects the financial status of the family. The altar and the area around the altar is considered to be sacred. One cannot hang clothes, nor spit, burp, expel flatulence, or say inauspicious words around the altar area. Pointing one's foot toward the altar is strictly prohibited.

Other than believing in the spirits of the house and of the fireplace, the Qiang also believe in the spirits of all natural phenomena, such as heaven, earth, sun, moon, stars, rivers, hills and mountains. Two of the biggest festivals in the Qiang area are related to their worship of these spirits: the Qiang New Year, which falls on the 24th day of the sixth month of the lunar calendar (now the festival date is fixed on October 1st), and the Mountain Sacrifice Festival, held between the second and sixth months of the lunar calendar. The former is focused on sacrifices to the god of Heaven, while the latter is to give sacrifice to the god of the mountain.

Religious ceremonies and healing rituals are performed by shamans known as /ɕpi/ in Qiang and *Duān Gōng* in Chinese. To become such a shaman takes many years of training with a teacher. The *Duān Gōng* also performs the initiation ceremony that young men go through when

they are about eighteen years old. This ceremony, called “sitting on top of the mountain” in Qiang, involves the whole family going to the mountain top to sacrifice a sheep or cow and to plant three cypress trees. These shamans also pass on the traditional stories of the Qiang. The stories include the creation story, the history of the Qiang (particular famous battles and heroes), and other cultural knowledge (see the Texts for some of the stories). As there was no written language until recently, story telling was the only way that this knowledge was passed on. Very few such shamans are left, and little story telling is done now that many villages have access to TVs and VCD players.

1.3.7. Mobility

Because the Qiang villages are generally high up on the mountains, and there often is no road to the village, only a steep narrow path (this is the case, for example, in Ronghong village [see Plate 2], where the nearest road is hours away), travel has traditionally been by foot, though horses are sometimes used as pack animals where the path or road allows it. In the summer the horses are taken to remote pastures to prevent them from eating the crops near the villages. In some cases there is a road to the village large enough for vehicles to pass, but the condition of the road is usually quite bad, and as it runs along the very edge of the mountain, it can be quite dangerous. On every field trip we saw at least one car or truck that had just fallen off the side of a mountain. Because the condition of the road varies with the weather and there are sometimes landslides, before attempting to drive to (or near) a village, one has to try to find out if the road is actually passable. The streams and rivers are too shallow to navigate, and so the Qiang do not make boats.

1.3.8. Livelihood

In general it was the work of the men to hunt, weave baskets (large back baskets and small baskets), shepherd the cows, gather wild plants, and do some of the harder labor such as plowing the fields, getting wood, and building houses, and it was the work of the women to weave cloth,

embroider, hoe the fields, spread seeds, cook most of the food, and do most of the housework. In the winter men often went down into the flatlands to dig wells for pay (this often involved a twelve-day walk down to the Chengdu area!). Any trading was also only done by men. In the past the Qiang traded opium, animal skins and medicinal plants in order to get gold, silver, coral, and ivory. These items were often made into jewelry for the women. Nowadays both men and women cook and gather wild plants, and it is common for men to leave the village for long periods of time to go out to work in the flatlands or to sell medicinal herbs, wood, vegetables, animal skins or other items in exchange for money or rice.

Although some ancient ceramics have been unearthed in the Qiang areas, in the recent past ceramics were not made by the Qiang. Most Qiang-made utensils were of wood, stone or iron. There were specialists in metalworking. Nowadays most such items are bought from outside the Qiang area.

1.4. Previous work on Qiang

Fieldwork on Qiang and initial analysis was first carried out by Wen Yu in the late 1930's (Wen 1940, 1941, 1943a, 1943b, 1943c, 1945). Wen also did some initial comparisons and historical work on the language (1943b, 1947), and published two vocabularies of Qiang (1950, 1951). Chang Kun (1967) used Wen's data for a comparative study of the southern Qiang dialects, and attempted to reconstruct the proto-language. In the late 1950's the Chinese Academy of Sciences organized teams of linguists to go to the different areas where ethnic minority peoples lived and carry out fieldwork. Two members of the team that worked on Qiang were Sun Hongkai and Liu Guangkun.⁸ An early report drafted by them was published with "Institute of Nationalities, Chinese Academy of Sciences" as the author in the journal *Zhongguo Yuwen* in 1962. They have also published much of the material available on Qiang since then (Sun 1981a, 1981b, 1982, 1983, 1985, 1988; Liu 1981, 1984, 1987, 1997, 1998a, 1998b, 1999). Huang Bufan, another member of the team, now retired from the Central University of Nationalities, has also done important work on Qiang (1987, 1991, 1994, 2000, 2002), and is now in the process of

writing a grammar of the Qugu Village variety of the Yadu subdialect of the Northern dialect. These three scholars have trained a native Qiang linguist, Huang Chenglong, who has published a number of articles on his native dialect, the Ronghong Village variety of the Yadu subdialect of the Northern dialect (1992, 1993, 1994, 1997, 1998, 2000a, 2000b, 2003; Huang, Yu & Huang 1992), on which this grammar is also based. Sun Hongkai and Huang Chenglong are currently preparing a manuscript entitled *Studies on Qiang Dialects* that will compare 20 different Qiang dialects in terms of phonology and to some extent grammar as well. Randy LaPolla has published an overview sketch of Ronghong Qiang (LaPolla 2003c) and a paper on the evidentials of the Ronghong variety (LaPolla 2003d), as well as a lexical list and texts in the Qugu variety (LaPolla, 2003e; LaPolla & Poa, in press). Randy LaPolla and Huang Chenglong have presented papers on adjectives (LaPolla & Huang 2002a) and copula constructions (LaPolla & Huang 2002b) in Qiang. Jonathan Evans has published a monograph on the Southern Qiang lexicon and phonology (2001a) and a paper on contact-induced tonogenesis in Qiang (2001b), and has presented a paper on the directional prefixes (2000). Randy LaPolla, Huang Chenglong, Dory Poa, Jonathan Evans, and Wang Ming-ke are currently collaborating with Zhou Facheng and a team of other Qiang linguists on the Qiang Dialect Map Project, which will attempt to record the language and customs in at least fifteen Qiang villages and make the data and images available on an Internet web site (the Qiang Language and Culture Web Site: <http://victoria.linguistlist.org/~lapolla/qiang/index.htm>).

1.5. The data and their presentation

All data presented in the Grammar, Texts, and Glossary are of the Yadu subdialect of northern Qiang spoken in Ronghong Village, Yadu Township, Chibusu District, Mao County (see Plates 1 and 2). The data are from Mr. Huang Chenglong, a native of Ronghong Village, and members of his family. The grammatical analysis is based on naturally occurring texts (narratives) as well as elicited sentence patterns. Examples taken from the Texts are marked by the number of the text and the line number(s) the example appears on. For example, “(T3:23-24)” means the example appears in lines 23-24 of Text 3, “An Orphan”.

Stories and lexical items were also collected from the Qugu variety of Northern Qiang, also of Chibusu district, from Mr. Chen Yonglin, though as the Qugu variety differs somewhat from the Ronghong variety, those data are not presented here. The lexical data and some of the stories have been published separately as LaPolla, 2003e, and LaPolla & Poa, in press, respectively. All of the fieldwork was carried out in Chinese, and the first draft of the grammar and stories had only Chinese glosses. The glosses and free translations were then translated into English. The English glosses for the items in the Glossary are largely from the *Handbook of Chinese Dialect Vocabulary*, which was used as a basis for the lexical elicitation.⁹ For this reason the glosses are in a sense twice-removed (twice-translated) from the Qiang, and so some ambiguities may have been introduced that were not in the first translation. If readers have questions about any such items, they should contact Randy LaPolla (ctrandy@cityu.edu.hk). The glossary is also available as a freestanding Hypercard™ application which includes the original Chinese glosses (and the Qugu lexical data mentioned above), for those who might be able to make use of it. Again, contact Randy LaPolla. Reconstructions given for Proto-Tibeto-Burman forms are from Benedict 1972, except for the numerals, which are from Matisoff 1997.

The last section of this chapter is a typological overview of the language. The discussion in the rest of the grammatical description is divided into four main parts: the sound system of the language (Chapter 2), the form of representation of the participants of an action or state and the expression of their relationship to the verb and to each other (Chapter 3), the form of representation of an action or state (Chapter 4), and complex structures (Chapter 5). Following the grammatical description are Qiang oral texts, presented with interlinear glosses and a free translation at the end of each text. Following the Texts is an annotated glossary of basic Qiang vocabulary organized by semantic field, and an English alphabetical index to the glossary.

The *Lingua Descriptive Studies: Questionnaire* (Comrie & Smith 1977) was very helpful in collecting part of the data, though the mode of presentation in this grammar is not always that of the *Questionnaire*. The guidelines for summarizing grammatical information prepared as part of the research project “The Categories of Human Language” being carried out by R. M. W. Dixon and Alexandra Y. Aikhenvald were also

helpful in trying to make the information presented here as complete as possible.

1.6. Typological profile

Qiang is a largely agglutinative language, with some phonological processes of vowel harmony, lenition, and morpheme coalescence. Nouns take only a limited number of optional suffixes with restricted distribution, while verbs take up to three prefixes and four suffixes. Except for nominalizing suffixes and the causative suffix, which are derivational, all other verbal affixes are inflectional. Reduplication of verbs is of the whole root, and with active verbs it signifies reciprocal action (and intransitivization) or an iterative sense; with stative verbs it signifies intensification or plurality.

Qiang has a rather complex phonological system, with thirty-seven initial consonants, including voiced and voiceless fricatives at seven different points of articulation and many consonant clusters. Unlike most Tibeto-Burman languages, Qiang has many consonant finals, including clusters, due to the collapsing of two syllables into one (there is a tendency towards monosyllable words).

There are two open lexical classes: nouns, those forms which can take definite marking and number marking, and verbs, those forms which can take the negative prefix and person marking (see Chapters 3 and 4 respectively). Adjectives are a subset of the verbs, and can be identified as a set by their semantics and their morphosyntactic behavior (§4.2.3). Closed lexical classes include pronouns (including demonstratives, interrogatives, and personal pronouns; §3.1.2), classifiers (§3.1.6), postpositions (§3.2), definite/indefinite markers (§3.1.4), clause-final particles (§4.3), and adverbs (§4.4). Of these the pronouns and classifiers are subsets of the nouns.

Qiang has both head marking and dependent marking. Noun phrases can take enclitic postpositions to show their semantic or pragmatic role in the clause (§3.2), and there is person marking of an animate actor and/or an animate non-actor on the verb (§4.3.2). There is no other agreement marking in Qiang. Qiang has not grammaticalized syntactic relations (i.e. there are no syntactic pivots—see Van Valin & LaPolla 1997, Ch. 6 on this concept); the postpositions and person marking are

of the semantically based type discussed in Dixon 1994, Ch. 2. The use of the topic marker, and to some extent the non-actor person marking, are controlled by pragmatic factors. While the word order is generally verb-final, the order of noun phrases is determined by pragmatic factors. Negation precedes the verb, while modal and aspect marking follow the verb.

Within the noun phrase, the noun head can be preceded by a genitive phrase or relative clause, and may be followed by an adjective, a demonstrative pronoun or definite marker, and a numeral plus classifier phrase, in that order.

There are intransitive, transitive, and ditransitive verbs, plus some ambitransitive verbs where the single argument of the intransitive use corresponds to the actor of the transitive use. Transitives can be formed from intransitives, or ditransitives from transitives, by the addition of the causative suffix. There is no intransitivizing marking other than the reduplication that marks the reciprocal. When a verb is part of a predicate (verb complex), it can be preceded by an adverbial, a directional prefix, a negative marking prefix, and an aspectual prefix, and can be followed by the causative suffix, aspectual suffixes, and person marking suffixes. This complex can be followed by clause final particles marking illocutionary force, modality, mood, and evidentials.

Chapter 2

The phonological system

In the context of Tibeto-Burman, the phonological system of Qiang is rather complex, as there are a large number of consonants, both in initial and final position, and a large number of complex consonant clusters, also both in initial and final position. In particular, having such a variety of consonant finals and clusters sets it apart from most other Sino-Tibetan languages. While the basic vowel inventory is not large, there are phonemic length and r-coloring distinctions. There is also a complex system of vowel harmony, and there are vowel changes due to differences in stress. We will discuss and exemplify the consonant system in §2.1, the vowel system in §2.2, the syllable canon in §2.3, and phonological processes in §2.4.

Sound symbolism does not seem to play a significant role in the language. The only somewhat sound symbolic form found was the use of /ca/ for the meaning ‘small’ instead of the usual word /χt̪sa/ (which is very un-sound-symbolic!) in one example:

- (2.1) *moku-ca-ka:* *de-w!*
wind-small-INDEF:CL DIR-exist
‘There is a light wind (blowing)!’

The only iconic forms are the ideophonic adverbials, such as /χua χua/ ‘the sound of water flowing’ (see §4.4 for examples of these adverbial uses).

2.1. Consonants

There are thirty-seven consonant phonemes found in the Qiang language, as listed in Table 2:

Table 2. The Qiang consonants

	labial	dental	retro- flex	palatal	velar	uvular	glottal
voiceless stop	p	t			k	q	(ʔ)
voiceless aspirated stop	ph	th			kh	qh	
voiced stop	b	d			g		
voiceless affricate		ts	tʂ	tɕ			
voiceless aspirated affricate		tsh	tʂh	tɕh			
voiced affricate		dz	dʐ	dʒ			
voiceless fricative	ɸ(f)	s	ʂ	ç	x	χ	h
voiced fricative	(v)	z	ʐ (ɹ)	(z)	(ɣ)	ʁ	ɦ
nasal	m	n		ɲ ¹⁰	ŋ		
voiceless lateral		ɬ					
voiced lateral		l					
approximant	(w)			(j)			

The items in parentheses in Table 2 are not phonemic: [ɹ] is an allophone of /ʐ/ in initial position; [z] and [ɣ] are voiced allophones of /ç/ and /x/, respectively, when they appear as the first consonant of clusters where the second consonant is voiced (see the discussion of clusters below). A glottal stop can also often be heard when there is an absence of any other initial, but it does not contrast phonemically with a pure vocalic onset. There also does not seem to be a contrast between /u/ and /wu/ or /i/ and /ji/, but I am using the symbols /j/ and /w/ rather than /i/ and /u/ respectively for the relevant sounds when they appear in syllable-initial position to allow for easy syllable recognition in words such as [tiwike] ‘a tall one’. As these sounds do not follow the voicing harmony pattern of consonant clusters (that is, they can be preceded by a voiceless consonant, as in the second syllable of /zɑχua/ ‘inside’),

they are clearly within the vocalic segment of the syllable and not part of the initial, and so I have not used /j/ and /w/ when they are not the initial sound in the syllable (to avoid them being confused with consonant clusters).

All of the phonemic consonants can be initials, though /fi/ only appears as the initial of one of the directional prefixes and a commonly used filler/emphatic interjection /fiɑ/, and /ŋ/ only appears as an initial before the vowel /u/. Many of these consonants (almost all except the aspirated stops) can be finals. The large number of finals is not due to the preservation of Proto-Tibeto-Burman finals; all of the original Proto-Tibeto-Burman finals were lost (cf. Liu 1984, Benedict 1983, Huang 1998). Only in Chinese loan words can the finals be said to be “original”. After the loss of the original finals, and the destressing of second syllables in two syllable compounds, the two syllables merged, with the initial of the original second syllable, or a reduced form of it, becoming the final of the original initial syllable (e.g. [səf] ‘tree’ < /sə/ ‘wood’ + /phə/ ‘forest’, where /phə/ reduces to [f] in non-word-initial position due to the stress on the initial syllable; see §2.3).

Following are examples of single consonant contrasts in initial position:

<i>pa</i>	‘bloom (vi.)’	<i>zawa</i>	‘stone’
<i>pha</i>	‘sun (clothes) (vt.)’	<i>ca-</i>	INDTV prefix
<i>ba</i>	‘old’	<i>tca-la</i>	‘where’
<i>fa</i>	‘clothes’	<i>tcha</i>	‘drink (1sg)’
<i>ma</i>	‘mother (address term)’	<i>ci</i>	‘release’
<i>wa</i>	(verb particle)	<i>tci</i>	‘bear’
<i>ta</i>	‘wear a hat’	<i>dzi</i>	‘brother’s son’
<i>tha</i>	‘there’	<i>ŋa</i>	‘and’
<i>das</i>	‘finish (v.)’	<i>ja ku</i>	‘ivory’
<i>tsa</i>	‘here’	<i>ka</i>	‘go (1sg)’
<i>tsha-tha</i>	‘wipe’ (< Ch.)	<i>kha</i>	‘rice husk’ ¹¹
<i>dza</i>	‘pursue’	<i>gan khəu</i>	‘snap button’ (< Ch.)
<i>sa</i>	‘blood’	<i>xu</i>	‘fragrant’
<i>za</i>	‘rice ladle’	<i>ŋuə</i>	‘silver’
<i>na</i>	‘good’	<i>qa</i>	1sg pronoun
<i>la</i>	‘slippery’	<i>qha(q)</i>	‘bitter’
<i>la</i>	‘wolf’ (< Ch.)	<i>χaf</i>	‘grass’

<i>tʂa</i>	‘filter, strain (solids)’	<i>ʌa</i>	locative postposition
<i>tʂha</i>	‘deep’	<i>ha-ŋi</i>	‘twelve’
<i>dzɑ</i>	‘early’	<i>ha-qa</i>	‘go up’
<i>ʂa</i>	‘border (garments) (vt.)’	<i>fiɑ-qa</i>	‘go down’

Following are examples of single consonants in final position:

<i>ʂuap</i>	‘torch’	<i>ataz</i>	‘immediately’
<i>kuam</i>	‘servant’	<i>tʂhətʂ</i>	‘weigh (vt.)’
<i>χaf</i>	‘grass’	<i>yzəc</i>	‘land otter’
<i>wet</i>	‘stick’	<i>ʂpetc</i>	‘patch (vt.)’
<i>wəs</i>	‘egg’	<i>ipək</i>	‘arrive’
<i>dzuz</i>	‘chew the cud’	<i>jimigu</i>	‘trace’
<i>tʂuats</i>	‘table’ (< Ch.)	<i>tʂhoŋ-tha</i>	‘aggressive’ (< Ch.)
<i>tʂhuen</i>	‘tread on’ (< Ch.)	<i>ʂuaq</i>	‘moonlight’
<i>ju-ʂpul</i>	‘fist’	<i>tʂueχ</i>	‘have the mumps’
<i>tʂhəʂ</i>	‘spider’	<i>hak</i>	‘exit (v.)’

Phonemically, consonant clusters are formed by /ʂ/ followed by /p, t, k, q, tɕ, b, d, g, m, dz/, /x/ followed by /k, s, tɕ, ʂ, tʂ, ʈ, l, z, dz, z, dz/, or /χ/ followed by /q, s, ʂ, tʂ, ʈ, l, d, z, n, dz, ŋ, z, dz/. Phonetically the situation is more varied, as /ʂ/ becomes [s] before /t/ and /d/, and becomes [ç] before /pi/, /pe/, /bi/, /tɕ/ and /dz/,¹² and the preinitials all become voiced before voiced initials. Following are examples of the various consonant clusters in initial position.

<i>mi:-xkam</i>	‘eyebrow’	<i>χsu</i>	‘living, to be alive’
<i>sta</i>	‘entrust to’	<i>χʂə</i>	‘manure’
<i>xsə</i>	‘new’	<i>χtʂu</i>	‘six’
<i>xtʂu</i>	‘sweat’	<i>χʈu</i>	‘hawk’
<i>xtʂap</i>	‘pitch dark’	<i>χʈate</i>	‘wave’
<i>xtɕepi</i>	‘knife’	<i>zbu</i>	‘drum’
<i>xʂu</i>	‘barking deer’	<i>zgue</i>	‘fox’
<i>xʈiex-buz</i>	‘loess soil’	<i>zmu</i>	‘corpse’
<i>zdu</i>	‘deer’	<i>zdzi</i>	‘disease’
<i>ʂkuə</i>	‘thief’	<i>ʌdua</i>	‘hammer (n.)’
<i>ʂpa</i>	‘sorghum’	<i>ʌlu</i>	‘stone’
<i>ʂqu</i>	‘boil’	<i>ʌnəi</i>	‘kind of wild goat’

<i>ʂqa-n̩i</i>	‘dice’	<i>ɤzu</i>	‘chisel (n.)’
<i>ɣlu</i>	‘roll (v.)’	<i>ɤdzəs</i>	‘toenail’
<i>ɣzə</i>	‘hot (peppery); numb’	<i>ɤn̩is</i>	‘spring (of water)’
<i>ɣzɛm</i>	‘rice gruel, congee’	<i>ɤpies</i>	‘noodle’
<i>ɣqu</i>	‘gold’	<i>ɤtɕi:mi</i>	‘heart’
<i>ɣdzə</i>	‘enough’	<i>zbie</i>	‘soak (barley to make wine)’

Examples of some clusters in final position:

<i>tʂhexʈ</i>	‘sip (vt.)’	<i>dzactɕ</i>	‘laugh (v.)’
<i>wəχɕ</i>	‘horse dung’	<i>laxɕ</i>	‘palm (of hand)’
<i>ləɣz</i>	‘book’	<i>əxtɕ</i>	‘shade (vt.)’
<i>əɣl</i>	‘upright’		

2.2. Vowels

2.2.1. The basic inventory

There are eight vowel positions, seven of which show a phonemic contrast in length. Table 3 gives the forms for all the Qiang vowels:

Table 3. The Qiang vowel inventory

	front	mid	back
high	i, i: y, y:		u, u:
mid	e, e:	ə	o, o:
low	a, a:		ɑ, ɑ:

The functional loads of the /u/-/o/ contrast and the /i/-/e/ contrast are not very great: in many cases /o/ and /u/ are interchangeable, and /i/ and /e/ are interchangeable. Aside from this, /o/ can also be pronounced [ɔ], and /e/ is often pronounced [ɛ]. The length contrast in some cases is lexical, but in many cases it is grammatical, reflecting a collapsing of a lexical item and a following classifier or locative postposition, or reflecting the prospective aspect marking, as in the following examples:

- (2.2) a. *the* ‘that’ + *ze* (CL) > *the:* 3sg pronoun
 b. *tɕa* ‘where’ + *la* (LOC) > *tɕa:* ‘where’

- c. *zdzyta* ‘Chengdu’ + *la* (LOC) > *zdzyta:* ‘in/at Chengdu’
 d. *qəpatʂ* ‘head’ + *la* (LOC) > *qəpatʂa:* ‘at the head’
 e. *kə* ‘to go’ + *a:* (PRS) > *ka:* ‘will go’

There is also nasalization of some word-initial high vowels, such as in the second person singular pronoun /ʔũ/, but this may be related to what Matisoff (1975) has called rhinoglottophilia, the spontaneous nasalization of vowels when they are preceded by a glottal segment (see also the affirmative reply [ʔəhə̃], §4.3.5.3).¹³

Following are examples of the vowel contrasts in open syllables:

<i>pi</i>	‘pen, writing brush’	<i>ba</i>	‘old’
<i>pe</i>	‘snow’	<i>ba</i>	‘big’
<i>paha</i>	‘straw’	<i>ba:</i>	‘cloth’
<i>pə</i>	‘buy’	<i>khəsta</i>	‘husband’s mother’
<i>pa</i>	‘bundle (CL)’	<i>baha</i>	‘remote’
<i>po</i>	‘thick (e.g. thread)’	<i>zdzyta:</i>	‘in/at Chengdu’
<i>pu</i>	‘pint, 1/10 peck’	<i>tʂo</i>	‘ten fen (cents)’
<i>mi</i>	‘human being’	<i>dzo:</i>	‘chin’
<i>mi:</i>	‘eye’	<i>ku-tha</i>	‘hire, to employ’
<i>phi-phi</i>	‘dig’	<i>ku:</i>	‘elder brother’
<i>se</i>	‘sprinkle (vt.)’	<i>gu</i>	‘able to fit in’
<i>sə</i>	‘day; wood’	<i>gu:</i>	‘plow-share’

Examples of some of the vowels in closed syllables:

<i>phiʂ</i>	‘white’	<i>buz me:^l</i>	‘drizzle’
<i>fen</i>	‘powder’ (< Ch.)	<i>phoʂ</i>	‘vulva’
<i>dam</i>	‘forget’	<i>baq</i>	‘scarf’
<i>bəl</i>	‘maggot’		

2.2.2. *Diphthongs and triphthongs*

Aside from the monophthongs listed above, there are fourteen native diphthongs (/ia, iə, ie, ye, eu, əu, ei, əi, oi, uə, ua, uə, ue, ui/) and one native triphthong (/uəi/). Another diphthong, /ya/, only appears as a result of person marking, as in /teya/ ‘I carry’, from /teye/ + the first

person suffix /-a/ (when /a/ is added to a root ending in /-e/, /-i/, or /-y/, the resulting form is generally /-a/; see §4.3.2). There is also a long-vowel form of this diphthong (/tɕya:/), which appears only in the prospective aspect, as the prospective aspect marker is the suffix /-a:/ and is subject to the same assimilatory process (see §4.3.4). Among the native diphthongs there are both on-glides and off-glides. Some forms also show length and r-coloring distinctions (see below, §2.2.3). Aside from these native forms, there are two off-glide diphthongs (/ai/, /au/) and two triphthongs (/uai/, /iau/) that appear only in Chinese loan words (see examples below). In theory, all of the native diphthongs should be able to appear in both open and closed syllables, as originally, before the coalescence of two syllables into one that gave rise to the consonant finals, all were open syllables, but no unmarked lexical examples of /əi, oi, ye, eu, ui/ in closed syllables have been found. Even so, for those diphthongs where there are no lexicalized closed syllables, closed syllables could be formed by the addition of certain grammatical morphemes, such as the agentive nominalizer /-m/, the instrumental nominalizer /-s/, the comparative standard marker /-s/, and the genitive marker /-tɕ/. Following are examples of each type of diphthong and triphthong.

Examples of the native diphthongs and triphthong in open syllables:

<i>mia-pi</i>	‘eyelid’	<i>ɸua</i>	‘outside’
<i>phie</i>	‘plant (vt.)’	<i>ɸua</i>	‘left’
<i>ei-ŋi</i>	‘next year’	<i>kuə ʂa</i>	‘have diarrhea’
<i>iʂpəi</i>	‘mother’s brother’s wife’	<i>gʉe-ŋi</i>	‘near’
<i>doŋoi</i>	‘call to, summon (vt.)’	<i>gʉeˀ</i>	‘army’
<i>tɕye</i>	‘hoe (n.)’	<i>gʉeˀˀ</i>	‘road’
<i>tɕəu</i>	‘home’	<i>dza:khui</i>	‘afternoon’
<i>(ɕtɕy) heu</i>	‘repay (debt)’	<i>ʂkuəi</i>	‘mountain goat’
<i>phia-que</i>	‘grey’		

Examples of the native diphthongs in closed syllables:

<i>ji-miaq</i>	‘thumb’	<i>ʂuaq</i>	‘moonlight’
<i>pies</i>	‘meat’	<i>duakɩ</i>	‘curved knife’
<i>stuəʂ</i>	‘pot luck meal’	<i>tuəs</i>	‘carrying pole’
<i>təkhuez</i>	‘anger (vt.)’		

Examples of diphthongs and triphthongs due to Chinese borrowings:

<i>phai</i>	‘playing cards’	<i>kuai-tha</i>	‘blame (vt.)’
<i>tcəu-tsə</i>	‘dumplings’	<i>phiau-tsə</i>	‘paper money’

2.2.3. *R-coloring*

An additional aspect of the vowel system is r-coloring, which is a retroflexion of the tongue at the end of the vowel. At least four of the basic vowels show a contrast in lexical items (i, e, ə, a),¹⁴ and all vowels can take r-coloring when they are the final vowel of a verb with first person plural marking (which is /-ʰ/; see §4.3.2). This r-coloring is often lost in rapid speech, and it seems that it is being lost completely among the younger people, as there is variation and uncertainty about its use. The r-coloring also often appears on words followed by the expression meaning ‘all’. This meaning is variously expressed as [wu], [le-wu], [yle-wu], [leʰwu], [-eʰwu], and [-ʰwu]. In the case of the latter form, the final vowel of the previous word becomes r-colored, e.g.:

- (2.3) a. *tsa-χsəʰwu* [this:one-few (< χsə):all] ‘all these’
 b. *ɑ-səʰwu* [one-day (< ɑ-sə):all] ‘all day’
 c. *ɑ-jəʰwu* [one-night (< ɑ-jə):all] ‘all night’
 d. *miʰwu* [person (< mi):all] ‘all the people’

While the r-coloring is used to represent Chinese final /-ʰ/, /-n/ or /-ŋ/ in nativizations of some Chinese loan words (e.g., /feʰ/ ‘cent’ < Chinese *fēn*; /thiukəʰ/ ‘spoon’ < Chinese *tiáogēng*), and may in some cases be due to either the historical evolution of a post-initial retroflex segment (/ɹ/ or /ʎ/ e.g., *phri > phiʰ; see Huang 1992:154, 157) or to synchronic assimilation to a following retroflex consonant, it is not treated here as a consonantal phoneme, as it participates in the vowel harmony scheme (see §2.4.3). Following are some examples of contrasting r-colored and non-r-colored vowels, and long and short r-colored vowels.

<i>se</i>	‘sprinkle (vt.)’	<i>khəsta</i>	‘husband’s mother’
<i>seʰ fu</i>	‘mourning apparel’	<i>khəʰ</i>	‘saw (vt.)’
<i>se:ʰ-mujʉ</i>	‘mushroom’	<i>phi-phi</i>	‘dig’

<i>sə</i>	‘day; wood’	<i>phiː-phiː</i>	‘rip (v.)’
<i>səːˀ</i>	‘willow tree’	<i>pauxuaˀ</i>	‘shavings’
(<i>səl</i>	‘face south’)15	<i>guəˀ</i>	‘army’
<i>weˀ</i>	‘reduce’	<i>guəːˀ</i>	‘road’
<i>we</i>	‘exist/be at’		

Examples in closed syllables:

<i>kheˀx</i>	‘comb’	<i>fiə-khəˀp</i>	‘go blind’
<i>paˀχ</i>	‘claw’	<i>dzy-gəˀm</i>	‘doorkeeper’
<i>zə-teˀm</i>	‘earthquake’	<i>ɛəˀp</i>	‘Han person’
<i>peˀz</i>	‘breed, raise (vt.)’		

2.2.4. Morphologically derived vowel forms

The following are vowels and diphthongs that only appear in morphologically derived verb forms:

<i>aːˀ</i>	<i>tʂaːˀ</i>	(< <i>tʂe</i>)	‘look (PRS:1pl)’
<i>ɑːˀ</i>	<i>pɑːˀ</i>	(< <i>pə</i>)	‘buy (PRS:1pl)’
<i>uˀ</i>	<i>qhuˀ</i>	(< <i>qhu</i>)	‘fire gun (1pl)’
<i>yˀ</i>	<i>tɕyˀ</i>	(< <i>tɕy</i>)	‘bring/carry (1pl)’
<i>ieˀ</i>	<i>phieˀ</i>	(< <i>phie</i>)	‘till land (1pl)’
<i>ia:</i>	<i>phia:</i>	(< <i>phie</i>)	‘till land (PRS:1sg)’
<i>iaːˀ</i>	<i>phiaːˀ</i>	(< <i>phie</i>)	‘till land (PRS:1pl)’
<i>uəˀ</i>	<i>guəˀ</i>	(< <i>guə</i>)	‘put on clothes (1pl)’
<i>ua:</i>	<i>gua</i>	(< <i>guə</i>)	‘put on clothes (PRS:1sg)’
<i>uaːˀ</i>	<i>guaːˀ</i>	(< <i>guə</i>)	‘put on clothes (PRS:1pl)’
<i>yeˀ</i>	<i>tɕhyeˀ</i>	(< <i>tɕhye</i>)	‘pen livestock (1pl)’
<i>ya</i>	<i>tɕhya</i>	(< <i>tɕhye</i>)	‘pen livestock (1sg)’
<i>ya:</i>	<i>tɕhya:</i>	(< <i>tɕhye</i>)	‘pen livestock (PRS:1sg)’
<i>yaːˀ</i>	<i>tɕhyaːˀ</i>	(< <i>tɕhye</i>)	‘pen livestock (PRS:1pl)’
<i>ua:</i>	<i>stua:</i>	(< <i>stue</i>)	‘pull up weeds (PRS:1sg)’
<i>uaːˀ</i>	<i>stuaːˀ</i>	(< <i>stue</i>)	‘pull up weeds (PRS:1pl)’

2.3. The syllable canon

The coalescence of syllables resulting in the creation of new finals and clusters (discussed in §2.1) has affected the syllable canon, which is given in Figure 1:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} (C) & (C_1) & (V) & V & (V) & (C) & (C_f) \\ [fric] & [glide] & & [glide] & [fric] & & \end{array}$$

Figure 1. The Qiang syllable canon

The minimum syllable type is a single vowel, such as one of the forms for the word for ‘one’: /a/. While a glottal stop often appears at the beginning of a syllable with no other consonant initial, there is no phonemic difference between glottal stop onset and vocalic onset.¹⁶ Glottal stops also often appear at the end of syllables with short vowels and no final consonant, but again, this is not phonemic. The initial consonant of the syllable may be any of the consonants listed in Table 2, but if there is a pre-initial consonant (i.e. the first consonant of a cluster), it must be a fricative.¹⁷ As the final consonant clusters derive from initial clusters, the same restriction applies: the first consonant of the two must be a fricative.¹⁸ Most of the combinations of the optional items given in parentheses in Figure 1 are possible forms in Qiang. I have not yet found an example where there is an off-glide and a following consonant cluster, though there is nothing in principle that would make this an impossible combination. Following are the possible syllable types and examples (“V” here is used for both full vowels and on/off glides within a single syllable):

V	<i>a</i>	‘one’	CVVC	<i>duap</i>	‘thigh’
VV	<i>au</i>	‘one pile’	CCV	<i>xtʂe</i>	‘louse’
VC	<i>as</i>	‘one day’	CCVV	<i>ʂkue</i>	‘roast’
VCC	<i>əχʂ</i>	‘tight’	CCVVV	<i>ʂkuəi</i>	‘mt. goat’
CV	<i>pə</i>	‘buy’	CCVC	<i>ʂpəl</i>	‘kidney’
CVV	<i>khuə</i>	‘dog’	CCVCC	<i>ʂpəχs</i>	‘Chibusu’
CVVV	<i>kuai-tha</i>	‘strange’	CCVVC	<i>ʂquap</i>	‘quiet’
CVC	<i>paq</i>	‘interest’	CCVVCC	<i>ɕpiexʔ</i>	‘scar’
CVCC	<i>bəχʂ</i>	‘honey’			

The VC and VCC forms are generally formed from a single vowel form, such as the number ‘one’ or the ‘inner-directed’ directional prefix (§4.3.3), plus a reduced form of a classifier or verb, respectively.

The word in Qiang is defined on phonological grounds, as a free form with pauses at both ends within which the phonological processes discussed in §2.4 operate. It may include more than one grammatical word, such as when a directional verb follows a main verb and forms one phonological word with it. While very often bimorphemic, the word tends to reduce to a single syllable in the case of unmodified nouns and verbs. Huang (1998:64) counted 836 basic words, and found 444 were monosyllabic and 392 were bisyllabic or polysyllabic. Even when various derivational and relational affixes have been added the root may still be monosyllabic due to processes of syllable weakening and vowel dropping (see §2.4 below, and Huang 1998).¹⁹ There is no sense of ‘word’ in the Qiang language (what we would call the sociological word), only /sa/ ‘sentence’. Other than the word, we recognize the noun phrase, the verb complex, the clause, and the complex sentence as levels of grammatical structure.

2.4. Phonological processes

In this section we will discuss the weakening of initial consonants, stress, vowel harmony and epenthesis. These phonological processes occur within a unit that can be defined as the phonological word.

2.4.1. Initial weakening

Several types of initial consonant undergo a form of weakening when, due to derivation, they appear in non-word-initial position, particularly in non-syllable-initial position. This occurs both in compounds and when the directional prefix is added to verb roots. Following are some examples (see also Huang 1998; see §2.4.2 on the effects of the change in stress on the vowels):

- (2.4) ph > φ ~ f:
 a. ə- DIR + phə ‘blow’ > əφ ‘blow (imperative)’

- b. *sə* ‘tree’ + *phə* ‘forest’ > *səf* ‘tree/shrub’
 c. *də-* DIR + *phu* ‘escape’ > *duφu* ‘escaped (perf.)’

(2.5) *kh* > *x*:

- a. *meːʰ* ‘rain’ + *khəʰ* ‘fall (of frost)’ > *meːx* ‘frost (n.)’
 b. *nə-* DIR + *khəʰte* ‘hit (people)’ > *nəxte* ‘hit (perf.)’

(2.6) *dz* > *z*:

- ə-* DIR + *dzuə* ‘sit’ > *əzuə* ‘sit (imperative)’

(2.7) *dz* > *l*:²⁰

- ma-* NEG + *dzə* ‘able’ > *ma-l* ‘not able’

(2.8) *b* > *w*:

- a. *tə-* DIR + *bə* ‘pile’ > *təw* ‘piled (perf.)’
 b. *tə-* DIR + *ba* ‘big’ > *təwa* ‘become big’

When an aspirated initial becomes the final of a preceding syllable, losing its own vowel, it also generally loses its aspiration. For example, when the word /tchə/ ‘drink, eat (wet foods)’ takes a directional prefix (as in an imperative), it becomes [sətɕ].

Comparing the Ronghong forms with those of some of the more conservative Qiang dialects, such as the Mawo dialect (Sun 1981a), we can see that a similar type of weakening has occurred historically to preinitial consonants in Ronghong. Compare the following Ronghong and Mawo dialect forms.

(2.9) <u>Ronghong</u>	<u>Mawo</u>	<u>Gloss</u>
<i>xsə</i>	<i>khsi</i>	‘god’
<i>xsə</i>	<i>khsə</i>	‘new’
<i>xʂuctɕ</i>	<i>khɕust</i>	‘hear/listen’
<i>χsutu</i>	<i>qhsu</i>	‘jump’
<i>χsa</i>	<i>qhsa</i>	‘know/understand’
<i>χʂə</i>	<i>qhʂə</i>	‘manure’
<i>yzə</i>	<i>gzə</i>	‘government official’
<i>yzəifa</i>	<i>gziguaʰ</i>	‘wing’
<i>yzə</i>	<i>gzə</i>	‘four’

2.4.2. *Stress and its effects*

Intonation is usually even in a clause, with no particular peaks on any one part of the clause. Stress is used for emphasis in, for example, imperative constructions, where the prefix and sometimes the root as well are stressed, but stress does not seem to be used for emphatic (focal) contrast, e.g. in English *I came YESTERDAY* with phonetic stress on *yesterday*, marking it as the focus of the assertion. To have emphatic focus on the verb in Qiang (e.g. the equivalent of English *I BOUGHT this, I didn't MAKE it*), it is necessary to use a cleft construction (see §5.2).

Within individual words, in most cases, the stress is on a single vowel, with the other vowels being to different degrees unstressed. Changes in stress often occur when syllables form compounds, or when grammatical morphemes are added to root forms. In cases where the unstressed vowel is any vowel other than /i/ or /e/, that vowel may be reduced to [ə], devoiced, or dropped altogether. Following are some examples (stress is marked by an acute accent mark in these examples):

- (2.10) a. *fi*a- DIR + *tʃ*ha ‘deep’ + -z CAUS > *fi*átʃhəz ‘deepen’
 b. *tə*- DIR + *watsi* ‘short’ > *təw*átsi ‘become short’
 c. *tə*a- CON + *watsi* ‘short’ > *tə*áwətsi ‘still short’

It seems in the examples of /watsi/ ‘short’ given in (2.10b-c) that there is a three-way pattern of stress and vowel form: without any prefix, the first vowel of the root is [a], with an unstressed prefix it is [ə], and with a stressed prefix, it is [ə].

In general there is a trochaic pattern of stress,²¹ which leads to the loss of second syllables in bisyllabic words, but the stress of a particular derived form depends on the number and type of syllables that appear in the particular word, and this effects the realization of the vowels. Compare the following two examples:

- (2.11) a. *fi*á-mə-təí-xtʃápə-tə
 DIR-NEG-CON-dark-GEN
 ‘before it got dark’
 b. *fi*á-xtʃəp-ŋike
 DIR-dark-after
 ‘after it got dark’

In (2.11a), there is stress on the continuative aspect prefix (as well as the directional prefix), even though it breaks the usual strong-weak stress pattern, as this prefix is always stressed, and on the root vowel, so the root vowel is realized as [ɑ], whereas in the example in (2.11b), the stress is only on the directional prefix, and so the root vowel reduces to [ə].

In cases where the final vowel of a compound or prefixed verb is /u/ or /uə/, unstressing/devoicing often gives a rounded quality to the preceding syllable (e.g. the prefix). Following are some examples of words where this happens (I do not have a way to mark the rounding, but the initial syllables in the forms on the right are more rounded than they would be in isolation):

- (2.12) a. *a* ‘one’ + *guə* ‘basket’ > *agʊə* ‘one basketfull’
 b. *mə-* NEG + *ŋuə* COP > *maŋʊə* ‘is not’
 c. *ə-* DIR + *dzuə* ‘sit’ > *əzʊə* ‘sit! (imperative)’
 d. *a* ‘one’ + *tu* ‘span’ > *atʊ* ‘one handspan’

If the final is /ə/, then it is simply dropped. We saw several examples of this just above, in §2.4.1. Following are some other examples:

- (2.13) a. *ə-* DIR + *dzə* ‘eat’ > *əz* ‘eat! (imperative)’
 b. *sə-* DIR + *tchə* ‘drink’ > *sətɕ* ‘drink! (imp.)’
 c. *bə* ‘bee’ + *χʂə* ‘manure’ > *bəχʂ* ‘honey’
 d. *tsuə* ‘water’ + *zə* ‘ox’ > *tsuəzɕ* ‘water buffalo’

In some cases, where the final vowel of a bimorphemic compound that would otherwise be dropped becomes a non-final vowel due to the addition of a third syllable, the vowel takes on a full, harmonized form, e.g. [pəs] ‘today’ (< pə-sə), but [pəsʊ-qua] ‘this morning’.

This dropping of an unstressed final vowel is a regular phonological process, and has led to the total loss of the final vowel in some cases (i.e. it has lexicalized), e.g. there are two forms [pək] ‘arrive there’ and [pəl] ‘arrive here’. These are seen as indivisible lexical items by many Qiang speakers, yet they clearly derive from the verb /pə/ ‘arrive’ plus the deictic motion verbs /kə/ ‘go’ and [lu ~ lə] ‘come’ respectively.

There is also a loss of an unstressed vowel when a prefix is added to forms whose base form is a reduplicated form. E.g.:

- (2.14) a. *nə*- DIR + *ləla* ‘exchange’ > *nəlla* ‘exchanged’
 b. *tə*- DIR + *tʂhətʂhə* ‘weigh’ > *tətʂtʂhə* ‘weighed’

Another type of vowel loss often occurs in certain combinations of demonstrative, number, and classifier (e.g. [tsou] < tse-o-u (this-one-CL) ‘this (child)’ or definite marker, number and classifier (e.g. /tou/ < /te-o-u/ (DEF-one-CL) ‘the (child)’). The word [tsai] ‘now’ is derived from such a coalescence: /tse-a-i/ (this-one-time).

2.4.3. Vowel harmony

In general, the pattern of vowel harmony is for the vowel of the first syllable of a compound or prefix + root combination to harmonize with the vowel of the second syllable or root. This is most common when the first vowel is /ə/. The harmony pattern is generally roughly in terms of the height of the vowel: before /o/ or /u/ the first vowel becomes [o] or [u], before /i/ or /e/ the first vowel becomes [i] or [e], before /a/ and /uə/ the first vowel becomes [a]. In cases where the first vowel is /a/ and the second vowel is /i/, then the first vowel often changes to [a]. Following are some examples (See also the examples of the kinship prefix in §3.1.1.1 and the directional prefixes in §4.3.3):

- (2.15) a. *wə* ‘bird’ + *ʂpu* ‘flock’ > *wuʂpu* ‘(wild) pigeon’
 b. *mə* ‘fire’ + *-xu* ‘smoke’ > *muxu* ‘smoke’
 c. *phə* ‘forest’ + *xʂu* ‘roe deer’ > *phuxʂu* ‘wild animal’
 d. *ə*- DIR + *pi* ‘uncle’ > *ipi* ‘uncle’
 e. *ə*- DIR + *tse* ‘look at’ > *itse* ‘saw’
 f. *ha*- ‘ten’ + *tʂi* ‘one’²² > *hatʂi* ‘eleven’
 g. *ji* ‘two’ + *-su* ‘ten’ > *jusu* ‘twenty’

R-coloring is also involved in vowel harmony: if the second syllable of a compound or prefix + root form has r-coloring, in many cases the first syllable also takes on r-coloring. E.g.:

- (2.16) a. *ɤua* ‘five’ + *kheʰ* ‘hundred’ > *ɤuaʰ-kheʰ* ‘five hundred’²³
 b. *me* ‘not’ + *weʰ* ‘reduce’ > *meʰ-weʰ* ‘unceasingly’

This shows that r-coloring is feature of the vowel, and so is not a consonant phoneme (see §2.2.3).

There are also cases where the vowel harmony works in the opposite fashion, that is, the vowel of the second (or third) syllable harmonizes with the vowel of the preceding syllable, as in the following examples involving loan words from Chinese that take the Qiang verb /pə/ ‘to do’ (see §3.1.1 on loan words):

- (2.17) a. Chinese *zhàogù* + Qiang *pə* ‘to do’ > *tʂauku-pu* ‘take care of’
 b. Chinese *wākǔ* + Qiang *pə* ‘to do’ > *kuakhu-pu* ‘be sarcastic of’

2.4.4. Epenthetic vowels

While there are many consonant clusters in Qiang, there are restrictions on the type of clusters allowed by the syllable canon. When there is a collocation of consonants due to derivation or compounding that results in a cluster of consonants not allowed by the canon, an epenthetic vowel (/ə/) is inserted to break up the cluster. Following are some examples:

- (2.18) a. *zdzi-tʂhop-əm* [illness-cure-NOM (< -m)] ‘doctor’
 b. *stuaha-bəl-əm* [rice, food-do-NOM (< -m)] ‘cook (n.)’
 c. *bəl-əs-je* [do-NOM (< -s)-good to eat] ‘advantageous’
 d. *bəl-əz-mo-ku* [do-CAUS (< -z)-NEG-allow] ‘hinder’
 e. *ŋiq-əʂ* [black-too (< -ʂ)] ‘too black’

2.4.5. Assimilation

In Section 2.1 it was mentioned that there is assimilation of the first consonant of a cluster in terms of voicing and place of articulation to that of the second consonant of the cluster, with the phonemically posited /ʃ/ becoming [s] before /t/ and /d/, and [ç] before /pi/, /pe/, /bi/, /tɕ/ and /dz/, and all the preinitials becoming voiced before voiced initials. Aside from this we also find assimilation of /l/ to [n] when it follows a nasal in rapid speech, as in [themne], an alternate form of the 3pl pronoun [themle], in several tokens of the word [le⁴wu] ‘all’ in the Texts pronounced as [ne⁴wu] when it followed [-han] ‘kind’ (e.g.

T5:54), and in several tokens of the definite marker /le/ in the Texts which were pronounced [ne], e.g. one token of [jin-ne:] (< /jin-le:/) ‘monk’s robe’ in “The Story of a Lazy Man” (T5:163). Vowel harmony, both in the position of articulation and the retroflexion of the vowel, discussed in Section 2.4.3, is also a kind of assimilation.

2.4.6. Free variation

Quite a number of lexical items in Qiang allow variation of the preinitial, initial, vowel, or final consonant. Examples:

<i>phis</i> ~ <i>phiχ</i> ~ <i>phi</i>	‘white’	<i>ŋiq</i> ~ <i>ŋix</i>	‘black’
<i>muxu</i> ~ <i>muφu</i>	‘smoke’	<i>fut</i> ~ <i>futs</i>	‘incense’
<i>ʂquatʂ</i> ~ <i>χquatʂ</i>	‘steal’	<i>xupa</i> ~ <i>fupa</i>	‘fur’
<i>quət</i> ~ <i>quətɕ</i>	‘cover’	<i>ʂqu</i> ~ <i>χqu</i>	‘mouth’
<i>khesu</i> ~ <i>khe’su</i>	‘eighty’		

The most common of these is the /ʂ/-/χ/ variation. There are also cases where there is variation not in the form of the final, but in whether there is a final or not, or whether there are two syllables or one, as in the following:

<i>mutu</i> ~ <i>mutup</i>	‘sky’	<i>qha</i> ~ <i>qhaq</i>	‘bitter’	<i>kap</i> ~ <i>kapətʂ</i>	‘orphan’
----------------------------	-------	--------------------------	----------	----------------------------	----------

Chapter 3

The noun phrase

In Section 3.1 we discuss the syntax of the noun phrase and certain individual elements of the noun phrase, plus modifiers of nouns within the noun phrase. In Section 3.2 we discuss the various roles the noun phrase can have in the clause and the different types of marking it takes when it has those roles.

3.1. Structure

The structure of the noun phrase is generally head-initial, though a genitive phrase or relative clause (or both) precedes the head noun. The maximum structure of a simple noun phrase is as in Figure 2:

GEN phrase + Rel. clause + **Noun** + ADJ + DEM/DEF + (NUM + CL)/PL

Figure 2. The structure of the Qiang noun phrase

Any combination of the above elements is possible, as long as they follow the order given above, though a numeral must be followed by a classifier. Classifiers also occur with demonstratives alone (i.e. without numerals). A demonstrative plus classifier expression, or an adjective plus (in)definite marking and classifier, or even (in)definite marking plus classifier alone, can be used alone as a noun phrase. Some items can be doubled, such as the adjective (no more than two can appear together²⁴). When more than one adjective appears in a noun phrase, the relative order of the adjectives in terms of type of adjective (value, shape, quality, age, or color; see Dixon 1982) is the mirror image of that in English (i.e. HEAD^{color}^{shape}^{age}^{quality}^{value}), but the same if one thinks in terms of order relative to the head. Compare the examples in (3.1a-j).

- (3.1) a. *kuatʂa lapa ba*
bowl flowery big
'big colorful bowl'
- b. *fa phiʂ dzə*
clothing white long
'long white clothing'
- c. *fa phiʂ ba*
clothing white old
'old white clothing'
- d. *fa dzə ba*
clothing long old
'old long clothing'
- e. *mianpau phiʂ matʂa*
bread white soft
'soft white bread'
- f. *tʂhetsə xsə na*
car new good
'good new car'
- g. *xtʂepi dzə na*
knife long good
'nice long knife'
- h. *səf po ti-wi*
tree thick DIR-tall
'tall thick tree'
- i. *stei xsə tse*
axe new sharp
'sharp new axe'
- j. *mi xsə tshimpe*
person new smart
'smart young person'

Modification of a noun by an adjective phrase can be done by either a non-nominalized post-head adjective, as in the examples in (3.1), or by a nominalized adjective in a pre-head relative clause structure. Whether a post-head adjective or a pre-head relative clause structure is used often depends on the complexity of the modifier: a complex modifier will appear in the pre-head relative clause structure, while the simple adjective will generally appear in the post-head position. Compare the following two examples:

- (3.2) a. *ctɕimi na-tɕ mi*
heart good-GEN person
'(a) good hearted person'
- b. *mi na*
person good
'(a) good person'

There is also a form where the head noun is followed by a nominalized adjective which is in apposition to the head, e.g. /mi ba-m/ [person big-NOM] 'a person, a big one' (see §4.2.3).

The noun phrase may also be followed by postpositions and/or the topic marker (see §3.2). Following are some examples of complex noun phrases (the noun phrases are in brackets for clarity):

- (3.3) [*nes lu-m spe thə xsə-zɪ*]-*wu*
 yesterday come-NOM Tibetan that three-CL-AGT
tʂhɛtsə-le: de-ctci-ji-tci.
 car-DEF:CL DIR-push-CSM-3pl
 ‘Those three Tibetans who came yesterday pushed the car away.’

- (3.4) [*qa pətsa-ŋi zə-pə-tɛ ba: ŋiq tsa*
 1sg just.now-ADV DIR-buy-GEN cloth black this
i-jə-tʂ]-ŋuəŋi qa ʔũ de-le ctcaq-lu-a.
 one-two-feet-TOP 1sg 2sg DIR-give heart-come-1sg
 ‘I want to give you these few feet of black cloth that I just bought.’

- (3.5) [*the:-tɛ-tciɪua ba the-zɪ*] *piena-la [zawa ba xsə-zɪ]*
 3sg-GEN-house old that-CL beside-LOC rock big three-CL
ʂə.
 exist
 ‘There are three big rocks beside that old house of his.’

- (3.6) [*tcile nəs i-pə-l-əm tuətʂy-le:*]
 1pl yesterday DIR-arrive-come-NOM younger.brother-DEF:CL
χumtʂi ŋuə.
 (name) COP
 ‘Our brother who returned yesterday was Xumtʂi.’

This last example has both a genitive phrase (though one not marked by the genitive postposition) and relative clause preceding the head noun.

In some instances, an adverbial noun phrase is formed from a combination of a demonstrative and a numeral plus classifier or measure word. In these cases it is as if the demonstrative pronoun precedes the head, though it is the normal order for DEM + (NUM)-CL.²⁵

- (3.7) a. *tse* ‘this’ + *a* ‘one’ + *pə* ‘year’ > *tsəp* ‘this year’
 b. *the* ‘that’ + *a* ‘one’ + *sə* ‘day’ > *thas* ‘that day’

c. *tse* ‘this’ + *a* ‘one’ + *i* ‘time’ > *tsai* ‘now’

It is also possible to have noun phrases in apposition to pronouns or other types of noun phrases where they specify the nature of the pronoun or first noun phrase, as in the following examples:

- (3.8) a. *tɕile sətʃhuan mi* b. *tɕile leyz su-m*
 1pl Sichuan people 1pl book learn/teach-NOM
 ‘we/us Sichuan people’ ‘we/us scholars/teachers’

- (3.9) *zmətʃi-le:* *ŋa zmətʃi-sətsim jautsan*
 emperor-DEF:CL COM emperor-wife man.eating.devil
dzemi sə-l . . . (T6:298-300)
 (name) DIR-look
 ‘The emperor and his wife, the man-eating devil Dzemi, boked...’

Kinship terms used with personal names follow this pattern as well (unlike the order found in Chinese), e.g. [upu-χumtʃi] ‘Uncle Xumtʃi’.

Noun phrases can be omitted if they are recoverable from the context. There is no system for distinguishing more important third person referents from less important ones, such as in an obviative/proximate system; there is only the topic/non-topic contrast (see §3.2.1), the person marking (see §4.3.2), and the definite/indefinite contrast (see §3.1.4). (See also the discussion of the pronoun /qupu/ in §3.1.2, below for something of an exception to this statement).

3.1.1. *The noun*

The noun in Qiang may be defined as a free form that can be followed by an (in)definite marker²⁶ and a numeral-classifier phrase or number marking, and is generally not predicative without the use of a copula. Some nouns can also take gender and diminutive marking. When acting as a noun phrase, they can be followed by the relational morphemes that are introduced in Section 3.2, and can appear as the complement of a copula clause. Aside from being the head of a noun phrase, nouns can be used to modify other nouns directly (appearing immediately before the modified noun) or in a genitive phrase (also pre-head, with or

without a genitive postposition). There does not seem to be any semantic restriction on the class of nouns (e.g. only words with concrete reference). In terms of structure, a noun may be as simple as a single monosyllable, or it may be a complex construction consisting of two nouns, one modifying the other, two tightly coordinated nouns, a nominalized verb, a noun plus classifier, or a noun plus verb combination.

As in all Sino-Tibetan languages, in the case of compound nouns where one noun modifies the other, the modifying noun must always precede the modified noun, as in (3.10):

- | | |
|--|--|
| (3.10) a. <i>sə-kuatʃa</i>
wood-bowl
'wooden bowl' | b. <i>bu-zdə</i>
plank-ladder
'plank ladder' |
| c. <i>pie-nəs</i>
pig-bed
'pig-pen' | d. <i>bə-xʃ</i>
bee-manure
'honey' |

In the case of tightly coordinated nouns, no mark of coordination is used, and the two nouns simply appear one after the other, as in (3.11):

- | | |
|--|--|
| (3.11) a. <i>ep-ew</i>
father-mother
'parents' | b. <i>tu-tuwa</i>
yng.brother-older.brother
'brothers' |
|--|--|

Lexicalized deverbal nouns are formed using one of two types of marking. The nominalizing suffix /-s/ is used to form instrumental, locative, and object nouns out of verbs:

- | | | | | | | |
|---------------------|-------------|------|-----|---|----------------|------------|
| (3.12) a. <i>nə</i> | 'sleep' | + -s | NOM | > | <i>nəs</i> | 'bed' |
| b. <i>guə</i> | 'wear' | + -s | NOM | > | <i>guəs</i> | 'clothing' |
| c. <i>dzə</i> | 'eat' | + -s | NOM | > | <i>dzəs</i> | 'grain' |
| d. <i>suəsua</i> | 'calculate' | + -s | NOM | > | <i>suəsuas</i> | 'abacus' |

In some cases a noun + verb combination is nominalized using the /-s/ suffix to form an instrumental noun phrase:

tongs', from 'firewood' + 'pick up with chopsticks', but often they involve a verb that is uniquely used for the action involving that noun, and it isn't clear whether the noun was formed from a monosyllabic noun plus the verb, or the verb was formed from part of the original disyllabic noun. Most of the examples are natural phenomena.²⁷ Following are some examples:

- (3.16) a. *me'x* 'frost' < *me:'* 'rain' + *khe'* 'fall (of frost)'
 b. *zdəqhu* 'fog' < *zdə* 'cloud' + *qhu* 'descend (clouds)'
 c. *tsəpa* 'ice' < *tsə* 'water' + *pa* 'form (of ice)'
 d. *me'gy* 'thunder' < *me:'* 'rain' + *gy* 'thunder (v.)'
 e. *ciʃue* 'moon' < *ci* 'moon' + *ʃue* 'bright'²⁸
 f. *la(m)pa* 'flower' < *la(m)* 'flower' + *pa* 'to bloom'²⁹

In each case the verb can follow the combined noun plus verb form, e.g. /*tsəpa pə*/ 'to form ice', /*zdəqhu do-qhu*/ 'fog formed', /*lampə da-pa*/ 'flowers bloomed'.

There are many nouns which include an identifiable morpheme, but there is also an added final consonant relative to the usual form of the morpheme. This final consonant may be the result of compounding, though the rest of the original syllable has been lost, and so is no longer identifiable. In some cases, the form with the extra final consonant has the same or a very similar meaning to the plain form, but in some cases the meaning is quite different. The most common such finals are /-q/ and /-p/. The final /-q/ in many cases may be a remnant of /qə/ 'head'. The use of a morpheme meaning 'head' in forming nouns would parallel the use of *tóu* 'head' in Chinese, where it also sometimes changes the meaning of the root form and sometimes doesn't, e.g. *quán-tóu* [fist-head] 'fist', *chī-tóu* [eat-head] 'the quality of being good to eat'. The suffix /-p/, as suggested by James A. Matisoff (p.c., 1997), may derive from the common Tibeto-Burman suffix **-pa*. This is particularly likely in cases where the form with /-p/ refers to a type of person, as in (3.17a) and (3.17e), below. Following are more examples of both suffixes:

- (3.17) a. *təip* 'master' < *təi* 'house'
 b. *zəp* 'earth, ground' < *zə* 'ground, land'
 c. *mutup* 'sky' < *mutu* 'sky'
 d. *duap* 'thigh' < *dua* 'leg'

e.	<i>kə'p</i>	'Han person'	< <i>kə'</i>	'Han person'
f.	<i>məziq-pə</i>	'talk in sleep'	< <i>məzi</i>	'sleep'
g.	<i>ji-saq</i>	'finger' [hand-section]	< <i>sa</i>	'section, joint'
h.	<i>qhaq</i>	'bitter'	< <i>qha</i>	'bitter'
i.	<i>ctəcaq-lu</i>	'think of, want'	< <i>ctəi</i>	'heart'
j.	<i>şuaq</i>	'light'	< <i>şue</i>	'bright'

There may even be related sets that have the same root but differ in terms of the finals, such as /liaq/ 'penis' and /lieş/ 'sperm, semen', though I do not have enough evidence to be sure of this sort of connection.

Some nouns, particularly the names of some birds, are iconic with the sound the bird makes: /gugū/ 'pigeon', /kuput/ 'cuckoo bird', /çteictəaq/ 'magpie'. Another type of iconic noun is a sound that represents an action, such as in /mi: phəq-phəq-pə/ [eyes-*phəq-phəq*-do] 'to bat the eyes, blink'. This type is rather rare.

A large number of loan words are also used by the Qiang people. The majority of these loan words are from Chinese (the Southwestern Mandarin dialect), as there has been substantial contact with Chinese since at least the thirteenth century (Sun 1988), but there are also some loan words from Tibetan. There are in fact two or more layers of loans from Chinese, as there are older, harder to identify loans, such as /lup/ 'radish' (< Chinese *lúobo*) and /la/ 'wolf' (< Chinese *láng*), and newer, more transparent loans, such as /kuntşantan/ 'communist party' (< Chinese *gòngchǎndǎng*). As shown by Sun (1988), there are differences in the phonology and use between the old and the new loans.

The Tibetan loans are generally old loans, such as /sin/ (or /singi/) 'lion' (from Sanskrit, through Tibetan). This form is now being replaced by the Chinese loan /sətsə/ (< *shīzi*) in the speech of the younger Qiang speakers. Tibetan loans are somewhat more frequent in the Qiang spoken by the Tibetans of Heishui County. The loan words which appear in the Glossary are identified as being from Chinese or Tibetan. (See also Liu 1981 on the Tibetan loans).

When verbs (including stative verbs) are borrowed into Qiang, they are generally borrowed as nouns. In order to be used as verbs in Qiang, the suffix /-tha/ is added to monosyllabic borrowed verbs, and the verb /-pə/ 'to do' is added to polysyllabic borrowed verbs. Following are some examples:

(3.18) a.	<i>tuen-tha</i>	‘squat’	<	<i>dūn</i> (蹲)
b.	<i>ʂə-tha</i>	‘spend (money)’	<	<i>shǐ</i> (使)
c.	<i>thau-tha</i>	‘wash (rice)’	<	<i>táu</i> (淘)
d.	<i>χua-tha</i>	‘paint’	<	<i>hù</i> (畫)
e.	<i>cunŋian-pə</i>	‘train’	<	<i>xùnliàn</i> (訓練)
f.	<i>tetsui-pə</i>	‘offend’	<	<i>dézùi</i> (得罪)
g.	<i>phəiphən-pə</i>	‘criticize’	<	<i>pīpàn</i> (批判)
h.	<i>pethiau-pə</i>	‘chat’	<	<i>bǎitiáo</i> (擺條)

Even if the total phrase borrowed from Chinese involves more than one syllable, if the verbal part of it is monosyllabic, then /-tha/ is added, as in, for example, /phitchi fa-tha/ ‘to lose one’s temper’ (< Chinese *fā píqì* [emit temper]). In the case of verbs with the /-tha/ suffix, the borrowed verb, with the affix attached, is treated the same as a native verb, to the extent that it can take the directional prefixes, as in /sə-phin-tha/ ‘make level’ (< Chinese *píng*), and can take the postpositive adverb /-wa/, as in /khuai-tha-wa/ ‘very fast’ (< Chinese *kuài*). In the case of those loan words that take the native verb /pə/, the prefixes are added to this verb, as in /thuntʂə-tə-pə/ ‘notified’ (< Chinese *tōngzhī*). A few adjectives borrowed from Chinese, such as /phin/ ‘level’, can be used as nouns or verbs, taking /tha-/ when they are used as verbs. Another small set of adjectives recently borrowed from Chinese, such as /çixan/ ‘rare’ (< Chinese *xīhan*) and /tchikuai/ ‘strange’ (< Chinese *qíguài*), are only used as nouns, and take the copula if used predicatively.

With a small number of adjectives (intransitive stative verbs), possibly older loans, instead of having the /-tha/ suffix, the form /-ti/ follows the borrowed form, e.g. /nin-ti/ ‘fragmentary, piecemeal’ (< Chinese *líng*), /lan-ti/ ‘blue’ (< Chinese *lán*), /jyuan-ti/ ‘round’ (< Chinese *yuán*). This suffix is itself a loan form of the Chinese genitive/nominalizing particle *de*.

Aside from direct loans, there are a number of items that might be calques on Chinese expressions. For example, /ləyz-bie/ [‘book’ + ‘carry on back’] ‘recite lessons from memory, memorize’ is probably a calque on Chinese *bèi shū* [‘turn back on, carry on back’ + ‘book’] ‘recite lessons from memory, memorize’.

3.1.1.1. Gender marking

In Qiang there is no division of nouns into gender (or other) classes, and so there is no marking of grammatical gender, only of natural gender. In fact, only animals are marked for gender. For female animals the suffix is /mi/, though in a few cases /miaha/ can be used (e.g., as /jy-mi/ could be either '(female) chicken' or 'female musk-deer', /miaha/ is added to /jy/ for 'chicken'); for male animals, the suffixes used are /zdu/ (for small animals), /zə/ (for bovine only; this can be used alone to mean 'stud bull', or it can be suffixed to /soʊu/ 'cow'), /-ɣ/ (for castrated male animals), /ci/ (for pigs), and /pi/ (for birds). Some examples:

(3.19)	<i>xʂe-ɣ</i>	'mixed breed ox' ³⁰	<i>khuə-(zdu)</i>	'dog'
	<i>xʂe-mi</i>	'mixed breed cow'	<i>khuə-mi</i>	'bitch'
	<i>soʊu</i>	'common cow'	<i>khuə-miaha</i>	'bitch'
	<i>ŋuə/ŋuə-mi</i>	'female cow'	<i>puŋu</i>	'cat'
	<i>soʊu-ŋuə</i>	'female cow'	<i>puŋu-zdu</i>	'male cat'
	<i>soʊu-zə</i>	'bull'	<i>zətɕhaq</i>	'rabbit'
	<i>pie-ci</i>	'male pig'	<i>zətɕhaq-zdu</i>	'male rabbit'
	<i>piej-mi</i>	'sow'	<i>tɕy:</i>	'chicken'
	<i>tshe</i>	'goat'	<i>jy-miaha</i>	'hen'
	<i>tshe-mi</i>	'female goat'	<i>jy-pi (jy < tɕy:)</i>	'cock'
	<i>wə</i>	'horse'		
	<i>wə-mi</i>	'mare'		

There seems to be a markedness difference, where the male and female animal names form a privative opposition, but in the case of the larger animals, it is the male name that is unmarked, whereas for the smaller animals, it is the female name that is unmarked. That is, for larger animals, using the unmarked form, e.g. /wə/ 'horse', the implication is that it is male, and female gender marking is needed to mean 'mare', whereas for the smaller animals, e.g. /puŋu/ 'cat', the implication is that it is female, and male marking is necessary to express the meaning 'male cat' (cf. English *cat* vs. *tom cat*).

3.1.1.2. Diminutive marking

The diminutive, which is used only for animals, has one main form, /-tʂuə ~ tʂu/ (< /tʂuə/ ‘child’), and two forms with exclusive uses, /-ɪl/ and /-zdue/. These latter two are used for dogs and sheep respectively. None of these forms is widely used, and when they are used, they have the concrete sense of ‘child’. They are not used for hypocoristic or other abstract uses. The origins of the /ɪl/ and /zdue/ forms are unclear. Examples:

- (3.20) a. *xʂe-tʂuə* ~ *xʂetʂu* ‘calf’ b. *ŋowu-zdue* ‘kid’
 c. *tɕy-tʂu* ‘chick’ d. *tshe-zdue* ‘lamb’
 e. *khua-ɪl* ‘puppy’

It seems the word /wətʂi/ ‘sparrow’ might be formed from the word for bird (/wə/) plus some sort of diminutive suffix, but it is the only such form found so far.

3.1.1.3. The kinship prefix

The majority of Qiang kinship terminology (largely terms for the older generation) is comprised of a vocalic prefix plus a root. The form of the prefix depends on the vowel of the root (see §2.4.3 on vowel harmony). Following are some examples (see the Glossary for other examples):

- (3.21) a. *a-pa* ‘grandfather’
 b. *u-tuma* ‘grandmother’
 c. *i-pi* ‘uncle (older brother of father)’
 d. *i-mi* ‘aunt (wife of older brother of father)’
 e. *u-pu* ‘uncle (younger brother of father)’
 f. *i-tei* ‘aunt (wife of younger brother of father)’
 g. *a-kua* ‘uncle (brother of mother)’
 h. *i-ʂpəi* ‘aunt (wife of brother of mother)’
 i. *a-tsa* ‘husband of father’s sister; brother-in-law’

An interesting feature of this system is that the male relatives on the father's side seem to be largely based on a /p/-initial form, with the

vowel of the root and prefix varying for the specific relation. In (3.21) compare ‘grandfather’, ‘uncle (older brother of father)’, and ‘uncle (younger brother of father)’, and also [ep] ‘father’, most likely a shortened form of **epe*.

3.1.2. Pronouns

Three persons and three numbers are marked in the personal pronouns, as shown in Table 4.

Table 4. The Qiang personal pronouns

	singular	dual	plural
1	<i>qa</i>	<i>tci-zzi</i>	<i>tci-le</i>
2	<i>?ũ</i>	<i>?i-zzi</i>	<i>?i-le</i>
3	<i>the: / qupu</i>	<i>thi-zzi</i>	<i>them-le</i>

There are two forms for the third person singular pronoun, /qupu/ and /the:/. The form /qupu/ is used to refer to a third person who has a close relationship to the speaker, such as a spouse (see the two examples in (3.22) below). It is also used as a logophoric pronoun, that is, in indirect quotes when the person quoted and the one being talked about are the same, as in (3.23) below.³¹

(3.22) a. *qupu zdzyta: fia-qə.* (Closely related to the speaker)
 3sg Chengdu:LOC DIR-go
 ‘She (my wife) went to Chengdu.’

b. *the: zdzyta: fia-qə.* (Not closely related to speaker)
 3sg Chengdu:LOC DIR-go.
 ‘She went to Chengdu.’

(3.23) *the:i qa-ta kə-ji qupu_j ma-ka:-i.*
 3sg 1sg-LOC thus-say 3sg NEG-go:PRS-HS
 ‘He told me he is not going to go.’

The form /the:/ is a reduced form of /the ze/ (‘that’ + classifier) ‘that one’. It is the most generally used form. Secondarily, a reduced form of the proximate demonstrative plus classifier (/tse/ + /ze/ > [tse:]) is also

sometimes used. The third plural pronoun /themle/ is often pronounced [themne], due to assimilation.

There is no exclusive/inclusive distinction in the pronouns, and there are no differences in the pronouns depending on semantic role or whether it is followed by a postposition, as is found in some Southern Qiang dialects, such as the Taoping dialect (Sun 1981, Liu 1987). While there are dual forms of the pronouns, the plural pronouns are not exclusively used for more than two referents; they can be used for dual referents when the precise number of referents is not important. The dual pronouns are used only for emphasis of the dual number. The dual and plural forms seem to be based on roughly the same root forms, but have different suffixes, [-zzi] (which possibly derives from a combination of /jə/ ‘two’ and the classifier /ze/, or a combination of a form of the plural marker /yle/ plus /jə/ ‘two’ and the classifier /ze/) in the case of the dual pronouns, and a form of the plural marker /yle/, discussed in §3.1.7, in the case of the plural pronouns.

The pronouns can appear in all positions, can be used in imperatives, can appear in cleft and pseudocleft constructions, and can be used in answer to ‘who is that?’: /qa ŋua!/ (1sg COP:1sg) ‘It’s me!’, and the demonstrative pronouns can be used anaphorically, including for discourse deixis (see the Texts for examples). Pronouns do not seem to be used for non-specific reference. They can be omitted if recoverable from context. In fact they are usually dropped except when there is a change of topic or when they are needed for emphasis. Pronouns are freely used; there does not seem to be any restriction, in terms of politeness, on addressing someone with a pronoun, as in Chinese, except one does not usually use /the:/ for one’s spouse.

Pronouns take the same cases and case marking forms as nouns. It is possible to associate numbers and classifiers with pronouns, as in the dual forms and in /tɕile χsə-tʂ/ (1pl three-classifier) ‘us three’. In pronoun-noun apposition constructions, all persons are possible, but only plural numbers are possible. There are no special adjectival forms of any pronouns; there are no special possessive/genitive pronouns (the postposition /-tɕ/ is added if necessary; see §3.2.15 on the genitive construction), and no pronominal possessive prefixes (such as those found in many other Tibeto-Burman languages), but the plural pronoun is generally used before kinship terms (this is considered more polite; e.g. /themle-tatə/ (3pl-‘father’) ‘his father’). No gender and no verbal

categories are reflected in the pronouns. There are no reciprocal pronouns, as reciprocal meaning is expressed by reduplication of the verb (see §4.2.1). Except for the use of /qupu/ and the use of the plural pronouns before kinship terms, no status distinctions (familiar, honorific) are marked in the pronouns. There is no construction meaning ‘John and the others’ involving pronouns as in Chinese (e.g. *Zhāngsān tāmen* (Zhangsan 3pl) ‘Zhangsan and the others’); instead the plural marker is used after the personal name, as discussed in §3.1.7.

The demonstrative pronouns mark relative distinctions from the point of view of the speaker only. There are only proximate and distal forms,³² and there is no difference of visibility or not, or other factors. Table 5 gives the basic forms and several extended forms:

Table 5. The Qiang demonstrative pronouns

	singular	plural	locative	locative (side)	extent/ method	kind
proximate	<i>tse</i>	<i>tsaha</i>	<i>tse</i> / <i>tsu</i> / <i>tsakua</i>	<i>tsexse</i>	<i>tsəi</i>	<i>tsahan</i>
distal	<i>the</i>	<i>thaha</i>	<i>tha</i> / <i>thu</i> / <i>thakua</i>	<i>thexse</i>	<i>thəi</i>	<i>thahan</i>

Aside from the main locative forms, /tse/ and /tha/, given in Table 5, there are also two other less frequently used forms, /tsu/ and /thu/ that also mean ‘here’ and ‘there’ respectively, but /tsu/ refers to a smaller, more immediate area around the speaker than /tse/, and /thu/ means a place somewhat closer than /tha/. The third set of locative forms given in Table 5 include /-kua/ ‘side’.

The demonstrative pronouns are marked for number in the same way as nouns, by adding [a-ha], with the vowel of the demonstrative pronoun becoming [a] because of the addition of the word /a/ ‘one’, with which it coalesces. The demonstrative pronouns take the same postpositions as nouns, but cannot take the definite marker, as the demonstrative pronouns and the definite markers both fill the same functional slot. They must take a classifier (or numeral plus classifier), or the vowel can be lengthened to represent a classifier (e.g. /tse-ze/ or /tse:/). The one exception to this is the discourse deixis use of /the/ in the phrase /the-wu/ [that-ABL] ‘after that’ to refer to a previously mentioned action or set of actions (see T3:29, T5:130, T5:191, T6:191, T6:228, T6:242, T6:284 for examples). When the number following the

demonstrative pronoun is ‘two’, the combination of pronoun + number + classifier results in [tsəizzi] and [thəizzi]. The same form of the demonstrative pronoun is used for both free pronoun and adjectival uses. Demonstratives are also used in a number of temporal adverbials, such as /tsai/ ‘now’ < /tse/ ‘this’ + /a-i/ ‘one time’. In the Texts demonstrative pronouns often take the prefix /fiɑ-/ , which acts as an intensifier. For example, [fiɑ-tha] would represent a place farther away than [tha] ‘there’.

Following is a list of the interrogative pronouns:

- (3.24)
- | | | |
|----|----------------------|---|
| a. | <i>sə-(le:)</i> | ‘who’ |
| b. | <i>tca-la ~ tca:</i> | ‘where’ |
| c. | <i>ŋiyi</i> | ‘what’ |
| d. | <i>ŋiyi-le:</i> | ‘which one’ |
| e. | <i>ŋiyi-la-kua</i> | ‘which side’ [what-DEF:one-side] |
| f. | <i>ŋiyi-lai</i> | ‘what time’ [what-DEF:one:time] |
| g. | <i>ŋi-kai</i> | ‘how long (time)’ [what-INDEF:one:time] |
| h. | <i>ŋa-wu / ŋa-we</i> | ‘how much/many’ |
| i. | <i>ŋiyi-χua-ŋi</i> | ‘why’ [what-because-ADV] |
| j. | <i>ŋi-qəs</i> | ‘how’ |
| k. | <i>ŋi-ke:</i> | ‘how’ |
| l. | <i>tcho:</i> | ‘when’ |
| m. | <i>ŋa-tian</i> | ‘what hour’ |

The majority of the forms here are built around a general interrogative morpheme [ŋɑ ~ ŋi ~ ŋo ~ ŋa], the most common derived form of which is [ŋi: ~ ŋiyi] ‘what, which’. The forms for ‘who’ and ‘what’ can sometimes take the definite marker /le/, with the meaning of ‘what’ becoming ‘which one’ (‘which side’ also includes this form and /a/ ‘one’). The form for ‘where’ includes the locative postposition /la/. The forms for ‘which one’, ‘which side’, and ‘what time’ have the same structure, the interrogative pronoun [ŋiyi] plus the definite marker, ‘one’, and a classifier, measure word, or locative noun, such as [kua] ‘side’ here, or as in [ŋiyi-la-tshua] ‘which village?’. The form for ‘how long (of time)’ has roughly the same structure, but with the indefinite marker rather than the definite marker. A second option is to have the noun before ‘which’, and so ‘which’ forms a modifier of the noun with the definite marker and classifier:

- (3.25) *tɕiɰua* *ŋiɰi-le:-ta* *le-ŋua?*
 house which-DEF:CL-LOC exist-Q
 ‘Which house does he live in?’

The expression /*ŋi-qəs*/ [what-form] is used for the sense of ‘how’ in /*peʰʂen ŋi-qəs we*/ [body what-form exist] ‘how is your health?’. The form meaning ‘why’ is that for ‘what’ plus the adverbial marker of cause. The form for ‘what hour?’ is the question particle plus the word for ‘hour’ (< Chinese *diǎn*; possibly a calque of Chinese *jǐdiǎn* ‘what time?’ plus borrowing). The expression [*ŋa-wu*] ‘how much/many’ involves the question word /*ŋa*/ plus /*wu*/ ‘many’. When it is used, it follows the noun it is modifying, just as with numeral plus classifier expressions:

- (3.26) *a-tɕ* *dzigũ-ŋawu* *ŋuə-ŋua?*
 one-catty money-how.much COP-Q
 ‘How much money is one catty?’ (i.e., how much does one catty cost; ‘catty’ = one unit of 500 grams)

Other units of time or measurement or classifiers can also be used with the general interrogative particle, as in the following examples:

- (3.27) *the:* *ŋa-ci-tɕ-ŋo-tɕu-ka* *zdzyta:*
 3sg WH-month-GEN-WH-day-LOC Chengdu:LOC
ə-pə-l-ŋua?
 DIR-arrive-come-Q
 ‘When will he arrive in Chengdu?’

- (3.28) *?ile* *tɕəu-la* *mi* *ŋa-tɕə* *zə-i-wa?*
 2pl home-LOC person WH-CL exist-2pl-Q
 ‘How many people do you have at home (in your family)?’

- (3.29) *?ũ-tɕ-tuətɕ* *ŋa-p* *le-ji-wa?*
 2sg-GEN-yng.brother WH-year exist-CSM-Q
 ‘How old is your younger brother?’
 (lit.: ‘How many years does your younger brother have?’)

The interrogative pronouns take the same postpositions as lexical nouns, and can appear in any preverbal position in the clause.

(3.30) a. *ʔũ sə-ŋa fi-a-qə-n?*
 2sg who-COM DIR-go-2sg
 ‘With whom did you go?’

b. *sə ʔũ-ŋa fi-a-qə?*
 who 2sg-COM DIR-go
 ‘Who went with you?’

There is only one unique indefinite pronoun, /iʔi/ ‘anything’, though the interrogative pronouns /sə/ ‘who’ and /ŋiʔi/ ‘what’ can also be used as indefinite pronouns, as in (3.31)- (3.33a-b). The indefinite pronoun /iʔi/ contrasts with the indefinite use of /ŋiʔi/ in that /iʔi/ is only used with a negated verb, while /ŋiʔi/ is only used with a non-negated verb. Contrast (3.33b) and (3.33c).

(3.31) *sə-(le:) kə ctcaq u-lu-tu, sə ca-kə.*
 who-(DEF:CL) go heart DIR-come-LNK who INDTV-go
 ‘Let whoever wants to go go.’

(3.32) *qa ŋiʔi dzə-ŋi ŋiʔi dzə, . . .* (T5:225)
 1sg what eat-ADV what eat
 ‘Whatever I eat, (you) will eat, . . .’

(3.33) a. Q: *ʔũ ŋiʔi dzə topu-n-a?*
 2sg what eat like-2sg-Q
 ‘What would you like to eat?’

b. A: *ŋiʔi lə fi-e-si.*
 what also DIR-allow
 ‘Anything would be fine.’

c. *pəs-ŋuəŋi iʔi lə de-me-zde.* (T6:9-10)
 today-TOP anything also DIR-NEG-hit
 ‘(He) didn't hit (kill) anything today.’

Otherwise a construction such as /mi e: le/ ('person' + 'one (plus lengthening representing classifier)' + 'exist') 'there is a person' or a nominalized clause is used for an indefinite referent.

- (3.34) *kə-çtcaq-lu-m* *la-he^hwu* *ca-kə-tçi.*
 go-heart-come-NOM DEF:one-pl:all INDTV-go-3pl
 'Let all that want to go go.'

Reflexive pronouns for first and second person are formed by reduplication of the regular pronouns. In the case of the 3rd person, there are the forms /*ŋiŋi*/ (3sg reflexive) and /*ŋil(e)*/ (3pl reflexive). It is also possible to add the third person pronoun before these latter forms. The reflexive pronouns exhibit person and number differences, as they are based on the regular pronouns, except that there are no dual reflexive forms. Table 6 gives the forms of the reflexive pronouns:

Table 6. The Qiang reflexive pronouns

	singular	plural
1	<i>qa-qəi</i>	<i>tçil-tçile</i>
2	<i>?f-?f:</i>	<i>il-ile</i>
3	<i>(the:)ŋiŋi ~ ŋi:</i>	<i>ŋil-ŋile</i>

The reflexive pronouns can be marked for case, with the same postpositions as nouns. There is no other way than by reduplication of the pronouns to express reflexive meaning.

- (3.35) *ŋiŋi* *die-ŋe.*
 3sgREFL DIR-die
 '(S/he) committed suicide.'

The reflexive pronouns are also used as emphatic pronouns. In some cases there is ambiguity between an emphatic and a reflexive use, but case marking can be used to differentiate the two, as in (3.36b,c). It would also be possible to have both an emphatic and reflexive use in the same clause, though this would be unusual.

- (3.36) a. *qaqəi zə-dza.* (< dzete)³³
 1sgREFL DIR-hit:1sg
 ‘I hit myself/I hit it myself.’
 (ambiguous between emphatic and reflexive)
- b. *qaqəi-wu fiə-tshua.* (emphatic) (< tshuə)
 1sgREFL-AGT DIR-smash:1sg
 ‘I myself smashed it (someone/something).’
- c. *qaqəi-ta fiə-tshua.* (reflexive) (< tshuə)
 1sgREFL-DAT DIR-smash:1sg
 ‘I smashed myself.’

In some cases either type of marking (or no marking) may be possible:

- (3.37) *ʔiʔi:-(wu)/(ta) tʂauku tu-pu-n.*
 2sgREFL-(AGT)/(DAT) take.care DIR-do-2sg
 ‘You take care of yourself.’

It is also possible to have benefactive, genitive, and other non-direct-argument reflexives, as in the examples in (3.38a-c).

- (3.38) a. *qaqəi-tə pa:*
 1sgREFL-GEN buy:PRS:1sg³⁴
 ‘I’ll buy it for myself.’
- b. *ʔiʔi-ŋa tʂe-khue.*
 2sgREFL-COM NEG.IMP-upset
 ‘Don’t be mad at yourself.’
- c. *Khumtsi upu-ta kə me-jə,*
 Khumtsi uncle-DAT thus NEG-say
ŋi:-tə-khuə-le: u-tcu-s me-zi-ji.
 3sgREFL-GEN-dog-DEF:CL DIR-see-NOM NEG-exist-CSM
 ‘Khumtsi did not tell her uncle that her dog is missing.’
 (lit.: ‘Khumtsi did not say to her uncle, the seeing of self’s
 dog does not exist now.’)

As can be seen from (3.38c), the antecedent of a reflexive/emphatic pronoun in Qiang does not have to be in the same clause as the pronoun.

For emphatic genitives, it is possible to have a genitive phrase with a reflexive/emphatic pronoun, as in /qɑqɑi-(tɕ)-fɑ-le:/ (1sgREFL-(GEN)-clothing-DEF:CL) ‘my own clothes’.

Following are a few other forms that have uses like pronouns:

- (3.39) a. *e-ɣlewu* [one-pl:all] ‘we all, all of us’
 b. *mi* [= ‘person’] ‘other people’
 c. *nai* [= ‘other’] ‘others’
 d. *ŋutɕuku* ‘each, individually’
 e. *ʂəʂe:ˀwu* [exist:REDUP:all] ‘everything; all of them’

3.1.3. Locational nouns

One closed class of items within the general class of nouns is the set of locational nouns. There is a complex subset of locational nouns where the form for a locational noun meaning ‘above/upper part’ or ‘below/lower part’ differs depending on the type of location. These are presented in Table 7, along with the locative postpositions they take if postpositions are used (see §3.2.20):

Table 7. Locational nouns for ‘above’ and ‘below’

type of location	above/upper part	below/lower part
mountain	<i>məq-(ta)</i>	<i>qəl-(la)~ʂqəl-(la)</i>
space	<i>zuχu-(la)</i>	<i>guaq-(ta)</i>
river valley	<i>ŋi-(la)</i>	<i>khi-(la)</i>
story of building	<i>tɕy-(ta)</i>	<i>tʂhə-(la)</i>
fireplace	<i>wətɕi-(la)</i>	<i>wəi-(la)</i>
house	<i>tɕuχu-(la)</i>	<i>tɕike-(la)</i>

Aside from the forms given in Table 7, there are also the following forms:

- (3.40) a. *tɕiqua* ‘inside’
 b. *zɑχua* ‘inside (deeper inside than /tɕiqua/)’
 c. *kuɑ-la* ‘outside’
 d. *tɕhupu* ‘where the sun comes up’

- e. *dzupu* ‘where the sun goes down’
- f. *steke* ‘behind’
- g. *qə:¹* ‘in front of’
- h. *zeky* ‘between’
- i. *piena* ‘near, (be)side’

The forms for ‘behind’ and ‘in front of’ are also used for the temporal notions ‘after’ and ‘before, long ago’ (see §3.2.21). There is also some metaphorical use of body parts for certain locations, such as the use of /qəpatʂ/ ‘head’ for the top of a ladder (/buzd-te-qəpatʂa:/ [plank.stairs-DEF-head:LOC (LOC realized as a long /a:/ on ‘head’) ‘at the top of the stairs’) in the story “An Orphan” (T3:114).

3.1.4. *Definite, indefinite marking*

In this variety of Qiang it is usual to have either definite or indefinite marking on referential noun phrases. Generics and mass nouns are not marked this way. There are two definite markers, /le/ and /te/; /le/ is used more for animate referents and after nouns that end in voiced segments, while /te/ is used more for inanimate referents and after nouns that end in voiceless segments, though very often they are interchangeable. There is also an indefinite marker, /ke/, which marks newly introduced referents and predicate noun phrases. Newly introduced referents can also be marked with just a number (usually ‘one’) and a classifier. All three of these markers appear after the head noun and post-head adjective, if there is one, in the same position as the demonstrative pronouns, so cannot appear together with the demonstrative pronouns.³⁵ They must be followed by a classifier or numeral plus classifier, though, as with the demonstrative pronouns, the classifier may simply be reflected in a lengthened vowel. The two definite markers can be used with proper names (though this is not common), but /ke/ cannot be used with proper names. All three can be used to nominalize adjectives (single argument state verbs), e.g. /ŋiq-le:/ or /ŋiq-te:/ ‘the black one’, /ŋiq-ke:/ ‘a black one’, and occasionally to nominalize other verbs, especially existential verbs, as in (3.41a), and when it nominalizes other verbs it can have the sense of a simultaneous action or state, as in (3.41b), or simply a state, as in (3.41c). This latter

sense is often expressed by using [kɑ-han] (INDEF:one-kind) instead of [ke:].

- (3.41) a. *ep lə me-zi ew lə me-zi-ke:*
 father also NEG-exist mother also NEG-exist-INDEF:CL
ɲuə-kəi-tcu.
 COP-INF:HS-PART
 ‘(I) am one who has no father or mother.’
- b. *fiə-zei-ke: tse:-steke da-qə-kəi-stū.*
 DIR-cry-INDEF:CL this:CL-behind DIR-go-NAR-PART
 ‘(She) went (followed) behind him crying.’ (T4:16-17)
- c. *kapətʂ tou-ɲuəŋi fiə-tsəi*
 orphan DEF:one:CL-TOP INT-this.manner
mo-qu-ke: zi-kəi.³⁶ (T3:99-100)
 NEG-afraid-INDEF:CL exist-NAR
 ‘In this way the orphan was not afraid’ (lit.: ‘There was the orphan who was not afraid’).

The use of /ke/ on a predicate noun (a non-referential noun which forms the main semantic content of the predicate) is not obligatory, but it is obligatory if /ke/ is acting as a nominalizer of a predicate noun formed from an adjective or verb.

With dual forms, the number and classifier merge with the (in)definite marker to form [ləzzi], [təzzi], and [kəzzi]. When the plural marker /ɑ-hɑ/ (§3.1.7) is added after any of these forms, the vowel of the definite/indefinite marker is supplanted by [ɑ]: [lahɑ], [tahɑ], [kɑhɑ]. The vowel of the definite marker often changes to [a] when it is followed by the locative postposition /ɬɑ/, but in this combination the vowel of the postposition also changes, so /le:-ɬɑ/ and /te:-ɬɑ/ result in [la:ɬɑ] and [ta:ɬɑ], respectively, in rapid speech. As mentioned in §2.4.2, in some cases the definite or indefinite marker combines with the number ‘one’ and a classifier to form a single syllable, e.g. [tou, lou, kou] (< /te, le, ke/ + [o] ‘one’ + u ‘classifier for round objects and groups’). As mentioned above, the vowel of the (in)definite marker can sometimes be lengthened to represent the marker plus a classifier. That is, rather than have a classifier following, for example, /ke/, the vowel is

lengthened, e.g. /ke-ze/ > /ke:/. If a referent is known to the speaker, but not to the hearer, then the indefinite form is used; there is no difference in marking of specific vs. non-specific referents. Space relations between referents do not affect the form of the definite marking. Following are some examples of the differences in meaning the use of the markers can make:

- (3.42) a. *the: sum-ke-ze (or -ke:) ηuə.*
 3sg teacher-INDEF-CL COP
 ‘He is a teacher.’
- b. *the: sum-le: ηuə.*
 3sg teacher-DEF:CL COP
 ‘He is the teacher.’
- (3.43) a. *qa pi-le: me¹z_a.* (< me¹z_a)
 1sg pen-DEF:CL search:1sg
 ‘I am looking for the pen.’
- b. *qa pi-a-la me¹z_a.* (< me¹z_a)
 1sg pen-one-CL search:1sg
 ‘I am looking for a pen.’
- (3.44) a. *zdzyta: kə-tc tshetsə-e-ze*
 Chengdu:LOC go-GEN car-one-CL (one of several cars)
 ‘a car that is going to Chengdu’
- b. *zdzyta: kə-tc tshetsə-le:*
 Chengdu:LOC go-GEN car-DEF:CL (one specific car)
 ‘the car that is going to Chengdu’

Following is the first part of one Qiang story, “An Orphan”, to show how the definite and indefinite markers are used in context.

- (3.45) *qe:¹-qe¹-tu fiala kapəts-kou*
 before-before-LNK INT orphan-INDEF:one:CL
ηuə-kei-tcu, ep lə me-z_i ew
 COP-INF:HS-PART father also NEG-exist mother

<i>ə</i>	<i>me-zi-ke:</i>		<i>ŋuə-kəi-tcu.</i>
also	NEG-exist- INDEF:CL		COP-INF:HS-PART
<i>tu</i>	<i>fiala</i>	<i>ʂkup-le:-ŋuəŋi</i>	<i>fia-tsu</i>
RESULT INT	orangutan- DEF:CL -TOP		INT-here
<i>kapətʂ-tou</i>	<i>dzə</i>	<i>kantçi-kui-tcu,</i>	
orphan- DEF:one:CL	eat	think/want-INF:HS-PART	
<i>kapətʂ-lou</i>	<i>dzə</i>	<i>kantei:</i>	<i>tu</i> <i>fiala,</i>
orphan- DEF:one:CL	eat	think/want	RESULT INT
<i>kapətʂ-tou</i>	<i>gəs-ta</i>	<i>fia-xtʂəpa:-jə-tu</i>	
orphan- DEF:one:CL	night-LOC	DIR-dark:PRS-REP-LNK	
<i>qu-kəpə-kəi-ʂ, . . .</i>			(T3:1-7)
	be.afraid-HABIT-INF:HS-LNK		

‘Long ago (there was) an orphan, one with no father or mother. The orangutan wanted to eat the orphan, wanted to eat the orphan, (so) the orphan was afraid at night, when it will get dark again, . . .’

In the first line the orphan is introduced with the /ke/ indefinite marker (in this case combined with the number ‘one’ and a classifier into a single syllable), and in the second line, in giving a characterization of the orphan as a person with no father or mother, the indefinite marker is again used, but after that (in lines four and five) the two definite markers are interchangeably used in referring to this referent. It is interesting that the /ʂkup/ ‘orangutan’ is not introduced into the story, but is assumed at its first mention to be accessible to the audience. The /ʂkup/ shows up in a lot of Qiang stories,³⁷ and is the typical bogeyman, and so is known to all the Qiang. It is for this reason that it does not need to be introduced.

3.1.5. Numerals and quantifiers

The cardinal numeral system is a simple decimal system, with ‘one’ to ‘ten’ being unique forms, ‘eleven’ to ‘nineteen’ being ‘ten’ + ‘one’, etc., ‘twenty’ to ‘ninety’ being ‘two’ + ‘ten’, etc., and the numerals in between being ‘two’ + ‘ten’ + ‘one’, etc., though the forms for ‘ten’ used in ‘eleven’ to ‘nineteen’ and ‘twenty’ and up are different: /ha/ is used for the former, and /su/ is used for the latter. The forms of the basic

numerals differ somewhat in word initial and non-initial position; most notable, the prefixes are dropped from ‘three’, ‘four’, ‘six’, and ‘nine’. As mentioned in §2.3, this is significant because more recent word formations generally preserve the prefixes of second syllables. The bisyllabic numerals then must have been formed and fossilized at a time before the prefixes became inseparable parts of the root morphemes. The element meaning ‘five’ in ‘fifteen’, [-ŋɸ] more closely reflects the original form of the word ‘five’ in Proto-Tibeto-Burman (**b/l-ŋa*). It is unclear whether the initial /ɸ-/ in /ɸua/ is the original prefix and has preempted the initial, or is a reflex of the original initial **ŋ-*. Counting of the numbers is done without classifiers: [ɑ, jə, xsə, ɣzə . . .].

All of the forms are the original Qiang forms, except for ‘zero’ and ‘ten thousand’, which are Chinese loan words. There are variant forms for ‘one’ ([dzə ~ tʃi]) which appear in ‘eleven’, ‘twenty-one’, ‘thirty-one’, etc., a form for ‘two’ ([ŋi]) which appears only in ‘twelve’, and a form for ‘three’ ([si]) which appears only in ‘thirteen’. The forms [dzə ~ tʃi] and /-ŋi/ representing ‘one’ and ‘two’ in combinations seem to be more direct descendants of the Proto-Tibeto-Burman forms **g-tik* ≠ **g-tyak* and **g-ni-s/k* respectively (the reconstructed forms are from Matisoff 1997). Following are the basic numbers and combinations:

(3.46) <i>lin</i>	‘zero’	<i>χtʃu</i>	‘six’
<i>a</i>	‘one’	<i>ctcə</i>	‘seven’
<i>jə</i>	‘two’	<i>khe¹ ~ khe³⁸</i>	‘eight’
<i>xsə</i>	‘three’	<i>zɣuə</i>	‘nine’
<i>ɣzə</i>	‘four’	<i>hotcu</i>	‘ten’
<i>ɸua</i>	‘five’		
<i>hadzɿ ~ hatʃi</i>	‘eleven’	<i>jusutʃi</i>	‘twenty-one’
<i>haŋi</i>	‘twelve’	<i>jusujə</i>	‘twenty-two’
<i>hasi</i>	‘thirteen’	<i>jusuxsə</i>	‘twenty-three’
<i>haɰ</i>	‘fourteen’	<i>xsusu</i>	‘thirty’
<i>haŋɸ</i>	‘fifteen’	<i>ɣzusu</i>	‘forty’
<i>hatʃu</i>	‘sixteen’	<i>ɸosu</i>	‘fifty’
<i>hae</i>	‘seventeen’	<i>χtʃusu</i>	‘sixty’
<i>hakhe¹</i>	‘eighteen’	<i>ctcusu</i>	‘seventy’
<i>hagɸ</i>	‘nineteen’	<i>khesu ~ khe¹su</i>	‘eighty’
<i>jusu</i>	‘twenty’	<i>zɣusu</i>	‘ninety’

<i>e-khe</i> ~ <i>e-khe'</i>	100	<i>a-stu</i>	1,000
<i>e-khe-ŋa-e:(eze)</i>	101	<i>a-ɸuan</i>	10,000

There are no ordinal numerals in Qiang; only ‘the most front one’ (= ‘the first one’), ‘the one after this (one)’ (= ‘the next one’), ‘the one after that’ (= ‘the third one’), and ‘the last one’ have special forms, but they do not involve the use of numbers.

- (3.47) a. *tɕi-qə:'le:* (most-front-DEF:CL) ‘the first one’
 b. *tsə-steke-le:* (this-back-DEF:CL) ‘the second/next one’
 c. *thə-steke-le:* (that-back-DEF:CL) ‘the third one’
 d. *tɕi-steke-le:* (most-back-DEF:CL) ‘the last one’

Above the first three, the cardinal numbers plus classifiers are used as ordinal numbers, e.g. /ɣzə-ze/ (‘four’ + classifier) ‘the fourth (one)’ (= ‘four (of something)’).

Following are some other quantifiers:

- (3.48) a. *mi'wu* [person:all] ‘each one’
 b. *a-ha* [one-pl] ‘some/a few (number)’
 c. *e-ze* [one-CL] ‘anyone’
 d. *e-ze e-ze* [one-CL] ‘one by one’
 e. *a-za* ~ *a-zə* [one-CL] ‘a little, some (quantity)’
 f. *əizi* [one:two:CL] ‘several’
 g. *a-i* [one-time] ‘a little while’
 h. *hodzu-ma-xtɕe* ‘ten odd’
 i. *aɕpala* ‘somewhere’
 j. *iɣi-lə* ‘what also; anything’
 k. *le'wu* [pl:all] ‘everyone/body; all’³⁹
 l. *ɕəɕe:'wu* [exist:REDUP:all] ‘everything; all’
 m. *fi:a:n* ‘about’

The modifier [a:n ~ fi:a:n] ‘about’ follows a numeral expression:

- (3.49) *ɣzusu-ŋa-a-ɣau-fi:a:n* *tɕua.* (< tɕuə)
 forty-and-one-size-about wear(shoes):1sg
 ‘I wear about a size 41 (of shoes).’

3.1.6. Classifiers and measure words

Classifiers are necessary whenever a number, demonstrative pronoun or (in)definite marker is used, though often the classifier is simply reflected in a long vowel on the demonstrative pronoun or (in)definite marker. The long vowel can represent almost any classifier. That is, there is a neutralization of classifiers in rapid speech when the classifier is replaced by the lengthened vowel. Only one classifier can be used with a noun at any one time. The classifiers in Qiang are not used to mark specific referents the way they are in, for example, Cantonese, though a number plus classifier can be used without a head noun to refer to a referent (see §3.1.5).

The classifiers can be divided semantically into measure words and sortal classifiers, depending on whether they represent quantities rather than forms/functions, but syntactically they pattern in the same way. A number of both types, particularly measure words, are clearly related to nouns, e.g. /qu/ ‘mouthful’ < /ɣqu/ ‘mouth’, /tɕa/ ‘bowlfull’ < /tɕa/ ‘bowl’; /sa/ ‘classifier for sections’ < /saq/ ‘joint’. Following is a list of some common classifiers (the form of the number ‘one’ is given with each classifier to show how it varies due to harmony with the vowel of the classifier—the vowels of all of the numbers from ‘one’ to ‘ten’, except for ‘six’, ‘eight’, and ‘nine’ harmonize with the vowel of the classifier; numbers above ten do not harmonize with the classifier):

- (3.50) *e-ze* General (default) classifier, used for people, houses, belts, and many other types of objects, particularly if one is unsure of the usual classifier used.
- a-la* Used for stick-like, long, thin objects, and clothes (native word).
- a-pa* Used for long stick-like objects (where the stick is a handle, e.g. a broom; < Chinese *bǎ*).
- e-xɕe* Used for one item of things that usually come in pairs, such as shoes and chopsticks.
- e-tue* One pair (< Chinese *dù*).
- e-tsi* One pair (native word).
- o-u* Used generally for (small) round objects (such as steamed bread), but in some cases also for people (with the same semantics as [eze]).

<i>a-w</i>	Used for piles of things (cf. the verb /bə/ ‘to pile’ which becomes [wə ~ w] when there is a prefix, e.g. [təw] ‘piled’). ⁴⁰
<i>a-tʂ</i>	Used only for people (there seems to be no difference in the semantics or occasion of use of the three classifiers that can be used for people, though there is a difference in frequency, with [eze] being the most frequent).
<i>e-pe</i>	One bowl (of something).
<i>a-tʂa</i>	One bowl (of something) (< /tʂa/ ‘wooden bowl’).
<i>o-z₁gu</i>	One tree.
<i>o-pu</i>	One liter (of something).
<i>a-zə</i>	A little bit (of something).
<i>e-fi ~ phi</i>	Used for flat, thin things, such as a leaf.
<i>e-pi</i>	The form for a unit of currency (< Chinese <i>bì</i>).
<i>o-qpi</i>	Used for a family of people.
<i>e-kue</i>	Used for a backload of things (< /kue/ ‘to transport’).
<i>a-qə</i>	Used for a string of small things, such as beads.
<i>a-quət</i>	One bushel (of something).
<i>a-sa</i>	One clause or other stretch of speech (< /sa/ ‘sound’).
<i>o-xo</i>	One box (of something) (possibly < Chinese <i>hé</i>).
<i>a-sa</i>	Used for sections (e.g. room of a house), joints (cf. /saq/ ‘joint’).
<i>a-tu</i>	One handspan, thumb to tip of extended middle finger (< PTB <i>*twa</i>).
<i>e-ze</i>	One fathom (finger to finger with arms outstretched).
<i>a-p(ə)</i>	One year (of time/age).
<i>a-bua</i>	One step (cf. /buatsi/ ‘to step over/across’). Also used as a classifier for houses in some dialects (e.g. Qugu).
<i>e-ʂe</i>	One lifetime.
<i>a-s</i>	One day.
<i>a-c(ə)</i>	One month.
<i>o-lu</i>	One ounce (< Chinese <i>liǎng</i>).
<i>e-pen</i>	One volume (< Chinese <i>běn</i>).
<i>e-phin</i>	One bottle (< Chinese <i>píng</i>).
<i>a-tʂan</i>	Used for flat things, like tables (< Chinese <i>zhāng</i>).
<i>a-tc</i>	One catty (a unit of 500 grams) (< Chinese <i>jīn</i>).
<i>a-qəp</i>	One can/bottle (< /qəp/ ‘bottle’).

- a-gyɔ* One backbasketful (cf. /*guaχga*/ ‘backbasket’); also used as a classifier for houses.
o-zbu One team (of people).
a-han One kind/type (sometimes pronounced [*χan*]).

Of the two words for ‘pair’, /*tsi*/ is used for shoes, chopsticks, and (legs of) pants, while /*tue*/ is used for earrings and bracelets.

Some of the classifiers are borrowed from Chinese. A borrowed word will not necessarily take a borrowed classifier, though. Where the semantics of the Chinese word fit a native classifier, then a native classifier will be used. There are also cases where a native Qiang word is used with a borrowed classifier. Following are examples of these different possibilities.

Qiang word-Qiang classifier:

- (3.51) a. *wets e-tsi*
 chopsticks one-pair
 ‘one pair of chopsticks’
- b. *khuə e-ze*
 dog one-CL
 ‘one dog’
- c. *japa e-xɕe*
 hand one-CL
 ‘one hand’

Qiang word-Chinese classifier:

- (3.52) a. *dzigy e-pi*
 money one-CL
 ‘one dollar’
- b. *ləyz e-pen*
 book one-CL
 ‘one book’
- c. *tolu a-pa*
 broom one-CL
 ‘one broom’

Chinese word-Qiang classifier:

- (3.53) a. *phiçye e-tsi*
 leather.boot one-CL
 ‘a pair of leather boots’
- b. *thantsə e-ze*
 blanket one-CL
 ‘one blanket’
- c. *pi: a-la*
 pen one-CL
 ‘one pen’

Chinese word-Chinese classifier:

- (3.54) a. *phinko a-tc*
 apple one-catty
 ‘one catty of apples’
- b. *tşuats a-tşan*
 table one-CL
 ‘one table’
- c. *phitçəu e-phin*
 beer one-bottle
 ‘one bottle of beer’

Verbal action classifiers precede the verb they modify. They are often derived from the verbs themselves, as in the case of (3.55c,d) below. Following are some examples (verb forms that might be used with these classifiers are given in imperative form in parentheses in the normal word order):

- (3.55) a. *a-ş (ulu)* ‘(come in) one time’
 b. *o-qu (ətç)* ‘(eat) one bite’ (cf. *şqu* ‘mouth’)
 c. *e-çhi (təçhi)* ‘(hit) one time’
 d. *a-tşu (ətşu)* ‘(kick) one time’
 e. *a-xui (ək)* ‘(go) one time’ (< Chinese *húi*)
 f. *a-i (uzulu)* ‘(wait) a little while’
 g. *e-zdue (han)* ‘(sleep) one time’

3.1.7. Number marking

Number marking on nouns involves only singular and plural. Singular is unmarked. There are two plural markers, /a-ha/ [one-pl] ‘a few’, which is used for the vast majority of referent types, and [le] (< yle ‘few’), which is used only on pronouns, kinship terms, and some nouns referring to people. Following are examples of these latter two uses (see §3.1.2 for its use with pronouns):

- (3.56) a. *apə-le* b. *upu-le* c. *itei-le* d. *tɕymi-le*
 ‘grandfathers’ ‘uncles’ ‘aunts’ ‘children’

The full form of this latter marker, /yle/, appears only after the definite marker (possibly because the reduced form of the plural marker has the same form as the definite marker—the two are distinguished by the fact that the definite marker is followed by a classifier or has a long vowel), e.g. /tɕymi-le-yle/ (child-DEF-pl) ‘the children’, /wutʂhu-pu-m-le-yle/ (help-do-NOM-DEF-pl) ‘the helpers’; in all other cases the form is [le].

Aside from this use of [le] (/yle/), there is no animate vs. inanimate or other distinction in plural marking, all types take /a-ha/. The plural marker follows the definite marker or demonstrative pronoun, if there is one. It was mentioned in §3.1.4 above that the vowel of the definite/indefinite marker is supplanted by the /a/ of /a-ha/, becoming [laha], [taha], or [kaha]; this is true also of the demonstrative pronouns, e.g. /the/ + /a-ha/ > [thaha]. When there is no definite marker or demonstrative pronoun, /a-ha/ can be used alone. Following are some examples of the use of /a-ha/:

- (3.57) a. *qhal-la-ha* *qa* *de-l.* (< le)
 steamed.bun-DEF:one-pl 1sg DIR-give
 ‘Give me the steamed buns.’
- b. *qhal-tha-ha* *qa* *de-l.*
 steamed.bun-that:one-pl 1sg DIR-give
 ‘Give me those steamed buns.’

- c. *qhal-la-ha* *je-wa.*
 steamed.bun-DEF:one-pl delicious-very
 ‘The steamed buns are very delicious.’
- d. *the: qhal-a-ha* *zə-p.*
 3sg steamed.bun-one-pl DIR-buy
 ‘He bought some steamed buns.’

A less prototypical use of the plural marking is when it follows a proper name in order to refer to that person ‘and others’, as in the following example:

- (3.58) *tɕiɕua-la* *upu-bəs-la-ha-ŋuən̩i* *ei*
 inside-LOC uncle-snake-DEF:one-pl-TOP liquor
tʂhe-kəi-stū, (T4:57-58)
 drink-INF:HS-PART
 ‘Uncle Snake and others are drinking inside.’

Plural marking is not used when a numeral + classifier phrase is used, and when plural marking is used, there is only one token of the number marking within a noun phrase. That is, there is no number marking on adjectives in agreement with nouns. In a noun phrase containing two coordinated plural noun phrases there may be one token of the plural at the end of the total noun phrase or one token at the end of each of the two coordinated noun phrases, e.g. [puŋu (la-ha) ŋa khuə la-ha] (cat-(DEF:one-pl) COM dog DEF:one-pl) ‘the cats and the dogs’. Number marking on verbs is part of the person marking system (see §4.3.2) and unrelated to this system.

3.2. Nominal relational morphology

In this section we discuss the forms and uses of relational morphology, essentially postpositions, which express relations between the verb and its arguments or between the arguments themselves, but also word order. In this section we are only dealing with marking which appears on the noun phrase; for relational morphology marked on the verb, see Section 4.3.

The semantic and pragmatic roles of the major arguments of a clause are mainly expressed by word order and postpositions. Postpositions are used for marking some topics, some agents, instruments, genitives, goals, recipients, locatives, ablatives, allatives, perlatives, temporal expressions, comitatives, and comparatives, among others. There is no vocative marking postposition. Postpositions are generally used alone, but there are some instances where a locative and the ablative postposition, or a semantic postposition (e.g. a locative postposition) and the topic marker, are used together. The postpositions are enclitic on the noun phrase, that is, they follow whatever elements appear in the noun phrase and generally form a phonological unit with the noun phrase. The use of postpositions after nominalized verbs or clauses is the same as after non-derived nouns and noun phrases.

Below we will discuss each of the roles a noun phrase can play in a clause, and its marking when it has that role. See Section 3.2.22 for a form-function summary of the relational marking.

3.2.1. *Topic*

The topic is the first noun phrase or postpositional phrase in a clause, regardless of its semantic role, and sometimes there is a secondary topic after the first topic. If there are two topics, one is usually a scene-setting temporal or locative adverbial phrase. The topic may be a lexical noun, a pronoun, or a nominalized sentential complement (with or without overt nominalization marking). It is optional to use the topic marker /ŋuəŋi/ after a topic, and when there are multiple topics it is possible for there to be marking on the second topic and not the first, as in (3.59b), below, or on both topics, as in (3.59c-d). That is, there could be no overt topic marking on any topic, or there could be marking only on the first topic, or marking only on the second, or marking on both, depending on which topic(s) the speaker wants to emphasize. This marking is unlike the other types of marking to be discussed below, as it marks a pragmatic rather than a semantic status. Following are some examples of its use:

- (3.59) a. *dzə-ŋuən*i* qa the:-ta kə-ji-wa.*
 affair-TOP 1sg 3sg-LOC thus-say-3sgU:1sg
 ‘I told him about the affair.’
- b. *təiqua-la upu-bəs-la-ha-ŋuən*i* ci*
 inside-LOC uncle-snake-DEF:one-pl-TOP liquor
tʃhe-kəi-stū, . . . (T4:57-58)
 drink-INF:HS-PART
 ‘Uncle Snake and others are drinking inside, . . .’
- c. *tša-tau-tu-ŋuən*i* kapətʃ-tou-ŋuən*i**
 this:one-time-LNK-TOP orphan-DEF:one:CL-TOP
tša-χsa⁴wu gul fie-se-kei-stu . . . (T3:79-80)
 this:one-few:all friend DIR-make-INF:HS-PART
 ‘This time, the orphan had made friends with all these, . . .’
- d. *təiqua-la-ŋuən*i* tɕy-le:-ŋuən*i* ʋoi-kə-m*
 inside-LOC-TOP chicken-DEF:CL-TOP call-go-NOM
he-ci-kui-stū, . . . (T4:25-26)
 DIR-send-INF:HS-PART
 ‘(Uncle Snake) while inside sent the chicken to come and call, . . .’

There may even be three topics marked in a clause, as in (3.60) (in this case the first topic is marked by position alone, while the second and third are marked by the topic marker):

- (3.60) *ma:-le:-wu a-s-meqa-ŋuən*i* ŋiu-ŋuən*i**
 Mom-DEF:CL-AGT one-day-each-TOP wool-TOP
a-s pan-tcin-wu pan-tcin tə-tʃhə-ŋi . . .
 one-day half-kilo-INST half-catty DIR-weigh-ADV
 ‘Each day Mom (takes) half a catty of wool and weighs it (to make yarn balls).’

The topic may also be a clausal complement or complex noun phrase in sentence-initial position. In this case it may or may not be followed by the topic marker:

- (3.61) a. *[ʔũ pəs ma-k] fie-mə-si.*
 2sg today NEG-go DIR-NEG-allow
 ‘You cannot not go today.’
 (lit.: ‘Your not going is not allowed.’)
- b. *[pətsa-ŋi-zə-pə-ji-panə-la-ha]-ŋuən*i* qa*
 just.now-ADV-DIR-buy-CSM-thing-DEM:one-pl-TOP 1sg
the: de-l-wa. (< le + wə + ə)
 3sg DIR-give-3sgU:1sg
 ‘I gave him the things that were just bought.’

There is also a “double topic” construction similar to that described for Chinese and Japanese, where there is a genitive or part-whole relation between the first and second topics, and in this case it is possible to have a topic marker after the first noun phrase in the construction:⁴¹

- (3.62) *the:-ŋuən*i* səkue zdzi.*
 3sg-TOP stomach pain
 ‘His stomach hurts.’

The topic marker is often used for contrastive topics, as in (3.63) (from T6:17-18):

- (3.63) *pitc-ŋuən*i* zmətʂi spi-ʂ, qə:ʔ-ŋuən*i* juanwai zmə.*
 now-TOP emperor call-LNK before-TOP yuanwai be.named
 ‘Now he’s called emperor; in the past, he was called yuanwai.’

In a noun phrase with a numeral expression modifying the head, the topic marker can appear between the head and the numeral expression, as in (3.64):

- (3.64) *z**bə**-ŋuən*i* xsə-zi zə-p-ŋ*i* tca**ka**-la*
 yak-TOP three-CL DIR-buy-ADV cowpen-LOC
*fi**a**-zdz*y*-ŋ*i* zi-zə-kui-tcu, . . .* (T5:69-70)
 DIR-tether-ADV exist-CAUS-INF:HS-PART
 ‘(He) had three yaks (he) had bought and tethered in the cowpen.’

In the sections to follow, we will state whether the noun phrase representing the particular role being discussed can be followed by the topic marker or not.

3.2.2. *Single direct argument of an intransitive verb*

The single direct argument of an intransitive verb is the only argument that is semantically necessary for the verb to be used in a clause. All other arguments are oblique arguments, are optional, and when present in a clause, are marked by some sort of relational morphology showing their non-direct status. The direct argument of an intransitive verb can be of at least two different semantic types, actor (including experiencer) or undergoer. In Qiang clauses where there is an intransitive verb, the single direct argument always precedes the verb, and is often in sentence-initial position, but may be preceded by a temporal or locative adverb(ial). There is no word order difference based on information structure (as is found, e.g. in Italian and Chinese, where the direct argument of an intransitive verb can occur after rather than before the verb if that argument is not topical). The single direct argument of an intransitive verb is generally a topic, and so can be followed by the topic marker /*ɥuən̩i*/, but no semantically based marking can be used, whether the argument is an actor or an undergoer (e.g., neither the agentive marker /-wu/ or the dative /-ta/ can be used with the single argument of an intransitive verb, though the locative and ablative markers can be used for a second non-direct argument). There is no difference whether the noun phrase is a pronoun or a lexical noun. Following are examples of agentive and non-agentive arguments:

Agentive:

- (3.65) *qa tɕəu-la ka:* (*< kə*)
 1sg home-LOC go:PRS:1sg
 ‘I’m going to go home.’
- (3.66) *the: jəts-le:-ta o-zu.* (*< dzu*)
 3sg chair-DEF:CL-LOC DIR-sit
 ‘He sat down on the chair.’

- (3.67) a. *the: tcy-ta-wu* *fiə-χsu.*
 3sg building-LOC-ABL DIR-jump
 ‘He jumped from a/the building.’
- b. *the: tsə-ka* *βlu.*
 3sg water-LOC swim
 ‘He is swimming in the river.’

Non-agentive:

- (3.68) a. *khuəβl-le:* *die-ʒe.*
 puppy-DEF:CL DIR-die
 ‘The puppy died.’
- (3.69) a. *me:ʹ* *de-ci!*
 rain DIR-fall
 ‘It’s raining!’
- b. *mə* *χqa.*
 sky clear
 ‘The sky is clear.’
- c. *məsi* *ə-tsy.*
 sun DIR-shine
 ‘The sun is out.’
- (3.70) *the: tcy-ta-wu* *dzəq* *fiə-lə.*
 3sg building-LOC-ABL floor DIR-come
 ‘He fell down from a/the building.’

It is also possible to have a non-referential/impersonal subject, but again the marking (i.e., the lack of postposition, the word order) is the same:

- (3.71) *mi* *wu-ηua,* *mo-wu-ηua?*
 people many-Q NEG-many-Q
 ‘Are there many people?’

One subtype of intransitive clause is an exception to the rule given above in that it has two unmarked noun phrases. This is the double-topic construction mentioned in §3.2.1, for example (3.62), above, and (3.72a-b), below. Even though there are two unmarked noun phrases,

the clause is intransitive, as the primary topic of the clause is not acting on the secondary topic, but instead has a possessive relation with it. Although there is a possessive relation between the referents of, for example, [the:] ‘he’ and [qəpatʂ] ‘head’ in (3.72a) (the two topics), no genitive marking can appear between the two noun phrases, so they cannot be considered a single noun phrase. The latter noun phrase, while part of a comment about the primary topic, also cannot be considered part of the predication, as if an adverb is added to the predicate, it would follow the secondary topic, not precede it.

- (3.72) a. *the: qəpatʂ zdzi.* b. *the: ku ʂa.*
 3sg head ache 3sg stomach runs
 ‘He has a headache.’ ‘He has diarrhea.’

3.2.3. *Actor of a transitive verb*

The actor of a transitive or ditransitive verb is the argument that performs, either volitionally or not, or experiences the action or state specified by the verb. Depending on the semantics of the verb and the context, the actor may be agentive, or it may be non-agentive, i.e., a force, an effector, or an experiencer. In both transitive and ditransitive clauses, if the word order is <Actor-(Recipient/Goal)-Undergoer-Verb>, that is, when the actor is the topic, then the noun phrase representing the actor need not take any agentive marking. With few exceptions, this is true regardless of whether the noun phrase is a noun or a pronoun, or whether the referent is first, second, or third person, or whether the argument is agentive or non-agentive, and is true for all aspects. The topic marker can be used after the noun phrase, though, to emphasize the topical nature of the actor referent. The person marking on the verb generally reflects the person and number of the actor, regardless of whether the actor is agentive or non-agentive. Following are some examples:

Agentive:

- (3.73) a. *the: pautʂə tse.*
 3sg newspaper look.at/read
 ‘He is reading a/the newspaper.’
- b. *qa pautʂə tsa.* (< tse + a)
 1sg newspaper look.at/read:1sg
 ‘I am reading a/the newspaper.’
- c. *?ũ pautʂə tse-n.*
 2sg newspaper look.at/read-2sg
 ‘You are reading a/the newspaper.’
- (3.74) *qa stuha tcha.* (< tchə)
 1sg rice/food eat:1sg
 ‘I am eating.’
- (3.75) *χumtʂi zətchaq-e-ze fi-a-tʂ.*
 Xumtʂi rabbit-one-CL DIR-pierce(kill)
 ‘Xumtʂi killed a rabbit.’
- (3.76) a. *the: fa χuəla.* b. *the: sə gue.*
 3sg clothes wash 3sg firewood chop
 ‘He is washing clothes.’ ‘He is chopping firewood.’

Non-agentive:

- (3.77) a. *χumtʂi khumtʂi⁴² topu.*
 Xumtʂi Khumtʂi like
 ‘Xumtʂi likes Khumtʂi.’
- b. *qa khumtʂi topu-a.*
 1sg Khumtʂi like-1sg
 ‘I like Khumtʂi.’

- c. *ʔũ khumtsi topu-n.*
 2sg Khumtsi like-2sg
 ‘You like Khumtsi.’

- (3.78) *qa the:-tɕ-zəwa me-ɕtɕa.* (< ɕtɕe)
 1sg 3sg-GEN-word NEG-believe:1sg
 ‘I don’t believe what he says.’

- (3.79) *the: isəu pə.*
 3sg sneeze do
 ‘He sneezed.’

There is an agentive marking postposition /-wu/, but generally only when there is marked word order, or when there is a need to emphasize the agentivity of the actor, is the agentive marker used after the noun phrase representing the actor, as in the following example:

- (3.80) *the:-tɕ pi:-xsə-la sum-wu de-l-ji ŋuə.*
 3sg-GEN pen-three-CL teacher-AGT DIR-give-CSM COP
 ‘The teacher gave him three pens.’

In this example, because the noun phrase representing the actor is not in the clause-initial topic position, in order to avoid ambiguity in the assignment of actor status (especially as the actor and recipient are both third-person singular referents, so person marking on the verb is of no assistance in identifying the actor), the agentive marker /-wu/ must appear after /sum/ ‘teacher’.

Consider the following two clauses:

- (3.81) a. *χumtʂi-(wu) khumtsi zə-dzə-u.* (< dzete)
 χumtʂi-(AGT) khumtsi DIR-hit-VIS
 ‘χumtʂi hit Khumtsi.’
- b. *khumtsi χumtʂi-wu zə-dze-u.* (< dzete)
 khumtsi χumtʂi-AGT DIR-hit-VIS
 ‘Khumtsi was hit by χumtʂi.’

In (3.81a), it is not necessary to have the agentive marker after the noun phrase representing the actor. If it is used, it is to emphasize that *χumtši*, and not someone else, is the actor. In (3.81b), as the noun phrase representing the actor is not in initial position, the agentive marker must be used. (This is not a passive clause, but the English passive translation comes closest to approximating the pragmatics of the word order difference.) This agentive marker can only be used on the actor of transitive clauses; it cannot be used in intransitive clauses.

As there has been no grammaticalization of a passive construction in Qiang (in the sense of a construction in which the actor of the verb does not appear as a direct argument and the verb is intransitive), in order to take the undergoer's perspective in presenting an action, generally the noun phrase representing the undergoer will be put in the clause-initial topic position, and possibly take the topic-marking postposition.⁴³ In this case the noun phrase representing the actor must take the agentive marking, otherwise the meaning might be unclear. In this regard, compare the following three clauses:

- (3.82) a. *the: qa dzete.*
 3sg 1sg hit
 ‘He is hitting me.’
- b. *qa the:-wu zə-dze.* (*< dzete*)
 1sg 3sg-AGT DIR-hit
 ‘I was hit by him.’
- c. *the: qa-wu zə-dza.* (*< dzete*)
 3sg 1sg-AGT DIR-hit:1sg
 ‘He was hit by me.’

In some cases, even when the word order is actor-undergoer, if the flow of action is marked (e.g. a third person referent is acting on a first person referent), or if the actor is inanimate, then agent marking is often used for clarity, as in the following examples:

- (3.83) *mi-wu qa zə-dzi.*
 person-AGT 1sg DIR-hit
 ‘Somebody hit me.’

(3.84) *moxu-wu qa da-tuə-z-(sa).*
 wind-AGT 1sg DIR-fall.over-CAUS-1sgU
 ‘The wind knocked me over.’

(3.85) *tshəma-wu qa-dzoquq-ta ə-tʂ-(sa).*
 thorn-AGT 1sg-foot-LOC DIR-pierce-1sgU
 ‘A thorn pierced my foot.’

These last two examples are evidence that non-animate actors can take the agentive marker /-wu/, so the condition on the use of /-wu/ is not related to volitionality. (In these two examples there is no need to mark the number or definiteness of the actor, and the 1sg non-actor marking is not obligatory; it would be used only for emphasizing one’s affectedness.)

If on the other hand the semantic relations are clear given the nature of the referents and the action involved, then even with marked word order the agent marking is not necessary, as in the following example:

(3.86) *khuə-le: qa zə-p-ji ŋuə.*
 dog-DEF:CL 1sg DIR-buy-CSM COP
 ‘The dog was bought by me. / It was me who bought the dog.’

People buy dogs, dogs do not buy people, so even with marked word order and no agentive marking, the relationship between the two referents is still clear.

In many cases it is possible to omit the noun phrase representing the actor, particularly when the person and number of the actor and/or a non-actor animate argument are reflected on the verb (see §4.3.2). Following are some examples where there is no noun phrase representing an actor, but there is non-actor marking:

(3.87) a. *qa dze-ʂa* b. *ʔũ dze-san*
 1sg hit-1sgU 2sg hit-2sgU
 ‘I was hit (by him).’ ‘You were hit (by him).’
 c. *the: dze-w*
 3sg hit-3sgU
 ‘He was hit (by him).’

3.2.4. *Topic of a copula clause*

The nature of the initial noun phrase of an equational (identifying) or attributive copula clause is quite different from the direct argument of an intransitive verb or the actor of a transitive verb, in that it has no semantic role, only a pragmatic role, that of topic, but the formal treatment of this argument in Qiang does not differ from that of the direct argument of an intransitive verb. The noun phrase representing this referent must appear in clause-initial position, and no semantically-based postpositions can be used after the noun phrase. Only the topic marker can be used, as in (3.88) (see also (3.129) below).

- (3.88) *the:-ηuəŋi spe ηuə.*
 3sg-TOP Tibetan COP
 ‘He is a Tibetan.’

- (3.89) *qa sum ηua.* (< ηuə)
 1sg teacher COP:1sg
 ‘I am a teacher.’

- (3.90) *ləyz-tse-pen qa-tc ηuə.*
 book-this-CL 1sg-GEN COP
 ‘This book is mine.’

There is no formal difference between identificational and attributive copula clauses other than the addition of the definite marking in the case of the former. Compare (3.89) above (an attributive) with the following identificational clause:

- (3.91) *qa sum-le: ηua.* (< ηuə)
 1sg teacher-DEF:CL COP:1sg
 ‘I am the teacher.’

3.2.5. *Undergoer of a transitive verb*

The undergoer of a transitive verb is often within the focus of the information structure, and so the noun phrase representing the

undergoer often appears in the immediately preverbal focus position, following the noun phrases representing the actor and any locative and temporal adverbs. Less commonly it appears in the clause-initial topic position. In this case the noun phrase may be followed by the topic marker. Other than this, the noun phrase representing the undergoer of a transitive verb, whether it is a topic or part of the focus, is definite or indefinite, whether it is a pre-existing referent or one created by the action of the verb, generally does not take any marking of its undergoer status. (In the following examples the noun phrase representing the undergoer is underlined.)

- (3.92) *the:* *tsə-p* *xsə-p* *le-ji.*
 3sg this-year three-years exist-CSM
 ‘He is three years old this year.’
 (lit.: ‘He (now) has three years.’)
- (3.93) *the:* *qhal-xsə-zi* *sə-dzə-ji.*
 3sg steamed.bun-three-CL DIR-eat-CSM
 ‘He ate three steamed buns.’
- (3.94) *the:* *ləyz-jə-pen* *i-tsi-ji.* (< tse⁴⁴)
 3sg book-two-CL DIR-look.at/read-CSM
 ‘He read two books.’
- (3.95) *the:* *ləyz-thə-jə-pen* *i-tsi-ji.*
 3sg book-that-two-CL DIR-look.at/read-CSM
 ‘He read those two books.’
- (3.96) *the:* *ləyz-thə-jə-pen* *le’wu* *i-tsi-ji.*
 3sg book-that-two-CL all DIR-look.at/read-CSM
 ‘He read both of those two books.’
- (3.97) *ləyz-thə-jə-pen* *the:* *i-tsi-ji.*
 book-that-two-CL 3sg DIR-look.at/read-CSM
 ‘Those two books he read.’

- (3.98) *qa* *tɕymi-tɕ-qəi* *ə-ma.* (< mə)
 1sg child-GEN-voice DIR-hear:1sg
 ‘I heard a/the child’s voice.’
- (3.99) *χumtʃi* *the:-tɕ-tʃi-le:* *fi-a-təɕtɕy-ŋi*
χumtʃi 3sg-GEN-child-DEF:CL DIR-take-ADV
upu-tɕ-tɕəu-la *kə.*
 uncle-GEN-house-LOC go
 ‘χumtʃi took his son to (his) uncle’s house.’
 (lit.: ‘Taking his son (he) went to uncle’s house.’)
- (3.100) *the:-tɕ-doqu-le:* *zɔ:pu-e-ze* *de-w.* (< we)
 3sg-GEN-pants-DEF:CL hole-one-CL DIR-exist
 ‘There is now a hole in his pants.’

Non-referential/non-specific object:

- (3.101) *the:* *gue:^l-piena-la* *bi* *ce.*
 3sg road-side-LOC urine release
 ‘He’s urinating on the side of the road.’

Stimulus of a cognitive verb (T3:90-91):

- (3.102) *pə-maha-ŋuəŋi* *ʃkup-te:* *mo-qu-a.*
 day-evening-TOP orangutan-DEF:CL NEG-be.afraid-1sg
 ‘Tonight (I) am not afraid of the orangutan.’

The one exception to the lack of marking of the undergoer of a transitive verb is when the undergoer is animate and the noun phrase representing the actor does not have agentive marking, so there might be confusion of which referent is the actor and which is the undergoer. In this case the dative/allative marker /-ta/ can be used after the noun phrase representing the undergoer to disambiguate the actor from the undergoer or emphasize the undergoer, as in the following examples:

- (3.103) *the:* *qa-ta* *dze!*
 3sg 1sg-DAT hit
 ‘He is hitting me!’

(3.104) *khuə-le:* *qa-ta* *fiə-ɸdzɛ-ʂa.*
 dog-DEF:CL 1sg-DAT DIR-bite-1sgU
 ‘The dog bit me.’

(3.105) *xʂe-le:* *ʔũ-ta* *ə-tə-san.*
 bull-DEF:CL 2sg-DAT DIR-gore-2sgU
 ‘The bull gored you.’

In example (3.102) above about being afraid of the orangutan, no undergoer marking was necessary, as there is no possibility (in the story) of the orangutan being afraid of the young boy (the orphan). There is no change in the transitivity of the clause with the use of this marking (even though it is often used to mark peripheral arguments), as its use here is purely to distinguish semantic roles. While generally it is used when the agentive marking is not used, the two markers can appear in the same clause. For example, (3.103) could also have the agentive marker /-wu/ after the noun phrase representing the actor.

We can see the locative origins of this marking in examples that straddle the line between a purely locative sense and a non-actor direct argument sense, such as the following example:

(3.106) *xʂə* *khuə-le:-ta* *de-we!*
 bullet dog-DEF:CL-DAT DIR-exist
 ‘(The) bullet hit the dog!’ (as opposed to the intended target;
 lit.: ‘. . . came to be at the dog.’)

The noun phrase representing the undergoer of a ditransitive verb also takes no marking other than the topic marker (and this only if it is in clause-initial position). Its position in the clause also depends on the information structure of the clause, appearing most often in the position immediately before the verb, following the noun phrases representing the actor, any locative and temporal adverbs, and the recipient/goal. Unlike the noun phrase representing the undergoer of a mono-transitive verb, though, the noun phrase representing the undergoer of a ditransitive verb has a third possibility in terms of position: if the undergoer is neither the topic nor the focus of the information structure, the noun phrase representing it can appear before the noun phrase in the

focus position but following any other noun phrases in the clause. Following are some examples; see also the examples in §3.2.6.

- (3.107) a. *sum* *the:-tɕ* *pi:-xsə-la* *de-l*.
 teacher 3sg-GEN pen-three-CL DIR-give
 ‘The teacher gave him three pens.’
- b. *qa* *the:-ta* *ɤzə-xsə-la* *zə-pa*. (< pə)
 1sg 3sg-LOC fish-three-CL DIR-buy:1sg
 ‘I bought *three fish* from him.’
- c. *qa* *ɤzə-xsə-la* *the:-ta* *zə-pa*. (< pə)
 1sg fish-three-CL 3sg-LOC DIR-buy:1sg
 ‘I bought three fish *from him*.’

3.2.6. Goal or recipient of a ditransitive verb

Qiang formally distinguishes between two types of argument that we will call goal and recipient. The goal of an action is the referent at which an action is directed, such as a person being told something. The verb involved may be a transitive or a ditransitive verb. The recipient of an action is the referent who receives some object as a result of the action. The verb expressing such an action must be ditransitive. These two types of argument are marked by different postpositions in Qiang. The positions in the clause in which noun phrases representing these arguments can appear are the same, though. The unmarked position is between the noun phrases representing the actor and the undergoer, but it is also possible to have the noun phrase representing the goal or recipient appear in the immediately preverbal focus position or the clause-initial topic position (see examples below).

The postposition used after a noun phrase which represents a goal argument is /-ta/, the same form as one of the locative postpositions. We saw above (§3.2.5) that this form is also used in some cases for the undergoer of a transitive verb. Following are examples of its use in ditransitive clauses and of the different positions in the clause in which the noun phrase representing the goal (here underlined) can appear.

- (3.108) *the: qa-ta* *ksə-xʂə-la* *tə-χua-(sə)*.
 3sg 1sg-LOC fish-three-CL DIR-sell-1sgU
 ‘He sold me three fish.’
- (3.109) *tʂhətsə-zə-ŋuən*i** *qa* *the:-ta* *kə-ja*. (<ji)
 car-affair-TOP 1sg 3sg-LOC thus-say:1sg
 ‘I told him about the car.’
- (3.110) *qa* *the:-(ta)* *zme-z* *su-a*.
 1sg 3sg-LOC Qiang-language teach-1sg
 ‘I teach him Qiang.’

In these clauses, the only postposition that can be used after the noun phrase representing the goal is /-ta/, it is not possible to use /-tə/, the postposition used for marking a recipient. For example, were (3.108) to have /-tə/ instead of /-ta/, then the meaning would be either ‘He sold fish for me’ or ‘He sold my fish’ (see Sections 2.2.10 and 2.2.15). What is possible, at least in (3.110), is to not use any postposition after the relevant noun phrase, as the fact that the first person is the actor is clearly marked on the verb, so there would be no ambiguity even if the postposition marking the goal were to be omitted. It would even be possible to omit the noun phrase representing the actor without any problem of ambiguity, as the person and number of the actor are recoverable from the person marking. Even so, if there is a marked word order, where the noun phrase representing the goal appears in topic position with only the topic marker following, then the noun phrase representing the actor would take the agentive marker /-wu/ (see §3.2.3), as in (3.111).

- (3.111) *the:-ŋuən*i** *qa-wu* *zme-z* *su-a*.
 3sg-TOP 1sg-AGT Qiang-language teach-1sg
 ‘I teach him Qiang.’

As mentioned above, the postposition used to mark a noun phrase representing a recipient argument is /-tə/, the same form as the genitive postposition. Consider the clause in (3.112):

- (3.112) *sum* *the:-tɕ* *pi:-xsə-la* *de-l*.
 teacher 3sg-GEN pen-three-CL DIR-give
 ‘The teacher gave him three pens.’

While the recipient marker has the same form as the genitive marker, in this example [*the:-tɕ*] and [*pi:-xsə-la*] are two noun phrases (the word order could be changed with [*pi:-xsə-la*] appearing in topic position, and native speakers feel they are two separate arguments, not one possessed entity). In this clause, the noun phrase representing the recipient argument can only take the postposition */-tɕ/*, it cannot take */-ta/*. Comparing (3.108) and (3.112), we can see that even though the person to whom something is sold is often treated in grammatical theories as a semantic recipient, the formal treatment of this argument in the grammar of Qiang is not the same as the recipient of the verb ‘to give’. Yet there are some situations where the relevant referent can be profiled (presented) in the clause as either a goal or as a recipient, and therefore either */-ta/* or */-tɕ/* can be used, but the meanings of the resulting two clauses will differ somewhat. Compare (3.113a) and (3.113b).

- (3.113) a. *χumtʂi-wu tsi-le:* *lisɿ-ta* *tə-γzə*.
 χumtʂi-AGT daughter-DEF:CL Li.Si-LOC DIR-marry.off
 ‘Xumtʂi married off his daughter to Li Si.’
- b. *χumtʂi-wu tsi-le:* *lisɿ-tɕ* *tə-γzə*.
 χumtʂi-AGT daughter-DEF:CL Li.Si-GEN DIR-marry.off
 ‘Xumtʂi gave his daughter in marriage to Li Si.’

In (3.113a), the emphasis is on Li Si as the goal of the action, not as recipient of an object, whereas (3.113b) emphasizes the nature of Li Si as “recipient” of the woman in marriage.

If a true genitive phrase occurs in a clause with a recipient, then there can be two tokens of the same marker, but with different meanings, as in (3.114).

- (3.114) *qa* *the:-tɕ-fa-le:* *the:-tɕ* *de-l-a*.
 1sg 3sg-GEN-cothing-DEF:CL 3sg-GEN DIR-give-1sg
 ‘I gave him his clothes.’

3.2.7. *Standard of a comparative construction*

In a comparative construction, the usual word order is as follows: [NP_{entity being compared} | NP_{standard of comparison-COMP} | Predicate]. The noun phrase representing the standard of comparison in a comparative construction follows the clause-initial topic noun phrase, and is followed by the comparative marker. In positive clauses, the comparative marker is /-s/, while in negative clauses it is /-ŋiki/. The clause initial noun phrase can take the topic marker, and actor person marking on the verb, if there is any, reflects the person and number of this topic. It is also possible to have non-actor person marking reflecting a salient standard of comparison, as in (3.115). (In the examples below, the standard of comparison is underlined.)

- (3.115) *the:-ŋuəŋi* *qa-s* *ba-(ša).*
 3sg-TOP 1sg-COMP big-1sgU
 ‘He is bigger than me.’

- (3.116) *qa* *ʔũ-ŋiki* *ma-wa.* (< ba)
 1sg 2sg-COMP NEG-big:1sg
 ‘I am not as big as you are.’

- (3.117) *qa* *the:-s* *tçe-fia.* (< phi)
 1sg 3sg-COMP CON-white:1sg
 ‘I am lighter (in color) than him (a lot lighter).’

It is not possible, as it is in some other Tibeto-Burman languages, to change the order of the two noun phrases in a comparative construction, even if the topic marker is used after the fronted standard of comparison:

- (3.118) **the:-s-ŋuəŋi* *qa* *tçe-fia.*
 3sg-COMP-TOP 1sg CON-white:1sg

Where long phrases or clauses are compared, only the referent(s) that differs between the two things or actions being compared need be mentioned in the standard of comparison:

- (3.119) *ʔũ-tɕ-tɕiʔa-le:* *the:-s* *tɕa-wa.* (< ba)
 2sg-GEN-house-DEF:CL 3sg-COMP CON-big
 ‘Your house is bigger than his.’
- (3.120) *qa-kə-s-ta* *the:-s* *tɕa-dza.*
 1sg-go-NOM-LOC 3sg-COMP CON-early
 ‘I went earlier than him.’
 (lit.: ‘When I went was earlier than (when) he (went).’)

3.2.8. Standard of an equative comparative construction

In Qiang there is no way to say one referent is ‘the same as’ some other referent, but the same meaning can be expressed by saying that one referent and another are ‘the same’ in respect to some quality. If there are two noun phrases representing the two referents, they are joined by the comitative/conjunction marker /-ŋa/ (which comes between them; see §3.2.13), to form a single large noun phrase, and so the person marking on the verb, if there is any, is plural.⁴⁵ This larger noun phrase is the topic of the construction, so can be followed by the topic marker.

- (3.121) *ʔũ-ŋa-qa* *a-qəs* *baʔ.* (< ba)
 2sg-and-1sg one-form big:1pl
 ‘You are as big as me.’ (lit.: ‘You and I are the same big.’)
- (3.122) *ʔũ-ŋa-the:-tɕ-tɕiʔua* *a-qəs* *ba-tɕi.*
 2sg-and-3sg-GEN-house one-form big-3pl
 ‘Your house is as big as his.’
 (lit.: ‘Your house and his house are the same big.’)

It is also possible to have one plural noun phrase representing the two referents:

- (3.123) a. *tɕizzi* *zuaha* *a-qəs* *weʔ.* (< we)
 1dl height one-form exist:1pl
 ‘The two of us are of the same height.’

- b. *thizzi zuaha a-qəs we-(tei).*
 3dl height one-form exist-3pl
 ‘Those two persons are of the same height.’

If, instead of the comitative/conjunction marker coming between the two noun phrases, it follows the second noun phrase, then the meaning is somewhat different, as there are then two arguments (one direct, one oblique) instead of one, and the person marking, which reflects the singular topic, is singular. Compare the following two examples:

- (3.124) *the:-ŋa-ŋile-ku: a-qəs me-w-(tei).* (< we)
 3sg-COM-3plREFL-brother one-form NEG-exist
 ‘He is different from his brother.’ (person marking is optional here)
- (3.125) *the: ŋile-tatə-ŋa a-qəs we.*
 3sg 3plREFL-father-COM one-form exist
 ‘He is very much like his father.’

In (3.124) the two referents form one plural topic. The literal meaning of the clause is ‘He and his brother do not have the same form’. In (3.125) the topic is the single third person referent, and the literal meaning is ‘He has the same form as his father’ (see §3.2.13 for more on the use of the comitative/conjunction marker).

3.2.9. *Predicate noun phrases*

Predicate noun phrases in some cases can appear without a following verb, as in (3.126) and (3.127), though in most cases the predicate noun phrase is followed by the copula, /ŋuə/, the verb /zɛmə/ ‘be called’, or the verb /pe/ ‘become’, as in (3.128) to (3.131). If the predicate noun phrase is attributive, it is often followed by the indefinite marker /ke/ plus a classifier (or the classifier is represented as a lengthened vowel on the indefinite marker: /ke:/). If it is identificational (equational), then it can be followed by the definite marker (/le/ or /te/; see discussion in §3.1.4) plus a classifier or lengthened vowel. There is no other formal difference between attributive and identifying copula clauses. The

initial noun phrase in this construction is a topic, and can take the topic marker (see §3.2.4).

- (3.126) *pəs* *xsə-çə-tç-ɸo-tçu.*
 today three-month-GEN-five-beginning
 ‘Today (is) March fifth.’
- (3.127) *khumtsi* *akua-wutçin-tçə-sətsim.*
 Khumtsi uncle-Wutçin-GEN-wife
 ‘Khumtsi is Uncle Wutçin’s wife.’
- (3.128) *the: mi* *ɲuə.*
 3sg person COP
 ‘He is a person (man).’
- (3.129) *the:-ɲuəŋi* *khumtsi* *ɲuə / zmə.*
 3sg-TOP Khumtsi COP / be.called
 ‘She is (is called) Khumtsi.’
- (3.130) *the: sum-(ke:)* *pe.*
 3sg teacher-INDEF:CL become
 ‘He became a teacher.’
- (3.131) *butşqha* *xtşampha-(ke:)* *pe.*
 caterpillar butterfly-INDEF:CL become
 ‘The caterpillar became a butterfly.’

3.2.10. Benefactive

The benefactive is the referent for whose benefit an action is performed. The noun phrase representing this referent is generally marked with the postposition /-tç/, the same form as the genitive marker and recipient marker. As the form of the clause involving a benefactive argument with this marking is sometimes the same as the genitive construction, out of context there is the possibility of ambiguity, as in (3.133) and (3.134).

- (3.132) *ʔũ qa-tɕ dzy de-zge-n-pa!*
 2sg 1sg-GEN(BEN) door DIR-open-2sg-HORT
 ‘Open the door for me!’
- (3.133) *qa ma:-tɕ kuʂy i-tʂhue-la.*
 1sg Mom-GEN(BEN) vegetable DIR-fry-REQU:1sg
 ‘Let me fry Mom’s vegetables.’ / ‘Let me fry vegetables for Mom.’
- (3.134) *ma: qa-tɕ fa ʂpetɕ.*
 Mom 1sg-GEN(BEN) clothing sew
 ‘Mom is sewing my clothes,’ / ‘Mom is sewing clothes for me.’

As with the use of this marker for the recipient sense (see §3.2.6), native speakers feel, for example in (3.132), with a benefactive meaning, that the speaker and the door are two separate arguments, and not one argument with a possessor. The order of the noun phrases can also be reversed, such as if the door were made a topic.

Aside from the use of */-tɕ/*, it is also possible to mark a benefactive with the postposition */χua-ŋi/* ‘in order to, in place of, for, for the sake of’. (*/χua/* can be used by itself, but generally the adverbial marker */ŋi/* is used together with it.)

- (3.135) *the: qa-χua-ŋi sə gue-k.*
 3sg 1sg-BEN-ADV firewood chop-go
 ‘He went to chop wood for me.’
- (3.136) *tɕile tɕy:mi-le:-χua-ŋi zbotɕu-s ŋuə-ŋuə. (< wa)*
 1pl child-DEF:CL-BENADV think-NOM COP-EMPH
 ‘We should think about the child(’s benefit).’

3.2.11. Source

The type of marking that appears on a noun phrase representing a semantic source can be of three types, depending on the semantic nature of the source. If the source referent is a person, then the marking is the

locative postposition /-ta/. (In the following examples, the noun phrase representing the source is underlined.)

- (3.137) *qa-ηuəŋi* *the:-ta* *ə-ma.* (< mə)
 1sg-TOP 3sg-LOC DIR-hear:1sg
 ‘I heard it from him.’

- (3.138) *qa* *the:-ta* *ɛzə-xʂə-la* *zə-pa.* (< pə)
 1sg 3sg-LOC fish-three-CL DIR-buy:1sg
 ‘I bought three fish from him.’

If the source is the origin in time or location of an action, or is the object out of which something is made, then the marking used is the ablative postposition /-wu/.

- (3.139) *steke* *la-s-ka,* *tcetci-la-wu* *mufu*
 behind DEF:one-day-LOC everywhere-LOC-ABL smoke
tə-la-i, *tsəi-ŋike,* *mi* *lu-ji.*
 DIR-come-HS like.this-after people come-CSM
 ‘The next day, smoke could be seen coming up out of everywhere, and from that time on there were people.’
 (T1:15-16)

- (3.140) *the-χse-te:-wu* *ə-ma.* (< mə)
 that-side-DEF:CL-ABL DIR-hear:1sg
 ‘(I) heard (it) from there.’

- (3.141) *tsaq-(ta)-wu* *suəq* *i-pə-k.*
 Spring/Summer-LOC-ABL Fall/Winter DIR-arrive-go
 ‘from tsaq (Spring/Summer) up to suəq (Fall/Winter)’⁴⁶

- (3.142) *wətshi-le:* *zawə-wu* *tə-χqua-ji* *ηuə.*
 sparrow-DEF:CL stone-INST DIR-carve-CSM COP
 ‘The sparrow was carved out of a stone.’

- (3.143) *the:* *zawə-wu* *wətshi-e-ze* *tə-χqua.*
 3sg stone-INST sparrow-one-CL DIR-carve
 ‘S/he carved a stone into a sparrow.’⁴⁷

If the source is some sort of containment out of which a referent comes, then the marking is the locative postposition /-ka/.

- (3.144) *tshefu-ηuəŋi* *tshe-ka* *lu-ji* *ηuə.*
 wool-TOP sheep-LOC come-CSM COP
 ‘Wool comes from sheep.’

- (3.145) *me:¹-ηuəŋi* *zdam-ka* *lu-ji* *ηuə.*
 rain-TOP cloud-LOC come-CSM COP
 ‘Rain comes out from clouds.’

3.2.12. Instrument

The noun phrase representing an instrumental referent usually appears just before the noun phrase representing the undergoer, and after the noun phrase representing the actor, unless the instrumental noun phrase is the topic and therefore in clause-initial position. It is also possible for the instrumental noun phrase to follow the undergoer noun phrase, so that the instrumental noun phrase is in the immediately preverbal focus position. The instrumental noun phrase is marked by the postposition /wu/, the same form as the agentive and ablative markers.⁴⁸ Very often the definite marker appears between the noun and the instrumental marker if the referent is identifiable.

- (3.146) a. *qa* *κduas-te:-wu* *the:* *dzeta.* (< dzete)
 1sg hammer-DEF:CL-INST 3sg hit:1sg
 ‘I use the hammer to hit it.’
- b. *qa-ηuəŋi* *the:* *κduas-te:-wu* *dzeta.*
 1sg-TOP 3sg hammer-DEF:CL-INST hit:1sg
 ‘I use *the hammer* to hit it.’
- c. *qa* *κduas-te:-wu* *the:* *zə-me-dza.* (< dzete)
 1sg hammer-DEF:CL-INST 3sg DIR-NEG-hit:1sg
 ‘I didn’t use the hammer to hit it.’

- (3.147) *qa zawə-le:-wu* *ɸduaʂ* *ha-ŋyɔ̄-zə-ŋi*
 1sg stone-DEF:CL-INST hammer DIR-COP-CAUS-ADV
tintsə zeta. (*< zete*)
 nail pound:1sg
 ‘I used the stone as a hammer to pound in the nail.’
- (3.148) *fə-tsa-qəi-ŋuəŋi* *qa ɸosu-pi-wu* *zə-p-ji* *ŋuə.*
 clothing-this:one-CL-TOP 1sg fifty-CL-INST DIR-buy-CSM COP
 ‘This item of clothing I bought with fifty dollars.’

3.2.13. Comitative, conjunction

A referent in a comitative relation with another referent is represented using one of two constructions: either the two noun phrases representing the two referents are conjoined together in a single large noun phrase with the comitative/conjunction marker /-ŋa/ between them, or one noun phrase is made the topic, and the second noun phrase is made an oblique argument followed by the comitative/conjunction marker. These two constructions express slightly different meanings: in the first case, the meaning is that the two referents are doing something together ((3.149)-(3.150)), whereas in the second the meaning is that one referent (the referent represented by the noun phrase in topic position) does something ‘with’, or ‘follows’, the second referent in doing something, similar to the difference between *John and Mary went to the store* and *John went to the store with Mary* ((3.151)).

- (3.149) *mə-ŋa-ɣlu-jə-tʂ-ŋuəŋi,* *zuamə-ɸu-o-zgu-ta*
 brother-COM-sister-two-CL-TOP cypress-tree-one-CL-LOC
i-pi-ɣua-ŋi, *fio-mu-xtcu-wei.* (T1:2-4)
 DIR-hide-because-ADV DIR-NEG-burn-INF:HS
 ‘Because the brother and sister hid in a cypress tree, they did not get burned.’
- (3.150) *mutsitʂu-ŋa-tugantʂu* *zəpəq-ta* *fio-lu-a:-ji.* (T2:1)
 Mutsitʂu-COM-Tugantʂu earth-LOC DIR-come-PRS-CSM
 ‘Mutsitʂu and Tugantʂu wanted to come to earth.’

- (3.151) *qa khumtsi-ŋa tiantə-ʋa ka:*
 1sg Khumtsi-COM store-LOC go:PRS:1sg
 ‘I am going to go to the store with Khumtsi.’

Compare these structures with the equational clauses presented in §3.2.8, repeated below.

- (3.152) a. *the:-ŋa-themle-tatə a-qəs we-(təi).*
 3sg-COM-3pl-daddy one-form exist-3pl
 ‘He and his father are the same.’
- b. *the: themle-tatə-ŋa a-qəs we.*
 3sg 3pl-father-COM one-form exist
 ‘He is a lot like his father.’

The marker /ŋa/ is also used for certain arguments of certain verbs (e.g. the stimuli of some cognition verbs), such as in the examples below:

- (3.153) *ʔiʔi-ŋa tɕe-khue.*
 2sgREFL-COM NEG.IMP-upset
 ‘Don’t be mad at yourself.’
- (3.154) *kapətʂ-tou . . . ʎa-le:-ŋa*
 orphan-DEF:one:CL needle-DEF:CL-COM
e-tʂepe-kəi-tɕu. (T3:5-10)
 DIR-meet-INF:HS-PART
 ‘The orphan . . . met (with) a needle.’
- (3.155) *ʔũ-ŋa fiə-sə-ŋi ɕtci-kuə na-wa.*
 2sg-COM DIR-know-ADV heart-base good-very
 ‘I am very happy to know (meet) you.’

While /ŋa/ can be used for the comitative sense of English *with*, there is no use of this marker with, for example, a negative prefix for the privative sense of English *without*. A possessive structure with a negated possessive verb (see §3.2.14 below) must be used to express a privative meaning. See also §5.4 for more examples of coordination.

3.2.14. *Possessor in a possessive clause*

In a clause in which the predication expresses possession, the form that the possessor noun phrase takes depends on the type of relationship involved (temporary possession or ownership) and on the nature of the possessed referent. The verb involved in all cases is one of the existential verbs (see §4.2.4). If the relationship is inalienable possession and the referent is something that does not normally exist apart from the possessor, such as a body part, then the clause takes the form of a simple existential clause, and the possessor appears as a genitive possessor of the body part in a single noun phrase with the body part, and the verb is intransitive (with that one noun phrase as its sole argument), as in (3.156a). The person marking on the verb reflects the person and number of the possessor, not the possessed. If instead the relationship is one of temporary physical possession, and not ownership, and the referent is able to exist independently of the possessor, then the noun phrase representing the (temporary) possessor takes the locative/dative marker /-ta/, as in (3.156b). Here again the verb is intransitive, with the noun phrase representing the possessed referent as the single direct argument in an existential clause, but with the noun phrase representing the possessor appearing as an oblique argument and the person marking reflecting the person and number of the possessed referent rather than those of the possessor (inanimates are unmarked).

- (3.156) a. *qa-dzoqu-ji-tua wa.* (< we)
 1sg-leg-two-CL exist:1sg (connected to main entity)
 ‘I have two legs.’ (lit.: ‘My two legs exist.’)
- b. *?ũ-dzoku-le: qa-ta şə.* (inanimate)
 2sg-key-DEF:CL 1sg-LOC exist
 ‘Your key is at my place.’ / ‘I have your key.’

If the situation involves ownership of an object which is not part of the person (i.e. is not physically inalienable, including other people, such as in kinship relations), then the causative suffix (see §4.2.2) is used with the verb of possession to make it transitive. The noun phrases representing the possessor and the possessed referent then are both

direct arguments of the verb, and so the possessor does not take any semantic case marking, as in (3.157)-(3.159).

(3.157) *khumtsi dzəgy kən a-ha sə-z.* (inanimate)
 Khumtsi money very one-pl exist-CAUS
 ‘Khumtsi has a lot of money.’

(3.158) *khumtsi tutʃ-ɣzə-zi zi-z.* (animate)
 Khumtsi younger.brother-four-CL exist-CAUS
 ‘Khumtsi has four younger brothers.’

(3.159) *the: səf-a-ha we-z.* (connected to main entity)
 3sg tree-one-pl exist-CAUS
 ‘He has some trees.’

Verbs of possession/existence differ with the type of noun possessed (see §4.2.4; the type of possessed noun is given at the right margin of each example). There is no difference between present and past possession, and there are no nouns that are obligatorily possessed. There is also no difference in the construction based on whether the possessor is represented by a pronoun, a proper noun or common noun.

Aside from the verbs given above, which are inherently intransitive and have both existential and possessive uses, there is one verb, /qəqe/, which is inherently transitive and used only for possession, and particularly for personal ownership of some important or valuable entity, as in (3.160a-c). With this verb the noun phrase representing the possessor always is a direct argument, and does not take any semantic case marking.

(3.160) a. *?ũ ʃku qusu qəqe-n.*
 2sg gold much have-2sg
 ‘You have a lot of gold.’

b. *qupu tɕymi ʋua-tʃ qəqe.*
 3sg child five-CL have
 ‘S/he has five children.’

- c. *qa tshe a-wy qəqa.* (< qəqe)
 1sg sheep one-flock have:1sg
 ‘I have a flock of sheep.’

There is no preposition that can be used with the possessive sense of English ‘with’, as in ‘The man with the knife’, or ‘the man without the knife’; instead a relative clause using a possessive verb must be used.

- (3.161) a. *xtšepi sə-z-əm* (inanimate)
 knife exist-CAUS-NOM
 ‘(the) person with (the) knife’
- b. *xtšepi ma-s-z-əm* (inanimate)
 knife NEG-exist-CAUS-NOM
 ‘(the) person without (the) knife’

Possession of a quality involves the same structure as possession of an object; the use of a relative clause structure (see §5.2) is also possible ((3.162c)).

- (3.162) a. *the: qhu-s we.* (connected to main entity)
 3sg hate-NOM exist
 ‘S/he is very mischievous.’
- b. *the: qəpatš le.* (inside vessel)
 3sg head exist
 ‘S/he is very brainy.’ (cf. English *She’s got a head on her shoulders*)
- c. *ətšimi na-tə mi*
 heart good-GEN person
 ‘(a) good hearted person’

3.2.15. Genitive

A genitive noun phrase appears before the noun it modifies, and can be followed by the genitive marker /-tə(ə)/. When the relationship between

two nouns in a genitive relationship is clear, as in most cases of inalienable possession, the genitive marker is not needed. Generally the closer the relationship between the possessor and the thing possessed, the less likely the genitive marker will be used. With kinship relations, usually the plural pronoun of the possessor is used (to be more polite; see §3.1.2), and no genitive marker is used, but if the singular is used, then the genitive marker is often used.

- (3.163) a. *ciautsaŋ-təə puŋu* b. *the:-tc pi:*
 Little.Zhang-GEN cat 3sg-GEN pen
 ‘Little Zhang’s cat’ ‘his/her pen’
- (3.164) a. *qa-tc ləyz* b. *?ũ-tc tciβa*
 1sg-GEN book 2sg GEN house
 ‘my book’ ‘your house’
- (3.165) a. *khuə sikue* b. *səf qə-sta*
 dog tail tree head-place
 ‘(a) dog’s tail’ ‘top half of a tree’

Where the noun modified by the genitive phrase is a common noun (not a pronoun or proper name), and the noun phrase is identifiable, the noun phrase can take definite marking, as in the following example:

- (3.166) *ciautsaŋ-təə-puŋu-le:* *tə-zdzi.*
 Little.Zhang-GEN-cat-DEF:CL DIR-sick
 Little Zhang’s cat is sick.

The genitive postposition is also used for some temporal phrases that modify nouns:

- (3.167) *tse: nəp-tc-pautsə ŋuə.*
 this:CL last.year-GEN-newspaper COP
 ‘This is last year’s newspaper.’

We have seen that the genitive marker is used for recipient (§3.2.6) and benefactive (§3.2.10) arguments, and for some nominalizations/relative

clauses (e.g. exx. (3.2) and (3.4)—see §5.2 for more on relative clauses).

3.2.16. Whole-part relations

Aside from the whole-part relationships discussed in Section 3.2.15, above, such as ‘dog’s tail’, etc., there are no expressions for ‘among’, ‘of’ (as in ‘two of (some set)’ or ‘a part of (some set)’ or ‘none of (some set)’). If the whole of the whole-part relation is mentioned, it usually is in topic position and takes the locative postposition meaning ‘location within some sort of containment’ ((3.168a-b)), unless the part is all of the whole, as in (3.169). If the whole is not mentioned, the relevant part can be made the topic, as in (3.170a-b). A nominalized structure is often used when the part equals zero ((3.171)).

(3.168) a. *themle-ka xsə-zi kə-s ηuə.*
 3pl-LOC three-CL go-NOM COP
 ‘From among them, three people must go.’

b. *qhal-bua-zi-ka qa ji-zi sə-dza.* (< dzə)
 steamed.bun-five-CL-LOC 1sg two-CL DIR-eat:1sg
 ‘I ate two of the five steamed buns.’

(3.169) *themle wu stuaha sə-tə-jy-(təi).* (< tchə)
 3pl all rice/food DIR-eat-ASP-3pl
 ‘They have all eaten.’

(3.170) a. *tʃi-ji-tʃ-ηuəŋi u-tcu-s me-z i-ji-(təi).*
 boy-two-CL-TOP DIR-see-NOM NEG-exist-CSM-3pl
 ‘Two of the boys (among them) have disappeared.’

b. *tʃi-a-ha-ηuəŋi u-tcu-s me-z i-ji-(təi).*
 boy-one-pl-TOP DIR-see-NOM NEG-exist-CSM-3pl
 ‘Some of the boys have disappeared.’

- (3.171) *stuaha* *sə-tɕ-əm*⁴⁹ *me-zi.* (< tɕhə)
 rice/food DIR-eat-NOM NEG-exist
 ‘No one has eaten.’

3.2.17. *Price, value*

When a noun phrase representing the price/value of a referent is added to a clause as an oblique argument, if it is marking the amount of money used to buy an item, it can be marked by the instrumental postposition /-wu/, as in (3.172), below, or it can take the locative marker /-ka/. If it is marking how much something sold for, it may not take any postposition, or it may take the locative postposition, as in (3.173). There seems to be a relationship between the completion or not of the action and the marking on the noun phrase representing the price/value involved, in that when it is completed, /-wu/ or /-ka/ can be used, but if the action is not completed, then no marking is used. In (3.174) no marking is possible because the auxiliary verb marks it as a state rather than a completed action. Without the auxiliary verb, /-wu/ or /-ka/ could be used.

- (3.172) *fə-tsa-qəi-ŋuən̩i* *qa* *kosu-pi-wu* *zə-p-ji* *ŋuə.*
 clothes-this:one-CL-TOP 1sg fifty-CL-INST DIR-buy-CSM COP
 ‘I bought this piece of clothing for 50 dollars.’
- (3.173) *fə-tha-qəi-ŋuən̩i* *qupu* *kosu-pi-(ka)* *χua.*
 clothes-that:one-CL-TOP 3sg fifty-CL-LOC sell
 ‘S/he is selling that piece of clothing for fifty dollars.’
- (3.174) *pi-tsa-la* *e-khe-pi* *ləla* *dzə.*
 pen-this:one-CL one-hundred-CL exchange can
 ‘This pen is worth one hundred dollars.’

If the price/value is a direct argument of the verb, then it does not take any postpositional marking, as in (3.175).

- (3.175) *fā-tha-qəi-ŋuən̩i* *ʁosu-pi* *lu*.
 clothes-that:one-CL-TOP fifty-CL worth
 ‘That piece of clothing is worth fifty dollars.’

3.2.18. *Extent, distance*

The extent of an action, or the distance covered by an action, is generally expressed by a preverbal adverbial with no adverbial or temporal/locative marking.

- (3.176) *qa* *dza:-tɕəky* *wu* *the:* *dza*.
 1sg lunch-before all 3sg chase:1sg
 ‘I was chasing him/her all morning.’

- (3.177) *hotɕu-tʂan-ti-wi-tɕ-səf*
 ten-zhàng(CL)-DIR-tall-GEN-tree
 ‘a ten-zhang⁵⁰ tall tree’

- (3.178) *ʁua-stu-li-dzə-tɕ-gue:ʰ*
 five-thousand-lǐ(CL)-long-GEN-road
 ‘a distance (road) of five thousand li’

3.2.19. *Inclusion, exclusion, addition*

To express the idea ‘not only/aside from X but also Y’, [me-tɕhi] ‘not only’ is used after the X argument, which is the topic of the sentence, as in the following example:

- (3.179) *khumtsi* *me-tɕhi* *e-yleʰwu* *lu-ji-(tɕi)*.
 Khumtsi NEG-only one-pl:all come-CSM-3pl
 ‘Not just Khumtsi, but everyone came.’

If this sentence has a negative predicate phrase, then it means ‘all the people, including Khumtsi, didn’t come’:

- (3.180) *khumtsi me-tchi e-yle'wu mo-lu-ji-(tci).*
 Khumtsi NEG-only one-pl:all NEG-come-CSM-3pl
 'None of the people, not even Khumtsi, came.'

To express the concept 'except for X', then [ma-ŋyɔ̃-tci] ('not' + COP + exception marker) or the exception marker [tci ~ ji ~ jə] alone is used after the noun phrase, and the verb is not negated. The same structure, but with the verb negated, is used to express 'only X' (i.e. 'except for X, there is nothing else'; cf. Japanese *X sika nai* [X aside.from not.have/exist] 'there is only X'). Compare the following two examples:

- (3.181) *khumtsi ma-ŋyɔ̃-ji e-yle'wu lu-ji-(tci).*
 Khumtsi NEG-COP-EXC one-pl:all come-CSM-3pl
 'Except for Khumtsi, everyone came.'

- (3.182) *khumtsi ma-ŋyɔ̃-ji e-yle'wu mo-lu-ji-(tci).*
 Khumtsi NEG-COP-EXC one-pl:all NEG-come-CSM-3pl
 'No one came except Khumtsi / Only Khumtsi came.'

Following are more examples of the 'only X' usage:

- (3.183) *qa ylu-o-u-tci me-zɿi.*⁵¹ (3sg person marking)
 1sg younger.sister-one-CL-EXC NEG-exist
 'I only have one younger sister.'
 (lit.: 'Aside from my younger sister, there is no one.')

- (3.184) *qa zdzyta: ma-ŋyɔ̃-tci ma-ka.* (< kə)
 1sg Chengdu:LOC NEG-COP-EXC NEG-go:1sg
 'I only go to Chengdu.'
 (lit.: 'I don't go anyplace that is not Chengdu.')

Either [maŋyɔ̃-tci] or [tci ~ ji ~ jə]⁵² alone are possible, but the former is more emphatic. Compare the following two examples:

- (3.185) a. *qa fa-a-qəi-tci ma-ʂə-zɿa.* (< zə)
 1sg clothes-one-CL-EXC NEG-exist-CAUS:1sg
 'I only have one piece of clothing.'

- b. *qa fa-a-qəi ma-ŋyɔ̃-tɕi ma-ʂə-zɑ.* (< zɕə)
 1sg clothes-one-CL NEG-COP-EXC NEG-exist-CAUS:1sg
 ‘I only have one piece of clothing.’

If the noun phrase that precedes the exception marker is a time phrase, then the expression can have the meaning ‘only then’ or ‘until’:

- (3.186) *təp-ŋi-jə dzə me-we.* (no reference to person)
 tomorrow-ADV-EXC thing NEG-exist
 ‘I’m free (there is nothing) until tomorrow.’

This same structure, when used with the phrase [me-tchi] ‘not want’, has the meaning ‘can, be able to’.

- (3.187) *mutu su-ji-(wa), tɕile kə-jə me-tchi-ji.*
 sky bright-CSM-RCA 1pl go-EXC NEG-want-CSM
 ‘It’s daybreak; we can go.’

There is also a somewhat metaphorical use of this construction to mean ‘just X’ as in English *I’m just a kid*. In Qiang we have the following example from the story “An Orphan”:

- (3.188) *qa ep lə me-zɕi, əw lə me-zɕi,*
 1sg father also NEG-exist mother also NEG-exist
kapətʂ-kou-jə ma-ŋua. (T3:46-48)
 orphan-INDEF:one:CL-EXC NEG-COP:1sg
 ‘I have no father and no mother, I am just an orphan.’

To express ‘X, in addition to Y’, then a comitative structure (see §3.2.13) is used, as in the following example:

- (3.189) *mi-xsə-tʂə-ŋɑ-khumtsi lu-ji-(tɕi).*
 people-three-CL-and-Khumtsi come-CSM-3pl
 ‘In addition to Khumtsi, three people came.’

3.2.20. *Locative, directional phrases*

A noun phrase representing a locative referent may be marked in a number of ways. Noun phrases representing some large locations, such as cities, and some locational nouns, can appear without a locative postposition for unmarked location in that city or place. Most noun phrases representing locative referents require one of four types of locative postposition. The unmarked locative postpositions are /-ta/ and /-la/. Both of these postpositions also can have the meaning of an allative postposition, depending on the context. In the case of allative meaning, then the use of the locative postposition with the names of cities, etc. is not optional. Both these locative postpositions can be (though are not necessarily) used with the ablative postposition /-wu/ to form a more specific ablative (e.g. (3.191b)). The difference between /-la/ and /ta/ is that /-la/ is more often used with bisyllabic place names or locational nouns, while /-ta/ is more often used with monosyllabic place names or locational nouns, though there are many common exceptions to this generalization, such as /təu-la/ ‘at home’.⁵³ It is also possible in some cases for the locative postposition to appear as a lengthened vowel on the noun representing the location, e.g. /zdzyta-la ~ zdzyta:/ ‘in/to Chengdu’. The locational nouns also take the locative markers; /məq/ ‘top’ and /zəkʏ/ ‘between’ take /-ta/, while the others all take /-la/ (see also below). The locative postpositions are also used for non-direct arguments of certain verbs, as in (3.194b) and (3.202c), below. Following are some examples of the use of /-la/ and /-ta/:

- (3.190) a. *petcin-(la) zi* b. *petcin-la kə*
 Beijing-LOC exist Beijing-LOC go
 ‘(someone) is in Beijing’ ‘go to Beijing’
- (3.191) a. *təu-la* b. *təu-la-wu*
 home-LOC family-LOC-ABL
 ‘at home’ ‘from home’
- (3.192) *the: tɕikua-le:-ta da-qa.*
 3sg house-DEF:CL-LOC DIR-go:1sg
 ‘I went to his/her house.’

- (3.193) a. *bəiχa tʃuatsə-le:-məq-ta la.*
housefly table-DEF:CL-above-LOC fly
‘A fly is flying above the table.’
- b. *bəiχa tʃuatsə-le:-ʃqəl-la zi.*
housefly table-DEF:CL-under-LOC exist
‘A fly is under the table.’
- (3.194) a. *pi-le: tʃuatsə-le:-ta ʃə.*
pen-DEF:CL table-DEF:CL-LOC exist
‘The pen is on the table.’
- b. *the: za ka bələ-s-ta he-the-wa.*
3sg land LOC do/work-NOM-LOC DIR-capable-very
‘She is very good at working in the fields.’

It is also possible for noun phrases representing human referents to take the locative marker /ta/. Depending on the context, the meaning is either that of an undergoer or dative argument (see Sections 3.2.5 and 3.2.6), or that of a location associated with the human referent(s), as in the following example:

- (3.195) *qa themle-ta ja.* (< je)
1sg 3pl-LOC live/stay:1sg
‘I live at (am staying at) their place.’

The locational nouns /steke/ ‘behind’, /məq/ ‘top, above’, /zɛkɥ/ ‘between, center’, /ʃqəl/ ‘below’, /piena/ ‘near, (be)side’, and /qə:ʔ/ ‘before’ do not require the genitive marker when in a genitive relation with a noun (e.g. /tɕiɕua-le:-piena/ ‘beside the house’, lit.: ‘the house’s side’). Use of the locative postposition with bisyllabic locational nouns is optional, but monosyllabic locational nouns must take a locative marker.

- (3.196) a. *ʃqəl-la kə*
under-LOC go
‘go under’
- b. *zɛkɥ-ta*
between-LOC
‘between (two things)’

- (3.197) a. *ʋua-la zi*
 out-LOC exist
 ‘(a person) is outside’
- b. *tɛiʋua-le:-piena zi*
 house-DEF:CL-near exist
 ‘(a person) is near the house’
- (3.198) *tɛiʋua-le:-piena-la kə*
 house-DEF:CL-nearby-LOC go
 ‘go to the area near the house’
- (3.199) a. *tʂhɛtsə-le:-qe:¹-la zi*
 car-DEF:CL-before-LOC exist
 ‘(a person) is in front of the car’
- b. *tʂhɛtsə-le:-steke-la zi*
 car-DEF:CL-behind-LOC exist
 ‘(a person) is in back of the car’
- (3.200) a. *tʂuatsə-le:-piena-la zi*
 table-DEF:CL-nearby-LOC exist
 ‘(a person) is beside the table’
- b. *ʋopu-le:-ta da-qa*
 mountain-DEF:CL-LOC DIR-go
 ‘go over the mountain’
- (3.201) a. *the-xʂ-ta*
 that-side-LOC
 ‘on that side’
- b. *the:-xʂ-ta*
 that-side-LOC
 ‘on that side (farther away)’

The locative postposition /-ʋa/ generally has an inessive, illative or relative meaning, i.e. it marks containment in some sort of vessel or container or movement in or out of one. This postposition can also be used together with the ablative postposition /-wu/ to make the relative sense more explicit (see ex. (3.206a)).

- (3.202) a. *pankoŋsə-ʋa zi*
 office-LOC exist
 ‘(a person) is in the office’

- b. *pankoŋsə-ɓa ə-qa*
 office-LOC DIR-go
 ‘enter the office’
- c. *the: ləyz su-ɓa tshimpe-wa.*
 3sg book study-LOC smart-very
 ‘She is very good at her studies.’
 (lit.: ‘She is smart in her studies.’)

The ablative postposition is the same form as the agentive and instrumental postposition, /-wu/. It can be used alone, or with one of the other locative postpositions introduced above.

- (3.203) a. *tcikua-le:-piena-wu lu*
 house-DEF:CL-nearby-ABL come
 ‘come from nearby the house’
- b. *petcin-wu*
 Beijing-ABL
 ‘from Beijing’
- (3.204) a. *məq-ta-wu la*
 above-LOC-ABL fly
 ‘fly from above’
- b. *tse-xse-wu da-qa*
 this-side-ABL DIR-go
 ‘go this way’
- (3.205) a. *the-xse-wu zə-la*
 that-side-ABL DIR-come
 ‘came from that direction’
- b. *sqəl-la-wu lu*
 below-LOC-ABL come
 ‘coming from below’

- (3.206) a. *pankoŋsə-ʋa-wu ha-la*
 office-LOC-ABL DIR-come
 ‘came out of the office’
- b. *tse-xʃe-wu da-qa*
 this-side-ABL DIR-go
 ‘cross over (go over from here)’

The postposition /-wu/ can also be used with a perlocative meaning, ‘along’:

- (3.207) *tsə-le:-piena-wu kə*
 water-DEF:CL-nearby-ABL go
 ‘going along the river’

3.2.21. *Temporal phrases*

A noun phrase representing a temporal referent in some cases can be unmarked, but if it takes a postposition, it takes one of the same postpositions as are used for the locative meanings, except for /-la/, or it takes the adverbial marker /-ŋi/. The form /-ta/ is used for some large time periods, such as seasons. The locative postposition /-ʋa/ is used for the meaning ‘within/at a time period’, but not for large time periods, where /-ta/ is used. The ablative postposition /-wu/ is used for temporal ‘from’. The adverbial marker /-ŋi/ (see §4.4) can be used for some adverbial time phrases. For shorter periods, /-ʋa/ and /-ŋi/ are both possible, but not /-ta/. To express the meaning ‘only then’, the exception construction is used (see §3.2.19).

- (3.208) *qa a-i pe-ŋi lu-a:.*
 1sg one-time become-ADV come-PRS:1sg
 ‘I’ll come in a minute.’
- (3.209) *qa a-p za:.* (< zi)
 1sg one-year exist:PRS:1sg
 ‘I’m going to stay one year.’ (not there yet)

- (3.210) a. *a-s-məqa*
one-day-each
'each day'
- b. *a-p-məqa*
one-year-each
'each year'
- c. *nə-s*
last-day
'yesterday'
- (3.211) a. *çintçiji⁵⁴-ka*
Monday-LOC
'on Monday'
- b. *tha-s-ka*
that:one-day-LOC
'(on) that day'
- (3.212) a. *jə-ç-ka*
two-month-LOC
'in February'
- b. *jə-çə-tç-ju-tçu-ka*
two-month-GEN-two-first-LOC
'on the second of February'
- (3.213) a. *çtçi-tian-ka*
seven-o'clock-LOC
'at seven'
- b. *zme-dze-ka*
Qiang-festival-LOC
'at the Qiang Festival'
- (3.214) a. *jitçəuwurəŋian-ka*
1958-LOC
'in 1958'
- b. *suəq-ta*
autumn/winter-LOC
'in autumn/winter'
- (3.215) a. *tsaq-ŋi*
spring/summer-ADV
'in spring/summer'
- b. *dza:-tçiku-ŋi*
lunch-before-ADV
'in the morning'
- (3.216) a. *jə-p* *pe-ji*
two-years become-CSM
'two years ago (two years have passed)'
- b. *jə-s* *pe-ŋike*
two-days become-after
'after two days'
- (3.217) *eiŋi-ŋike* *qa* *tša* *zə:* (< zçi)
next.year-after 1sg here exist:PRS:1sg
'After next year I am going to be here.'

- (3.224) *tse: tep-ŋi-bəl-s ŋuə.*
 this:CL tomorrow-ADV-make-NOM COP
 ‘This is tomorrow’s work.’

In (3.224), the genitive cannot be used, as the temporal phrase is modifying the verb of the nominalized clause (/bəl/ ‘make, do’), not a noun phrase.

Some of the locational nouns are also used in a temporal sense, such as /steke/ ‘behind’, which is used for the meaning ‘after (that time)’, and /qə:/ ‘before’, which is used for the meaning ‘before (that time)’. The latter is often used at the beginning of stories with the meaning ‘long long ago . . .’ (see ex. (3.45), above).

- (3.225) *steke-ta mi pe^ʔzə-s ŋuə-χua-ŋi, . . .*
 after-LOC person raise-NOM COP-because-ADV
 ‘Later, in order to propagate descendants, . . .’ (T1:4-5)

- (3.226) *qə:^ʔ jautsan dzemi*
 before man.eating.devil (proper name)
pe-m-le: (T6:192-193)
 become-NOM-DEF:CL
 ‘the one who had before become the man-eating devil Dzemi’

The ablative postposition /-wu/ is also used with the distal demonstrative to mean ‘aside from that’, ‘from that’ or ‘after that’ (T6:284 and T6:242 respectively):

- (3.227) *tcile-tc jautchiu tciu-şə, ŋiuxuan-ŋuəŋi a-tc,*
 1pl-GEN demand just-is⁵⁵ bezoar-TOP one-catty
the-wu, mudzu-ŋuəŋi a-w phə tche-wa.
 that-ABL charcoal-TOP one-pile burn(blow) want-DTV
 ‘Our demand is that we want one catty of bezoar (a kind of medicine), and after that a pile of charcoal should be burned.’

- (3.228) *tşi pe-tu, etcə-p le-ŋi ləyz*
 boy become-LNK seven-year exist-ADV book
ta:-su-wa, the-wu hatşi-p le-ŋi
 DIR:INDTV-study-DTV that-ABL eleven-year exist-ADV

qa ta:-me'z-wa.

1sg DIR:INDTV-look for-DTV

'If it is a boy, (when the boy) is seven years old, have him study, after that, (when) he is eleven years old, have him come look for me.'

3.2.22. *Form-function summary of relational marking*

In the previous sections we looked at how various functions are coded in Qiang. In this section we will illustrate the functions that the different types of postpositions have. Following are the postpositions and the types of roles they mark. Two numbers are given after each function name: the first refers to an example of this type of usage given below (the relevant marker is given in bold in the examples); the second is the section of this chapter where that usage is discussed in detail.

<i>ɲuəŋi</i>	Topic (3.229), §3.2.1
<i>wu</i>	Agentive (3.230a), §3.2.3; Instrumental (3.230b), §3.2.12; Ablative (3.230c), §3.2.20; Perlative (3.230d) §3.2.20
<i>tɕ(ə)</i>	Genitive (3.231a), §3.2.15; Benefactive/Recipient (3.231b), §3.2.6, §3.2.10
<i>la</i>	Locative (3.232a), §3.2.20; Allative (3.232b) §3.2.20
<i>ta</i>	Locative (3.233a) (see also (3.235)), §3.2.20; Allative (3.233b), §3.2.20; Temporal (3.233c), §3.2.21; Goal (3.233d) §3.2.6
<i>ka</i>	Inessive/Illative/Elative (3.234a), §3.2.20; Temporal (3.234b) (see also (3.232)) §3.2.21
<i>tɕi ~ ji</i>	Exception (3.235), §3.2.19
<i>ɲa</i>	Conjunction (3.236a) (see also (3.229)), Comitative, (3.236b) §3.2.13
<i>s</i>	Comparative (positive) (3.237a), §3.2.7
<i>ɲiki</i>	Comparative (negative) (3.237b), §3.2.7
<i>ɲi</i>	Adverbial (3.238), §3.2.21, §4.4
<i>χua-(ɲi)</i>	Benefactive (3.239), §3.2.10

- (3.232) a. *qe^llotʃu-ka, mutu-la mujuqu z_uguə-zi we-i.*
 the.past-LOC heaven-LOC sun nine-CL exist-HS
 ‘In the past there were nine suns in the sky.’ (T1:1)
- b. *mutu-la tce-tse-ʃu.* (T2:12)
 heaven-LOC NEG.IMP-look-DTV
 ‘Do not look towards the heavens.’
- (3.233) a. *buzd-le:-ku-ta fia-nə-kui-təu.* (T3:115-16)
 plank.stairs-DEF:CL-foot-LOC DIR-sleep-INF:HS-PART
 ‘(The stone mortar) slept at the foot of the stairs.’
- b. *themle zəpəq-ta i-pə-l-ŋike, . . .* (T2:22)
 3pl world-LOC DIR-arrive-come-after
 ‘After they returned to the world, . . .’
- c. *steke-ta mi pe^lzə-s ŋuə-χua-ŋi, . . .*
 later-LOC people raise(child)-NOM COP-because-ADV
 ‘Later, in order to propagate descendants, . . .’ (T1:4-5)
- d. *tʃhuatsə-le: sə-ta tə-χua:-n-a?*
 table-DEF:CL who-LOC DIR-sell:PRS-2sg-Q
 ‘To whom are you going to sell the table?’
- (3.234) a. *upu-bəs-te: qha^lbue-law-ka*
 uncle-snake-DEF:CL stone.pile-DEF:one:CL-LOC
i-pə-k. (T4:18)
 DIR-arrive-go
 ‘Uncle Snake went into a stone pile’
- b. *xəs-s-ka i-me-tci-pə-l.* (T6:327-328)
 three-day-LOC DIR-NEG-CON-arrive-come
 ‘On the third day (they) had not yet come.’
- (3.235) *qa təu-la ou-tci me-zə-wa.* (< z_i)
 1sg home-LOC one:CL-EXC NEG-exist:1sg-EMPH
 ‘I am the only one at home’
 (lit.: ‘Except for me there is no one at home.’)

- (3.236) a. *mə* ***ŋa*** *ylu* *lə-zi* *i-dzi-tei*.
 older.brother COM younger.sister DEF-CL DIR-discuss-3pl
 ‘The brother and sister talked (it) over.’ (T1:5-6)
- b. *?ile-ep-te:* *lə* *tsoqpi* ***ŋa***
 2pl-father-DEF:CL also this.family COM
quəqua-s-ta-ŋuəŋi *die-ʒe-jə-ka:-ji*. (T6:336-338)
 fight-NOM-LOC-TOP DIR-die-REP-INF:PRS-CSM
 ‘When your father also fought with this person he perhaps died.’
- (3.237) a. *the:* *qa-s* *a-zə* *ti-wi*.
 3sg 1sg-COMP one-CL DIR-tall
 ‘S/he is a bit taller than I am.’ (from Huang 1998:62)
- b. *qa* *?ũ-ŋiki* *ma-wa*. (< ba)
 1sg 2sg-COMP NEG-big:1sg
 ‘I am not as big as you are.’
- (3.238) *maha-ŋi* *fiə-lu-kəpə-wa*. (T3:24)
 night-ADV DIR-come-HABIT-EMPH
 ‘(He) comes at night.’
- (3.239) *the:* *qa-χua-ŋi* *sə* *gue-k*.
 3sg 1sg-BEN-ADV firewood chop-go
 ‘He went to chop wood for me.’

Chapter 4

The verb complex

For the purposes of this discussion, the verb complex is defined as the predicating part of the clause, not including the sentence final mood particles. The end of the verb complex is marked by the person marking; the last element of the verb complex takes the person marking suffix, and anything after that is considered to be outside the verb complex. This is done because the person marking is enclitic, and immediately follows the verb if there is no causative or aspect marking, but appears after the causative suffix if there is one, or after the aspect if there is any, but not after other particles that follow the verb complex. The beginning of the verb complex is the adverbials which modify the verb. No nominal arguments (all of which were discussed above) are included in the verb complex. Nominal predicates were discussed in §3.2.9. In this section we will focus on verbal predicates. In Section 4.1 we will discuss the structure of the verb complex, in Section 4.2 we will discuss the different types of verbs and derivational morphology, in Section 4.3 we will discuss the relational and other non-derivational morphology in the verb complex, and in Section 4.4 we will discuss adverbial modification.

4.1. Structure

The verb complex in its most expanded form has an adverbial (including manner adverbials, certain adverbs covered in §4.4, and the verbal action classifiers discussed in §3.1.6), a directional prefix, a negative prefix (either unmarked negative or prohibitive negative), a continuative aspect ('yet, still') prefix, the verb, causative marking, prospective aspect marking, change of state aspect marking, and person marking. There are three other particles that can follow the verb inside the verb complex. One ([jə], glossed 'REP') has the meaning 'again'. The meaning of this particle prevents it from occurring together with both

the negative and continuative aspect prefixes, as the meaning would be ‘not yet again V’. The second particle marks a first person indirect directive, and does not appear with prospective aspect marking. The third particle marks inferentially derived information (see §4.3.7), and also generally does not appear with prospective aspect marking. The full list of possible elements of a single-verb verb complex can be represented as in Figure 3 (not all of these affixes can occur together):

prefixes	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. intensifying adverb 2. direction/orientation prefix or 3rd person indirect directive marking prefix (or the two combined as one syllable) 3. simple negation /mə-/ or prohibitive /tə-/ prefix 4. continuative aspect marking prefix /tci-/
	VERB ROOT
suffixes	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 5. causative marking suffix /-z/ 6. prospective aspect marking suffix /-a:/ 7. auxiliary directional verb /kə/ ‘go’ or /lə/ ‘come’ 8. repetition marking suffix /-jə/ 9. change of state aspect marking suffix /-ji/ 10. 1st person indirect directive marking suffix /-l-/ 11. inferential evidential and mirative marking suffix /-k/ 12. visual evidential marking suffix /-u/ 13. non-actor person marking (1sg /-ʂa/, 2sg /-san/, 1pl /-ʂəʔ/, 2pl /-sai/, 3sg/pl [-wu/ ~ -u]) 14. actor person marking (1sg /-a/, 2sg /-n/, 1pl /-əʔ/, 2pl /-i/, 3pl /-tci/) 15. hearsay evidential marking suffix /-i/

Figure 3. The structure of the Qiang verb complex

A minimal verb complex would be just the verb and third person singular (zero) person marking. In some cases the prospective aspect marking will appear on the person marking suffix, e.g. [sum the: xə-wa:] [teacher 3sg scold-PRS:3sgU] ‘The teacher will scold him’, where /a:/ + /wə/ > [wa:]. There is also a 3rd person indirect directive prefix (/cə:/) that can appear in the same slot as the directional prefixes, either instead of a directional prefix or merged with it (see §4.3.5.2 for examples). If there is an auxiliary verb in the clause, then it follows the (semantically) main verb. In the case of ‘come’ / ‘go’ and ‘like’, when they follow another verb (e.g. /ʂoi-kə/ [call-go] ‘go call’, [ŋiɣi dzə topu-

n-a] [what eat like-2sg-Q] ‘what do/would you like to eat’), generally nothing comes between the two verbs. Person marking always appears on the last element of the verb complex, regardless of whether it is a main verb, an auxiliary, or an aspect marker. Prospective aspect marking may appear on the main verb even if there is an auxiliary verb. In the case of intransitive stative verbs, there are also some adverbs that follow the verb. Examples of the different combinations possible can be found in the discussions of the individual items that go into the verb complex in Sections 4.2 and 4.3.

4.2. Verb types

The verb in Qiang can be defined as an element that can take the directional prefixes, the negative prefix, and the causative suffix. Below we discuss the different types of verbs, both derived and underived, that can appear in the verb complex.

4.2.1. *Intransitive, transitive, reciprocal*

Intransitive verbs take only one direct argument, and any other participants added to the clause must take some sort of semantic case marking (see §3.2.22 for a summary and examples). With transitive verbs there are two unmarked arguments. While most verbs in Qiang fall into these two classes, a number of verbs are ambitransitive, that is, they can be used either intransitively or transitively, such as /ɣlu/ ‘roll’ and /dzə/ ‘eat’. As there is no applicative construction that has the function of adding an undergoer or benefactive argument, for most of the verbs where the single argument of the intransitive use corresponds to the actor of the transitive use, such as ‘eat’ (e.g. ‘I eat’ vs. ‘I eat something’), the transitive and intransitive uses differ only in terms of whether an undergoer argument appears in the clause or context. That is, the single argument of the intransitive use corresponds to the actor of the transitive use. Where the single argument of the intransitive is semantically an undergoer, the transitive is generally formed using the causative suffix (see below), but for a few verbs the transitive can be formed by simply adding an actor, such as with /ɣlu/ ‘roll’, as in (4.1a-

b). With these verbs use of the causative is also a possibility, as in (4.1c), but the meaning is slightly different: in (4.1b) the actor must be involved in the rolling, whereas in (4.1c) the actor may have just done something that caused the stone to roll.

- (4.1) a. *zawa fio-yɫu.* b. *qa zawa fio-yɫu-a.*
 stone DIR-roll 1sg stone DIR-roll-1sg
 ‘The stone rolled down.’ ‘I rolled the stone down.’
- c. *qa zawa fio-yɫu-z-a.*
 1sg stone DIR-roll-CAUS-1sg
 ‘I caused the stone to roll down.’

It is not possible to form an intransitive from a transitive simply by dropping the noun phrase representing the actor (at least in the case of first and second person actors) because of the person marking on the verb reflecting the person and number of the actor. In general there is no formal difference between telic and non-telic verbs other than use of a directional prefix to mark the fact that the logical conclusion of the telic situation has been reached.

In general there is no special citation form for verbs other than the unmodified root, but there are a few verbs that seem to have a final syllable /te/ or /tu/ (depending on harmony with the preceding vowel) in citation form that generally does not appear when the verbs are used in context. Following is a complete list of those we have found:

- (4.2) *χsutu* ‘jump’ *çete* ‘smell (v.)’
 qhutu ‘spread, sprinkle’ *phəte* ‘spit’
 zɡutu ‘throw’ *tshuete* ‘peck’
 ŋete ‘lick’ *zete* ‘pound, knock’
 dzete ‘hit’ *lete* ‘spin (yarn)’
 tshuate ‘stamp the feet’ *phete* ‘wag, shake, pat’
 yliete ‘rub between the hands’ *khəʔte* ‘hit (people)’
 tshuate ‘chop (e.g. meat)’ *kuəte* ‘throw’
 wəte ‘stir’

It is possible to derive verbs from nouns by putting the verb /pə/ ‘to do’ after the noun. We saw examples of this in the discussion of

Chinese loan words in §3.1.1. Other than this there is no way to derive verbs from nouns.

With some verbs intransitives can be formed by reduplicating the verb to make a reciprocal, as in the following examples:

- (4.3) a. *ku* ‘curse’ > *ku²ku* ‘curse each other’
 b. *zdə* ‘connect’ > *zdəzdə* ‘mutually connect’
 c. *kua* ‘help’ > *kuəkua* ‘help each other’

The verb in this construction can either take one plural argument (which is possibly comprised of two conjoined noun phrases) or two arguments, one of which is marked as an oblique argument by the comitative/conjunction marker /-ŋa/. In the first of these two situations, the verb would take plural person marking, in the second, the verb would take singular person marking.

In the case of certain verbs that involve some other referent than the two human referents that are mutually involved, or have only one human referent, the verb remains transitive with reduplication, and the meaning of reduplication can be iteration, such as with the verbs in (4.4).and (4.5).

- (4.4) a. *ma* ‘plaster (a wall)’ > *məma* ‘be plastering’
 b. *stue* ‘pull (weeds)’ > *stuistue* ‘be pulling (weeds)’
 c. *di* ‘climb’ > *didi* ‘be climbing (a tree)’

- (4.5) *the: sə qhiqhi.* (< qhi)
 3sg firewood chopping
 ‘He is chopping firewood.’

Some verbs have a reduplicated form as their base form. In these cases, no further reduplication is necessary to express the reciprocal (e.g. /ʂqueʂque/ ‘pull’, /ləle/ ‘insert’). Reciprocal verbs can be nominalized, e.g. /lələ-s/ (‘exchange’ + nominalizer > ‘that which is exchanged’); the nominalized form expresses the goal of the action. Reciprocal meaning can also be emphasized by use of the adverbial expression /e:-wu e:-ta/ (one:CL-AGT one:CL-DAT) ‘each other’. Following are some examples of the use of reciprocals.

- (4.6) a. *khumtsi-ŋa-xumtʃi* *quəqua-tci.* (< qua)
 Khumtsi-COM-Xumtʃi fight:RECIP-3pl
 ‘Khumtsi and Xumtʃi are fighting.’
- b. *thizzi e:-wu* *e:-ta* *fa* *phi'phi'-tci.*
 3dl one:CL-AGT one:CL-DAT clothing tear:RECIP-3pl
 ‘The two of them tore each other’s clothes.’

In the negative, verbs do not require reduplication to be reciprocal, such as /sə/ ‘to know (a person)’ in (4.7). In the positive this would be [səsə:¹].

- (4.7) *tɕile* *ma-sə:¹.*
 1pl NEG-know:1pl
 ‘We don’t know each other.’ (or ‘We don’t know it/him/her’)

While there is marking of the reciprocal on the verb, and there are some verbs with an inherently reciprocal meaning, there is no marking of reflexives on the verb, and there are no verbs with an inherently reflexive sense. Instead, reflexive pronouns are used to express a reflexive meaning (see §3.1.2). There are also no middle voice⁵⁶ or passive constructions.

Transitive verbs can be formed from intransitives using the causative construction (see §4.2.2, below). It is also possible to add an oblique argument to a transitive or ditransitive verb by using the benefactive postposition /χua-ŋi/ (see §3.2.10).

4.2.2. *Causatives*

There are three types of causative marking in Qiang, though only one of these is productive. This is the causative suffix /-z(ə)/, which increases the valency of intransitive, transitive, and ditransitive verbs. There is no difference in the causative marking of these three types of verbs. Causatives derived using this suffix can be permissive or causative, and either direct or indirect causatives. The actor person marking on the verb (§4.3.2, Table 8) reflects the person and number of the causer only, and the marking is added to (follows) the causative suffix, using the

same forms as for non-causativized verbs. Non-actor person marking (§4.3.2, Table 9), if there is any, marks the person and number of the causee, not the undergoer (only animates are marked). Prospective aspect marking, if there is any, also appears after the causative suffix.

In terms of the marking of the noun phrases representing the causer, there is no formal difference which depends on the agentivity and/or intentionality of the causer, but there is a difference which depends on the animacy of the causer; the noun phrase representing the causer of a derived monotransitive clause generally does not take the agentive marker /-wu/ unless it is inanimate, e.g. ‘wind’ in the following example:

- (4.8) *moxu-wu qa da-tuə-z.*
 wind-AGT 1sg DIR-fall.over-CAUS
 ‘The wind knocked me down.’

This clause is a causative of an intransitive, so the resulting form is a monotransitive clause, in this case with an inanimate actor/causer and animate undergoer/causee.

The noun phrase representing the causee can take agentive marking, though, if the basic clause from which it is formed is transitive, as in (4.9).⁵⁷ The use of the agentive marker is not related to the willingness of the causee to perform the action; s/he may be willing or not.

- (4.9) *qa the:-wu pəitsə-e-ze zə-p-za.* (< zə)
 1sg 3sg-AGT cup-one-CL DIR-buy-CAUS:1sg
 ‘I made him/her buy a cup.’

The noun phrase representing the causer can often be omitted, as the person marking on the verb reflects the person and number of the causer, but the noun phrase representing the causee cannot be omitted.

Following are some examples of causatives formed from different base types:

Unmarked intransitive:

- (4.10) *tsə tu-χsu-ji.*
 water DIR-boil-CSM
 ‘The water has come to a boil.’

Causativized intransitive:

- (4.11) a. *qa tsə tu-χsu-z-ja.* (< ji + a)
 1sg water DIR-boil-CAUS-CSM:1sg
 ‘I brought the water to a boil.’
- b. *qa the: zdzyta: ləyz su-ky-z-a.* (< zə)
 1sg 3sg Chengdu:LOC book study-go-CAUS:PRS
 ‘I am going to make him/her go to Chengdu to study (attend school).’

Causativized transitive:

- (4.12) a. *xsə-han thuntşə tu-p-zə.* (T5:297)
 three-kind notify DIR-do-CAUS
 ‘(These) three things you must proclaim (to the people).’
 (lit.: cause someone to notify them)’
- b. *qa the:-wu ləyz a-fəŋ fie-z-i-z-a.* (< zə)
 1sg 3sg-AGT book one-CL DIR-write-CAUS:1sg
 ‘I made him write a letter.’
- c. *χumtşi qa-wu ?ũ zə-dzə-z.*⁵⁸ (< zə)
 Xumtşi 1sg-AGT 2sg DIR-hit-CAUS
 ‘Xumtşi made me hit you.’

Causativized ditransitive:

- (4.13) *qa χumtşi-wu ləyz-te-pen khumtşi-ta*
 1sg Xumtşi-AGT book-DEF-CL Khumtşi-LOC

tə-χua-za:. (*< zə*)
 DIR-buy-CAUS:PRS:1sg
 ‘I’m going to make Xumtši buy the book for Khumtsi.’

The copula can also take the causative suffix, as in translative constructions:

- (4.14) a. *khuə-le: puŋu ha-ŋuə-z.*
 dog-DEF:CL cat DIR-COP-CAUS
 ‘Make the dog replace/become the cat.’ (Treat the dog as a cat.)^o
- b. *təile the: fiə-staqə-ŋi linthau ŋuə-za:*. (*< zə*)
 1pl 3sg DIR-choose-ADV leader COP-CAUS:PRS
 ‘We chose him to be leader.’

In (4.14b), the verb /*staqə*/ ‘choose’ appears in a manner adverbial phrase modifying the main verb of the clause, the causativized copula, to express how the causee became the leader.⁵⁹

Causatives can also be used with reciprocals:

- (4.15) *qa thizzi ləla-za:*. (*< zə*)
 1sg 3dl exchange-CAUS:PRS:1sg
 ‘I had the two of them exchange with each other.’
- (4.16) *qa thizzi quəqua-za:*. (*< zə*)
 1sg 3dl hit:REFL-CAUS:PRS:1sg
 ‘I had the two of them hit each other.’

Of the two types of non-productive causative marking, one derives from the Proto-Sino-Tibetan **s-* prefix (LaPolla 2003a:22 and references therein). Only one example of this has been found to date: /*çtçə*/ ‘feed (vt.)’, from /*tçhe*/ ‘eat (rice)/drink’ (with assimilation of the prefix to point of articulation of the initial). While this is the only such example found in Qiang, it matches well with forms found in closely related languages and dialects; the lack of examples may simply be due to lack of data or the obscuring of the prefix by assimilatory processes.

The second type of non-productive causative marking is a voiced-voiceless (aspirated) contrast in simplex-causative or intransitive-transitive pairs (also a feature of Proto-Sino-Tibeto—LaPolla 2003a:23). There is also a concomitant difference in the directional prefix used with each type (see §4.3.3 for more on this difference).

- | | | | |
|--------|------------------|----------------|--|
| (4.17) | simplex | causative | |
| | a. <i>de-pe</i> | <i>fiə-phe</i> | ‘tear (of clothes)’ |
| | b. <i>da-ʷe</i> | <i>fiə-qhe</i> | ‘break (of bowls, etc.)’ |
| | c. <i>da-ʷli</i> | <i>fiə-χʰi</i> | ‘break (in two) (of tree limbs, etc.)’ |

These are the only three forms we have found so far in the Ronghong subdialect, but there are quite a few more in the Mawo dialect (see Sun 1981a:192-3). This type has more of a sense of direct causation, and not permission, than the productive causative. These causative forms cannot take a further productive causative suffix.

4.2.3. *Intransitive state predicate verbs (adjectives)*

In this section we will be discussing the nature of intransitive state predicate verbs, i.e. stative verbs with only one argument. (See also Huang Chenglong 1994, LaPolla & Huang 2002.)

Intransitive state predicate verbs form a separate sub-class of verb distinct from other transitive and intransitive verbs, and since they are words for dimension, age, value, color, quality, and shape, we can use the term ‘adjectives’ for this sub-class of verbs (they are morphosyntactically unlike English adjectives, though). They can be predicates without the use of the copula, as can verbs, and take the same person marking (agreement) forms, orientation/directional marking, causative marking, evidential marking, and most aspect and negation marking as non-stative intransitive verbs, but unlike non-stative verbs, they can be nominalized using the definite and indefinite markers (see §3.1.4—existential verbs can also be nominalized in this way), many can act as adverbials (taking the adverbial marker /-ŋi/), and many can take the postpositive adverb /-wa/ ‘very’.⁶⁰ Non-stative verbs can only modify a noun in the form of a pre-head relative clause construction, while adjectives can modify a noun directly in post-head position (as

well as appear in relative clause constructions), as in [mi nɑ] (person good) ‘(a) good person’. The meaning of reduplication for most verbs is reciprocity (see §4.2.1), while the meaning of reduplication for adjectives is intensification or plurality.⁶¹ There is no morphology for deriving adjectives from non-adjectival verbs, although adjectives can take causative marking and become transitive verbs. There is no noun-adjective overlap, and no way to derive an adjective from a noun except by use of the auxiliaries /-thɑ/ and /-pə/ mentioned in §3.1.1 in the discussion of loan words above. This is done only with borrowed words, not with native words.

The class of adjectives is an open class with many members, although the majority of new members are loan-words from Chinese (see §3.1.1 on loan words). The class includes items related to dimension, age, value, color, physical property, human propensity, speed, difficulty, qualification, and quantification. Some meanings that are expressed by adjectives in other languages are not expressed by adjectives in Qiang. For example, words expressing the semantic field of position are (locational) nouns (/steke/ ‘behind’, /məq/ ‘top, above’, /zəkû/ ‘between, center’, /ʃqəl/ ‘below’, /piena/ ‘near, (be)side’, and /qə:/ ‘before’), numbers form a separate word class (they must appear with a classifier when used as modifier or predicate), and there are no words for similarity. Within some of the semantic types that are generally expressed by adjectives in Qiang there are some words that are not adjectives. For example, within the quantification type, the meanings ‘all’ and ‘only’ are represented by adverbs, and the meaning ‘some, a few’ is represented by the numeral for ‘one’ plus the plural marker ([ɑ-hɑ]), or ‘one’ + ‘two’ plus a classifier (e.g. [ə-jə-u]). Some concepts are not represented by basic words, but by negation of basic words, e.g. in qualification, ‘correct’ is a basic word, /pe/, but there is no basic native word for ‘incorrect’, only the negation of ‘correct’, /me-pe/.

Adjectives and certain other verbs which represent gradient concepts can appear as the predicate in a comparative construction (see §3.2.7 for examples), but adjectives can be comparative even without overt marking of comparison ((4.18a)). Addition of an adverbial meaning ‘very’ can clarify that a non-comparative sense is intended ((4.18b)). To specify a comparative sense, an adverbial such as [ɑ-zɑ] (‘one’-CL) ‘a little’ can be added before the adjective ((4.18c)).

- (4.18) a. *the: ti-wi.*
3sg DIR-tall
'He is tall/taller.'
- b. *the: ti-wi-wa.*
3sg DIR-tall-very
'He is very tall.'
- c. *the: a-za ti-wi.*
3sg one-CL DIR-tall
'He is a bit taller.'

There are only three types of reduplication of adjectives: AA, Au:A, AAu: (/u:/ is a syllable added to the reduplicated form—this type is only possible with adjectives); there is no ABB, ABAB, or AABB reduplication. Reduplicated forms are nominalized even without the (in)definite marking. The meaning of AA reduplication is plurality; the meaning of Au:A reduplication is intensification; the meaning of AAu: reduplication is plurality plus intensification. With AAu: and Au:A reduplication, the phonetic stress is on /u:/ (the stress is marked with an acute accent in the examples in (4.19)). Following are examples:

- (4.19) a. AA *patʂpatʂ* 'some round things'
b. Au:A *patʂú:patʂ* 'very round things'
c. AAu: *patʂpatʂú:* 'some very round things'

Reduplicated adjectives can appear together with a common noun, and are generally followed by the indefinite marker /-ke/. They are then noun phrases in their own right in apposition to the common noun, clarifying the nature of the referent of the common noun. In this structure the nominalized adjective can precede or follow the common noun. (See §3.1 on the modifiers of the noun phrase.) Following are examples:

- (4.20) a. *qhal patʂpatʂ-ke:*
steamed.bun round.round-INDEF:CL
'round steamed buns' (lit.: 'steamed buns, round ones')
- b. *fa ŋiqŋiqu:-ke:*
clothing black.black-INDEF:CL
'very black clothing' (lit.: 'clothing, black ones')

- c. *patʃu:patʃ* *pana* *la-ha* *tca-la* *ʂə?*
 round.round thing DEF:one-pl where-LOC exist
 ‘Where are the very round things?’

In most cases reduplicated forms do not modify a noun, but instead are simply nominalized by /-ke/ and used with the copula (e.g. [qhal patʃpatʃ-ke: ɲuə] ‘*qhal* (steamed buns) are round things’).

Adjectives are generally only nominalized by the definite and indefinite markers or reduplication, although, as mentioned in Section 3.1, in certain situations they can also be nominalized by /-m/ and /-tc/ (see §5.2 on these nominalizers). In the case of /-m/ nominalization, the referent is generally a person, as in the following examples:

- (4.21) a. *mi* *ba-m*
 person big-NOM
 ‘(a) big person’
 b. *mi* *ti-wi-m*
 person DIR-tall-NOM
 ‘(a) tall person’

In these particular examples, there are two noun phrases in apposition to each other, something like ‘a person, a big one’. This contrasts with the usual form of the adjective without nominalization, e.g. *mi ba* [person big] ‘big person’. In the case of nominalization by /-m/ or /-tc/, the form would generally be followed by the indefinite or definite marker, as in the following example:

- (4.22) *fə* *cupu-tc-ke:* *ʂə.*
 clothing red-GEN-INDEF:CL exist
 ‘There is an item of red clothing.’

Although this form looks similar to a single noun phrase which has both a post-head adjective and indefinite marking (i.e. [fə-cupu-ke:] (clothing-red-INDEF:CL)), it is clearly two noun phrases, as the order of the two noun phrases could be reversed. This structure is used for emphasizing the quality of the referent in question, such as in a contrastive context.

Some adjectives are formed from noun + verb combinations with metaphorical meanings. Following are some examples using the noun /tci:(mi)/ ‘heart’:

- (4.23) a. *ɕtɕi:mi-zdzi* ‘sad’ < ‘heart’ + ‘painful’
 b. *ɕtɕi:mi-ba* ‘brave’ < ‘heart’ + *ɕtɕi-kuə-na*
 c. *ɕtɕi-kuə-na* ‘happy’ < ‘heart’ + ‘base’ + ‘good’

If a prepositional adverb modifies the verb, it appears after the noun and before the verb, e.g. [*ɕtɕi-kuə kən nɑ*] ‘very happy’.

With adjectives, the expression of change of state requires a directional prefix (see §4.3.3), e.g. /*ba*/ ‘big’, /*təwa*/ ‘become big’ (here with change of initial, see §1.3.1).

Following are some examples of the use of adjectives in modifying nouns, as deverbal noun phrases, and as predicates, with prospective aspect marking and with person marking:

Modifying a noun:

- (4.24) *qa fa-xsə tupu-a.*
 1sg clothes-new like-1sg
 ‘I like new clothes.’

Nominalized:

- (4.25) *qa phiʂ-le: gua:.* (< *guə*)
 1sg white-DEF:CL wear:PRS:1sg
 ‘I want to wear the white one.’

With prospective aspect marking:⁶²

- (4.26) *mə tca-χqa:.* (< *χqa*)
 sky CON-clear:PRS
 ‘The sky is still going to be clear.’

With person marking:

- (4.27) a. *qa ti-wia.* b. *tcile ti-wiəʹ.* (< *tiwi*)
 1sg DIR-tall:1sg 1pl DIR-tall:1pl
 ‘I am tall/taller.’ ‘We are tall/taller.’

- | | | | | | |
|----|------------------------|----------------|----|----------------------------|-----------------|
| c. | <i>ʔũ</i> | <i>tí-wi-n</i> | d. | <i>ʔile</i> | <i>tí-wi-i.</i> |
| | 2sg | DIR-tall-2sg | | 2pl | DIR-tall-2pl |
| | ‘You are tall/taller.’ | | | ‘You(pl) are tall/taller.’ | |

Some adjectives can appear in a serial verb structure where they modify another verb, e.g. /tse-na/ (‘look’ + ‘good’) ‘good looking’, /dzuə na/ (‘sit’ + ‘good’) ‘good to sit, there is room to sit’ (see also examples (4.269)-(4.272) in §4.4.3 below). In this structure, while the adverb semantically seems to function as an adverbial, it is syntactically the main verb, and so if the clause is negated or is in the continuative aspect, the negative and/or continuative aspect prefix is affixed to the adjective, not the verb, e.g. /tse-ma-na/ (‘look’ + NEG + ‘good’) ‘not good looking’, /tse-tca-na/ (‘look’ + CON + ‘good’) ‘still good looking’. The adjective can also take the adverb /-wa/, e.g. /tse-na-wa/ (‘look’ + ‘good’ + ‘very’) ‘very good looking’.

4.2.4. Existential/locative verbs

There are five existential/locative verbs, the use of which depends on the semantics of the referent being located or shown to exist, or on the nature of its location: /sə/ and /xu/ for inanimate referents that are not in containers or immovable or inalienably connected to some larger entity, /le/ for a referent located in a containment of some type, /zi/ for animate referents, and /we/ for immovable referents, referents inalienably connected to a larger entity, and happenings. This last form is also used to express the possession of qualities. (See also Section 3.2.14 on possession.) Following are examples of the various types:

- | | | | | |
|--------|---------------------------------|-------------------|------------|-------------|
| (4.28) | <i>tʂuats-məq-ta</i> | <i>ləyz-e-pen</i> | <i>sə.</i> | (inanimate) |
| | table-top-LOC | book-one-CL | exist | |
| | ‘There is a book on the table.’ | | | |
| | | | | |
| (4.29) | <i>ku-ta</i> | <i>pi-a-la</i> | <i>xu.</i> | (inanimate) |
| | floor-LOC | pen-one-CL | exist | |
| | ‘There is a pen on the floor.’ | | | |

- (4.30) *zə-ka* *jajəŋy* *le.*⁶³ (inside vessel)
 ground-LOC potato exist
 ‘There are potatoes in the ground.’
- (4.31) *səf-tho-z_ugu-ta* *wətshi-o-u* *zi.* (animate)
 tree-that:one-CL-LOC sparrow-one-CL exist
 ‘There is a sparrow in that tree.’
- (4.32) a. *qəl-la* *səf-o-z_ugu* *we.* (immovable, connected
 below-LOC tree-one-CL exist to major entity)
 ‘There is a tree below.’
- b. *qa* *dzoqu-ji-tua* *wa.* (< we + a)
 1sg leg-two-CL exist:1sg (immovable, connected
 ‘I have two legs.’ to major entity)
- c. *the:* *tšhexuo* *de-w(e).* (happening)
 3sg car.accident DIR-exist
 ‘He had a car accident.’

Use of a particular verb in some cases can be a matter of perspective. For example, compare the following two clauses, the first of which presents the situation from the point of view of the fish being in the containment of the water, the second from the point of view of the fish as animate beings.

- (4.33) a. *tsə-ka* *ɸzə* *le.* (inside vessel)
 water-LOC fish exist
 ‘There are fish in the water.’
- b. *tsə-ka* *ɸzə* *zi.* (animate)
 water-LOC fish water
 ‘There are fish in the water.’

The existential verbs /sə/ and /xu/ are often used together with /tu/ ‘if’ after nominalized verbs. Here the possible existence of a referent is being predicated, but the whole meaning of the construction is more like ‘if there is such a situation’. Following are some examples:

- (4.34) *dzə-s ʂə-tu qa-tɕ a-zə zə-le.*
 eat-NOM exist-LNK 1sg-DAT one-CL DIR-take
 ‘If there is something to eat, bring me a little.’
- bələ-s xu-tu the: ta:-bəl-kə.*
 do-NOM exist-LNK 3sg DIR:INDTV-do-go
 ‘If there is something to be done, have him/her go do it.’

Because the nominalized verb refers to an inanimate referent or situation, only the /-s/ nominalizer can be used; the /-m/ and /-tɕ/ nominalizers cannot be used in the /xu tu/ construction (see §§5.2-5.3).

An existential verb can also be used in an imperative with an adverb, to tell someone, for example, to be quiet, as in (4.36).

- (4.35) (*a-zə*) *hama he-zi-(n).* (animate)
 one-little quiet DIR-exist-2sg
 ‘(Please) be quiet.’

The existential/locative verbs have many of the definitional properties of adjectives (see §4. 2.3 and LaPolla & Huang, in press, on adjectives), in that they are intransitive stative verbs that can be nominalized by the (in)definite markers, as in example (3.45), above, and can take the intensifying adverbs [gən ~ kən], /wa/, and /qusu/, and in the negative can take the adverb /tsan/ 'too', as in examples (4.36a-b), but differ from adjectives in that they cannot directly modify a noun and the meaning of reduplication is different. With adjectives, reduplication has the sense of intensification, but with existential verbs, reduplication can transitive the verb, at least in some cases, as in (4.36c-d).

- (4.36) a. *tša mi zi-wa.*
 here person exist-very
 'There are many people here.'
- b. *tša mi tsan me-zi.*
 here person too NEG-exist
 'There are not too many people here.'
- c. *le* 'exist (inside)' > *ləle* 'put inside'

d. ʂə 'exist (inanimate)' > ʂəʂə 'put (someplace)'

Unlike in some other Tibeto-Burman languages (e.g. Tibetan), the existential/locative verbs have not grammaticalized into any sort of construction marking tense, aspect, or evidentials.

4.2.5. 'Come' and 'go'

'Come' and 'go' are somewhat irregular verbs. 'Go' has the following third person forms: /-qa/ prefixed perfective (e.g. /ʃaqa/ 'went down'), /kə/ unprefixes,⁶⁴ /-kə/ prefixed imperfective or prospective (e.g. /daʂ/ 'go out'). 'Come' has the following forms: /lu/ imperfective, /-la/ prefixed perfective, /lu-a:/ prospective aspect. (See §4.3.3 for discussion of the directional prefixes.) Both these verbs function as main verbs, and as directional auxiliary verbs, following other verbs. When used as auxiliary verbs, they form a single nucleus with the preceding verb, and so do not take prefixes separately. For example, in [stucha ɕa:-tɕ kə] (food/rice INDTV:3sg-eat go) 'Let (him/her) go eat!', the indirect directive prefix appears on the verb meaning 'eat', not on 'go'. With certain verbs 'come' and 'go' appear very regularly as auxiliaries, and this has led to the situation where the vowel of 'come' and 'go' has been lost, and the initial has fused with the preceding verb, forming a new verb, e.g. /pəl/ 'come back' < /pə/ 'arrive' + /lu/ 'come'; /pək/ 'go back' < /pə/ 'arrive' + /kə/ 'go'. In the case of these compound verbs and some others like this, they have lexicalized to the point that they are no longer seen as including the verbs 'come' and 'go' by the Qiang speakers.

4.2.6. Auxiliary verbs

Auxiliary verbs follow the (semantically) main verb, often in a complement-matrix structure (see §5.3 for the structure), generally with no nominalizing, adverbial or other marking between the two verbs. If there is person marking, the marking appears on the auxiliary or final particle of the verb complex, though aspect marking may appear on the embedded (main) verb. If there is negation of the auxiliary, the negative prefix appears on the auxiliary verb. There is no requirement that the

two verbs agree in transitivity (such as is found, for example, in Rawang [LaPolla 2000a]).

The potential to perform an action is expressed by use of the auxiliary verbs /ʏzə/ for learned ability, /dzə/ or /qe/ for natural (physical) ability, and /gu/ for ability to fit into something else. See Section 4.3.6.4 for examples of their use.

Willingness to perform an action or to allow others to perform an action is expressed by using the auxiliary verb /ɸu/. This verb can also be used for possibility, either directly following a verb or in a construction with a nominalized verb.

- (4.37) a. *the: tha-zi kə ɸu.*
 3sg there-exist thus willing/allow
 ‘S/he might be there.’
- b. *pəs mə ma-χqa, tshəi tə-ŋiχ ɸu.*
 today weather NEG-clear prickly.ash.peel DIR-black will
 ‘Today the weather is not good, the prickly ash peel will become black.’

The auxiliary verb /xʂu/ is used to express the idea ‘to dare’ to do an action.

- (4.38) *the: e-ze stu nə mo-xʂu.*
 3sg one-CL alone sleep NEG-dare
 ‘S/he doesn’t dare sleep alone.’

In some expressions, /xʂu/ can be used alone:

- (4.39) *khuə-ta mo-xʂu, piə-ta xʂu.*
 dog-DAT NEG-dare pig-DAT dare
 ‘Bully the weak and fear the strong.’
 (lit.: ‘Doesn’t dare X to a dog, but will to a pig.’)

The auxiliary verb /ɸze/ ‘ought to’ can be used in some contexts to express obligation (physical or moral) to perform an action. There is no person marking when using this auxiliary verb, so even if a first or second person pronoun were added to, for example, (4.40a) or (4.40b),

specifying who must or must not go, there would be no change in the verb.

(4.40) a. *kə* *ɤze-ji!*
 go must-CSM
 ‘It’s time to go!’ (‘I/we/you must go!’)

b. *kə* *ma-tɕi-ɤze!*⁶⁵
 go NEG-CON-must
 ‘(You/we) needn’t / shouldn’t go yet!’

(4.41) a. *stuaha tɕhə ɤze-ji.*
 rice/food eat must-CSM
 ‘It’s time to eat!’ (‘I/you/we must eat!’)

b. *stuaha tɕhə ma-tɕi-ɤze.*
 rice/food eat NEG-CON-must
 ‘I/we/you shouldn’t eat!’

The auxiliary verb /se/ is used to express permission or lack of it:

(4.42) *cocau-ka* *zme-z* *dze* *fi-se.*
 school-LOC Qiang-language speak DIR-allow
 ‘Speaking Qiang is permitted in school.’

See also Section 4.3.6.1 for examples of the auxiliary verbs /tɕɕaq-lu/ ‘think of, want’, and /zulu/ ‘wait’, used in optative constructions, and Section 4.3.4.4 on the auxiliary verb /dze/, which is used to mark the experiential aspect.

4.2.7. *The copula*

There is only one copula, /ŋuə/, which is used in identificational, attributive, and cleft constructions, and after nominalized verbs (see for example §4.3.6.3, §5.2). The copula can take person marking in some contexts, but often does not take aspect marking, unless it is causativized or appears with the particle /-s/ (see §4.4).

In some < NP NP > type equational clauses, most noticeably statements of the date or of the age of a person, the copula is optional, as in the following example:

- (4.43) *pəs* *xsə-çə-tç-ko-tçu.*
 today three-month-GEN-five-beginning
 ‘Today is March fifth.’

Following are examples of the copula with first and second person marking (see §5.3 on the structure of these examples):

- (4.44) a. *qa-wu* *the:* *zə-dzi* *ŋua.* (< ŋuə)
 1sg-AGT 3sg DIR-hit COP:1sg
 ‘I hit him (emphatic) / I am the one who hit him.’
- b. *?ũ-wu* *the:* *zə-dzi* *ŋuə-n.*
 2sg-AGT 3sg DIR-hit COP-2sg
 ‘You hit him (emphatic) / You are the one who hit him.’

4.3. Verbal morphology

This section presents the most complex aspect of Qiang grammar, the verbal morphology. It begins with a look at how a speaker can take different perspectives in profiling an event or situation using differences of word order (§4.3.1), then covers the different morphological systems for marking person (§4.3.2), the direction or orientation of the action (§4.3.3), aspect (§4.3.4), illocutionary force (§4.3.5), mood (§4.3.6), and evidentials (§4.3.7).

4.3.1. Perspective

There is no voice opposition in the verb, though the perspective taken in expressing an action can differ due to changes in word order because of topicalization or the use of a cleft construction. The noun phrase representing the undergoer can be simply fronted to make it the topic, though the noun phrase representing the recipient generally must appear

in a cleft construction to be a topic. See also the section on transitive actors (§3.2.3).

Compare the following three examples:

- (4.45) a. *qa* *khuə-e-zi* *zə-pa.* (< pə)
 1sg dog-one-CL DIR-buy:1sg
 ‘I bought a dog.’
- b. *khuə-le:* *qa-wu* *pa:* *lu.*
 dog-DEF:CL 1sg-AGT buy:1sg:PRS will
 ‘I will buy the dog.’ (‘The dog I will buy.’)
- c. *khuə-le:* *qa-(wu)* *zə-p-ji* *ŋuə.*
 dog-DEF:CL 1sg-AGT DIR-buy-CSM COP
 ‘It was I who bought the dog.’ (‘The dog was bought by me.’)

The clause in (4.45a) is an unmarked clause structure; most often the actor is the topic, and so the word order is Actor-Undergoer-Verb, but the word order does not determine grammatical or semantic relations and is not determined by grammatical or semantic relations. The clause in (4.45b) has the noun phrase representing the undergoer in topic position, while the one in (4.45c) has the undergoer as topic of a cleft construction. Because this last example has a third person referent as the first argument of the copula, there is no first person marking on the copula.

Of the following two examples, (4.46a) has the undergoer in topic position, and the reference to the non-specific actor is optional. In (4.46b) there is more emphasis on the non-specific actor, as the noun phrase used to refer to it is in topic position.

- (4.46) a. *qa* (*mi-wu*) *zə-dzi.*
 1sg person-AGT DIR-hit
 ‘I was hit.’ (lit.: ‘Someone hit me.’)
- b. *mi-wu* *qa* *zə-dzi.*
 person-AGT 1sg DIR-hit
 ‘Someone hit me.’

It is also possible in many cases to omit reference to a referential actor, as in the following example. The identity of the referent is often still recoverable from the person marking on the verb, but omitting such reference puts more emphasis on the undergoer.

- (4.47) *panə-le:* *fiə-χ-kə-n.*
 thing-DEF:CL DIR-bad-INF-2sg
 ‘It seems the thing was broken (by you).’
 (lit.: ‘It seems you broke the thing.’)

Following is an example of the noun phrase representing the undergoer of a ditransitive clause in topic position (in a cleft construction):

- (4.48) *tʂhetsə-le:* *qa* *the:* *de-l-ji* *ŋuə.*
 car-DEF:CL 1sg 3sg DIR-give-CSM COP
 ‘The car was given to him by me.’

The non-actor person marking on the verb has the sense in some contexts of an adversative passive. See the next section (§4.3.2) for examples.

4.3.2. Person marking

In general, the verb in a non-nominalized Qiang clause has marking which reflects the person and number of the actor of a transitive clause and the single direct argument of an intransitive clause. The marking takes the form of suffixes, which are added to the last element in the verb complex. The forms are given in Table 8.

Table 8. The Qiang person marking suffixes for intransitive verbs

	1	2	3
singular	-a	-n	-Ø
plural	-ʰ	-i	-tci

All verbs can take person marking, including adjectives (intransitive stative predicate verbs; see §4.2.3 for examples of person marking on

adjectives), but only animate arguments are reflected in the person marking. In some contexts, such as nominalizations, no person marking is used, while in other contexts, such as with some third-person plural actors, the person marking is optional. The use of the person marking also has meaning within the system of evidentials (see §4.3.7).

The suffix for first-person actor is /-a/ (possibly < Proto-Qiangic *-ŋa), but if the final vowel of the verb complex is /e/ or in some cases /i/, the first-person actor marking combines with the final vowel of the root to become [a] (e.g. /tse/ ‘look at’ > [tsa] ‘I look at’; /zɿ/ ‘locative/existential verb for animates’ > [zɿa] ‘I am [at some location]’), or, if the vowel is /y/ or in some cases /i/, the first-person actor marking becomes [a] and is added after the final vowel (e.g. /jy/ ‘postverbal aspect particle’ > [jya]; /tiwi/ ‘tall’ > [tiwia] ‘I’m tall(er)’). If the final vowel of the verb complex is a schwa, then this vowel drops completely when /-a/ is added (e.g. /pə/ ‘buy’ > [pa] ‘I am buying’); otherwise the suffix is added after the final vowel (e.g. /zulu/ ‘wait’ > [zulua] ‘I am waiting’). When combined with prospective aspect marking, the vowel is lengthened (e.g. /pə/ ‘buy’, [pa] ‘I am buying’, [pa:] ‘I’m going to buy’).

The second person singular form possibly derives from a Proto-Qiangic *-na, which itself (as well as the Proto-Qiangic first person singular form) would have been a grammaticalization of the free pronoun into person marking on the verb (cf. the discussion of the Tangut forms in LaPolla 1992b, 1994). The origin of the plural first and second person forms is unknown. The third person plural form seems, from comparative evidence, to derive from number rather than person marking: in the Mawo dialect (Sun 1981a; Liu 1999), the form /-tɕi/ is used for both second and third person plural forms, and is distinct from the person marking (/ -n/ and /-ji/ respectively). In the Mawo dialect the prospective aspect marker (/ -a: /) can appear between the number and person marking, e.g. [dzutɕa:n] (< /dzu + tɕi + a: + n/) ‘you(pl) will sit’ (cf. Liu 1998b), which shows they were originally two distinct grammatical categories, but in the Ronghong dialect this distinction has been lost.

Following are full examples of the three singular markings:

- (4.49) *qa* *kosu-pi-wu* *fā-a-qəi* *zə-pa.*
 1sg fifty-CL-INST clothes-one-CL DIR-buy:1sg
 ‘I bought one item of clothing for fifty dollars.’
- (4.50) *?ũ* *kosu-pi-wu* *fā-a-qəi* *zə-pə-n.*
 2sg fifty-CL-INST clothing-one-CL DIR-buy-2sg
 ‘You bought an item of clothing for fifty dollars.’
- (4.51) *the:* *kosu-pi-wu* *fā-a-qəi* *zə-pə.*
 3sg fifty-CL-INST clothing-one-CL DIR-buy
 ‘S/he bought an item of clothing for fifty dollars.’

There is another set of suffixes which can be used to mark the undergoer of a transitive verb, the goal/recipient of a ditransitive verb (the undergoer of a ditransitive verb is not reflected in the person marking), or even a genitive or benefactive argument.⁶⁶ These forms are given in Table 9:

Table 9. The Qiang non-actor person marking suffixes

	1	2	3
sg	- <i>sa</i>	- <i>san</i>	- <i>wə</i> ~ - <i>u</i>
pl	- <i>sa^t</i>	- <i>sai</i>	- <i>wə</i> ~ - <i>u</i>

The first and second person forms clearly incorporate the first and second person actor forms /-a/, /-^t/ and /-n/, /-i/ respectively, but the origins of the initial of the first person forms and /sa/ of the second person forms are unclear.⁶⁷

As mentioned above, the non-actor person marking also helps to show perspective, as it is generally used only when the topic is a non-actor human referent. Contrast (4.52a), which has a 1st person actor/topic and (4.52b), which has a third person non-actor/topic.

- (4.52) a. *qa-(wu)* *the:* *ləyz* *e-pen* *de-l-a.*
 1sg-AGT 3sg book one-CL DIR-give-1sg
 ‘I gave him a book.’

- b. *the: qa-wu ləyz e-pen de-l-wa.* (< wə + a)
 3sg 1sg-AGT book one-CL DIR-give-3sg:1sg
 ‘Him I gave a book to.’

The non-actor marking is optional in most contexts, and when used it sometimes has the feeling of an adversative passive, as in (4.53a-b):

- (4.53) a. *eiŋi ʔũ mo-lu-n-tu the: mi-ta*
 next.year 2sg NEG-come-2sg-LNK 3sg other.person-LOC
ɣʌa:-san.
 marry:PRS-2sgU
 ‘If you don’t come back next year, she will marry someone else.’
- b. *ʔũ tsa tca-lau-tha, tatə tə-khua:-san.*
 2sg here NEG.IMP-be.noisy-AUX father DIR-angry:PRS-2sgU
 ‘Don’t be noisy here or your father will be angry (at you).’

Here the use of the non-actor marking is not marking an argument of the verb, but a referent who will be affected by the action (in a negative way). The forms for first and second person non-actor are generally used only when there is a third person actor. The entire set of possible suffixes for the transitive verb are given in Table 10.

Table 10. The Qiang person marking suffixes for transitive verbs

		Non-Actor					
		1sg	1pl	2sg	2pl	3sg	3pl
A	1sg			-a	-a	-wa	-wa
c	1pl			-ʻ	-ʻ	-wəʻ	-wəʻ
t	2sg	-n	-n			-wən	-wən
o	2pl	-i	-i			-wəi	-wəi
r	3sg	-ʂa	-ʂaʻ	-san	-sai	-wə	-wə-tci
	3pl	-tci-ʂa	-tci-ʂa	-tci-san	-tci-sai	-wə-tci	-wə-tci

Following are examples of the non-actor person marking that would be used in imperfective, prospective and perfective situations. The first person forms are generally not used in situations where the clause refers to some future event, and so the examples in (4.57a-b) do not have this marking, and instead have the marking usually used for first person

actors. This is quite exceptional in the overall system, which is generally clearly based on an actor/non-actor contrast.

Imperfective:

- (4.54) a. *lausə qa xe-ʂa.*
 teacher 1sg scold-1sgU
 ‘The teacher is scolding me.’
- b. *lausə tcile xe-ʂaʹ.*
 teacher 1pl scold-1plU
 ‘The teacher is scolding us.’
- (4.55) a. *lausə ?ũ xe-san.*
 teacher 2sg scold-2sgU
 ‘The teacher is scolding you(sg).’
- b. *lausə ?ile xe-sai.*
 teacher 2pl scold-2plU
 ‘The teacher is scolding you(pl).’
- (4.56) a. *lausə the: xe-w.*
 teacher 3sg scold-3U
 ‘The teacher is scolding him/her.’
- b. *lausə themle xe-w-tci.*
 teacher 3pl scold-3U-3pl
 ‘The teachers are scolding them.’

Prospective aspect:

- (4.57) a. *lausə qa xa:.*
 teacher 1sg scold:PRS:1sg
 ‘The teacher will scold me.’
- b. *lausə tcile xa:ʹ.*
 teacher 1pl scold:PRS:1pl
 ‘The teacher will scold us.’

(4.58) a. *lausə ?ũ xa:-san.*
 teacher 2sg scold:PRS-2sgU
 ‘The teacher will scold you(sg).’

b. *lausə ?ile xa:-sai.*
 teacher 2pl scold:PRS-2plU
 ‘The teacher will scold you(pl).’

(4.59) a. *lausə the: xe-wa:.*
 teacher 3sg scold-PRS:3U
 ‘The teacher will scold him/her.’

b. *lausə themle xe-wa:-tci.*
 teacher 3pl scold-PRS:3U-3pl
 ‘The teacher will scold them.’

Perfective:

(4.60) a. *the: nə-xe-w.*
 3sg DIR-scold-3U
 ‘(The teacher) scolded him/her.’

b. *themle nə-xe-w-tci.*
 3sg DIR-scold-3U-3pl
 ‘(The teachers) scolded them.’

(4.61) a. *qa nə-xe-ʂa.*
 1sg DIR-scold-1sgU
 ‘The teacher scolded me.’

b. *tciile nə-xe-ʂaʔ.*
 1pl DIR-scold-1plU
 ‘The teacher scolded us.’

(4.62) a. *?ũ ne-xe-san.*
 2sg DIR-scold-2sgU
 ‘The teacher scolded you(sg).’

- b. *ʔile ne-xe-sai.*
 2pl DIR-scold-2plU
 ‘The teacher scolded you(pl).’

Following is an example with third plural actor marking and first singular non-actor marking:

- (4.63) *themle qa xe-tci-ʂa.*
 3pl 1sg scold-3pl-1plU
 ‘They are scolding me.’

In the next two examples there is a first or second person actor and a third person undergoer, and so the verb exhibits first or second person actor marking and third person non-actor marking. In the case of ditransitives, such as these examples, the non-actor person marking reflects the person of the goal or recipient, not the undergoer.

- (4.64) *dzə-ŋuəŋi qa the:-ta kə-ji-wa.* (< wə + a)
 thing-TOP 1sg 3sg-LOC thus-say-3sgU:1sg
 ‘I told him/her about something concerning him/her.’

- (4.65) *dzə-ŋuəŋi ʔü the:-ta kə-ji-wə-n.*
 thing-TOP 2sg 3sg-LOC thus-say-3sgU-2sg
 ‘You told him/her something concerning him/her.’

The following two examples show one situation in which plural marking is not necessary, that where two referents are conjoined into a single plural argument by the conjunction /ŋa/:

- (4.66) *qa-ŋa-the: itci ka:.*
 1sg-COM-3sg together go:PRS
 ‘S/he and I will go together.’
- (4.67) *xʂe-ŋa-tshe za-ka ʂaf dzə.*
 cow-COM-sheep field-LOC grass eat
 ‘The cow and sheep eat grass in the field.’

The following three examples show person marking reflecting a possessor, a benefactive marked with /χua-ŋi/ and a benefactive marked with /-tɕ/, respectively:

- (4.68) *ʔũ-panə-la-ha tsa ʂə-san.*
 2sg-thing-DEF:one-pl here exist-2sgU
 ‘Your things are here.’

- (4.69) *ʔũ-χua-(ŋi) qupu ictɕimaqa ha-κ-ŋi*
 2sg-BEN-ADV 3sg often DIR-go-ADV
səpe phiphi-kəpə-san.
 medicine dig-HABIT-2sgU
 ‘For your sake, s/he often goes to dig medicine.’

- (4.70) *the: qa-tɕ zə-p-ʂa.*
 3sg 1sg-GEN DIR-buy-1sgU
 ‘S/he bought it for me.’

Following are the full paradigms for intransitive and transitive verbs with different types of finals, in their imperfective, prospective aspect and prefixed (perfective) forms.⁶⁸

nə ‘to sleep’	Prospective	Imperfective	Prefixed
1sg sleep	<i>na:</i>	<i>na</i>	<i>hana</i>
2sg sleep	<i>na:n</i>	<i>nən</i>	<i>hanən</i>
3sg sleep	<i>na:</i>	<i>nə</i>	<i>han</i>
1pl sleep	<i>na:ʔ</i>	<i>nəʔ</i>	<i>hanəʔ</i>
2pl sleep	<i>na:i</i>	<i>nəi</i>	<i>hanəi</i>
3pl sleep	<i>na:tɕi</i>	<i>nətɕi</i>	<i>hantɕi</i>
zei ‘to cry’	Prospective	Imperfective	Prefixed
1sg cry	<i>zeia:</i>	<i>zeia</i>	<i>hezeia</i>
2sg cry	<i>zeia:n</i>	<i>zein</i>	<i>hezein</i>
3sg cry	<i>zeia:</i>	<i>zei</i>	<i>hezei</i>
1pl cry	<i>zeia:ʔ</i>	<i>zeiəʔ</i>	<i>hezeiəʔ</i>
2pl cry	<i>zeia:i</i>	<i>zeiəi</i>	<i>hezeiəi</i>

3pl cry	<i>zeia:tei</i>	<i>zeitci</i>	<i>fiezeitci</i>
phu 'to flee'	Prospective	Imperfective	Prefixed
1sg flee	<i>phua:</i>	<i>phua</i>	<i>duφua</i>
2sg flee	<i>phua:n</i>	<i>phun</i>	<i>duφun</i>
3sg flee	<i>phua:</i>	<i>phu</i>	<i>duφu</i>
1pl flee	<i>phua:ʻ</i>	<i>phuʻ</i>	<i>duφuʻ</i>
2pl flee	<i>phua:i</i>	<i>phui</i>	<i>duφui</i>
3pl flee	<i>phua:tei</i>	<i>phutci</i>	<i>duφutci</i>
sue 'to shine'	Prospective	Imperfective	Prefixed
1sg shine	<i>sua:</i>	<i>sua</i>	<i>isua</i>
2sg shine	<i>sua:n</i>	<i>suen</i>	<i>isuen</i>
3sg shine	<i>sua:</i>	<i>sue</i>	<i>isue</i>
1pl shine	<i>sua:ʻ</i>	<i>sueʻ</i>	<i>isueʻ</i>
2pl shine	<i>sua:i</i>	<i>suei</i>	<i>isuei</i>
3pl shine	<i>sua:tei</i>	<i>suetcı</i>	<i>isuetci</i>
χsa 'understand'	Prospective	Imperfective	Prefixed
1sg understand	<i>χsa:</i>	<i>χsa</i>	<i>təχsa</i>
2sg understand	<i>χsa:n</i>	<i>χsan</i>	<i>təχsan</i>
3sg understand	<i>χsa:</i>	<i>χsa</i>	<i>təχsa</i>
1pl understand	<i>χsa:ʻ</i>	<i>χsaʻ</i>	<i>təχsaʻ</i>
2pl understand	<i>χsa:i</i>	<i>χsai</i>	<i>təχsai</i>
3pl understand	<i>χsa:tei</i>	<i>χsateı</i>	<i>təχsateı</i>
xe 'to scold/curse'	Prospective	Imperfective	Prefixed
1sg scold 2sg	<i>xa:</i>	<i>xa</i>	<i>nəxa</i>
1sg scold 3sg	<i>xa: (xewa:)</i>	<i>xa (xewa)⁶⁹</i>	<i>nəxewa</i>
1sg scold 2pl	<i>xa:</i>	<i>xa</i>	<i>nəxa</i>
1sg scold 3pl	<i>xa:</i>	<i>xa</i>	<i>nəxa</i>
2sg scold 1sg	<i>xa:n</i>	<i>xen</i>	<i>nəxen</i>
2sg scold 3sg	<i>xewa:n</i>	<i>xewen</i>	<i>nəxewen</i>
2sg scold 1pl	<i>xa:n</i>	<i>xen</i>	<i>nəxen</i>

2sg scold 3pl	<i>xewa:n</i>	<i>xewen</i>	<i>nəxewen</i>
3sg scold 1sg	<i>xa:</i>	<i>xe</i>	<i>nəxe</i>
3sg scold 2sg	<i>xa:san</i>	<i>xesan</i>	<i>nəxesan</i>
3sg scold 3sg	<i>xewa:</i>	<i>xew</i>	<i>nəxew</i>
3sg scold 1pl	<i>xa:</i>	<i>xe</i>	<i>nəxe</i>
3sg scold 2pl	<i>xa:sai</i>	<i>xesai</i>	<i>nəxesai</i>
3sg scold 3pl	<i>xewa:</i>	<i>xew</i>	<i>nəxw</i>
1pl scold 2sg	<i>xa:^ʔ</i>	<i>xe^ʔ</i>	<i>nəxe^ʔ</i>
1pl scold 3sg	<i>xa:^ʔ</i>	<i>xe^ʔ</i>	<i>nəxe^ʔ</i>
1pl scold 2pl	<i>xa:^ʔ</i>	<i>xe^ʔ</i>	<i>nəxe^ʔ</i>
1pl scold 3pl	<i>xa:^ʔ</i>	<i>xe^ʔ</i>	<i>nəxe^ʔ</i>
2pl scold 1sg	<i>xa:i</i>	<i>xei</i>	<i>nəxei</i>
2pl scold 3sg	<i>xewa:i</i>	<i>xewei</i>	<i>nəxewei</i>
2pl scold 1pl	<i>xa:i</i>	<i>xei</i>	<i>nəxei</i>
2pl scold 3pl	<i>xewa:i</i>	<i>xewei</i>	<i>nəxewei</i>
3pl scold 1sg	<i>xewa:tci</i>	<i>xetci</i>	<i>nəxetci</i>
3pl scold 2sg	<i>xa:san</i>	<i>xesan</i>	<i>nəxesan</i>
3pl scold 3sg	<i>xewa:tci</i>	<i>xewtci</i>	<i>nəxewtci</i>
3pl scold 1pl	<i>xa:tci</i>	<i>xetci</i>	<i>nəxetci</i>
3pl scold 2pl	<i>xa:sai</i>	<i>xesai</i>	<i>nəxesai</i>
3pl scold 3pl	<i>xewa:tci</i>	<i>xewtci</i>	<i>nəxewtci</i>

bie ‘carry (on back)’	Prospective	Imperfective	Prefixed
------------------------------	-------------	--------------	----------

1sg carry 2sg	<i>bia:</i>	<i>bia</i>	<i>feibia</i>
1sg carry 3sg	<i>bia:</i>	<i>bia</i>	<i>feibia</i>
1sg carry 2pl	<i>bia:</i>	<i>bia</i>	<i>feibia</i>
1sg carry 3pl	<i>bia:</i>	<i>bia</i>	<i>feibia</i>
2sg carry 1sg	<i>bia:n</i>	<i>bien</i>	<i>feibien(--bin)</i>
2sg carry 3sg	<i>biewa:n</i>	<i>biewən</i>	<i>feibiwən</i>
2sg carry 1pl	<i>bia:n</i>	<i>bien</i>	<i>feibin</i>
2sg carry 3pl	<i>biewa:n</i>	<i>biewən</i>	<i>feibiwən</i>
3sg carry 1sg	<i>bia:</i>	<i>bie</i>	<i>feibi</i>
3sg carry 2sg	<i>bia:san</i>	<i>biesan</i>	<i>feibisan</i>
3sg carry 3sg	<i>biewa:</i>	<i>biew</i>	<i>feibiw</i>
3sg carry 1pl	<i>bia:i</i>	<i>bie</i>	<i>feibi</i>
3sg carry 2pl	<i>bia:sai</i>	<i>biesai</i>	<i>feibisai</i>
3sg carry 3pl	<i>biewa:</i>	<i>biew</i>	<i>feibiw</i>

1pl carry 2sg	<i>bia:^ʔ</i>	<i>bie^ʔ</i>	<i>ʃeibie^ʔ</i>
1pl carry 3sg	<i>bia:^ʔ</i>	<i>bie^ʔ</i>	<i>ʃeibie^ʔ</i>
1pl carry 2pl	<i>bia:^ʔ</i>	<i>bie^ʔ</i>	<i>ʃeibie^ʔ</i>
1pl carry 3pl	<i>bia:^ʔ</i>	<i>bie^ʔ</i>	<i>ʃeibie^ʔ</i>
2pl carry 1sg	<i>bia:i</i>	<i>biei</i>	<i>ʃeibii</i>
2pl carry 3sg	<i>biewa:i</i>	<i>biewei</i>	<i>ʃeibiwei</i>
2pl carry 1pl	<i>bia:i</i>	<i>biei</i>	<i>ʃeibii</i>
2pl carry 3pl	<i>biewa:i</i>	<i>biewei</i>	<i>ʃeibiwei</i>
3pl carry 1sg	<i>bia:itɕi</i>	<i>bietɕi</i>	<i>ʃeibitɕi</i>
3pl carry 2sg	<i>bia:san</i>	<i>biesan</i>	<i>ʃeibisan</i>
3pl carry 3sg	<i>biewa:itɕi</i>	<i>biewtɕi</i>	<i>ʃeibiwɕi</i>
3pl carry 1pl	<i>bia:itɕi</i>	<i>bietɕi</i>	<i>ʃeibitɕi</i>
3pl carry 2pl	<i>bia:sai</i>	<i>biesai</i>	<i>ʃeibisai</i>
3pl carry 3pl	<i>biewa:tɕi</i>	<i>biewtɕi</i>	<i>ʃeibiwɕi</i>

me^ʔz ‘search for’	Prospective	Imperfective	Prefixed
1sg search for 2sg	<i>me^ʔz a:</i>	<i>me^ʔz a</i>	<i>təme^ʔz a</i>
1sg search for 3sg	<i>me^ʔz a:</i>	<i>me^ʔz a</i>	<i>təme^ʔz a</i>
1sg search for 2pl	<i>me^ʔz a:</i>	<i>me^ʔz a</i>	<i>təme^ʔz a</i>
1sg search for 3pl	<i>me^ʔz a:</i>	<i>me^ʔz a</i>	<i>təme^ʔz a</i>
2sg search for 1sg	<i>me^ʔz a:n</i>	<i>me^ʔz ən</i>	<i>təme^ʔz ən</i>
2sg search for 3sg	<i>me^ʔz wa:n</i>	<i>me^ʔz wən</i>	<i>təme^ʔz wən</i>
2sg search for 1pl	<i>me^ʔz a:n</i>	<i>me^ʔz ən</i>	<i>təme^ʔz ən</i>
2sg search for 3pl	<i>me^ʔz wa:n</i>	<i>me^ʔz wən</i>	<i>təme^ʔz wən</i>
3sg search for 1sg	<i>me^ʔz a:i</i>	<i>me^ʔz</i>	<i>təme^ʔz</i>
3sg search for 2sg	<i>me^ʔz a:san</i>	<i>me^ʔz san</i>	<i>təme^ʔz san</i>
3sg search for 3sg	<i>me^ʔz wa:</i>	<i>me^ʔz w</i>	<i>təme^ʔz wə</i>
3sg search for 1pl	<i>me^ʔz a:i</i>	<i>me^ʔz</i>	<i>təme^ʔz</i>
3sg search for 2pl	<i>me^ʔz a:sai</i>	<i>me^ʔz sai</i>	<i>təme^ʔz sai</i>
3sg search for 3pl	<i>me^ʔz wa:</i>	<i>me^ʔz wə</i>	<i>təme^ʔz wə</i>
1pl search for 2sg	<i>me^ʔz a:</i>	<i>me^ʔz ə^ʔ</i>	<i>təme^ʔz ə^ʔ</i>
1pl search for 3sg	<i>me^ʔz a:</i>	<i>me^ʔz ə^ʔ</i>	<i>təme^ʔz ə^ʔ</i>
1pl search for 2pl	<i>me^ʔz a:</i>	<i>me^ʔz ə^ʔ</i>	<i>təme^ʔz ə^ʔ</i>
1pl search for 3pl	<i>me^ʔz a:</i>	<i>me^ʔz ə^ʔ</i>	<i>təme^ʔz ə^ʔ</i>
2pl search for 1sg	<i>me^ʔz a:i</i>	<i>me^ʔz əi</i>	<i>təme^ʔz əi</i>
2pl search for 3sg	<i>me^ʔz wa:i</i>	<i>me^ʔz wei</i>	<i>təme^ʔz wei</i>
2pl search for 1pl	<i>me^ʔz a:i</i>	<i>me^ʔz əi</i>	<i>təme^ʔz əi</i>

2pl search for 3pl	<i>me'zwa:i</i>	<i>me'zwei</i>	<i>təme'zwei</i>
3pl search for 1sg	<i>me'za:itci</i>	<i>me'z tci</i>	<i>təme'z tci</i>
3pl search for 2sg	<i>me'za:san</i>	<i>me'z san</i>	<i>təme'z san</i>
3pl search for 3sg	<i>me'zwa:</i>	<i>me'z wə</i>	<i>təme'z wə</i>
3sg search for 1pl	<i>me'za:itci</i>	<i>me'z tci</i>	<i>təme'z tci</i>
3sg search for 2pl	<i>me'za:sai</i>	<i>me'z sai</i>	<i>təme'z sai</i>
3sg search for 3pl	<i>me'zwa:tci</i>	<i>me'z wətci</i>	<i>təme'z wətci</i>

zulu 'to wait for'	Prospective	Imperfective	Prefixed
1sg wait for 2sg	<i>zulua:</i>	<i>zulua</i>	<i>uzulua</i>
1sg wait for 3sg	<i>zulua:</i>	<i>zulua</i>	<i>uzulua</i>
1sg wait for 2pl	<i>zulua:</i>	<i>zulua</i>	<i>uzulua</i>
1sg wait for 3pl	<i>zulua:</i>	<i>zulua</i>	<i>uzulua</i>
2sg wait for 1sg	<i>zulua:n</i>	<i>zuluən</i>	<i>uzuluən</i>
2sg wait for 3sg	<i>zulɥwa:n</i>	<i>zulɥwən</i>	<i>uzulɥwən</i>
2sg wait for 1pl	<i>zulua:n</i>	<i>zuluən</i>	<i>uzuluən</i>
2sg wait for 3pl	<i>zulɥwa:n</i>	<i>zulɥwən</i>	<i>uzulɥwən</i>
3sg wait for 1sg	<i>zulua:i</i>	<i>zulɥ</i>	<i>uzulɥ</i>
3sg wait for 2sg	<i>zulua:san</i>	<i>zulɥsan</i>	<i>uzulɥsan</i>
3sg wait for 3sg	<i>zulɥwa:</i>	<i>zulɥwə</i>	<i>uzulɥwə</i>
3sg wait for 1pl	<i>zulua:i</i>	<i>zulɥ</i>	<i>uzulɥ</i>
3sg wait for 2pl	<i>zulua:sai</i>	<i>zulɥsai</i>	<i>uzulɥsai</i>
3sg wait for 3pl	<i>zulɥwa:</i>	<i>zulɥwə</i>	<i>uzulɥwə</i>
1pl wait for 2sg	<i>zulua:ʔ</i>	<i>zuluəʔ</i>	<i>uzuluəʔ</i>
1pl wait for 3sg	<i>zulua:ʔ</i>	<i>zuluəʔ</i>	<i>uzuluəʔ</i>
1pl wait for 2pl	<i>zulua:ʔ</i>	<i>zuluəʔ</i>	<i>uzuluəʔ</i>
1pl wait for 3pl	<i>zulua:ʔ</i>	<i>zuluəʔ</i>	<i>uzuluəʔ</i>
2pl wait for 1sg	<i>zulua:i</i>	<i>zului</i>	<i>uzului</i>
2pl wait for 3sg	<i>zulɥwa:i</i>	<i>zulɥwei</i>	<i>uzulɥwei</i>
2pl wait for 1pl	<i>zulua:i</i>	<i>zului</i>	<i>uzului</i>
2pl wait for 3pl	<i>zulɥwa:i</i>	<i>zulɥwei</i>	<i>uzulɥwei</i>
3pl wait for 1sg	<i>zulua:itci</i>	<i>zulɥtci</i>	<i>uzulɥtci</i>
3pl wait for 2sg	<i>zulua:san</i>	<i>zulɥsan</i>	<i>uzulɥsan</i>
3pl wait for 3sg	<i>zulɥwa:</i>	<i>zulɥwə</i>	<i>uzulɥwə</i>
3pl wait for 1pl	<i>zulua:itci</i>	<i>zulɥtci</i>	<i>uzulɥtci</i>
3pl wait for 2pl	<i>zulua:sai</i>	<i>zulɥsai</i>	<i>uzulɥsai</i>
3pl wait for 3pl	<i>zulɥwa:tci</i>	<i>zulɥwətci</i>	<i>uzulɥwətci</i>

dzete 'to hit'	Prospective	Imperfective	Prefixed
1sg hit 2sg	<i>dzeta:</i>	<i>dzeta</i>	<i>zədzita</i>
1sg hit 3sg	<i>dzeta:</i>	<i>dzeta</i>	<i>zədzita</i>
1sg hit 2pl	<i>dzeta:</i>	<i>dzeta</i>	<i>zədzita</i>
1sg hit 3pl	<i>dzeta:</i>	<i>dzeta</i>	<i>zədzita</i>
2sg hit 1sg	<i>dzeta:n</i>	<i>dzeten</i>	<i>zədziten</i>
2sg hit 3sg	<i>dzetewa:n</i>	<i>dzetewən</i>	<i>zedzitetwən</i>
2sg hit 1pl	<i>dzeta:n</i>	<i>dzeten</i>	<i>zədziten</i>
2sg hit 3pl	<i>dzetenwa:n</i>	<i>dzetewən</i>	<i>zədzitetwən</i>
3sg hit 1sg	<i>dzeta:i</i>	<i>dzete</i>	<i>zədzite</i>
3sg hit 2sg	<i>dzeta:san</i>	<i>dzetesan</i>	<i>zədzitesan</i>
3sg hit 3sg	<i>dzetewa:</i>	<i>dzetew</i>	<i>zədzitew</i>
3sg hit 1pl	<i>dzeta:i</i>	<i>dzete</i>	<i>zədzite</i>
3sg hit 2pl	<i>dzeta:sai</i>	<i>dzetesai</i>	<i>zədzitesai</i>
3sg hit 3pl	<i>dzetewa:</i>	<i>dzetew</i>	<i>zədzitew</i>
1pl hit 2sg	<i>dzeta:^ʔ</i>	<i>dzete^ʔ</i>	<i>zədzite^ʔ</i>
1pl hit 3sg	<i>dzeta:^ʔ</i>	<i>dzete^ʔ</i>	<i>zədzite^ʔ</i>
1pl hit 2pl	<i>dzeta:^ʔ</i>	<i>dzete^ʔ</i>	<i>zədzite^ʔ</i>
1pl hit 3pl	<i>dzeta:^ʔ</i>	<i>dzete^ʔ</i>	<i>zədzite^ʔ</i>
2pl hit 1sg	<i>dzeta:i</i>	<i>dzetei</i>	<i>zədzitei</i>
2pl hit 3sg	<i>dzetewa:i</i>	<i>dzetewei</i>	<i>zədzitewei</i>
2pl hit 1pl	<i>dzeta:i</i>	<i>dzetei</i>	<i>zədzitei</i>
2pl hit 3pl	<i>dzetewa:i</i>	<i>dzetewei</i>	<i>zədzitewei</i>
3pl hit 1sg	<i>dzeta:itci</i>	<i>dzetetci</i>	<i>zədzitetci</i>
3pl hit 2sg	<i>dzeta:san</i>	<i>dzetesan</i>	<i>zədzitesan</i>
3pl hit 3sg	<i>dzetewa:</i>	<i>dzetew</i>	<i>zədzitew</i>
3pl hit 1pl	<i>dzeta:itci</i>	<i>dzetetci</i>	<i>zədzitetci</i>
3pl hit 2pl	<i>dzeta:sai</i>	<i>dzetesai</i>	<i>zədzitesai</i>
3pl hit 3pl	<i>dzetewa:tcı</i>	<i>dzetewtcı</i>	<i>zədzetewtcı</i>
del 'to give'	Prospective ⁷⁰	Imperfective	Prefixed
1sg give 2sg	<i>dela:</i>	<i>dela</i>	<i>dela</i>
1sg give 3sg	<i>dela:</i>	<i>dela</i>	<i>dela</i>
1sg give 2pl	<i>dela:</i>	<i>dela</i>	<i>dela</i>
1sg give 3pl	<i>dela:</i>	<i>dela</i>	<i>dela</i>
2sg give 1sg	<i>dela:n</i>	<i>delən</i>	<i>delən</i>

2sg give 3sg	<i>delwa:n</i>	<i>delwən</i>	<i>delwən</i>
2sg give 1pl	<i>dela:n</i>	<i>delən</i>	<i>delən</i>
2sg give 3pl	<i>delwa:n</i>	<i>delwən</i>	<i>delwən</i>
3sg give 1sg	<i>dela:</i>	<i>del</i>	<i>del</i>
3sg give 2sg	<i>dela:san</i>	<i>delsan</i>	<i>delsan</i>
3sg give 3sg	<i>delwa:</i>	<i>delwə</i>	<i>delwə</i>
3sg give 1pl	<i>dela:</i>	<i>del</i>	<i>del</i>
3sg give 2pl	<i>dela:sai</i>	<i>delsai</i>	<i>delsai</i>
3sg give 3pl	<i>delwa:</i>	<i>delwə</i>	<i>delwə</i>
1pl give 2sg	<i>dela:ʔ</i>	<i>deləʔ</i>	<i>deləʔ</i>
1pl give 3sg	<i>dela:ʔ</i>	<i>deləʔ</i>	<i>deləʔ</i>
1pl give 2pl	<i>dela:ʔ</i>	<i>deləʔ</i>	<i>deləʔ</i>
1pl give 3pl	<i>dela:ʔ</i>	<i>deləʔ</i>	<i>deləʔ</i>
2pl give 1sg	<i>dela:i</i>	<i>deləi</i>	<i>deləi</i>
2pl give 3sg	<i>delwa:i</i>	<i>delwei</i>	<i>delwei</i>
2pl give 1pl	<i>dela:i</i>	<i>deləi</i>	<i>deləi</i>
2pl give 3pl	<i>delwa:i</i>	<i>delwei</i>	<i>delwei</i>
3pl give 1sg	<i>dela:tɕi</i>	<i>deltɕi</i>	<i>deltɕi</i>
3pl give 2sg	<i>dela:san</i>	<i>delsan</i>	<i>delsan</i>
3pl give 3sg	<i>delwa:itɕi</i>	<i>delwətɕi</i>	<i>delwətɕi</i>
3pl give 1pl	<i>dela:tɕi</i>	<i>deltɕi</i>	<i>deltɕi</i>
3pl give 2pl	<i>dela:sai</i>	<i>delsai</i>	<i>delsai</i>
3pl give 3pl	<i>delwa:tɕi</i>	<i>delwətɕi</i>	<i>delwətɕi</i>

4.3.3. *Direction marking*

There is a set of verbal prefixes in Qiang which mark the direction of the action. There are eight different prefixes, but not all verbs can take all eight prefixes; some, such as /tse/ ‘look at’ can only take one prefix. This restriction seems to be in some cases lexical rather than semantic (in some cases it is clearly semantic), as there is another verb, /lə/ ‘look at’ which has roughly the same semantics as /tse/, but can take all eight of the directional prefixes (see below). Out of a study of 400 verbs, Huang (1997:71) found that 104 of them (26%) took only one of the prefixes, 116 (29%) took two prefixes, 88 (22%) took all eight prefixes, and the rest took between three and seven of the prefixes. Of the prefixes that the verbs could take, the two marking ‘up’ and ‘down’ (see

below) were the most common, being used on 243 and 234 verbs respectively, while the rest were used on 123 to 199 verbs of the set. Huang explains this as being related to the fact that the Qiang people live on steep mountain sides. Another factor could be the many metaphorical uses of ‘up’ and ‘down’ (see the list of metaphorical pairs below).

While the systems of direction marking prefixes are generally similar among Qiang dialects (and is found in other Qiangic languages), the Ronghong dialect system differs from the Mawo dialect system discussed in Sun 1981a and Sun 1981b, in that it does not include the two forms referring to action towards or away from a stream in a mountain valley, and it also does not have a form for backward motion. Instead it has two other prefixes that mark the direction of action into some container or out of some container (distinct from the two prefixes marking direction towards the center and outward from the center). This system is then more similar to that in the southern Qiang dialect of Taoping, also discussed in Sun 1981a.⁷¹

The form of the prefix follows the rules of vowel harmony: with a stressed root vowel, the prefix harmonizes with it (see §2.4.3); with an unstressed root vowel, the vowel of the prefix is usually [-ə], [-a], or [-ɑ]. In a few cases, the vowel can become a diphthong: [fiɛi-bi] < /bie/ ‘carry on back’; [de-ʂe ~ die-ʂe] < /ʂe/ ‘die’; [da-qəθi ~ dia-qəθi ~ die-qəθi] ‘take (clothes, backpack) off from one’s back’; [de-mi ~ die-mi] ‘go out’. Following are examples of the use of the prefixes with different verbs.

lu ‘come’

tulu ‘come vertically up’
fiolu ‘come vertically down’
nulu ‘come upstream’
sulu ‘come downstream’
zulu ‘come towards the center’
 (no form)
ulu ‘come in’
holu ‘come out’

kuəte ‘throw’

təku ‘throw vertically up’
fiaku ‘throw vertically down’
nəku ‘throw upstream’
səku ‘throw downstream’
zəku ‘throw towards center’
ɖaku ‘throw out from center’
əkʊ ‘throw in’
haku ‘throw out’

lə 'look'

<i>təl</i>	'look upward'
<i>fiəl</i>	'look downward'
<i>nəl</i>	'look upstream'
<i>səl</i>	'look downstream'
<i>zəl</i>	'look toward center'
<i>dəl</i>	'look outward from center'
<i>əl</i>	'look in'
<i>hal</i>	'look out'

tʂhu 'stretch'

<i>tutʂhu</i>	'stretch upward'
<i>fiotʂhu</i>	'stretch downward'
<i>nutʂhu</i>	'stretch upstream'
<i>sutʂhu</i>	'stretch downstream'
<i>zutʂhu</i>	'stretch toward center'
<i>dotʂhu</i>	'stretch out from center'
<i>utʂhu</i>	'stretch in'
<i>hotʂhu</i>	'stretch out'

Which prefix is used of course reflects where the person performing the action is relative to the goal. For example, in (4.71), we can guess that the addressee (not necessarily the speaker) is or will be in the Chibusu District, as the prefix marking movement down-river is used with the verb, and the Mao County county seat is down-river from Chibusu District:

- (4.71) *ʔũ* *ʂquŋi* *sə-ka:-n-a?*
 2sg Mao.County DIR-go:PRS-2sg-Q
 'Are you going (down-river) to the county seat?'

Repeating a verb with different prefixes can express a certain kind of repetition of an action by one or more people. (The /zə/ prefix marks movement towards the center, while /də/ marks movement away from the center; the vocalic prefix marks movement in, while the /hə/ prefix marks movement out.)

- (4.72) a. *ləla* 'change' *zə-la də-la* 'change back and forth'
 b. *kuku* 'curse' *zu-ku do-ku* 'curse back and forth'
 c. *pi* 'hide' *i-pi he-pi* 'hide in and out'
 d. *ŋuasi* 'borrow' *zi-ŋuasi de-ŋuasi* 'borrow back and forth'
 e. *ke'l* 'ask' *zi-ke'l de-ke'l* 'ask back and forth'
 f. *ko'i* 'treat' *zu-ko'i do-ko'i* 'treat each other (to a meal)'

Aside from marking the actual direction of the action, the directional prefixes also are used to mark a change in the *Aktionsart* (inherent verbal aspect) of the verb, from state or activity to achievement or

accomplishment, or from an absolute state to a contingent (temporary/abnormal) state. Let us first introduce some of the concepts to be employed here. If we look at the types of verbs found in the world's languages, we find the following semantic types (From Van Valin & LaPolla 1997, Ch 3, based on Vendler 1967):

- a. States: *be sick, be tall, be dead, love, know, believe, have*
- b. Achievements: *pop, explode, collapse, shatter* (all intransitive)
- c. Accomplishments: *melt, freeze, dry* (the intransitive versions); *recover from illness, learn*
- d. Activities: *march, walk, roll* (the intransitive versions); *swim, think, rain, read, eat*

These four types can be distinguished using the three characteristics [\pm dynamic], [\pm telic], and [\pm punctual], as in the following chart:⁷²

a. State:	[- dynamic], [- telic], [- punctual]
b. Activity:	[+ dynamic], [- telic], [- punctual]
c. Accomplishment:	[+ dynamic], [+ telic], [- punctual]
d. Achievement:	[+ dynamic], [+ telic], [+ punctual]

Each of these four types also has a causative form:

a. State:	The boy is afraid.
a'. Causative state:	The dog frightens/scares the boy.
b. Achievement:	The balloon popped.
b'. Causative achievement:	The cat popped the balloon.
c. Accomplishment:	The ice melted.
c'. Causative accomplishment:	The hot water melted the ice.
d. Activity:	The ball rolled around the room.
d'. Causative activity:	The girl rolled the ball around the room.

Using a form of lexical decomposition, we can represent these verbs types using the following form of notation:

antonyms of ‘become dry’ and ‘become hot’ are given in the lower right of this set of forms for the sake of completeness. These forms do not take the ‘up’ or ‘down’ prefixes; the form for ‘become wet’ takes the ‘in’ prefix, /ə-/ , presumably because the water seeps into something to make it wet, and the form for ‘become cold (feel cold)’ takes the ‘towards the center’ prefix /zə-/ (though [təmpə] is also possible), possibly like in English when we say *the cold gets into your bones*. Some of these metaphoric associations are found in English as well, such as *smarten up* vs. *dumb down*. Also *heat up*, *lighten up*, *soften up*, and *dry up*.

Use of a different directional prefix can also affect the agentivity of the argument of some intransitive verbs, or can be part of the causativization (see Section 4.2.2 on causatives) or transitivization of some verbs. Following are some examples of this difference in agentivity (cf. Huang 1997:73):⁷⁵

(4.79)	<i>da-ʔa</i>	‘slip’	<i>fiə-ʔa</i>	‘slide’
	<i>do-tshu</i>	‘fall (e.g. of fruit from a tree)’	<i>fiə-tshu</i>	‘pick (fruit from a tree)’
	<i>de-phe</i>	‘break open (of bundle)’	<i>fiə-phe</i>	‘break open (a bundle)’
	<i>da-qhua</i>	‘collapse (of house)’	<i>fiə-qhua</i>	‘knock down (a house)’
	<i>da-ka</i>	‘smash (bowl; vi.)’	<i>fiə-qhe</i>	‘smash (bowl; vt.)’
	<i>da-kli</i>	‘break (tree branch; vi.)’	<i>fiə-χli</i>	‘break (tree branch; vt.)’

In these examples, the prefixes involved are /də/, which marks movement away from the center, and /fiə/ which marks movement downward. In the first set, ‘slip’ is non-agentive, while ‘slide’ is the same action, but purposely carried out, i.e. agentive slipping. In the second set, the difference is whether the fruit falls out of the tree of its own accord, or is picked out of the tree.

There are some instances where use of different prefixes reflects different meanings or facets of the actions involved:

(4.80)	<i>ha-quətsu</i>	‘lift the head’	<i>fiə-quətsu</i>	‘lower the head’
	<i>a-qua</i>	‘turn off (a light)’	<i>ha-qua</i>	‘close (a door)’
	<i>tu-qu</i>	‘be victorious (in battle)’	<i>ho-qu</i>	‘lose (in battle)’

In some of these cases (e.g. /qu/) the root form is never used alone, and so it is difficult to give it a distinct gloss.

When the habitual-marking verb suffix /-kəpə/ appears after a prefixed adjective, it has the meaning ‘has the ability/tendency to become the state represented by the adjective’ e.g. [tə-wa-kəpə] ‘will become big’. This meaning is not possible without the prefix.

The directional prefixes are also the main means of marking an imperative (see Section 4.3.5.2).

4.3.4. Aspect

Qiang does not have grammaticalized tense marking, but it has several types of aspect marking, including prospective aspect marking, the use of the directional prefixes to mark perfective aspect,⁷⁶ change of state marking, experiential aspect marking, marking of repetition of an action, continuative aspect marking, habitual aspect marking, marking of a resultant state, and simultaneous action marking.

4.3.4.1. Prospective aspect

Prospective aspect is the sense of English *going to*, as in *It is going to rain*. In Qiang it patterns most of the time very much like a future tense, and has been analyzed as such in the past (e.g. Sun 1981a, Huang Bufan 1991), but can be used in certain constructions involving past situations (see (4.83) below). It is marked by adding the suffix /-ɑ:/ to the verb, before the person marking, in some cases replacing the root vowel of the verb, when that vowel is /ɑ/ or /ə/, as in (4.81a), where /məpɑ/ becomes [məpɑ:] in the second clause, and (4.81b), where /pə/ becomes [pɑ:].

- (4.81) a. *pəs məpɑ wa, təp-ŋi tsə-s*
 today cold very tomorrow-ADV this-COMP
təɑ-məpɑ: lu.
 CON-cold:PRS will
 ‘Today is very cold; tomorrow is going to be even colder than this.’

- b. *qa fa cupu-a-thau pa:* (*< pə*)
 1sg clothes red-one-CL buy:PRS:1sg
 ‘I am going to buy a suit of red clothes.’

In cases where the root vowel (or the last part of a diphthong) is a front vowel, the prospective aspect suffix merges with that vowel, forming [a:].

- (4.82) a. *me:^ɹ ca:* (*< ce*)
 rain fall:PRS
 ‘It’s going to rain.’
- b. *the: zə phia:* (*< phie*)
 3sg land till:PRS
 ‘S/he is going to till the land.’

The key examples for the determination of this marking as aspect rather than tense are those given in (4.83), where the marking appears in a clause representing an action that was ‘going to’ be carried out at some time in the past, which in some cases turned out not to have been done.

- (4.83) a. *qa tha-s-ka the: me^ɹza:-ŋi the: lu-ji.*
 1sg that:one-day-LOC 3sg look.for:PRS-ADV 3sg come-CSM
 ‘Just when I was going to (go) look for him, he came.’
- b. *qupu nəmaha ləyz tsa:-lai,* (*< tse*)
 3sg last.night book read:PRS-DEF:one:time
muwu die-mi.
 lamp DIR-go.out
 ‘Just when he was going to read last night, the lamp went out.’
- c. *itci khumtsi ci χqu-a:-ŋi tchoχu ma-ʂə-ji,*
 aunt khumtsi liquor boil-PRS-LNK yeast NEG-exist-CSM

fio-mu-χqu.

DIR-NEG-boil

‘Aunt Khumtsi was going to boil liquor, but there was no distiller’s yeast, (so she) didn’t boil (any).’

Prospective aspect marking is generally not used in the negative clauses of polarity verb-not-verb question forms (i.e. where the question is formed by coordinating a positive and negative form of the verb), as in (4.84a) below, and often is not used with negatives in other types of constructions, such as the conditional phrase in the (4.84b) below, but there are some situations where the prospective aspect marking and the negative prefix can appear on the same verb, as in (4.84c).

- (4.84) a. *?ũ* *stuaha* *tcha:-n-a* *ma-tchə-n-a?*
 2sg food eat-PRS-2sg-Q NEG-eat-2sg-Q
 ‘Are you going to eat?’
- b. *eiŋi* *?ũ* *mo-lu-n-tu* *the: mi-ta*
 next year 2sg NEG-come-2sg-if 3sg other.person-LOC
yzɑ:-san.
 marry:PRS-2sgU
 ‘If you don’t return next year, she is going to marry someone else.’
- c. *the: təp-ŋi* *ma-ka:-ji,* *pəs ka:-ji.*
 3sg tomorrow-ADV NEG-go:PRS-HS today go:PRS-HS
 ‘(I heard) he is not going to go tomorrow (but) will go today.’

In (4.84a), the verb in the first part of the question (a polarity verb-not-verb question; see §4.3.5.3) is in the prospective aspect, asking the intention of the addressee, while the verb in the second clause is not in the prospective aspect, as it has the negative prefix. In (4.84c) the use of the prospective aspect marking is made necessary by the fact that the word for ‘tomorrow’ appears in the clause. The relevant factor in (4.84a) and (4.84c) seems to be intention. That is, in (4.84a) the speaker is asking about the addressee’s intention to eat (not his or her intention to

not eat), whereas in (4.84c) the speaker is talking about the person's intention to not go on a certain day.

4.3.4.2. Perfective and imperfective aspect

Aside from marking pure direction, the directional prefixes also mark perfective action, while the unprefixated form of the verb is used for imperfective actions. Compare the two clauses in (4.85):

- (4.85) *nəs qa ə-qa-lai the: stuaha tchə.*
 yesterday 1sg DIR-go:1sg-DEF:one:time 3sg food/rice eat
 'Yesterday when I entered the room, s/he was eating.'

The first clause expresses a completed action, while the second clause expresses an action that was ongoing at the time referred to in the first clause.

Now compare the two clauses of the following example:

- (4.86) *the: sə-te-ŋike, buatsə χuəla-k.*
 3sg DIR-eat-after bowl wash-go
 'S/he finished eating and went to wash the bowl.'

In the first clause the action is expressed as completed, and so there is a directional prefix on the verb, while the action of washing the dishes expressed in the second clause had not been completed (or it was not relevant to mark it as completed), and so the verb does not have the directional prefix. If neither clause has a completed action, as in certain types of habitual action or simultaneous action, then neither verb has the directional prefix, as in the following examples:

- (4.87) a. *the: kə-lai z botəu.*
 3sg go-DEF:one:time think
 'S/he thinks while walking.'
- b. *qa stuaha tchə-lai, the: jan tšhe.*
 1sg food/rice eat-DEF:one:time 3sg cigarette smoke
 'When I am eating, s/he is smoking.'

4.3.4.3. Change of state aspect

The most common aspect marking is /-ji/, which marks a recent change of state or situation.

(4.88) a. *me:^ʔ ci-ji.*
rain fall-CSM
'It's started raining.'

b. *me:^ʔ de-ci-ji.*
rain DIR-fall-CSM
'It has already rained (and stopped).'

(4.89) a. *the: zə phie-ji.*
3sg land till-CSM
'S/he has begun to till the land.'

b. *the: zə i-fi-ji.* (< phie)
3sg land DIR-till-CSM
'S/he has already tilled the land.'

As /-ji/ expresses a recent change of state, it can have the sense of an inchoative aspect marker (see also §4.3.3 on the use of the directional prefixes in marking an inchoative aspect).

(4.90) *the: dzə-ji.*
3sg eat-CSM
'S/he has just begun to eat.'

Compare the following two sentences in terms of the interaction of the directional prefix and the aspect marking:

(4.91) *nəp, qa tɕəu-la kə-s-ta, the: ləyz su-ji.*
last.year 1sg home-LOC go-NOM-LOC 3sg book study-CSM
'Last year when I came home, s/he was already studying.'

(4.92) *nəs qa qupu-tɕəu-la kə-s-ta, the:*
yesterday 1sg 3sg-home-LOC go-NOM-LOC 3sg

zdzyta: fia-qə-ji.
 Chengdu DIR-go-CSM
 ‘Yesterday when I got to her/his home, s/he had gone to Chengdu.’

In (4.91), the action of studying had begun, so is marked with the change of state marker /-ji/, but there is no directional prefix on the verb, as the action was still in progress at the time expressed by the first clause. In the second example the action was already completed at the time referred to in the first clause, and so the verb has both the directional prefix (which here has double duty, showing actual direction plus completion) and the change of state marker.

The change of state suffix can also be used together with prospective aspect marking to express the idea ‘about to V’, giving it a more immediate sense.

(4.93) *me:ʹ ca:-ji.* (< ʹe)
 rain fall:PRS-CSM
 ‘It’s about to rain.’

The change of state marker can be used after the auxiliary verb /da-s/ ‘finish’ to express the completion of an action.

(4.94) *the: pie ctəə da-s-ji.*
 3sg pig feed DIR-finish-CSM
 ‘S/he finished feeding the pig.’

(4.95) *the: dzə da-s-a:-ji.*
 3sg eat DIR-finish-PRS-CSM
 ‘S/he is going to finish eating soon.’

In many cases the change of state marker has the form /-jy/, and is often translated as meaning the action had ‘already’ begun or been carried out. It may be that this form is a combination of the usual form of the change of state marker /-ji/ plus the visual evidential /-u/ or the third person non-actor marker [-u ~ wə]. For this reason it is glossed as ASP instead of CSM. Following are some examples:

- (4.96) *qa a-tian u-zulu-jya.* (< jy + a)
 1sg one-hour DIR-wait-ASP:1sg
 ‘I have already waited for one hour.’
- (4.97) *me:^t de-ci-jy.*
 rain DIR-fall-ASP
 ‘It’s already raining.’ (Just begun and still raining)
- (4.98) *the: stuaha sə-tc-jy.*
 3sg food/rice DIR-eat-ASP
 ‘S/he has already eaten.’
- (4.99) *the: zə i-fi-jy.* (< phie)
 3sg land DIR-till-ASP
 ‘S/he has already tilled the land.’ (just completed)

This form also can be (and often is) used with the auxiliary verb /da-s/ ‘finish’:

- (4.100) *the: dzə da-s-jy.*
 3sg eat DIR-finish-ASP
 ‘S/he has already finished eating.’

4.3.4.4. Experiential aspect

Use of the auxiliary verb /-dze/ after the main verb marks the action represented by the verb as having been experienced by the actor of the clause:

- (4.101) *qa zdzyta: fi-a-qə-dza.* (< dze)
 1sg Chengdu:LOC DIR-go-EXP:1sg
 I have been to Chengdu.
- (4.102) *qa ləyz-tse-pen i-tsi-dza.* (< dze)
 1sg book-this-CL DIR-read-EXP:1sg
 ‘I have read this book.’

- (4.103) *(panə)-tsa-han themle zə-pə-dze-tci.*
 thing-this:one-kind 3pl DIR-buy-EXP-3pl
 ‘They have bought this kind of thing.’

If the assertion is of having not yet experienced an action, the negative and continuative aspect prefixes are prefixed to the auxiliary verb:

- (4.104) *qa ləyz-tse-pen i-tsi-me-tci-dza.* (< dze)
 1sg book-this-CL DIR-read-NEG-CON-EXP:1sg
 ‘I have not yet read this book.’

4.3.4.5. Repetition

Repetition of an action (though not iterative in the sense of, e.g. tapping one’s fingers on the table; by repetition here is meant doing an action ‘again’) is expressed by the suffix */-jə/*, which precedes the other aspect suffixes and person marking.⁷⁷ It can also be used with prospective aspect marking and the change of state marker.

- (4.105) a. *me:^t de-ci-jə-ji.*
 rain DIR-fall/release-REP-CSM
 ‘It’s raining again.’
- b. *the: dzə-jə-ji.*
 3sg eat-REP-CSM
 ‘He is eating again.’
- (4.106) *tə-wa-jə-ji-ji jə.*
 DIR-big-REP-CSM-2pl say
 ‘He said you(pl) have gotten big again.’

This suffix is often used together in the same clause as a free morpheme */xsə/* ‘again’ (actually the word for ‘new’), as in the following example:

- (4.107) *xsə me^tzə-lə-m i-pə-l-jə-kui.* (T6:95-96)
 again look.for-come-NOM DIR-arrive-come-REP-INF:HS
 ‘Again someone came looking (for him).’
 (lit.: ‘one who was looking for him came again.’)

4.3.4.6. Continuative aspect

The prefix [tce- ~ tci- ~ tca- ~ tco-] ‘still, yet’ is used to express continued actions or states, much like ‘still’ and ‘yet’ in English. In some cases this prefix has the same form as the prohibitive (negative imperative) prefix (see §4.3.5.2), but as the two prefixes appear in different types of contexts (and the negative imperative is not used with prospective aspect marking) there usually is no problem of ambiguity.⁷⁸

- (4.108) a. *me:^t tce-ci.*
 rain CON-fall
 ‘It’s still raining (has been raining all along).’
- b. *qa nəs tsa zə-la-lai, me:^t tce-ci.*
 1sg yesterday here DIR-come-DEF:one.time rain CON-fall
 ‘When I came here yesterday, it was still raining.’
- (4.109) *the: zə tce-fi.* (< phie)
 3sg land CON-till
 ‘S/he’s still ploughing (has been ploughing all along).’

This prefix can also be used with the prospective aspect to mean ‘still wants to/is going to V’ (that is, actions that have stopped but there is intention to continue or possibility that something will continue) ((4.110)-(4.112)), or with the negative prefix to mean ‘not yet’ ((4.113)-(4.114)).

- (4.110) *(qa) tca-na:.* (< nə)
 1sg CON-sleep:PRS
 ‘I’m still going to sleep.’ (‘I want to sleep some more’)

- (4.111) *me:^l tce-ca:* (*< ce*)
 rain CON-fall:PRS
 ‘It’s still going to rain.’
- (4.112) *the: zə tce-fia:* (*< phie*)
 3sg land CON-till:PRS
 ‘S/he is still going to till the land.’
- (4.113) *fiə-mə-tci-qa* (*< kə*)
 DIR-NEG-CON-go:1sg
 ‘I haven’t gone yet.’
- (4.114) *nəs qa kə kantchi-lai, the:*
 yesterday 1sg go want-DEF:one:time 3sg
i-mə-tci-pə-l.
 DIR-NEG-CON-arrive-come
 ‘Yesterday when I wanted to go, s/he hadn’t returned yet.’

It can also be used with a prefixed verb to mean ‘V a little longer’ or ‘continue to V’, as in the following example:

- (4.115) *?ile a-za a-tci-tcə-i.*
 2pl one-CL DIR-CON-wait-2pl
 ‘Don’t go now!’ (lit.: ‘Wait a while longer.’)

This prefix sometimes also has the meaning of ‘again (yet one more time)’ or ‘also’, as in the following examples:

- (4.116) *tse-tsi xsusu-ŋa-zguə-χau-ŋa-pan, ?ũ a-ʂ*
 this-pair thirty-COM-nine-size-COM-half 2sg one-time
i-tci-tsi-n.
 DIR-CON-see-2sg
 (trying on shoes) ‘This pair (is a) size 39 1/2, you try once again’ (lit.: ‘see yet one (more) time’)
- (4.117) *ʌzə-pies a-fə^l ha-tci-ŋuə.*
 fish-meat one-portion DIR-CON-COP
 ‘Also bring (give me) a portion of fish.’

4.3.4.8. Habitual aspect

The habitual aspect is expressed by adding the suffix /-kəpə/ or /-pə/ after a verb.⁷⁹ If the verb is a prefixed adjective (intransitive stative verb), then /-kəpə/ has the meaning that the subject ‘has the ability/tendency to become’ the state represented by the adjective, e.g. /tə-wa-kəpə/ (directional prefix + ‘big (< /ba/)’ + /-kəpə/) ‘will/can become big’. This meaning is not possible without the directional prefix.

- (4.118) *(qaqəi)-təu-la* *i-pə-k-əs* *qə:¹* *qa*
 1sgREFL-home-LOC DIR-arrive-go-NOM before 1sg
ictəimaqa *ə-jə-sa* *ɸoi-kəpa.* (< kəpə)
 often one-two-sentences call-HABIT:1sg
 ‘Before returning to my own home, I often call out a few sentences.’

- (4.119) *qə:¹-ta,* *qa* *ictəimaqa* *pies* *dzə-pa.* (< pə)
 before-LOC 1sg often meat eat-HABIT:1sg
 ‘In the past I often ate meat.’

Habitual actions can also sometimes be expressed using simple unprefix forms, as mentioned in the discussion of (4.87a-b), above. See also (4.174), below.

4.3.4.9. Resulting state

An on-going state resulting from a change of state or action can be expressed using the prefixed (achievement or accomplishment) form of the verb, the change of state marker, plus the copula. In this case the copula is the main verb, so if there is any person marking, then the person marking appears on the copula.

- (4.120) *dzy-le:* *de-zgə-ji* *ɲuə.*
 door-DEF:CL DIR-open-CSM COP
 ‘The door is open.’ (‘The door remains open.’)

4.3.4.10. Simultaneous actions

For two actions occurring simultaneously, the adverbial marker /ŋi/, sometimes combined with /ictɕi/ ‘together’, is used after the expression of the first action:

(4.121) a. *the: stuaha tɕhə-ŋictɕi tianʂə tse.*
 3sg food/rice eat-ADV:together television watch
 ‘S/he eats while watching television.’

b. *fiə-zei-ŋi da-qə-jə-kəi.* (T3:30)
 DIR-cry-ADV DIR-go-REP-INF:HS
 ‘(He) went along again crying (as he went).’

4.3.5. *Illocutionary force*

Illocutionary force is the type of speech act, such as question, statement, order, warning, etc. performed by an expression. Here we are interested in the formal expressions most commonly used for performing these speech acts, such as the declarative (§4.3.5.1), the imperative and prohibitive (§4.3.5.2), and interrogative constructions (§4.3.5.3).⁸⁰ The forms discussed here involve marking both within and outside the verb complex, but as they are functionally similar, they are being discussed together. We will discuss each type in turn.

4.3.5.1. Declarative

The declarative is the unmarked form of the verb, used mainly for making statements. Almost all of the examples up to this point have been declarative clauses. In declarative clauses, it is possible to add the particle /-ja/ (said with falling intonation) to the end of the clause to make a stronger statement. Following is an example:

(4.122) *ʔü lu-s ŋuə-ja!*
 2sg come-NOM COP-PART
 ‘You definitely must come!’

4.3.5.2. Imperative and prohibitive

The marking of an imperative clause involves the same prefixes used for direction marking, so in many cases has the same form as a normal declarative clause, and it is only the intonation and context that mark it as an imperative. In imperatives the prefix, which may be any one of the directionals, is stressed, unlike non-imperative directional prefixes.⁸¹ A secondary characteristic of the imperative is that person marking is optional, though the imperative sense is stronger if person marking is used. In order to make an imperative more polite, it is possible to add the polite imperative particle /-na/, which appears outside the verb complex, i.e. after the person marking.⁸² There are various other particles that can be used with the imperative form (see examples further below). Following are examples showing the different prefixes used with different verbs, and their different forms with and without person marking, and with second person singular and plural person marking (the dual takes the same person marking as plural, so dual forms are not listed separately):

- (4.123) a. *ə-z-(na)!*
DIR-eat-IMP
'Eat!'
- b. *ə-zə-n-(na)!*
DIR-eat-2sg-IMP
'You(sg) eat!'
- c. *ə-zə-i-(na)!*
DIR-eat-2pl-IMP
'You(pl) eat!'
- (4.124) a. *fi-a-qtə-(na)!*
DIR-kneel-IMP
'Kneel down!'
- b. *fi-a-qtə-n-(na)!*
DIR-kneel-2sg-IMP
'You(sg) kneel down!'
- c. *fi-a-qtə-i-(na)!*
DIR-kneel-2pl-IMP
'You(pl) kneel down!'
- (4.125) a. *tu-ju-(na)!*
DIR-stand-IMP
'Stand up!'
- b. *tu-ju-n-(na)!*
DIR-stand-2sg-IMP
'You(sg) stand up!'

- c. *tu-ju-i-(na)!*
DIR-stand-2pl-IMP
'You(pl) stand up!'
- (4.126) a. *ha-fu!*
DIR-spit
'Spit it out!'
- b. *ha-fu-n-(na)!*
DIR-spit-2sg-IMP
'You(sg) spit it out!'
- c. *ha-fu-i-(na)!*
DIR-spit-2pl-IMP
'You(pl) spit it out!'

In some cases of verb concatenation, the prefix and person marking are split between different verbs, as the person marking is added to the last element of the verb complex:

- (4.127) *?ũ tsə-e-pei ə-tɕ-kə-n.*
2sg water-one-CL DIR-drink-go-2sg
'Go drink a glass of water.'

It is also possible in imperatives to have free pronouns representing the actor appear before the verb. A noun phrase representing an undergoer, goal, or recipient may also appear in the clause. Following are some examples:

- (4.128) a. *?ũ ə-zuə!*
2sg DIR-sit
'You sit!'
- b. *?ũ fiə-lu-n!*
2sg DIR-come-2sg
'You come down here!'
- (4.129) a. *qa de-l!*
1sg DIR-give
'Give me (it)!'
- b. *dzy-le: de-zge-(n)!*
door-DEF:CL DIR-open-2sg
'Open the door!'
- (4.130) a. *ʋuatʂa-la-ha tə-xʂol-(ən)!*
bowl-DEF:one-pl DIR-gather-2sg
'Gather the bowls together.'

- b. *the:* *zə-l-(ən)!*
 3sg DIR-move-2sg
 ‘Bring it (here)!’

The prohibitive (negative imperative) is expressed by the prefix [tɕa- ~ tɕə- ~ tɕo- ~ tɕe-] (from Proto-Tibeto-Burman **ta-*), which appears in the same position as the normal negative prefix, just before the verb, after the directional prefix, if there is one (the directional prefix is not obligatory in negative imperatives).

- (4.131) a. *tɕo-lu-n-(na)!* b. *tɕa-kə-n!*
 NEG.IMP-come-2sg-IMP NEG.IMP-go-2sg
 ‘Don’t come!’ ‘Don’t leave!’
- (4.132) a. *ha-tɕə-ɰ!* b. *fiə-tɕə-ɰ!*
 DIR-NEG.IMP-go DIR-NEG.IMP-throw
 ‘Don’t go out!’ ‘Don’t throw it down!’
- (4.133) *ʔũ tsa tɕa-lau-tha,* *tətə tə-khua:-san.*
 2sg here NEG.IMP-be.noisy-AUX father DIR-angry:PRS-2sgU
 ‘Don’t be noisy here or your father will be angry (at you).’

A more polite prohibitive is expressed by adding the phrase /*ma-qe/* ‘can’t’ or /*me-tɕhi/* ‘not want’ after the main verb. It is also possible to use the hortative particles (discussed below) with the prohibitive construction.

- (4.134) *me:^ʔ de-ci-wa,* *tɕile kə-ma-qe-ʂa^ʔ!*
 rain DIR-fall-RCA 1pl go-NEG-able-HORT:1pl
 ‘It’s raining, so let’s not go!’

There is a set of clause-final hortative particles for expressing the idea that the speaker is directing or requesting the addressee to perform an action. These particles can be used with either prefixed (i.e. imperative) or unprefixed verbs. In the case of first person plural, the form is /*ʂa/* if there is only the speaker and one or two other people. If there are a large number of people involved, then the form takes the plural marking, becoming [*ʂa^ʔ*], as in the example just given above.

- (4.135) *stuaha tchə-ʂa!*
 food/rice drink/eat-HORT:1sg
 ‘Let’s eat!’
- (4.136) *tcizzi itci dzə-ʂa!*
 1pl together eat-HORT:1sg
 ‘Let’s eat together!’
- (4.137) *tcile the: kua ʂaʔ*
 1pl 3sg help HORT:1pl
 ‘Let’s help him/her!’
- (4.138) *tcile tsai tianjin tse-k-ʂaʔ*
 1pl now movie watch-go-HORT:1pl
 ‘Let’s go watch a movie now!’

There is also a particle /wu/ which can be added after the first person hortative /ʂa/ or the indirect directive form /la/ (see below for /la/) to make the expression much more polite, and more of a request. Though the form /wu/ is the same form as the agentive/ablative/ instrumental postposition, which is also used on clauses in correlative comparative constructions (see §4.4.3) and to show the cause of some state of affairs (see §5.5), this form seems to be a separate morpheme.

- (4.139) *ma:, kə-ʂa-wu?*
 mom go-HORT:1sg-REQU
 ‘Mom, Let’s go, O.K.?’
- (4.140) *tcile bəl-ʂaʔ-wu?*
 1pl do-HORT:1pl-REQU
 ‘Let’s do it, O.K.?’
- (4.141) *qa tə-bua la-wu.*
 1sg DIR-help INDTV:1sg-REQU
 ‘Let me help you, O.K.?’

- (4.142) *χoitshu a-zə a-βy la-wu.*
 hot.pepper one-CL DIR-put INDTV:1sg-REQU
 ‘Let me put in a little hot pepper.’

For second person directives, the forms [pa ~ ba ~ wa] or /ʃu/ are used. The latter form has a somewhat stronger directive meaning. These forms contrast with the imperative marker /na/, as [pa ~ ba ~ wa] is more polite than the imperative marker, and /ʃu/ has a stronger directive sense than the imperative marker.

- (4.143) *ə-tchə-n-ba!*
 DIR-drink/eat-2sg-DTV
 ‘Please eat!’

- (4.144) *na-ji u-su-n-ba!*
 good-ADV DIR-teach/study-2sg-DTV
 ‘Study hard!’

- (4.145) *?ũ zme-z na-ji u-su-n-ʃu.* (emphatic)
 2sg Qiang-language good-ADV DIR-teach/study-2sg-DTV
 ‘Learn Qiang well!’

The form /pu/ can also be used for requesting the addressee to do a certain action. This is the most polite of the particles discussed.

- (4.146) *?ũ tchə-da-s-ŋi ə-kə-(n)-na!* (order)
 2sg drink/eat-DIR-finish-ADV DIR-go-2sg-IMP
 ‘Finish eating before you go!’

- (4.147) *?ũ tchə-da-s-ŋi ə-kə-(n)-pu!* (request)
 2sg drink/eat-DIR-finish-ADV DIR-go-2sg-DTV
 ‘Why don’t you finish eating before you go!’

- (4.148) *?ũ zo:kum-le: a-ʃ de-zge-n-pu.* (request)
 2sg window-DEF:CL one-time DIR-open-2sg-DTV
 ‘Could you open the window a bit?’

- (4.149) *ʔũ qa-tɕ dzy de-zge-n-pa.* (request)
ʔũ qa-tɕ dzy de-zge-n-pu. (request; more polite)
 2sg 1sg-BEN door DIR-open-2sg-DTV
 ‘Open the door for me, would you?’

There is also a kind of indirect directive marking, the form of which differs with the person of the referent being directed or allowed to perform an action. For first person referents, the form is the verbphrase-final particle /la/, which when added to a clause has the meaning ‘let me . . .’. This form can also take plural marking, becoming /laʔ/,⁸³ and, as mentioned above, can be followed by the polite request particle /-wu/ (this latter particle is outside the verb complex, as defined here, because it follows the person marking).

- (4.150) *qa dzə la!*
 1sg eat INDTV:1sg
 ‘Let me eat!’
- (4.151) *qa ʔũ tʂauku tu-py la.*⁸⁴
 1sg 2sg look.after DIR-do INDTV:1sg
 ‘Let me look after you.’
- (4.152) *qa tə-kua la-wu.*
 1sg DIR-help INDTV:1sg-REQU
 ‘Let me help!’
- (4.153) *tɕile tə-kua laʔ-wu.*
 1pl DIR-help INDTV:1pl-REQU
 ‘Let us help!’
- (4.154) *qa dzy de-zge la-wu.*
 1sg door DIR-open INDTV:1sg-REQU
 ‘Let me open the door!’

There is no second person form of indirect directive marking. For third person referents, the form is the prefix /ɕa:/. There is no negative form of this; the phrase /me-tɕhi/ ‘not want’ is used after the verb instead.

- (4.155) *stuaha* *ca:-tɛ-kə*.
 food/rice INDTV-eat-go
 ‘Let (him/her) go eat!’

If the verb taking the third person form also could take one of the directional prefixes (see §4.3.3) in a particular context, it is possible to either replace the prefix with /*ca:-*/, or simply change the vowel of the prefix to /*a:*/, as in the following examples:

- (4.156) a. *pə* ‘buy’ > *za:-pə* ~ *ca:-pə* ‘allow 3sg to buy’
 b. *tchə* ‘drink’ > *sa:-tɛ* ~ *ca:-tɛ* ‘allow 3sg to drink’
 c. *tʂə* ‘kill’ > *fi:a:-tʂ* ~ *ca:-tʂ* ‘allow 3sg to kill’
 d. *lu* ‘come’ > *ta:-lu* ~ *ca:-lu* ‘allow 3sg to come’
 e. *tse* ‘look’ > *a:-tse* ~ *ca:-tse* ‘allow 3sg to look’
 f. *phe* ‘dig (horizontally)’ > *fi:a:-pʰe* ~ *ca:-pʰe* ‘allow 3sg to dig’

The form with /*ca:*/ is more emphatic than the form where the initial of the prefix is retained. For plural referents the plural marker /-*tɕi*/ is added after the verb.

4.3.5.3. Interrogatives

Yes-no questions are marked by rising intonation and by the addition of the clause-final syllable /-*na*/ for second person singular actors/topics, or /-*ŋua*/ (often pronounced [wɑ]) for all actors/topics of all other persons and numbers. The question particle that is part of these forms is outside the verb complex, and so follows aspect and person/number marking, but is discussed here with the other illocutionary force markings. The form /-*na*/ is comprised of the second person singular person marking /-*n*/ plus the question particle /-*a*/, though the non-second person singular question particle /-*ŋua*/ does not seem to derive from the copula /*ŋuə*/ plus /-*a*/, as /*ŋua*/ often follows the copula. It also does not seem to be a form of the third person non-actor marking (as is the case with the debitive construction; see §4.3.6.3) plus /-*a*/, as the aspect and person marking suffixes appear on the element preceding /*ŋua*/.

(4.157) *?ũ* *zme* *ŋuə-n-a?*
 2sg Qiang COP-2sg-Q
 ‘Are you(sg) Qiang (a Qiang person)?’

(4.158) *the:* *zme* *ŋuə-ŋua?*
 3sg Qiang COP-Q
 ‘Is s/he Qiang?’

(4.159) *?ile* *zme* *ŋuə-i-ŋua?*
 2pl Qiang COP-2pl-Q
 ‘Are you(pl) Qiang?’

(4.160) *themle* *zme* *ŋuə-tci-ŋua?*
 3pl Qiang COP-3pl-Q
 ‘Are they Qiang?’

(4.161) *?ũ* *zdzyta:* *fiə-qə-n-a?*
 2sg Chengdu:LOC DIR-go-2sg-Q
 ‘Did you go to Chengdu?’

(4.162) *the:* *zdzyta:* *fiə-q-ŋua?*
 3sg Chengdu:LOC DIR-go-Q
 ‘Did s/he go to Chengdu?’

Rhetorical questions are marked by /-ja/ (the same form as for statements, but with different intonation) or /-tca/ or /-ŋui/. The form /ŋui/ is only for first person imperfective actions (often used together with prospective aspect marking), and can be used after regular polarity verb-not-verb type question formations.

(4.163) *tcile* *wu* *zme* *ŋuə'-ja?*
 1pl all Qiang COP:1pl-Q
 ‘Are we all Qiang?’

(4.164) *qa* *zme* *ma-ŋua-ja?*
 1sg Qiang NEG-COP:1sg-Q
 ‘Am I not Qiang?’ (‘Aren’t I Qiang?’)

(4.165) *qa niyi bəla:-ŋui?*
 1sg what do:PRS:1sg-Q
 ‘What am I going to do?’

(4.166) *qa təp-ŋi ka:-ŋua ma-ka:-ŋui?*
 1sg tomorrow-ADV go:PRS-Q NEG-go:PRS:1sg-Q
 ‘Am I going tomorrow or not?’

Guesses, either positive or negative, involving a request for confirmation, can be marked by the clause final particle /-luɕua/.

- (4.167) a. *the: zme ŋuə-luɕua?*
 3sg Qiang COP-(guess)
 ‘S/he’s Qiang, isn’t s/he?’
- b. *the: zme ma-ŋuə-luɕua?*
 3sg Qiang NEG-COP-(guess)
 ‘S/he’s not Qiang, is s/he?’
- c. *the: ə-qa-luɕua?*
 3sg DIR-go-(guess)
 ‘S/he went in, didn’t s/he?’

The form [luɕua], when used alone, marks a type of tag question, but when used with the inferential evidential marker /-k/, as in (4.168), or the [tan/lahan] ‘possibility’ construction in (4.169) (see §4.3.7.4 for this construction), it simply marks the clause as less certain.

(4.168) *the: tshinpi-wa-k luɕua.*
 3sg intelligent-very-INF Q
 ‘She is intelligent.’ (guessing)

(4.169) *the: tshinpi wa-m-tan ŋuə luɕua.*
 3sg intelligent very-NOM-appearance COP Q
 She possibly is intelligent.

The form /luɕua/ seems to involve two morphemes, /lu/ ‘come’, which can be used alone to express possibility and is used in the

compound /tɕɕaŋ-lu/ ‘think of, want’, and a second morpheme /kua/, though the meaning of this second morpheme is not clear. Following is an example of /lu/ used alone:

- (4.170) *pəs məpa wa, təp-ŋi tsə-s*
 today cold very tomorrow-ADV this-COMP
tɕa-məpa: lu.
 CON-cold:PRS will
 ‘Today is very cold, tomorrow is going to be even colder than this.’

A post-nominal or post-clausal adverb, /luo/, can also be used to express possibility:

- (4.171) *?ũ ha-k-ŋi a-ʂ i-tsi-kə, zə-ka*
 2sg DIR-go-ADV one-time DIR-look-go field-LOC
wətshi poquʂ-luo zi ku.
 bird livestock-perhaps exist allow
 ‘You go out and take a look, perhaps there are livestock or birds in the field.’

The form /-wa/ (distinct from the alternate form of /ŋua/) can be used as a reaffirmation question particle (e.g., ‘Do you really want to go?’).

- (4.172) *?ũ zdzyta: ka:-wa?*
 2sg Chengdu:LOC go:PRS-Q
 ‘Are you really going to Chengdu?’

Polarity (‘yes-no’) questions can be formed by repeating the entire verb complex, with the first token in the positive and the second token in the negative (sometimes called ‘A-not-A’ or ‘verb-not-verb’ questions), and the question particle on both tokens, as in (4.166) and the following examples:

- (4.173) a. *?ũ zdzyta: fi-a-qə-n-a fi-a-mə-qa-n-a?*
 2sg Chengdu:LOC DIR-go-2sg-Q DIR-NEG-go-2sg-Q
 ‘Did you go to Chengdu?’

- b. *the: zdzyta: fia-qə-ŋua fia-mə-qa-ŋua?*
 3sg Chengdu:LOC DIR-go-Q DIR-NEG-go-Q
 ‘Did he go to Chengdu?’

There is sometimes a difference in meaning between a polarity question with prospective aspect marking in the first clause and one without prospective aspect marking in the first clause. Compare the following two examples:

- (4.174) *?ũ jan tʂhe-n-a me-tʂhe-n-a?*
 2sg cigarette smoke-2sg-Q NEG-smoke-2sg-Q
 ‘Do you smoke?’
- (4.175) *?ũ jan tʂha:-n-a me-tʂhe-n-a?*
 2sg cigarette smoke:PRS-2sg-Q NEG-smoke-2sg-Q
 ‘Will you smoke?’

The first example does not have prospective aspect marking on the verb of the first clause, and so expresses the question of whether or not the addressee smokes as a habit; the second example has prospective aspect marking on the verb in the first clause, and so is asking if the addressee intends or wants to smoke now.

Question particles are used even if interrogative pronouns are used in the clause. Interrogative pronouns can appear in initial position, second position, or immediately preverbal position, depending on the overall context (e.g. the difference between (4.176) and (4.177) is whether the table is topical (4.176) or not (4.177)), and can take the same case markers as lexical nouns and other pronouns (see §3.1.2).

- (4.176) *tʂuatsə-le: sə-wu zə-p-wa?*
 table-DEF:CL who-AGT DIR-buy-Q
 ‘Who bought the table?’
- (4.177) *sə-wu tʂuatsə-le: zə-p-wa?*
 who-AGT table-DEF:CL DIR-buy-Q
 ‘Who bought the table?’

- (4.178) a. *pi:-tsa-la sə-wu ?ũ-(tɕ) de-l-ŋua?*
 pen-this:one-CL who-AGT 2sg-GEN DIR-give-Q
 ‘Who gave you this pen?’
- b. *?ũ-tɕ pi:-tsa-la sə-wu de-l-ŋua?*
 2sg-GEN pen-this:one-CL who-AGT DIR-give-Q
 ‘Who was it that gave you this pen?’

Just about any type of argument can be questioned using interrogative pronouns. Examples (4.176)-(4.178) are examples of interrogative pronouns representing actor arguments; following are examples of interrogative pronouns representing benefactive (4.179), recipient (4.180), genitive (4.181), and adverbial (4.182) arguments:

- (4.179) *tʃhuatsə-le: sə-tɕ zə-pa:-n-a?*
 table-DEF:CL who-GEN DIR-buy:PRS-2sg-Q
 ‘For whom are you going to buy the table?’
- (4.180) *tʃhuatsə-le: sə-ta tə-χua:-n-a?*
 table-DEF:CL who-LOC DIR-sell:PRS-2sg-Q
 ‘To whom are you going to sell the table?’
- (4.181) *sə-tɕ-tʃhetsyə-le: fi-a-χ-ŋua?*
 who-GEN-car-DEF:CL DIR-bad/broken-Q
 ‘Whose car has broken down?’
- (4.182) *tʃhetsyə-le: ŋi-ke: tə-bələ-n-a?*
 car-DEF:CL WH-INDEF:CL DIR-do-2sg-Q
 ‘What did you do to the car?’

The order of words in the question is generally reflected in the answer, e.g. if the interrogative pronoun is in initial position, then the answer also appears in initial position. The answer to a question involving an interrogative pronoun can be a whole clause, or may simply be the noun phrase representing the information completing the open proposition (i.e. the question), with or without case marking. Compare the three different responses given below to the following question:

(4.183) Question:

pi:-tsa-la sə-wu ?ũ de-l-ŋua?
 pen-this:one-CL who-AGT 2sg DIR-give-Q
 ‘Who gave you this pen?’

Answer:

- a. *khumtsi-wu de-l.*
 khumtsi-AGT DIR-give
 ‘Khumtsi gave it (to me).’
- b. *khumtsi-wu.*
 khumtsi-AGT
 ‘Khumtsi (did).’
- c. *khumtsi.*
 ‘Khumtsi (did).’

Echo questions take the same form as regular questions, though it is possible to use /-ja/ at the end of yes-no echo questions. More than one element of the clause can be subject to echo-questioning.

Leading questions can be asked using either the form /-ja/ or /-na/. Following are two sets of question and answer (both positive and negative answers; no person marking appears in the confirmatory questions, and it is optional in the answers):

(4.184) Question:

?ũ kə ctəaq-mo-lu-ja?
 2sg go heart-NEG-come-Q
 ‘Don’t you want to go?’

Answers:

- a. *ŋuə, (qa) kə ctəaq-mo-lu.*
 COP (1sg) go heart-NEG-come
 ‘No, I don’t want to go’. (lit.: ‘Yes, I don’t want to go.’)
- b. *?əhə,⁸⁵ (qa) kə ctəaq-lu.*
 NEG 1sg go heart-come
 ‘Yes, I want to go.’ (lit.: ‘No, I want to go.’)

(4.185) Question:

ʔũ *stuaha* *sə-tɕ-jy-na?*
 2sg food/rice DIR-eat-ASP-Q
 ‘Have you already eaten?’

Answers:

- a. ʔə, (*sə-tɕya*).
 Yes, (DIR-eat:ASP:1sg)
 ‘Yes, I have.’
- b. ʔəhə, (*sə-mə-tɕi-tcha*).
 NEG, (DIR-NEG-CON-eat:1sg)
 ‘No, I haven’t eaten yet.’
- c. *sə-tɕya* / *sə-mə-tɕi-tcha*
 DIR-eat:ASP:1sg / DIR-NEG-CON-eat:1sg
 ‘I have eaten’ / ‘I have not yet eaten’

There are no tag-question constructions in Qiang except for guesses marked by /luɣua/ (see above); the unmarked question form is used instead:

(4.186) ʔũ-tɕ ɕi a-zə *fiŋ-jy-la-ŋua?*
 2sg-GEN wine one-CL DIR-pour-INDTV:1sg-Q
 ‘Will you let me pour you a little wine?’

4.3.6. Mood

4.3.6.1. Optative

The desire to do an action is expressed by the addition of the auxiliary verbs /ɕtɕaq-lu/ ‘think of, want’ (‘heart’ + ‘desire’ (< ‘come’) (/lu/ can also be used alone), /kəntɕhi/ ‘think/want’, or /zulu/ ‘wait’ after the main verb, which is not overtly nominalized. First, second, and third person actors can all appear in this construction. First person marking on /ɕtɕaq-lu/ is optional, but /zulu/ inflects normally: [zulua, zulun, zulu]. The person marking reflects the actor of the matrix clause, i.e. the actor of /ɕtɕaq-lu/ or /zulu/, not of the subordinate clause. There is no person

marking of the subordinate (inner) verb, as only one verb in a sentence can take person marking (see §4.3.2), and that is the last (the matrix [outer]) verb, though aspect can be marked on the subordinate (inner) verb in these constructions. The construction with /zulu/ often has the verb before /zulu/ marked with prospective aspect.

(4.188) *the: tɕəu kə ɕtɕaɕ-lu.*
 3sg home go heart-come
 ‘S/he wants to go home.’

(4.189) a. *qa tɕəu kə ɕtɕaɕ-lu-a.*
 1sg home go heart-come-1sg
 ‘I want to go home.’

b. *?ũ tɕəu kə ɕtɕaɕ-lu-n.*
 2sg home go heart-come-2sg
 ‘You want to go home.’

(4.190) *khuə-le: qa-wu pa: lu.*
 dog-DEF:CL 1sg-AGT buy:PRS will
 ‘I am going to buy the dog.’ (‘The dog will be bought by me.’)

(4.191) a. *qa the: i-pə-la: zulu-a.*
 1sg 3sg DIR-arrive-come:PRS wait-1sg
 ‘I hope s/he is going to return.’

b. *?ũ the: i-pə-la: zulu-n.*
 2sg 3sg DIR-arrive-come:PRS wait-2sg
 ‘You hope s/he is going to return.’

c. *the: the: i-pə-la: zuly.*
 3sg 3sg DIR-arrive-come:PRS wait
 ‘S/he hopes s/he is going to return.’

Another method for expressing the optative mood is to nominalize the verb with the instrumental nominalizer /-s/ and add /ŋuə-ŋi/ (copula + ADV), or /ma-ŋuə-tɕi/ (‘not’ + copula + ADV). The form /ŋuə-ŋi/ is used for positive clauses, and either /ma-ŋuə-ŋi/ or /ma-ŋuə-tɕi/ is used

for negatives. No aspect or person contrasts are marked in sentences with /ma-ŋuə-tci/ or /ŋuə-ŋi/.⁸⁶

- (4.192) *təp-ŋi* *me:^l* *ce-s* *ma-ŋuə-tci.*
 tomorrow-ADV rain release-NOM NEG-COP-ADV
 ‘I hope it won’t rain tomorrow.’
- (4.193) a. *qa tʂhetsə-le: fia-χ-əs* *ma-ŋuə-tci.*
 1sg car-DEF:CL DIR-bad/broken-NOM NEG-COP-ADV
 ‘I hope my car hasn’t broken down.’
- b. *the: tʂhetsə-le: fia-χ-əs* *ŋuə-ŋi.*
 3sg car-DEF:CL DIR-bad/broken-NOM COP-ADV
 ‘I hope his/her car has broken down.’
- (4.194) a. *təp-ŋi* *tianjin* *ce-s* *ŋuə-ŋi.*
 tomorrow-ADV movie release-NOM COP-ADV
 ‘I hope a movie is showing tomorrow.’
- b. *təp-ŋi* *tianjin* *ce-s* *ma-ŋuə-tci.*
 tomorrow-ADV movie release-NOM NEG-COP-PART
 ‘I hope no movie is showing tomorrow.’

In some cases the second person directive particle /-ʂu/ can be used as a strong expression of desire for the addressee to perform a particular action.

- (4.195) a. *?ũ tco-lu-n-ʂu.*
 2sg NEG.IMP-come-2sg-DTV
 ‘I hope you won’t come.’
- b. *?ũ tca-kə-n-ʂu.*
 2sg NEG.IMP-go-2sg-DTV
 ‘I hope you won’t leave.’
- (4.196) *təp-ŋi* *χtʂu-tian-ka* *i-pə-l-ən-ʂu.*
 tomorrow-ADV six-o’clock-LOC DIR-arrive-come-2sg-DTV
 ‘I hope you will come tomorrow at six o’clock.’

4.3.6.2. Intentional

To express the intention to carry out a particular action, the prospective aspect form of the verb can be used alone, or a nominalized verb form followed by /*ŋuə-ŋi*/ can be used. The construction with nominalized verb plus /*ŋuə-ŋi*/ was introduced above as a way of expressing the optative mood, and it has this use, but its main meaning is one of obligation (cf. English *I must have that piece of cake!*). It can also be used in some contexts to express intention. Between these two forms, the use of the prospective aspect marking has a stronger sense of intention than the use of /*ŋuə-ŋi*/.

- (4.197) *qa fa cupu-a-thau pa:* (< pə)
 1sg clothes red-one-CL buy:PRS:1sg
 ‘I am going to buy a set of red clothes.’

- (4.198) a. *qa zme-z na-ji su-a:*
 1sg Qiang-language well-ADV learn-PRS:1sg
 ‘I am going to learn Qiang well.’

- b. *the: zme-z na-ji su-a:-i.*
 3sg Qiang-language well-ADV learn-PRS-HS
 ‘I heard s/he is going to learn Qiang well.’

- (4.199) a. *qa ku-q-ta ha-ka:*
 1sg mountain-peak(head)-LOC DIR-go:PRS:1sg
 ‘I am going to go up to the mountain top.’

- b. *qa ku-q-ta ha-kə-s ŋuə-ŋi.*
 1sg mountain-peak(head)-LOC DIR-go-NOM COP-ADV
 ‘I am going to go up to the mountain top.’

The construction involving /*çtəq-lu*/ ‘think of, want’, also introduced as a way of expressing optatives, can be used to express intention as well.⁸⁷

- (4.200) *qa tciɣua-le: xlie ɕtcaq-lu.*
 1sg house-DEF:CL build heart-come
 ‘I want (plan) to build the house.’

4.3.6.3. Debitive (Obligation)

The construction used to express obligation to perform an action involves a nominalized verb followed by the copula /*ɲuə*/,⁸⁸ and this is followed optionally by /*ʂa*/ in the first person, /*san*/ in the second person, or /*ɲuə*/ in the third person. These forms are the non-actor person marking suffixes (see §4.3.2). (The form /*ɲuə*/ is an alternate form of the third person non-actor marker /*wə*/, which by assimilation to /*ɲuə*/ becomes /*ɲuə*/.) ‘Must’ and ‘ought to’ use the same construction. No formal distinction is made between moral and physical obligation. No distinction of degrees of obligation is marked. Epistemic and root modality are expressed using the same structures. Person marking on the verb is optional in this construction, but if it appears it is the non-actor marking that is used.

- (4.201) *the: tɕəu-la lu-s ɲuə-ɲuə.* (< *wə*)
 3sg home-LOC come-NOM COP-3sgU
 ‘S/he must come home!’

- (4.202) a. *qa zme-z na-ji su-s ɲuə-(ʂa).*
 1sg Qiang-language well-ADV learn-NOM COP-1sgU
 b. *?ũ zme-z na-ji su-s ɲuə-san.*
 2sg Qiang-language well-ADV learn-NOM COP-2sgU
 c. *the: zme-z na-ji su-s ɲuə-ɲuə.*
 3sg Qiang-language well-ADV learn-NOM COP-3sgU
 ‘I / you / s/he must learn Qiang well.’

- (4.203) a. *qa stuaha bələ-s ɲuə-ji-(ʂa).*
 1sg food/rice make-NOM COP-CSM
 b. *?ũ stuaha bələ-s ɲuə-ji-san.*
 2sg food/rice make-NOM COP-CSM-2sgU

- c. *the: stuaha bələ-s ηuə-ji-ηuə.*
 3sg food/rice make-NOM COP-CSM-3sgU
 ‘I / you / s/he must make the meal.’ (prepare to begin)

The construction with nominalized verb plus /*ηuə-ηi*/, discussed above as having a sense of intention similar to the use of the prospective aspect marking, is also a way of expressing a kind of obligation or necessity. Contrast the following two examples, where the prospective aspect marking or nominalized verb plus /*ηuə-ηi*/ can be used in the same context, but the latter has more of a sense of necessity.

- (4.204) a. *qa mausa ka:.* (intention)
 1sg toilet go:PRS:1sg
 ‘I’m going to go to the bathroom.’
- b. *qa mausa kə-s ηuə-ηi.* (necessity)
 1sg toilet go-NOM COP-ADV
 ‘I have to go to the bathroom.’

An interesting feature of this construction is that if there is only one human referent referred to in the clause, as in the examples above, then the person marking on the verb reflects the person and number of that referent, but if there are two human referents referred to in the clause, then the person marking reflects the non-actor argument. The initial noun phrase of this construction is the topic of an identificational structure, and so normally we would expect agreement with that argument, particularly as the other referent mentioned is mentioned within a nominalized clause, but instead we get agreement with the embedded argument. This is a clear example of how use of the non-actor person marking is not limited to specific semantic or grammatical roles. Following are examples where two human referents are referred to:

- (4.205) a. *the: ?ū-(ta) kua-s ηuə-san.*
 3sg 2sg-DAT help-NOM COP-2sgU
 ‘S/he should help you.’

- b. *tcile the: kua-s ηuə-ηuə.*
 1pl 3sg help-NOM COP-3sg
 ‘We ought to help him/her.’
- c. *tcile tcy:mi-le:-χua-ηi zbotcu-s ηuə-(ηuə).*
 1pl child-DEF:CL-BEN-ADV consider-NOM COP-3sg
 ‘We must consider the interests of the child.’

In two of the traditional stories that were recorded, the nominalization part of this structure appears in a non-final clause without the copula, but the sense of obligation or determination is the same. In (4.206), from “The Creation of the World”, the structure appears twice, in the first line with the copula, followed by /χua-ηi/ ‘because’, and in line four, as simply a nominalization, but with the sense ‘(they) should (become a family)’. In (4.207), from “The Story of a Lazy Man” three nominalized clauses are subordinated to one copula.

- (4.206) *steke-ta mi pe'zə-s ηuə-χua-ηi, . . .*
 after-LOC people raise(child)-NOM COP-because-ADV
 2 *ηutcuku dzuaɁl e-xʂe fei-bi-ηi,*
 each stone.mill one-CL DIR-carry.on.back-ADV
 3 *ku-q-ta-wu fiə-γlu, dzuaɁl jə-xʂe*
 mountain-head-LOC-ABL DIR-roll stone.mill two-CL
 4 *e-tʂetup-tu, ηizzi oqpi pə-s,*
 DIR-bump-LNK 3dl one.family become-NOM
 5 *dzuaɁl jə-xʂe fiə-γlu-s-ta,*
 stone.mill two-CL DIR-roll-NOM-LOC
 6 *qhuat e-tʂetup-wei, fiə-tsəi-ηike,*
 as.it.happens DIR-bump.into-INF:HS INT-this.manner-after
 7 *mə ηa γlu lə-zi oqpi*
 older.brother COM younger.sister DEF-CL one.family
 8 *fiə-pə-i. (T1:4-11)*
 DIR-become-HS

‘Later, in order to propagate descendants, (the brother and sister decided that) each would carry a stone mill on his or her back and roll it down from the mountain peak. If the two stone mills joined together, the two should get married. As it happened, when the two stone mills rolled down (to the river

bank) they joined together, and so the brother and sister married (became a family).’

- (4.207) *z mətʂi-le:-tc* *tsi-le:-ŋuən*i**
 emperor-DEF:CL-GEN daughter-DEF:CL-TOP
 2 *χuan-tchianme¹-ta* **γzə-s,**
 Huang-Qianmen-DAT marry-NOM
 3 *χuan-tchianme¹-ŋuən*i** *z mətʂi* **dzu-s,**
 Huang-Qianmen-TOP emperor sit-NOM
 4 *z mətʂi-le:* *tsi-le:-ŋuən*i** *fi-a-tha*
 emperor-DEF:CL daughter-DEF:CL-TOP INT-there
 5 **de-l-əs,** *fi-a-kə* **ŋuə-ku-tu, . . .** (T5:308-314)
 DIR-give-NOM INT-thus COP-INF:HS-LNK
 ‘(Because the emperor had said he would marry his daughter to whoever found the parrot,) the emperor had to marry his daughter to Huang Qianmen, and Huang Qianmen became the emperor, (he had to) give (him) the daughter.’

In the following example from the story “An Orphan”, the sense of the nominalization construction is of obligation in terms of the best thing to do in that situation. We can see in the fourth line of this example that even the copula can be nominalized and subordinated to the copula.

- (4.208) *the-maha-ŋuən*i** (*tc*iu**) *ʂəʂe:’wu* *ŋ*i*ant*ei**
 that-night-TOP †(INT) exist:REDUP:all together
 2 *ganphai-tu-py-kəi-stu,* *χa-le:-ŋuən*i** *tca-lə*
 arrange-DIR-do-INF:HS-PART needle-DEF:CL-TOP where-LOC
 3 **je-s** **ŋuə,** *tca-lə* *tca-lə* **nə-s**
 live/stay-NOM COP where-LOC where-LOC sleep-NOM
 4 **ŋuə,** *tca-lə* *tca-lə* *ŋ*i*yi* **ŋuə-s** **ŋuə,**
 COP where-LOC where-LOC what COP-NOM COP
 5 *fi-a-tsəi* *ganphai-tu-py-kəi-t*əu*.* (T3:101-106)
 INT-this:manner arrange-DIR-do-INF:HS-PART
 ‘That night everybody made a plan together, where the needle should stay, where (each of them) should sleep and what not and it was all settled.’

Another form of this construction is where the continuative aspect prefix appears on the copula, i.e. [tɕa-ŋuə] (CON + COP). The combination [tɕa-ŋuə] can also take the negative prefix. (Without the continuative aspect prefix, the form would express an action that had been agreed upon or set beforehand.)

(4.209) a. *qa kə-s tɕa-ŋuə.*
1sg go-NOM CON-COP
'I (still) must go.'

b. *qa kə-s ma-tɕə-ŋuə.*
1sg go-NOM NEG-CON-COP
'I (still) shouldn't go.'

(4.210) a. *the: ləyz zdə-s tɕa-ŋuə.*
3sg book read/study-NOM CON-COP
'I (still) must study.'

b. *the: ləyz zdə-s ma-tɕə-ŋuə.*
3sg book read/study-NOM NEG-CON-COP
'I (still) don't need to study.'

Obligation can also be expressed using the auxiliary verb /kze/ 'ought to'. If this auxiliary verb is negated ('must not') and/or takes the continuative aspect prefix [tɕi ~ tɕa ~ tɕe ~ tɕo], the negative or other prefix appears between the main verb and the auxiliary (i.e. is prefixed to the auxiliary verb).

(4.211) a. *stuaha tɕhə-kze-ji.*
food/rice eat-must-CSM
'(We/You/One) ought to eat!' (i.e., 'Time to eat!')

b. *stuaha tɕhə-ma-tɕi-kze.*
food/rice eat-NEG-CON-must
'(We/You/One) ought not to eat yet!'

4.3.6.4. Potential

The potential to perform an action is expressed by the use of auxiliary verbs, with the choice of auxiliary verb depending on the type of potentiality. Person marking is added to the auxiliary verb. Following are examples of each type:

/ɣzə/ for learned ability:

- (4.212) a. *the:* *zme-z* *dze* *ɣzə.*
 3sg Qiang-language speak can
 ‘S/he can speak Qiang.’
- b. *?ũ* *zme-z* *dze* *ɣzə-n.*
 2sg Qiang-language speak can-2sg
 ‘You can speak Qiang.’
- c. *qa* *zme-z* *dze* *ɣza.* (< ɣzə)
 1sg Qiang-language speak can:1sg
 ‘I can speak Qiang.’

/dzə/ or /qe/ for natural (physical) ability:⁸⁹

- (4.213) a. *mi* *la ma-l,* *wə la dzə.* (< mə + dzə)
 person fly NEG-able bird fly able
 ‘People cannot fly, but birds can.’
- b. *misag-wu qa quaha tə-ŋiχ-z* *dzə.*
 sun-AGT 1sg face DIR-black-CAUS able
 ‘The sun can make my face become black.’
- c. *qa u-teu ma-la.* (< mə + dzə + ə)
 1sg DIR-see NEG-able:1sg
 ‘I can’t see.’
- (4.214) *the:* *zawa-le:* *tə-tsi* *qe-ŋua?* (dzə also possible here)
 3sg rock-DEF:CL DIR-lift able-Q
 ‘Can s/he lift the rock?’

Comparing (4.215) and (4.216), below, we can see that while the forms /ɣzə/ and /dzə/ are phonetically similar, the meanings are somewhat different and /ɣzə/ does not undergo phonetic reduction when it is prefixed.

(4.215) *tsiçi sei ma-ɣzə.*
 infant walk NEG-can
 ‘An infant cannot walk.’ (not yet learned)

(4.216) *the:-dzoqu-le: dak-wu, pitc sei ma-l-jy.* (< dzə)
 3sg-foot-DEF:CL break-INST now walk NEG-able-ASP
 ‘His/her foot is broken so he/she cannot walk now.’

/gu/ for ability to fit into something else:

(4.217) *tʂuəwa-le-tsi sə-le gu-ŋua?*
 shoe-DEF-CL DIR-pack able.to-Q
 ‘Can this pair of shoes fit in?’

/ku/ or /se/ for the sense of ‘willing’ or ‘(be) allowed’:

- (4.218) a. *coçau-ka zme-z dze-z ku.*
 school-LOC Qiang-language speak-CAUS allow
 ‘Speaking Qiang is allowed in the school.’
- b. *coçau-ka zme-z dze-z fie-se.*
 school-LOC Qiang-language speak-CAUS DIR-allow
 ‘Speaking Qiang is allowed in school.’

/je/ ‘good to eat’ (an adjective) for the sense of ‘possible’:

(4.219) *tsa ze-s me-je.*
 here write-NOM NEG-possible
 ‘(You) can’t write here.’

A construction involving the exclusion particle on the main verb and the expression /me-tchi/ ‘not want’ following the main verb can also be

used to express the ability (either physical or learned) or permission to do something.

- (4.220) a. *coəau-ɸa zme-z dze-ji me-tchi.*
 school-LOC Qiang-language speak-EXC NEG-want
 ‘It is all right to speak Qiang in school.’
- b. *tsə tu-χsu-ji-wa, tɕile quaha χuəla-jə*
 water DIR-boil-CSM-RCA 1pl face wash-EXC
me-tchi-ji.
 NEG-want-CSM
 ‘The water’s boiled, so we can wash our faces.’

4.3.7. Evidentials, degree of certainty/authority

The evidential system in Qiang basically has three terms, visual (§4.3.7.1), inferred/mirative (§4.3.7.2), and reported marking (§4.3.7.3) (this is the B1 type of system discussed in Aikhenvald 2003), but it does not necessarily involve marking of the evidential category on all clauses, and there are complications related to verb types and combinations of forms. The inferential can appear together with the hearsay or visual marker, therefore it may be seen as two systems rather than three paradigmatically related items in one system. The actor person marking, when used without the inferential/mirative marker, also is involved in expressing an evidential meaning, in that it implies direct observation, and cannot be used with the hearsay marker.

In general, an unmarked clause is assumed to represent knowledge that the speaker is sure of, most probably, but not necessarily, from having seen the situation or event first-hand, and so, for witnessed events, there is no obligatory marking of the events as witnessed. If the speaker wants to emphasize that he or she saw the event or that the statement represents incontrovertible common knowledge, then it is possible to use an overt marker, [-u ~ -wu], as in (4.221a) below. This marker is actually rarely used, and difficult to elicit from linguistically naive speakers. It is generally only used when the actor(s) of the clause is animate, and it is necessary to emphasize that the speaker actually saw the other person(s) carry out the action. This form is used together

with the actor person marking suffixes, but use of the person marking suffixes alone can also imply visual observation, as in (4.221b).

- (4.221) a. *the: zdzyta: fia-qə-(w)u.*
 3sg Chengdu:LOC DIR-go-VIS
 ‘He went to Chengdu.’ (used in a situation where the speaker saw the person leave and that person has not yet returned)
- b. *?ũ tceχun tu-pu-ji-n.*
 2sg marry DIR-do-ASP-2sg
 ‘You got married.’ (I saw you get married)

If the speaker is not completely sure of the information being presented in the utterance, which generally means s/he did not witness it, then it is necessary to use one of two non-visual markers. In reporting second-hand or third-hand knowledge of some situation or event the speaker is unsure of, the hearsay marking suffix /-i/ is used after the verb. Only one token of the hearsay marker is used in a clause; it cannot be repeated to show the number of sources between the speaker and the event, as in Tsafiki (Dickinson 2000:408).

Statements that represent “just discovered” information (mirative) or information based on inference derived from some physical or other non-visual evidence take the suffix /-k/ after the change of state marker, if there is one, but before the prospective aspect and person marking (if there is any—3sg animate and inanimates are unmarked), a different position in the verb complex from the narrative evidential marking. This marker in some contexts, and particularly in combination with the hearsay marker, can be used to mark simple uncertainty (not necessarily inference).

4.3.7.1. Direct evidential

The unmarked verb form can be used for visual evidence, and for generally known facts and for observations that lead to a strong conclusion, such as if you say ‘He is a strong man’ when you see him do

something that makes that obvious. In this latter case, use of the inferential marker would be optional, and would imply less certainty.

The visual evidential marker can be used for past events (as in exx. (4.221a-b)) or ongoing events, but not future events. When it is used, the visual marker is used together with the actor person marking. In most cases the person marking reflects the person and number of the actor of the clause, the usual situation with the person marking, as in (4.222a), but in the case of a 3sg actor, which would normally have zero person marking, it is possible to add 1sg person marking in order to particularly emphasize that the speaker saw the person do the action, as in (4.222b) (the resulting form, [wa], is to be distinguished from the clause-final emphatic particle /wa/, which appears in (4.222a)).

- (4.222) a. *themle jimi de-se-ji-wu-tci-wa.*
 3pl fertilizer DIR-spread-CSM-VIS-3pl-EMPH
 ‘They spread the fertilizer.’ (I saw them do it.)
- b. *the: jimi de-se-ji-w-a.*
 3sg fertilizer DIR-spread-CSM-VIS-1sg
 ‘She spread the fertilizer.’ (I saw her spread it.)

This same form is also used when the actor is 1sg, but then the meaning is one of unintentional action, as in (4.223).

- (4.223) *qa the:-ta de-we-z-u-a.*
 1sg 3sg-LOC DIR-hit-CAUS-VIS-1sg
 ‘I hit him (accidentally).’ (The context for this was the speaker having hit the person while leaning back and stretching his arms back without looking behind him.)

The visual marker [-u ~ -wu] is only used for visual sensory information, not other types of sensory information. If you hear some noise, such as the sound of drums in the next room, and you want to say ‘Someone is playing drums next door’, you would use the inferential marker, as in (4.224). Even if you feel something in your hand but cannot see it, the inferential marker, not the visual marker, would be used.

- (4.224) *mi z bə zete-k!*
 person drum beat-INF
 ‘Someone is playing drums.’ (It seems to me from hearing a noise that sounds like drums.)

4.3.7.2. Inferential/mirative marking

The suffix /-k/ has both an inferential sense and a mirative sense. The inferential sense is primary when the action involved is an activity, as in (4.224) and (4.225a). The inference may be based on evidence obtained visually or by some other sense. If what is reported is a state or the resulting state of some action, as in (4.225b-c), then the meaning is mirativity (‘just discovered’).⁹⁰

- (4.225) a. *the: zdzyta: fia-qə-k.*
 3sg Chengdu:LOC DIR-go-INF
 ‘He went to Chengdu.’ (Used in a situation where the speaker knew the person was supposed to go to Chengdu, but wasn’t sure when, and then saw the person’s luggage gone, so assumed he had left for Chengdu. /-k/ could not be used if the speaker saw the person leave.)
- b. *the: ctcimi zdzi-k!*
 3sg heart sick-INF
 ‘He’s unhappy!’ (just discovered; relatively sure, not guess)
- c. *dzy de-zge-ji-k!*
 door DIR-open-CSM-INF
 ‘The door is open!’ (just discovered; see that the door was opened, but don’t know who opened it)

If the speaker needs to express an inferential sense in talking about a state or perfective situation, then the speaker would use the adverbial phrase /χsu-ŋi/ ‘seems’ or the construction with [-tan] or [-lahan] for marking possibility (both discussed in §4.3.7.4 below), not the inferential marker. For example, if the speaker feels wind on her back and makes the assumption that the door is open, she could say (4.226).

- (4.226) *dzy* *zge-m-tan* *ɲuə.*
 door open-NOM-appearance COP
 ‘It appears the door is open.’ / ‘Apparently the door is open.’

Generally the inference marker is used for single instances of an event, such as if someone was supposed to quit smoking, but then the speaker sees cigarette butts in an ashtray, the speaker could use the inference marker to comment that (it seems) the person had smoked. If it was discussed as a habitual action, then again generally the construction with [tan] or [lahan] would be used.

- (4.227) a. *the: jan* *tʃhe-m-tan* *ɲuə.*
 3sg cigarettes smoke-NOM-appearance COP
 ‘S/he might smoke (It seems s/he smokes).’
 (lit.: ‘S/he is s smoker’s appearance.’)
- b. *the: jan* *tʃhe-m-la-han* *ɲuə.*
 3sg cigarettes smoke-NOM-DEF:one-kind COP
 ‘S/he might smoke (might be a smoker).’
 (lit.: ‘S/he is a smoking kind of person.’)

The inferential/mirative marker is also used together with the person marking, with the person marking always reflecting the person and number of the actor, as in (4.228a-b), but with first person actors the interpretation is not only that the action was just discovered, but also that it was unintentional or originally unknown, as in (4.228c-d)

- (4.228) a. *panə-le:* *fiə-χ-k-ən.*
 thing-DEF:CL DIR-broken-INF-2sg
 ‘You broke the thing.’ (inference from seeing the broken pieces in the person’s hands)
- b. *themle* *stuaha* *sə-tchə-ji-k-tci.*
 3pl food/rice DIR-eat-CSM-INF-3pl
 ‘They have already eaten.’ (inference from seeing used dishes)

- c. *qa dzigy tɛy-k-a-ŋi!*
 1sg money bring-INF-1sg-ADV
 ‘I have money!’ (Used when the speaker originally thought she didn’t have money, but then opened her wallet and found she did have money.)
- d. (*qa*) *dzy fi-a-mə-sua-k-a!*
 1sg door DIR-NEG-lock-INF-1sg
 ‘I didn’t lock the door!’ (Used in a situation where the speaker had thought he had locked the door.)

The suffix /-k/ can appear alone with a mirative sense (e.g. (4.225b-c)), but often in these cases the particle /-ŋi/ or /-wa/ is added at the end of the clause, as in (4.228c). The particle /-ŋi/ is an adverbial marker used also to mark surprise and/or disbelief; /-wa/ is an emphatic marker. Its use with /-k/ gives the construction a stronger mirative sense. Examples (4.229a-b) show the use of the suffix /-k/ together with /-wa/ and /-ŋi/ respectively.

- (4.229) a. *me:^ˈ de-ci-k-wa!*
 rain DIR-release-INF-EMPH
 ‘It’s raining!’ (just discovered; this clause could also mean ‘it has rained’, with the statement based on inference from having seen the ground wet)
- b. *the: zdzyta: fi-a-qə-k-ŋi!*
 3sg Chengdu:LOC DIR-go-INF-ADV
 ‘He went to Chengdu!’ (just discovered)

The suffix /-k/ is used with 1st, 2nd, or 3rd person actors, though with first and second person actors, /wa/ is not used to emphasize the sense of ‘just discovered’; instead /-ŋi/, /-s/ or /ŋia/ is used for first person actors (of these three, the latter is stronger) and /-ŋi/ is used for second person actors (/ŋi/ can be used for other persons, but if the clause has a second person actor, then /-ŋi/ must be used). The combination [-k-wa] is stronger (more certain) than /-k/ alone, but weaker than [-k-ŋi], which can have the sense that you can’t believe your own inference, that it is totally unexpected. The auxiliary verb /ku/

‘willing, allow’ can also be added after /-k/ to weaken (make less certain) the force of the statement. Following are examples of first and second person actors ((4.230a-b) respectively).

(4.230) a. *qa da-m-k-a-ʃ!* (if plural, then [k-ə¹-ʃ])
 1sg DIR-forget-INF-1sg-EMPH
 ‘I (just realized I) forgot!’

b. *ʔū sə i-t̪chi-k-ən-ŋi!* (if plural, then [k-əi-ŋi])
 2sg wood DIR-bring.in-INF-2sg-ADV
 ‘(I see) you brought the wood in!’ (just discovered)

The inferential marker, the visual marker, and the person marking can all be used together for ongoing or past events. This would be possible given a situation such as the following: after having guessed someone was playing drums next door the speaker went next door and saw the person standing there holding a drum or drumsticks. When commenting that ‘He WAS playing drums’, adding (/ -k/ + /-u/ > [ku]) after the verb (see ex. (4.231a)) adds the sense of ‘as I had guessed and now pretty-well confirm’. This interpretation holds when the clause has a 2nd person actor ([k-u-ən] 2sg, as in (4.231b), [k-u-i] 2pl) or 3rd person plural actor ([k-u-ət̪ɕi]).

If upon opening the door in that situation the person was still playing drums, the speaker could say (4.231c). Adding the 1sg person marking where the actor is 3sg marks the clause as representing information obtained by direct visual observation. The forms with [-k-] and the visual and person marking contrast with forms without [-k-] in that with the latter do not imply a previous supposition.

(4.231) a. *oh, the: z̪bə z̪ete-k-u!*
 oh 3sg drum beat-INF-VIS
 ‘Oh, he WAS playing drums!’

b. *ʔū zdzyta: fi-a-qə-k-u-ən.*
 2sg Chengdu DIR-go-INF-VIS-2sg
 ‘You went to Chengdu.’

- c. *oh, the: ẓbə ẓete-k-u-a!*
 oh 3sg drum beat-INF-VIS-1sg
 ‘Oh, he IS playing a drum!’

If the actor is 1st person, use of the inferential, visual and person marking together involves an implication not only that the action was done unintentionally and just discovered, as with use of the inferential and person marking alone, but also that the action was a mistake of some kind, as in (4.232) (if the actor was 1pl, then the suffixes would be [k-u-əʔ]).

- (4.232) *qa apə-ṭə-iantu-le: tsa ṭy-k-u-a.*
 1sg grandfather-GEN-pipe-DEF:CL here bring-INF-VIS-1sg
 ‘I mistakenly brought Grandfather’s pipe here.’

Usually no marking of evidentials is necessary in retelling dreams, as long as the speaker remembers the dream clearly, but if not, then the speaker would use the adverbial phrase /χsu-ŋi/ ‘seems’ or the construction with [-tan] or [-lahan] for marking possibility (both discussed below), not the inferential or hearsay markers. When retelling some event witnessed on TV the unmarked form can also be used, but often the hearsay marker would be used (the visual marker cannot be used), as when retelling something heard on the radio. There is no special marking for information that is not to be taken literally, such as metaphors or sarcasm.

4.3.7.3. Hearsay marking

The hearsay marking suffix /-i/, derived from the verb [jə ~ ji] ‘to say’, is used to mark hearsay of future or presently ongoing events (e.g. ‘I heard he’s leaving’) or relatively recent past events, as in (4.233) (could be up to 40-50 years, but generally not ancient history, though there are exceptions).

- (4.233) *the: zdzyta: fi-a-qə-i.*
 3sg Chengdu:LOC DIR-go-HS
 ‘He went to Chengdu.’ (I heard)

The hearsay marker is used only for hearsay, and not for simple uncertainty, when it is used alone. It can also appear in narratives recounting distant past events (e.g., ex. (4.234a), the first line in the traditional creation story (T1:1)), but generally in distant past narratives (story-telling) it is used together with the inferential marker, to show a greater degree of uncertainty, as in ex. (4.234b), the first line of another traditional story.⁹¹ The hearsay marking is not used together with second person marking (e.g. (4.234c)). Unlike in Jarawara (Dixon 2003), the hearsay particle is not used in clauses with a 2nd person actor to remind the person of what they said.

(4.234) a. *qe:¹lotʂu-ka, mutu-la mujuqu z_guə-zi we-i.*
 before-LOC heaven-LOC sun nine-CL exist-HS
 ‘(It is said) in the past there were nine suns in the sky.’

b. *qe:¹-qe:¹-tu fiala kapəʂʂ kou*
 before-before-LNK INT orphan INDEF:one:CL
ŋuə-kəi-tcu. (T3:1)
 COP-INF:HS-PART
 ‘(It is said) in the past there was an orphan.’

c. *?ū tceχun tu-pu-ji-i-ŋi!*
 2sg marry DIR-do-ASP-HS-ADV
 ‘(I heard) you got married!’

Generally there is no difference between second-hand and third-hand reported information, but if the hearsay marker is used in a clause with 1sg marking on the verb, as in (4.235), the utterance must be interpreted as similar to a direct quote (even though the representation of the speaker quoted is 3rd person), with the assumption being that, for example in (4.235), that the referent mentioned in (4.235) himself told the speaker of (4.235) that he (the referent mentioned in (4.235)) is unhappy.⁹² If instead the verb root is the third person form plus the hearsay marker (i.e. would be [zdzi-i] in (4.235)), then the implication is that someone else told the speaker the other person was unhappy.

(4.235) *the: ctcimi zdza-i.* (< zdzi-a-i)
 3sg heart sick:1sg-HS
 ‘He’s unhappy.’ (he told me)

4.3.7.4. Evidential strategies

Two other types of marking might be considered evidential strategies rather than evidential marking. The adverbial particle /χsu-ŋi/ can be added to the end of the clause, after the verb complex (and so does not take person marking), to show uncertainty about some information. This adverbial functions something like English ‘seem’, taking the whole clause in its scope. The (semantically) main clause may or may not take the hearsay evidential marker /-i/ (compare (4.236a) and (4.236b)).

- (4.236) a. *the: zdzyta: fi-a-qə-i χsu-ŋi.*
 3sg Chengdu:LOC DIR-go-HS seem-ADV
 ‘It seems s/he went to Chengdu.’ (guessing, unsure if true)
- b. *zdzyta: le χsu-ŋi.*
 Chengdu:LOC exist seem-ADV
 ‘It seems (s/he) lives in Chengdu.’

For expressing contingent (‘it is possible that’, ‘perhaps’) situations, often a construction involving a clause nominalized by /-m/, plus [la-hən ~ la-hən] (definite marker + ‘one’ + ‘kind’), [ka-hən ~ ka-hən] (indefinite marker + ‘one’ + ‘kind’), or /tan/ (‘appearance’), and the copula is used. This is structurally similar to the Japanese *yoo-da* and *soo-da* constructions (see Aoki 1986). Following are examples of a direct evidential ((4.237a)) and a construction using the nominalizer /-m/ plus /tan/ ((4.237b)).

- (4.237) a. *the: tha zi.*
 3sg there exist
 ‘S/he is there.’
- b. *the: tha-zi-m-tan ŋuə.*
 3sg there-exist-NOM-appearance COP
 ‘S/he might be there.’
 (lit.: ‘S/he is the appearance of one who is there.’)

An expression with [-m-tan] is more of a certainty than one with [χsu-ŋi] ‘seems’. The former can also be used for non-past events.

To make a strong statement of certainty, or of information that was not recently discovered, but known for some time, then a clause nominalized by /-s/ and followed by the copula is used without /tan/ or /la-hən/ (this construction was also discussed in §4.3.6). This form cannot be used for past/perfective actions.

- (4.238) a. *pəs zmu tsu-s ηuə.*
 today meeting hold-NOM COP
 ‘There is a meeting today.’ (set and known about
 beforehand)
- b. *the: tha-zi-s ηuə.*
 3sg there-exist-NOM COP
 ‘S/he is definitely there.’

4.3.7.5. Correlations with other grammatical categories

Use of evidential marking in a question is not obligatory, as long as no assumptions about the source of the addressee’s information are made, but if it is used, in the case of the visual or hearsay marking it would imply the assumption that the hearer saw (visual, as in (4.239a)), or heard about (hearsay, as in (4.239b)), the action being questioned. It is the action that is questioned, not the source of the information.

- (4.239) a. *the: ha-qə-u ηua?*
 3sg DIR-go-VIS Q
 ‘Did he go?’
- b. *the: ha-qə-i ηua?*
 3sg DIR-go-HS Q
 ‘Did he go?’

If the speaker of a question assumes the addressee of the question also does not have visual evidence of information about the situation being asked about (though knows more about the situation than the speaker), the inferential particle can be used in the question, as in (4.240):

- (4.240) *the:* *ha-qə-k* *ŋua?*
 3sg DIR-go-INF Q
 ‘Did he go?’

The form used by the one responding to the question would then depend on the source of that person’s information, visual, inference or hearsay.

If the speaker is asking the addressee about his or her own actions, then the inferential marker can still be used, but in this case would not represent a presupposition that the addressee is also not clear about the situation. Instead it would represent a guess about some aspect of the question, for example in (4.241), the guess that Chengdu is the place that the person went to. (The question marker used in this example also differs from the usual second person question marker /-a/, in that it represents more of a guess about the situation.)

- (4.241) *?ũ* *zdzyta:* *fi-a-qə-k-ən* *dza?*
 2sg Chengdu:LOC DIR-go-INF-2sg Q
 ‘Did you go down to Chengdu?’

Other examples of the use of the inferential marker in questions are given in (4.242a-b). (Ex. (4.242b) is actually a rhetorical question, from a traditional story, “The Old Man of the Chen Family”.)

- (4.242) a. *the:* *zdzyta:* *fi-a-qə-k* *ja?*
 3sg Chengdu:LOC DIR-go-INF Q
 ‘Did he go down to Chengdu?’
- b. *?ũ* *ŋa* *qa* *a-qə-s* *we-k-a:^t* *təi?*
 2sg COM 1sg one-form exist-INF-PRS:1pl Q
 ‘(Could it be) yours and mine are the same?’ (T6:137-138)

The evidential markers can be used with causatives, just as with simplex clauses (see (4.223) and (4.243)).

- (4.243) *the:* *fi-a-qə-z-i.*
 3sg DIR-go-CAUS-HS
 ‘He was made to go.’ (I heard)

It is possible to use the evidential markers in some embedded clauses, with the acceptability of the marker depending somewhat on the matrix verb (contrast (4.244a) and (4.244b)).

- (4.244) a. *the: pieye tu-pu-ji-(u) qa dzukʉ la.*
 3sg graduate DIR-do-CSM-VIS 1sg knowledge exist:1sg
 ‘I know he graduated.’
- b. *the: pieye tu-pu-ji-i qa ə-ma.*
 3sg graduate DIR-do-CSM-HS 1sg DIR-hear:1sg
 ‘I heard he graduated.’

With direct quotes, as in (4.245), different evidential marking can appear on the matrix and quoted clauses, e.g. in (4.245) the inferential marker appears in the quote, and the narrative marker appears on the verb of saying (from a traditional narrative).

- (4.245) “*ta, qa ?ile ep ŋuə-k-a,*” *ikə jə-kui.*
 INT 1sg 2pl father COP-INF-1sg thus say-INF:HS
 ‘He said, “Then, I am your father.” (based on inference from what they had just said; T6:254-255))

In other types of complex sentences, evidential marking can appear either on only the final clause, when the initial clause has a hypotactic relation to the second clause, or on both clauses:

- (4.246) a. *the: zdzyta: fa-qa me-tchi, peitcin-la*
 3sg Chengdu:LOC DIR-go NEG-want Beijing-LOC
da-tə-qa-kəi.
 DIR-CON-go-INF:HS
 ‘It seems he not only went to Chengdu, he also went to Beijing.’ (I heard, not too sure)
- b. *the: ku-q-ta ha-qə-kəi-tu,*
 3sg mountain-top-LOC DIR-go-INF:HS-LNK

tci-ke: *tu-tsu-kəi.*
 bear-INDEF:CL DIR-meet-INF:HS
 ‘When he went up on the mountain, he ran into a bear.’ (I
 heard but I’m not too sure).

- c. *the:* *dzoqu-le:* *da-g-k-(əi),* *pitc sei*
 3sg leg-DEF:CL DIR-break-INF:HS now walk
ma-l-jy-k-(əi).
 NEG-able-ASP-INF:HS
 ‘It seems he broke his leg and now can’t walk.’ (I heard but
 I’m not too sure.)

There is no marking of evidentials in relative clauses (4.247a), or conditional clauses (4.247b), or imperatives (4.248a), though the verb of saying can be added to an imperative to show that someone told the speaker to order the person to do something, as in a direct quote (4.248b).

- (4.247) a. *qa-wu-panə-de-le-m* *mi.*
 1sg-AGT-thing-DIR-give-NOM person
 ‘the person to whom I gave something’
- b. *the:* *mo-lu-tu,* *qa-qəi ka:.* (< kə + a: + a)
 3sg NEG-come-LNK 1sg-self go:PRS:1sg
 ‘If s/he doesn’t come, I’m going to go myself.’
- (4.248) a. *?ū ə-zuə-n.*
 2sg DIR-sit-2sg
 ‘You sit!’
- b. *?ū ə-zuə-n ji.*
 2sg DIR-sit-2sg say
 ‘You sit!’ (someone else told me to say that)

If the visual evidential marker is used in the negative, such as to say ‘He didn’t come’, or ‘It didn’t rain’, there is a presupposition that the speaker has visual evidence of the person not coming, that is, the speaker was in the place all day, and so would have seen the person if

he had come, or the speaker was outside all day, and so would have seen it had it rained. When the inferential or hearsay markers are used with a negative clause (e.g. [mə-tɕi-kə-k] [NEG-CON-go-INF] ‘(He) didn’t go yet’ [inferred from seeing his baggage still in the hallway]), the implication is that the negative proposition is an inference or hearsay, the same as with positive propositions. Unlike in Akha (Hansson 2003), the evidential particles cannot be negated to express the idea that the speaker doesn’t know the reason for what is happening.

Generally actions performed by oneself do not need to be overtly marked with evidentials, but the visual evidential can be used with inadvertent actions, as mentioned above. In the case of one’s mental or physical states, if one is not sure about some particular state, for example, whether one has caught a cold or not, usually the construction with [-tan] or [lahan] ‘seems’ would be used, e.g. ‘It seems like I caught a cold’, as in (4.249).

- (4.249) *qa tə-lian-tha-m-la-han* *ŋuə.*
 1sg DIR-catch.cold-AUX-NOM-DEF:one-kind COP
 ‘I might have caught a cold.’ (cf. English ‘It’s kind of like I caught a cold’)

4.4. Adverbials

The adverbials to be discussed here are the elements that modify adjectives (intransitive state predicate verbs) and verbs, not the clause as a whole. We saw examples of locative and temporal adverbs which modify the whole clause in Sections 3.2.20 and 3.2.21, and examples of another type of adverb that takes the clause in its scope in Section 4.3.7.

4.4.1. Degree marking adverbs

There is some difference between the adverbs that adjectives and other verbs can take. Most adjectives, when they act as predicates, can take the postverbal adverb /-wa/ ‘very’ (e.g. /nɑ-wa/ (good + very) ‘very good’), whereas verbs, except for /topu/ ‘like’, cannot take this adverb. Some adjectives also cannot take this adverb, but there does not seem to

be a semantic reason for this, as the adjectives that can take /-wa/ and those that cannot are often in the same semantic field, e.g. /phi-wa/ ‘very white’, but not */ŋiq-wa/ ‘very black’. For the adjectives that cannot take /-wa/, the preverbal adverb [ken ~ kən] ‘very’ (possibly a loan of Chinese *gēng*) can be used. Following are some other examples of these two adverbs:

- | | |
|--|---|
| (4.250) a. <i>bastā-wa</i>
slow/late-very
‘very slow/late’ | b. <i>ba-wa</i>
big-very
‘very big’ |
| c. <i>kən ŋiq</i>
very black
‘very black’ | d. <i>kən stā</i>
very wide
‘very wide’ |

Some adjectives can only take /-wa/, while some can only take /kən/, though some other adjectives can take either of the two adverbs, e.g. /çupu-wa/ ~ /kən çupu/ ‘very red’. Some loan words can also take /-wa/, even when the loan word is followed by the auxiliary loan word particle (see §3.1.1). In this case /-wa/ follows the auxiliary particle, e.g. /khuai-tha/ (‘fast’ < Chinese *kuài* + auxiliary loan word particle) > [khuai-tha-wa] ‘very fast’.

The adverb /-wa/ can be used with the negative prefix, though the negative prefix appears before the adjective, with /-wa/ modifying the whole negative plus adjective combination, e.g. [mā-na-wa] (negative + ‘good’ + ‘very’) ‘very not good’ (this cannot have the meaning ‘not very good’). The adverb /ken/ can be used with some verbs, e.g. /ken topu/ (‘very’ + ‘like’) ‘like very much’. An adjective modified by /ken/ can directly modify a noun (e.g. /fa-ken-ŋiq/ (‘clothing’ + ‘very’ + ‘black’) ‘very black clothing’), but this is not possible with /-wa/. The adverb /-wa/ can also be followed by a nominalizer, as in the following relative clause:

- (4.251) *şku-wa-m-le-ze*
lovely-very-NOM-DEF-CL
‘the very lovely person’ (lit.: ‘the person who is very lovely’)

There is another postverbal adverb, /quəla/ ‘very’, used to modify adjectives and at least one auxiliary verb, e.g. /nɑ quəla/ ‘very good’, /cupu quəla/ ‘very red’, /dzə quəla/ (‘able’ + ‘very’) ‘very capable’. Adjectives can also be reduplicated for expressing greater intensity (see §4.2.3).

For expressing the meaning ‘too much, excessively’, either a preverbal adverb, /tsan/, or a postverbal adverb, /-s/, can be used with most adjectives. The former is used only before the negative or prohibitive prefix.

- (4.252) a. *ŋiq-əs*
black-too
‘too black’
- b. *basta-s*
slow/late-too
‘too slow/late’
- c. *ba-s*
big-too
‘too big’
- d. *mo-po-s*
NEG-thick-too
‘not too thick’
- (4.253) a. *tsan-ma-nə*
too-NEG-good
‘not too good’
- b. *tsan-ma-ŋiq*
too-NEG-black
‘not too black’
- c. *tsan-me-ʂue*
too-NEG-bright
‘not too bright’
- d. *tsan-me-tsue*
too-NEG-sour
‘not too sour’

- (4.254) *a-zə χtʂa-ka: a-βu, tsan-tca-γzə-z.* (< βue)
one-CL small-INDEF:CL DIR-put too-NEG.IMP-spicy-CAUS
‘Put a little (hot pepper), don’t make it too spicy.’

The continuative aspect marker /tca/ ([tca ~ tci ~ tca ~ tco]) is used generally to mean ‘still, yet’ (see §4.3.4), but when used in the comparative construction (see §3.2.7), it has the effect of a relative degree marking adverb with the sense of ‘relatively *adjective*’ or ‘even more *adjective*’. When this adverb appears with the negative and a directional prefix, the word order is [prefix-negative-/tca/-verb], as in (4.256b).

- (4.255) a. *tca-wa* (< ba) b. *tca-ŋiq*
 CON-big CON-black
 ‘relatively big’ ‘relatively black’
- c. *tca-basta* d. *tco-po*
 CON-slow/late CON-thick
 ‘relatively slow/late’ ‘relatively thick’
- (4.256) a. *ma-tca-χtʂa* b. *fi-mə-tca-χtʂa*
 NEG-CON-small DIR-NEG-CON-small
 ‘not so small’ ‘not so reduced’

The superlative of adjectives and some stative verbs is marked by the prefix /tci/:

- (4.257) a. *tci-wa-la-lə* b. *tci-topu*
 most-big-DEF:one-CL most-like
 ‘the biggest (stick-like object)’ ‘like (something) most’
- c. *tci-fi* d. *tci-χtʂa*
 most-white most-small
 ‘whitest’ ‘smallest’

The form of the superlative is similar to one of the harmony forms of the preverbal adverb for marking a relative degree, but the superlative does not undergo vowel harmony.

4.4.2. Negation

The negative adverbial prefix /mə/ ([ma ~ me ~ mi ~ mə ~ mo]) and the prohibitive prefix /tca/ ([tca ~ tce ~ tca ~ tco]) (the forms of both are affected by vowel harmony and stress) appear in the same position in the verb complex, following the directional prefix, so cannot be used together in the same verb complex, e.g., /ha-tca-ɛ/ (directional prefix + prohibitive + ‘go’) ‘don’t go out!’⁹³ vs. /ha-ma-qa/ (directional prefix + negative + ‘go’) ‘didn’t go out’ (see §4.2.5 on changes in the root form of ‘go’). It is possible to have double negation in a single clause if there

is an auxiliary verb. The resulting meaning is a positive one, e.g., /mā-q fie-mə-se/ ('not' + 'go' + directional prefix + 'not' + 'allow') 'to not go would not be allowed' = '(He) must go'. The same negative adverbial prefix is used for all types of negation except the prohibitive.

- (4.258) a. *ma-na* 'not good'
 b. *ma-ŋ* 'not have'
 c. *V-ma-l* 'need not V' or 'cannot V'
 d. *mə-tci-V* 'not yet V'
 e. *V-me-tchi* 'need not V'

- (4.259) *qa u-tcu ma-la.* (< dzə)
 1sg DIR-see NEG-able:1sg
 'I can't see.'

Other examples of the use of the negative and prohibitive adverbial prefixes can be found throughout Chapter 4. See especially §4.3.5.2 on the prohibitive prefix.

4.4.3. Adverbial phrases

Adverbial expressions that modify non-adjective verbs as manner adverbs generally precede the verbs, and can sometimes be marked by /-ŋi/ or /-ji ~ tci/. Generally manner adverbs take /-ŋi/, though if reduplicated, then /-ŋi/ is not used:

- (4.260) a. *akha-kha ə-tc* b. *akha-ŋi ə-tc* (< tchə)
 slow DIR-eat slow-ADV DIR-eat
 'eat slowly' 'eat slowly'
 c. *hama-ŋi dzə* d. *ata-ŋi dzə*
 stealthy-ADV eat fast-ADV eat
 'eat stealthily (on the sly)' 'eat quickly'

The words most frequently used in adverbial expressions are similar to adjectives, but differ slightly from adjectives. They mainly appear in adverbial phrases, but can also modify nouns (in the form of

appositional structures), and can act as head of a noun phrase themselves when nominalized by the definite or indefinite markers. Semantically they seem like adjectives, but they are unlike adjectives and verbs in that they cannot act as predicates and cannot take negation, and they are also unlike other adverbs in the language, in that they can modify nouns and take the (in)definite markers, as in (4.261a-b).

- (4.261) a. *the: hama-le: ɲuə.*
 3sg stealthy-DEF:CL COP
 'He is the evasive one.'
- b. *mi hama-le:*
 person stealthy-DEF:CL
 'the evasive person'

This class of forms can generally take the intensifying adverbs /kən/ and /-wa/, and the superlative /tɕi-/, but not the adverbs /tsan/ and /-s/. They can appear before the noun as a modifier of the noun (e.g. *hama-le: mi* 'the evasive person'), but this is rather rare.

More than one manner adverb can appear in a clause, with no change in marking, and no marking of coordination, and each conjunct may or may not have adverbial marking:

- (4.262) *the: hama-ɲi akhakha ə-qa.*
 3sg stealthy-ADV slowly DIR-go
 'S/he slowly and quietly goes/went in.'

Some adjectives can act as manner adverbs in adverbial expressions, usually followed by the adverbial marker [-ji ~ tɕi] or /-ɲi/:

- (4.263) a. *the: na-ji mo-su.*
 3sg good-ADV NEG-study
 'S/he doesn't study well.'
- b. *ʔū təp-ɲi dalə-ɲi tu-ju.*
 2sg tomorrow-ADV early-ADV DIR-rise
 'Get up early tomorrow.'

In some cases the manner adverb is a whole clause or verb complex:

- (4.264) *qa kuiphatsə-le: fie-tci-ŋi sei-ja.* (< ji)
 1sg walking.stick-DEF:CL DIR-poke-ADV walk/run-CSM:1sg
 ‘I (now) walk leaning on the walking stick.’
- (4.265) *tcile the: fia-staqə-ŋi linthau ŋuə-za:.* (< zə)
 1pl 3sg DIR-choose-ADV leader COP-CAUS:PRS
 ‘We choose him/her to be leader.’
- (4.266) *qa zəwə-le:-wu kduaʃ ha-ŋuə-zə-ŋi*
 1sg rock-DEF:CL-INST hammer DIR-COP-CAUS-ADV
tintsə zeta. (< zəte)
 nail(n.) nail(v.):1sg
 ‘I hammer nails using the rock as a hammer.’

Ideophonic manner adverbs follow the usual phonotactics of the language. They are used for natural sounds, and not abstract concepts.

- (4.267) *qhua: tsə χua χua-ke: sa.*
 river.velley water huahua-INDEF:CL make.sound
 ‘The river water makes a “huahua” sound.’
- (4.268) *moku bu bu (wu wu)-ke: bu.*
 wind wu wu-INDEF:CL blow
 ‘The wind blows “wu wu”.’

Adverbial expressions that are comparative in nature, rather than being simple manner adverbials, often follow the verb being modified. Following are examples of adverbial expressions of equality, and comparative and superlative adverbs.

- (4.269) *thizzi a-qəs sei dzə.* (equality)
 3dl one-form walk/run able
 ‘The two of them can run equally fast.’

- (4.270) *the: qa-s sei tca-lə.* (comparative; < dzə)
 3sg 1sg-COMP walk/run CON-able
 ‘S/he runs faster than I do.’
- (4.271) *the: stuaha tchə khuai-tha-wa.* (comparative)
 3sg food/rice eat fast-AUX-very
 ‘S/he eats very quickly.’
- (4.272) *the: sei tci dzə.* (superlative)
 3sg walk/run most able
 ‘S/he can run the fastest.’

The correlative comparative is marked by [a-zə] (one-CL) ‘a little’ or [lewu] ‘the more’; the clause linker /-wu/ (= the agentive and instrumental marker) appears at the end of the first clause.

- (4.273) *the: a-zə sə-dzi-wu, a-zə tsha ha-la.*
 3sg one-CL DIR-eat-LNK one-CL meat DIR-come
 ‘The more s/he eats, the fatter s/he gets.’
- (4.274) *the: a-zə tə-wa-wu, mi zəwa mo-xʂuɕtɕ.*
 3sg one-CL DIR-big-LNK person talk NEG-listen
 ‘The bigger s/he gets, the more s/he doesn’t listen/behave.’
- (4.275) *zəp lewu χtʂa-wu, mi lewu wu qəs we.*⁹⁴
 place more small-LNK person more many form exist
 ‘The smaller the place, the more people it seems like there are.’

It is also possible to use the comparative construction (see §3.2.7) to express the sense of a correlative comparative.

- (4.276) *mi-wu kə-jə-wu-tu, (the:) tsə-s*
 person-AGT thus-say-LNK-LNK (3sg) this-COMP
tə-ke-kəpə.
 DIR-spirited-HABIT
 ‘The more other people scold him/her, the more spirited (mischievous) he/she gets.’

The sense of ‘almost’, as in ‘almost have something happen’, can be expressed using /a-zə tɕa-ŋua-ʂə/ (‘one-CL’ CON-COP-LNK) ‘(except for) a little still is . . .’ as a single clause, with the event that almost happened expressed in the following clause, as in the following example:

- (4.277) *a-zə tɕa-ŋua:-ʂə, qa i-pə-l ma-lə-jya.* (*< jy*)
 one-CL CON-COP:PRS-LNK 1sg DIR-arrive-come
 NEG-able-ASP:1sg
 ‘I almost couldn’t return.’

To express the sense of ‘almost’, as in ‘almost everyone came’, the same clause-final particle /-ʂə/ is used at the end of the first clause, which is subordinated to the copula by the adverbial particle /-tɕi/, as in the following example:

- (4.278) *eyle wu i-pə-la:-ʂə-tɕi ŋua.*
 whole all DIR-arrive-come:PRS-LNK-ADV COP
 ‘Almost all the people have come.’

The same clause-final particle /-ʂə/ can be used in a similar structure to express the idea of ‘a little . . .’, e.g. in the following example, meaning ‘a little bit alike’:

- (4.279) *thizzi a-qəs wa:-ʂə kəzzi ŋua.*
 3dl one-form exist:PRS-LNK INDEF:two:CL COP
 ‘The two of them are a little alike.’

There is another use of this same clause-final particle /ʂə/ to mark the first clause of a two-clause structure as expressing a hypothetical or counter-factual situation, which if realized would bring about or would have brought about the situation expressed in the second clause.⁹⁵ This is clear in the examples below. (For other examples see Huang Chenglong 2000:16.)

- (4.280) a. *qa jə-s kə ŋua:-ʂə the:*
 1sg say-NOM thus COP:PRS-LNK 3sg

de-me-tshi-wu.

DIR-NEG-wrong-3sgU

‘If you ask me, he was not wrong.’

- b. *qa nəs spəχs sə-qa:-sə,*
 1sg yesterday Chibusu DIR-go:1sg:PRS-LNK
qa fa-a-qai zə-pə-jya.
 1sg clothing-one-CL DIR-buy-ASP:1sg
 ‘If I had gone to Chibusu yesterday, I would have bought a
 piece of clothing.’

- c. *qa dziguḡ qəqa:-sə, qa ləyz su-kə-jya.*
 1sg money have:PRS:1sg-LNK 1sg book study-go-ASP:1sg
 ‘If I had money, I would go to school.’

This seems to be the sense underlying the other uses of /-sə/ discussed above as well. That is, the sense of ‘almost’ in the example above is from ‘had it remained that way a bit more, then . . .’; the sense of ‘almost all’ in (4.278) is from ‘as if all . . .’; and the sense of ‘a little alike’ in (4.279) is from ‘as if they are the same’.

Chapter 5

The clause and complex structures

In Chapters 3-4 we discussed the various elements within the clause, and have seen many clause types in the examples given. Here we will discuss the various combinations of elements possible in a clause (§5.1), nominalizations and their use in relative clauses (§5.2), complement clause structures (§5.3), coordination and disjunction (§5.4), complex structures made up of multiple clauses (§5.5) and the structure of narratives (§5.6).

5.1. Structure

The structure of the clause is to some extent affected by pragmatic factors, but this only applies to the order of noun phrases in the clause. The utterance-initial position is the unmarked topic position (though secondary topics can follow the primary topic), while the position immediately before the verb is the unmarked focus position, and so the focused element will generally appear there (see also §4.3.1). The verb always appears in final position; there is no possibility for the actor of a clause to appear in postverbal position, even if it is focal. The only exception to this is the occasional afterthought clarification of a noun phrase that was omitted or expressed as a pronoun in the clause (see T4:20-22 for an example). The clause may include a temporal phrase (TEMP); a locative phrase (LOC); the NPs representing the actor, the goal or recipient, and/or the undergoer (UG); an adverbial phrase (ADV); the verb complex (VC); and possibly a clause-final particle (PART). The most unmarked word order in the clause is given in Figure 4:

(TEMP) (LOC) (ACTOR) (GOAL/RECIPIENT) (ADV) (UG) VC (PART)

Figure 4. The structure of the Qiang clause

The verb complex is the only necessary element for an utterance to be considered a clause, and the verb complex may be simply a predicate noun. As discussed in §4.2, the verb complex may also include an adverbial.

While there are quite a few loan words in Qiang, and Qiang speakers will often code-mix, adding Chinese phrases when speaking Qiang, there does not seem to have been a lot of influence from Chinese on the grammar of Qiang. When Chinese phrases are treated as loans into Qiang, the order of elements is changed to fit the normal Qiang order. We saw examples of the this in forms such as /phitchi fa-pə/ (temper release-do) ‘get angry’, from Chinese *fā píqì* (release temper) ‘get angry’. When Chinese is used in a code-mixing sense rather than a loan sense, the expressions follow Chinese word order. Code mixing is frequent, particularly among the younger people. During the recording of the stories given in the Texts the speakers tried not to use Chinese at all, but at least one speaker used several code-mixed expressions and often interspersed Qiang text with the Chinese filler *háishì* ‘still is’ (see in particular Text 5 for examples). Examples of code mixing can be seen in the following two segments:

- (5.1) a. *pəs-ŋuən̩i z mətʃi-sətsim-le: tɕiutɕin ʂə*
 today-TOP emperor-wife-DEF:CL †(after.all be)
mi-le: ŋuə-ŋua? (T6:305-306)
 person-DEF:CL COP-Q
 ‘Today, is the emperor’s wife a human?’
- b. *tʂe-kə-zən-la mi-tse-ze-ŋuən̩i, “hai!*
 †(this-CL-person-TOP) person-this-CL-TOP INT
pefutsə, tʂe-kə pefutsə məʔ ke guo zuo
 †white.beard †(this-CL white.beard cat give 1sg do
χau sə,” jə-i-stu. (T5:182-183)
 good thing) say-HS-PART
 ‘This person, this person said, “Hey, White Beard, this white beard cat did something good for me”.’

In (5.1a) the words /tɕiutɕin/ and /ʂə/ are code-mixed Chinese, and the order of that phrase (‘emperor’s wife after all is human’) is verb-medial, even though /mi-le/ ‘human’ is a Qiang word, and the larger, containing

structure is in the normal Qiang verb-final order and includes the Qiang copula. In (5.1b) there are two code-mixed segments, one of which is quite long. The speaker starts with a Chinese phrase meaning ‘this person’, but then repeats the same meaning in Qiang. The order within the two phrases is different: in the Chinese phrase the demonstrative and classifier precede the noun, while in the Qiang phrase they follow it. In the long segment beginning in the second line, the word order is completely that of the standard Mandarin Chinese equivalent, with the recipient in post-verbal position: *zhè-ge bái-húzi māo gěi wǒ zuò hǎo shì* [this-CL white.beard cat give 1sg do good thing]. The speaker then finishes off the segment with the usual Qiang form for ending a quote.

5.2. Nominalization and relativization

As mentioned in earlier sections (§§3.1.1, 3.1.4, 4.2.3), nominalization in Qiang is achieved either by the use of one of three nominalizing clitics, /-s/, /-m/ or /-tɕ/, or by the use of a definite (/le/, /te/) or indefinite (/ke/) marker. The latter is generally possible only with adjectives and existential verbs. The nominalized forms created using the clitics reflect what were originally relative clause constructions where the relative clause (or simply a verb) modified a very general head noun.⁹⁶ The form /-m/ is derived from the word /mi/ ‘man’, and /-s/ may be derived from a word meaning ‘earth’ or location (cf. Tibetan /sa/ ‘ground, place’, also used as a nominalizer⁹⁷), while /-tɕ/ is a palatalization of an original velar initial form (cf. Mawo dialect Qiang /-k/) that may be related to the Tibetan genitive (/kyi/). Unlike in some other Tibeto-Burman languages (e.g. Chantyal, Noonan 1997; Lahu, Matisoff 1973), nominalized forms are not used as citation forms of verbs.

The creation of lexicalized deverbal nouns by adding the nominalizing suffixes /-s/ and /-m/ (e.g. [nəs] ‘bed’ and [ɕuam] ‘servant’) and the nominalization of adjectives by the use of a definite or indefinite marker (e.g. [ɲiq-le] ‘the black one’) were discussed in §3.1.1. Aside from the lexicalized deverbal nouns formed with the clitic nominalizers, nonce collocations can also be formed as needed from clauses to refer to particular objects or individuals, such as in the

examples in (5.2). Here the original function as a relative clause is most clear.

- (5.2) a. *tawə-ta-m le-ze*
 hat-wear-NOM DEF-CL
 ‘the person wearing a hat’
- b. *gantsə χua-m tha zi.* (T6:197)
 saddle sell-NOM there exist
 ‘There is (a) saddle seller there.’
- c. *qa koi-kə-m kən he-ça-ηi, . . .*
 1sg call-go-NOM very(many) DIR-send:1sg-LNK
 ‘I have sent many to call you, . . .’ (sent many who go to call you) (T4:46-47)
- d. *wutcupu die-şe-m* (T6:89)
 husband DIR-die-NOM
 ‘one whose husband had died’

It is possible in this structure to have a pronoun that is coreferential with the head noun (now a nominalizer) retained when needed for clarity, as in (5.3), where the pronoun is needed to be able to add the genitive marker to explicitly mark the benefactive relationship:

- (5.3) *qa the:-te ləyz de-le-m le:*
 1sg 3sg-GEN book DIR-give-NOM DEF:CL
 ‘the person to whom I gave a book’

If the referent the nominalized clause represents is a location, or in some cases the time of an event, then the clause is nominalized by /-s/ and can be followed by the locative marker /-ta/, as in (5.4).⁹⁸

- (5.4) *qa-lu-s-ta*
 1sg-come-NOM-LOC
 ‘the place that I came from’

Clauses involving existential verbs can be nominalized by simply adding one of the definite markers or the indefinite marker after the verb:

- (5.5) a. *ep lə me-zi ew lə*
 father also NEG-exist mother also
me-zi-ke: ɲuə-kəi-tɕu. (T3:2-3)
 NEG-exist-INDEF:CL COP-INF:HS-PART
 ‘(He was an orphan), one who didn’t have a father or mother.’
- b. *the: tha-zi-k ku.*
 3sg there-exist-INF willing
 ‘S/he might be there.’ (lit.: ‘She might be one who is there.’)

The nominalized constructions involving the nominalizers /-s/ and /-m/, and also another type formed with the genitive marker /-tɕ/, can be used to modify another noun or noun phrase, forming a NP + N(P) structure where the first NP modifies the second. That is, what was historically a relative clause plus head noun structure (at least in the case of /-s/ and /-m/) has been reanalyzed as simply a nominalized clause and is now used to modify another noun. This is now the main form of relative clause structure used in Qiang. It is also used for noun complement structures (such as in ex. (4.118) above (repeated below as (5.74)) and the /-tan/ structure discussed in §4.3.7.4).

There are no relative pronouns in Qiang. Definite marking may follow the head noun, as in (5.9). The type of nominalizer such a modifier (relative clause) takes depends on the semantics and animacy of the head noun. If the head noun is an undergoer or other non-instrument, including an inanimate actor, then the genitive marker /-tɕ/ is used:

- (5.6) *pətsa-ŋi-tə-bəl-jy-tɕ tɕuats*
 just.now-ADV-DIR-make-ASP-GEN table
 ‘the table just made’
- (5.7) *pətsa-ŋi-zə-p-jy-tɕ fa*
 just.now-ADV-DIR-buy-ASP-GEN clothes
 ‘the clothes just bought’

- (5.8) *qa-dzoqu-de-we-tɕ* *zawa*
 1sg-foot-DIR-exist-GEN rock
 ‘the rock which crushed (lit.: came to be on) my foot’

If the head noun is an instrument (even if animate, as in (5.9)), then the nominalizer /-s/ is used:

- (5.9) *do-qu-zə-s* *khuə-le:*
 DIR-afraid-CAUS-NOM dog-DEF:CL
 ‘the dog used to frighten people’
- (5.10) *stuaħa-tɕhə-s* *tɕuats*
 food/rice-eat-NOM table
 ‘the table used for eating food’
- (5.11) *tɕeχuen-pa:-ka-guə-s* *fa*
 marry-do:PRS-LOC-wear-NOM clothes
 ‘clothes worn when one is going to get married’
- (5.12) *laupin-tɕshopu-s* *səpɛ*
 tuberculosis-treat-NOM medicine
 ‘medicine used to treat tuberculosis’

If the head noun has an animate referent, then the nominalizer /-m/ is used. As mentioned above, this form derives from the word /mi/ ‘person’, but it has fully grammaticalized into a nominalizer, to the point that it can be used together with /mi/ as the head noun, as in (5.14) and (5.15) (though it can be omitted, as in (5.16)). Notice also how the use of the agentive marking within the relative clause in (5.15) changes the interpretation of the semantic role of the head noun phrase relative to that in (5.14). Here the agentive marking is performing a disambiguating function, particularly necessary here because of the lack of person marking in nominalizations.

- (5.13) *qa-ħa-ɕdzɛ-m* *khuə*
 1sg-DIR-bite-NOM dog
 ‘the dog which bit me’

- (5.14) *qa-panə-dele-m* *mi*
 1sg-thing-give-NOM person
 ‘the person who gave me something’
- (5.15) *qa-wu-panə-dele-m* *mi*
 1sg-AGT-thing-give-NOM person
 ‘the person to whom I gave something’
- (5.16) *qupu* *ŋiyi-bələ-m* *ŋuə-ŋua?*
 3sg what-do-NOM COP-Q
 ‘What kind of work does he do?’
 (lit.: ‘He is a person who does what?’)
- (5.17) *mutu-la-fie-m* *wə*
 sky-LOC-fly-NOM bird
 ‘a bird flying in the sky’
- (5.18) *pitc* *phu-ka* *zə-m* *phu-xsu* *pe-wei.*
 nowadays forest-LOC exist-NOM wild.animals become-HS
 ‘(They) became the wild animals who now live in the forests.’
 (T2:21-22)

Relative clauses can be quite complex, involving a modifier with several clauses, as in (5.19), or a head noun that is a nominalized expression itself, as in (5.20):

- (5.19) [*soqhu-sə-χlaku-ŋi,* *tawə-ŋa-tə-ŋi* *zi-m*]
 gun-DIR-carry.on.back-ADV hat-DIR-wear-ADV exist-NOM
mi
 person
 ‘the person carrying a rifle on his back and wearing a hat’
- (5.20) *tawə-ta-m* *sku-wa-m-le-ze*
 hat-wear-NOM lovely-very-NOM-DEF-CL
 ‘the lovely person wearing a hat’

It is possible to have a pronoun as the head noun of a relative clause:

See also Section 3.1 for more examples of relative clauses.

5.3. Complementation

There are two basic complement types in Qiang, one that has no overt nominalization and one that has a clitic nominalizer. Both of these are of the ‘sentence-like complement’ type discussed in Noonan 1985. The nominalized form is not like what Noonan calls a ‘nominalized complement’, where the internal structure of the clause is that of a noun phrase (e.g. English gerunds). The nominalized type can be distinguished into three types based on the particular nominalizer used. Qiang does not exhibit the type of complex, massive verb concatenation found, for example, in Jinghpaw and Lahu (see Matisoff 1969, 1973, 1974); there are only a few auxiliary verbs that form a single nucleus with the main verb (see for example §4.2.5). In other cases either what would be expressed in two verbs in some languages would be expressed with a single verb plus a directional prefix, or the secondary verb would appear in an adverbial phrase marked by /-ŋi/.

One complex structure where the complement does not require overt nominalization is where there is a topic-comment structure with a complement clause as the topic, such as with the use of the verbs /ɕu/ or /se/ for the sense of ‘(be) allowed’ (discussed above in §4.2.6 and §4.3.6.4). These are what Dixon (1991, 1995) calls Secondary verbs, verbs which only take clausal complements as arguments. There is no person marking on the matrix verb in this type of clause, as the topic is the clause, not the human referent mentioned in the complement clause (it would be possible to have the topic marker /ŋuŋi/ at the end of the topic clause). There is no overt marking on the complement clause to distinguish it from an independent clause. In (5.26a) brackets have been put around the complement clause to mark it off.

- (5.26) a. [ʔũ pəs ma-k] fiə-mə-se.
 2sg today NEG-go DIR-NEG-allow
 ‘You must go today.’/ ‘Your not going today is not allowed.’

- b. *ɕoɕau-ka zme-z dze-z ku.*
 school-LOC Qiang-language speak-CAUS allow
 ‘Speaking Qiang is allowed in school.’
- c. *ɕoɕau-ka zme-z dze-z fie-se.*
 school-LOC Qiang-language speak-CAUS DIR-allow
 ‘Speaking Qiang is allowed in school.’

It is also possible that there is an understood impersonal third person actor, but it is not expressed overtly, and the complement clause can take the topic marker. The verb /*ɕze*/ ‘ought to’, which expresses physical or moral obligation to perform an action (see §4.2.6), seems to pattern this way, as there is no first-person or second-person marking on the verb, even when the expression refers to a first or second person actor.

- (5.27) a. *kə ɕze-ji!*
 go must-CSM
 ‘(I/we/you) must go.’
 ‘(It’s time to go!)’
- b. *kə ma-tɕi-ɕze!*
 go NEG-CON-must
 ‘(You/we) needn’t/
 shouldn’t go yet!’

In the case of the construction involving the expression /*me-tchi*/ ‘not want’ to express the ability or permission to do something (discussed in §4.3.6.4), the non-nominalized complement clause takes the exclusion particle (treating it as a noun phrase), and there is no agreement with the actor of the complement clause.

- (5.28) a. *ɕoɕau-ka zme-z dze-ji me-tchi.*
 school-LOC Qiang-language speak-EXC NEG-want
 ‘It is all right to speak Qiang in school.’
- b. *tsə tu-ɕsu-ji-(wa), tcile quaha ɕuəla-jə*
 water DIR-boil-CSM-RCA 1pl face wash-EXC
me-tchi-ji.
 NEG-want-CSM
 ‘The water’s boiled, so we can wash our faces.’

Without the exclusion particle, the complement plus /me-t̤chi/ ‘not want’ can be used in a complex structure to express the idea ‘not only X, but Y’:

- (5.29) *qa zdzyta: kə me-t̤chi, peitcin-la t̤ca-ka:.* (< kə)
 1sg Chengdu:LOC go NEG-want Beijing-LOC CON-go:PRS:1sg
 ‘Not only am I going to Chengdu, but I am also going to Beijing.’

With another group of verbs, including what Dixon (1991, 1995) calls Primary B verbs, those that can take either a noun argument or a clause complement, such as ‘like’ and ‘know’, and Secondary verbs, the complement clause is either a complete clause or, when the actor of both clauses is the same, a reduced clause. The person marking on the Primary B or Secondary verb reflects the person of the actor of the matrix clause. For example, the verbs /t̤t̤caq-lu/ ‘think of, want’ (‘heart’ + ‘come’); /lu/ can also be used alone), /kant̤chi/ ‘think/want’, or /zulu/ ‘wait’, can be used to express the desire to do an action or the hope for some situation to happen. In (5.30a) the actor of the matrix and the complement clause are the same, while in (5.30b) the actors of the matrix and the complement clauses are different. In (5.30b) the person marking is of the actor of ‘wait’, not ‘arrive’.

- (5.30) a. *the: t̤əu kə t̤t̤caq-lu.*
 3sg home go heart-come
 ‘S/he wants to go home.’
- b. *qa the: i-p̤-la: zulu-a.*
 1sg 3sg DIR-arrive-come:PRS wait-1sg
 ‘I hope s/he is going to return.’

For many verbs, such as /x̤su/ ‘to dare’, /dze/ (experiential aspect), /ɣz̤ə/ (potential for a learned ability), /dz̤ə/ and /qe/ (potential for a natural (physical) ability), only the pattern in (5.30a), with the actors of both verbs being the same, is found, probably because of the semantics of these particular verbs. Following are some examples:

- (5.31) *the: e-ze stu nə mo-xʂu.*
 3sg one-CL alone sleep NEG-dare
 ‘S/he doesn’t dare sleep alone.’
- (5.32) a. *qa zdzyta: fia-qə dza.* (< dze)
 1sg Chengdu:LOC DIR-go EXP:1sg
 ‘I have been to Chengdu.’
- b. *qa ləyz-tse-pen i-tsi me-dza.* (< dze)
 1sg book-this-CL DIR-read NEG-EXP:1sg
 ‘I have not read this book.’
- (5.33) *qa zme-z dze yza.* (< yzə)
 1sg Qiang-language speak can:1sg
 ‘I can speak Qiang.’
- (5.34) *mi la ma-l, wə la dzə.*
 person fly NEG-able bird fly able
 ‘People cannot fly, but birds can.’
- (5.35) *the: zawa-le: tə-tsi qe-ŋua?*
 3sg rock-DEF:CL DIR-lift able-Q
 ‘Can s/he lift up this rock?’

Speech act verbs also take non-nominalized complements. In quoting another’s speech, the quoted speech generally follows the noun phrases representing the speaker and addressee, and is followed by the verb /jə/ ([jə ~ ji]) ‘to say’. Both direct and indirect quotation are possible. The structure for both types is the same; they differ only in the pronoun used. Compare the following three examples:

- (5.36) a. *qa qupu-ta "(?ũ) lu-me-tchi" ji-wa.*
 1sg 3sg-DAT 2sg come-NEG-want speak-3sgU:1sg
 ‘I told him/her, “Don’t come.”’
- b. *qa qupu_i-ta qupu_j lu-me-tchi ji-wa.*
 1sg 3sg-DAT 3sg come-NEG-want speak-3sgU:1sg
 ‘I told him/her not to come.’

- c. *qa qupu_j-ta the:_j lu-me-tchi ji-wa.*
 1sg 3sg-DAT 3sg come-NEG-want speak-3sgU:1sg
 ‘I told him/her that he/she (a different person) shouldn’t
 come.’ / ‘I told him/her, “S/he shouldn’t come.”’

In example (5.36a), the second person pronoun marks the embedded clause as a direct quote. The person marking is of a first person referent acting on a third person referent. In (5.36b) the two tokens of /qupu/ refer to the same referent, and so it is an indirect quote. Example (5.36c) is ambiguous out of context, as the pronoun /the:/ must refer to someone other than the referent of /qupu/, and so it could be either a direct or indirect quote.

If there is a more specific verb of asking or replying, then this verb may precede the quoted speech, though the verb /jə/ ‘to say’ still follows the quote, as in the two tokens of this structure in the following section of the story “An Orphan” involving ‘ask’ and ‘answer’:

- (5.37) *χsutsqha-le:-wu tə-ke^l-kui, “ha! ?ũ*
 stomach-DEF:CL-AGT DIR-ask-INF:HS EXCL 2sg
ŋi-χua-ŋi kə-zei-n-a” jə-kui, “ŋiχuanŋi
 WH-because-ADV DIR-cry-2sg-Q say-INF:HS why
kə-zei-n-a” jə-kui -tu, kapətʂ-tou
 DIR-cry-2sg-Q say-INF:HS-LNK orphan-DEF:one:CL
he-zgue-kəi, “qa-ŋuəŋi ep lə
 DIR-answer-INF:HS 1sg-TOP father also
me-zə-i əw lə me-zə-i,
 NEG-exist-CSM mother also NEG-exist-CSM
gəs-ŋi fi-a-xtʂəp-ŋiaufu ʂkup-le: qa
 night-ADV DIR-dark-LNK(as.soon.as) orangutan-DEF:CL 1sg
dzə-la:” jə-kəpə-ʂə, . . . (T3:56-62)
 eat-come:PRS say-HABIT-LNK
 ‘The stomach asked him, “Why are you crying?”, he said, “Why
 are you crying?” The orphan answered, “I have neither father
 nor mother. As soon as it gets dark, the orangutan is going to
 come eat me.”’

Aside from these verbs which normally take non-nominalized complements, the copula can also take a non-nominalized complement.

This has an emphatic sense, somewhat similar to a cleft construction, as in (5.38).

- (5.38) *panə-tse: qa-wu zə-p-ji ŋuə.*
 thing-this:CL 1sg-AGT DIR-buy-CSM COP
 ‘This thing was bought by me.’

This form is often used for achieving the affect of clefting for highlighting adverbials:

- (5.39) *the: hama-ŋi kue-ŋy ŋuə.*
 3sg secretly-ADV transport-ASP COP
 ‘S/he was transported *secretly*.’

This construction differs from another construction with almost the same structure, but with a nominalized complement clause, used for making strong assertions. This is in fact pragmatically also like a cleft, in that a particular noun phrase is the focus constituent.

- (5.40) *the:-(ŋuəŋi) tɕile topu-s ŋuə.*
 3sg-TOP 1pl like-NOM COP
 ‘The ones s/he likes are us.’ (‘We are the ones s/he likes.’)

The position of the focused element is variable: the focus noun phrase can precede or follow the nominalized verb. Compare the following two examples:

- (5.41) a. *tɕile-(ŋuəŋi) pə-s pies ŋuə.*
 1pl-TOP buy-NOM meat COP
 ‘What we need (to buy) is meat.’
- b. *tɕile-(ŋuəŋi) pies pə-s ŋuə.*
 1p-TOP meat buy-NOM COP
 ‘What we need (to buy) is meat.’

A variant of this construction has something of an epistemic sense. As we saw in the discussion of evidentials in §4.3.7, to make a strong statement of certainty, or of information that was not recently

discovered, but known for some time, then a complement clause nominalized by /-s/ is used, as in (5.42).

- (5.42) *pəs* *zmu* *tsu-s* *ŋuə*.
 today meeting hold-NOM COP
 ‘There is a meeting today.’ (set beforehand)

Another use of this structure is expressing the optative mood (§4.3.6.1). In this structure the complement is nominalized by /-s/ and the copula takes the particle /-ŋi/ in the positive or /-tci/ in the negative (both particles normally mark adverbial phrases). No aspect or person contrasts are marked in clauses with /ma-ŋuə-tci/ or /ŋuə-ŋi/.

- (5.43) a. *təp-ŋi* *me:^l* *ce-s* *ma-ŋuə-tci*.
 tomorrow-ADV rain fall-NOM NEG-COP-PART
 ‘I hope it won’t rain tomorrow.’
- b. *the:* *tʂhetsə-le:* *fiə-χə-s* *ŋuə-ŋi*.
 3sg car-DEF:CL DIR-bad/broken-NOM COP-ADV
 ‘I hope his/her car has broken down.’

This same structure, but with the copula followed optionally by /sə/ in the first person, /san/ in the second person, or [ŋuə ~ wə] in the third person, is used to express obligation to perform an action (debitive; see §4.3.6.3 for more examples).

- (5.44) *the:* *təu-la* *lu-s* *ŋuə-ŋuə*.
 3sg home-LOC come-NOM COP-3sgU
 ‘S/he must come home!’

We saw in §4.3.7 that there is a copula construction with a nominalized complement, or in some cases a complement that is a relative clause with [la-hən ~ la-hən] (definite marker + ‘kind’), [ka-hən ~ ka-hən] (indefinite marker + ‘kind’), or /tan/ (‘appearance’) as the head noun, used to express contingent situations, as in (5.45) and (5.46).

- (5.45) *the:* *tha-zɪ-m-tan* *ŋuə*.
 3sg there-exist-NOM-appearance COP
 ‘S/he might be there.’

- (5.46) *me:ʰ ci-m-la-hən ɲuə.*
 rain fall-NOM-DEF:one-kind COP
 ‘It might rain.’

This then brings us to what might be considered a pseudo-cleft construction, where the sort of relative clause plus noun construction discussed above is used as a complement of a copula clause. The topic marker can optionally be used after this complement, as it is the topic of the construction, while the noun phrase in immediate preverbal (focus) position identifies the referent represented by the head of the relative clause, as in (5.47)-(5.49).

- (5.47) *qa-zə-pə-tə-panə tse: ɲuə.*
 1sg-DIR-buy-GEN-thing this:CL COP
 ‘The thing that I bought is this’

- (5.48) *panə-tse:-zə-pə-m qa-(wu) ɲua.*
 thing-this:CL-DIR-buy-NOM 1sg-AGT COP:1sg
 ‘I am the one who bought this thing.’

- (5.49) *keʰlə-m lə ɲi: ɲuə-kəi,*
 ask-NOM also 3sgREFL COP-INF:HS
he-zgue-m lə ɲi: ɲuə-kəi,
 DIR-answer-NOM also 3sgREFL COP-INF:HS
 ‘The one who asked was himself, the one who answered was himself.’

Another verb that takes nominalized complements is the existential verb /xu/, discussed in Section 4.2.4. Here is another example of its use:

- (5.50) *tsə-s a-z-ɲuəɲi ci-la: atəz-ɲi*
 this-COMP one-CL-TOP small-DEF:CL fast-ADV
u-zmu ɲa⁹⁹ u-tcu-s-le: ə-mə-s
 DIR-dream COM DIR-see-NOM-DEF:CL DIR-hear-NOM
xu-tu, . . .
 exist-LNK
 ‘If you can dream of it a little faster, see or hear it, . . .’

Section 5.5 discusses other uses of nominalized clauses, but first we will discuss coordination and disjunction.

5.4. Coordination and disjunction

In coordinating nouns in Qiang, the following structures are possible, where X, Y, and Z are three different nouns, and /*ŋa*/ is the comitative/conjunction marker discussed in §3.2.13: XY, X-*ŋa*-Y, XY-*ŋa*, XYZ, X-*ŋa*-YZ, X-*ŋa*-Y-*ŋa*-Z, XY-*ŋa*-Z, XYZ-*ŋa*. Example (5.51) is of the X-*ŋa*-Y-*ŋa*-Z type, and (5.52) and (5.53), with only two nouns, are of the X-*ŋa*-Y type:

(5.51) *qa-ŋa-ʔũ-ŋa-the*:
1sg-COM-2sg-COM-3sg
'I and you and s/he'

(5.52) *utʂuqu ʔzə-pi-ŋa-ctci-təo*
all.together four-CL-COM-seven-CL(1/10 of a dollar)
'All together four dollars and seventy cents.'

(5.53) *qa qəpatʂ-ŋa-ʂuə wu fiə-χuəla*.
1sg head-COM-teeth all DIR-wash
'I washed my hair and (brushed) my teeth, too.'

See the discussion in Section 3.2.13 on the differences in meaning between the X-*ŋa*-Y and XY-*ŋa* types.

It is also possible to coordinate adverbial nouns, either with the conjunction marker (e.g. [pəs-*ŋa*-təp-*ŋi*] 'today and tomorrow') or without it (e.g. [pəs-təp-*ŋi*] 'today and tomorrow'). Nominalized verbs can also be coordinated:

(5.54) *təhə-s-ŋa-dzə-s-ŋa-guə-s*
drink-NOM-and-eat-NOM-and-wear-NOM
'drink, food, and clothing'

In this case it would also be possible to just use a pause between the items instead of using the conjunction marker.

To express an ‘either-or’ (disjunction) relation, the expression /*ɲuaŋi*/ ‘or’ (distinct from the topic marker) is used, as in (5.59), below,¹⁰¹ or, if it is a question, then the polarity verb-not-verb interrogative construction can be used, either with /*ɲuaŋi*/, as in (5.60), or without it, as in (5.61) and (5.62) (see also Section 4.3.5.3 on verb-not-verb interrogatives). In a two-clause structure, such as in (5.60), the particle either appears in its own intonation unit or in the intonation unit of the second clause.

(5.59) *ʔũ ɲuaŋi the: e-ze spəχs-(ta) sə-kə-i.*
 2sg or 3sg one-CL Chibusu-LOC DIR-go-2pl
 ‘You or she (one of you) go to Chibusu (district).’

(5.60) *ʔũ qhəʔ tcha:-n-a, ɲuaŋi cpies tcha:-n-a?*
 2sg rice eat:PRS-2sg-Q or noodles eat:PRS-2sg-Q
 ‘Will you eat rice or noodles?’

(5.61) *ɲiq-ke: ɲuə-ɲua, cupu-ke: ɲuə-ɲua?*
 black-INDEF:CL COP-Q red-INDEF:CL COP-Q
 ‘Is it a red one or a black one?’

(5.62) *ʔũ dza:-tcikʏ ka:-n-a, dza:-khui ka:-n-a?*
 2sg lunch-before go:PRS-2sg-Q lunch-after go:PRS-2sg-Q
 ‘Are you going in the morning or the afternoon?’

5.5. Other complex structures

Aside from the embedding of complements discussed above, clauses, either nominalized or not, also appear in non-embedded hypotactic structures. In some cases there is no obvious nominalization by /-s/, /-m/ or /-tɕ/, but the clause takes one of the postpositions used for marking the relationship between a verb and its arguments (aside from the genitive; use of semantic role-marking postpositions for marking clause relations is a common strategy in Tibeto-Burman; see Genetti 1986, 1991). For example, the use of the ablative/instrumental marker /-wu/ after a clause marks a cause-effect relation with the following clause.

(5.63) *the:-dzoqu-le: da-g-wu, pitc sei ma-l-jy.* (< dzə)
 3sg-foot-DEF:CL DIR-break-INST now walk NEG-able-ASP
 ‘Because his foot is broken he cannot walk now.’

(5.64) *o-zu-wu dzoqu-pa tə-γzə-ξa.*¹⁰²
 DIR-sit-INST foot-palm DIR-numb-1sgU
 ‘Because of sitting, my feet were numb.’

(5.65) *fi-a-n-wu qəpatʂ fi-o-su-zə-ξa.*
 DIR-sleep-INST head DIR-dizzy-CAUS-1sgU
 ‘I felt dizzy from sleeping.’

A cause-effect relation can also be marked by adding the manner adverbial marker /ŋi/ to the first clause:

(5.66) *the: dziq fi-a-qə-ŋi die-ξe.*
 3sg cliff DIR-go-ADV DIR-die
 ‘S/he died (from) falling off the cliff.’

To mark the purpose of an action, the postposition /χua-(ŋi)/ (discussed in §3.2.10 as a benefactive postposition), can be used, either after a noun, a clause, or a nominalized clause:

(5.67) *the: stuaha tchə-(s ŋuə)-χua-ŋi, (qupu) dzigu*
 3sg food/rice eat-NOM COP-because-ADV 3sg money
meʹz.
 look.for(earn)
 ‘In order to live, s/he seeks to earn more money.’

(5.68) *the: dzigu-χua-ŋi ha-qə-ŋi koŋtsuo-pə-k.*
 3sg money-because-ADV DIR-go-ADV work-do-go
 ‘For the sake of money, s/he goes out to (go to) work.’

(5.69) *za lu-z-χua-ŋi, zə-ka the: jimi se.*
 crops come-CAUS-because-ADV field-LOC 3sg fertilizer spread
 ‘S/he spreads fertilizer in the field in order to make the crops grow well.’

The cause of an action or situation can also be marked by /χua-ŋi/:

- (5.70) *the: zə-mə-la-χua-ŋi, qaqaŋi ka:.* (< kə)
 3sg DIR-NEG-come-because-ADV 1sgREFL go:PRS:1sg
 ‘Because s/he hasn’t come, I’m going to go myself.’

The particle /-le/ can be used instead used instead of /χua-ŋi/ or /-sə/ to mark a condition or cause:

- (5.71) ... *quaha-χupi lə u-mu-təu-le, tēile qəti*
 face-appearance also DIR-NEG-see-because 1pl kill
fiə-me-se. (T6:271-272)
 DIR-NEG-allow
 ‘Because we haven’t even seen (her) face, you can’t kill us.’

Many hypotactic clauses are nominalized using /-s/ or /-tə/. For example, if the action expressed by the second clause is said to precede the action expressed by the first clause, then the structure /ma-təi-Verb/ (NEG-CON-Verb) ‘had not yet Verb; before Verb’ is used in the first clause and it is nominalized by /-tə/.

- (5.72) *nəs, qa ma-təi-kə-tə, the: qa səimi de-l.*
 yesterday 1sg NEG-CON-go-GEN 3sg 1sg fruit DIR-give
 ‘Yesterday before I left, s/he gave me (a package of) fruit.’

- (5.73) *təp-ŋi fiə-mə-təi-xtsəpə-tə,*
 tomorrow-ADV DIR-NEG-CON-black-GEN
?ũ tsa i-pə-lə-n-pa.
 2sg here DIR-arrive-come-2sg-DTV
 ‘Come here tomorrow before it gets dark.’

- (5.74) *qa stuaha ma-təi-tchə-tə, jəpə χuəla.*
 1sg rice/food NEG-CON-eat-GEN hand wash
 ‘Before I eat, I wash my hands.’

The initial clause may instead be nominalized by /-s/ and followed by /qe:ʔ/ ‘before’, i.e. the structure becomes that of a noun complement clause.

i-pə-l-ən-pa.

DIR-arrive-come-2sg-DTV

‘Come here tomorrow after dark.’

- (5.79) *qa tu-ju-ŋike, ctces sə-tə-ŋi,*
 1sg DIR-get.up-after breakfast DIR-eat-ADV
ʂanpan-pə-k ha-qa.
 work-do-go DIR-go:1sg
 ‘After I get up and eat breakfast, I go out to go to work.’

- (5.80) *the: qa u-təu-ŋike, de-xtse.*
 3sg 1sg DIR-see-after DIR-go.away
 ‘After s/he saw me, s/he went away.’

- (5.81) *the: pie ctə da-s-ŋike, wə dzudzy.*
 3sg pig feed DIR-finish-after horse feed
 ‘S/he finished feeding the pig and then went to feed the horse.’

- (5.82) *tə-χquats ŋiantci, məq-ta tuŋtuŋ zo:pua-la*
 DIR-steal after above-LOC cave cave-LOC
 ... *fa-zdzy-ŋi i-ci-kui.* (T5:73-76)
 DIR-tether-ADV DIR-put-INF:HS
 ‘After stealing (the yaks) he tethered them in a cave.’

To make explicit the idea that an action immediately followed another, the particle /ŋiaufu/ is used instead of /ŋike/ or /ŋiantci/:

- (5.83) *ə-qa-ŋiaufu kapəts-tou nəʂ-ta:-ba*
 DIR-go-LNK(as.soon.as) orphan-DEF:one:CL bed-DEF:CL-LOC
mo-tha-jə-kui. (T3:126-127)
 grope-AUX-REP-INF:HS
 ‘As soon as (the orangutan) went in, he groped again for the orphan in the bed.’

To express the conditional (‘if’), then the particle /tu/ or /ta/ is added to the end of the first clause. No difference has been found in the degree of hypotheticality in conditional clauses.¹⁰³

(5.84) *me:*^t *me-ci-tu,* *tcile* *kə-ji* *me-tchi.*
 rain NEG-fall-if 1pl go-EXC NEG-want
 ‘If it doesn’t rain, we can go.’

(5.85) *the:* *mo-lu-tu,* *qaqəi* *ka:.* (*< kə*)
 3sg NEG-come-if 1sgREFL go:PRS:1sg
 ‘If s/he doesn’t come, I’m going to go myself.’

(5.86) *the:* *ma-k-tu,* *qa* *kə-s* *pa:-ji.* (*< pe*)
 3sg NEG-go-if 1sg go-NOM become:PRS:1sg-PART
 ‘If s/he doesn’t go, then I have to go.’

In (5.86) the particle /-ji/ expresses a lack of willingness to go, that is, that the speaker is going only because he or she has to.

The form /tu/ is also often used with a negative copula to express the meaning ‘only if’. In these cases the main verb appears as an adverbial element marked by /*ŋi*/.

(5.87) *?ile* *dzə-i-ŋi* *ma-ŋyə-tu,* (*nai*) *dzə-m* *me-z*i*.*
 2pl eat-2pl-ADV NEG-COP-LNK other eat-NOM NEG-exist
 ‘Only if you eat will other people eat’
 (lit.: If you(pl) don’t eat, then there is no one (else) who will eat.)

(5.88) *the:* *lu-ŋi* *ma-ŋyə-tu,* *qa* *ma-ka.* (*< kə*)
 3sg come-ADV NEG-COP-LNK 1sg NEG-go:1sg
 ‘Only if s/he comes, will I go.’ / ‘I won’t go unless she comes.’

(5.89) *zdzyta:* *kə-ŋi* *ma-ŋyə-tu,* *pə-s* *ma-şə.*
 Chengdu:LOC go-ADV NEG-COP-LNK buy-NOM NEG-exist
 ‘You cannot buy it unless you go to Chengdu.’ / ‘Only if you go to Chengdu can you buy it.’

There are also two examples in the Texts where the particles /-wu/ and /-ka/ (which are used after noun phrases as postpositions) are used with the sense of a conditional. In the case of /-wu/, this use occurs only after nominalized verb complexes, as in (5.90a) and (5.90b), both from the story “Uncle Snake”.

- (5.90) a. “*?ũ tsi-la-han qa e:*
 2sg daughter-DEF:one-kind 1sg one:CL
de-mə-l-s-te:-wu, qa-wu ?ũ japə-le:
 DIR-NEG-give-NOM-DEF:CL-if 1sg-AGT 2sg hand-DEF:CL
da-g-zə-wa” (T4:3-4)
 DIR-broken-CAUS:1sg-EMPH
 ‘(Uncle Snake said,) “If you don’t give one of your daughters to me, I will chop off your hand”’
- b. “*tə-mə-χsa-n-ka, qa phusuluq-te:*
 DIR-NEG-understand-2sg-if 1sg clothing-DEF:CL
fiə-ge-n-ba, . . .” (T4:51)
 DIR-hold-2sg-DTV
 ‘(The old mother-in-law said,) “If you didn’t understand, hold on to my clothes, . . .”’

To express a concessive (‘although X, Y’), the phrase /*ha-ŋuə-lu*/ (DIR-COP-‘come’) is added to the end of the first clause:

- (5.91) a. *qa quaha fiə-χuəla-haŋuəlu, χo:ts fiə-me-qhua.*
 1sg face DIR-wash-although beard DIR-NEG-shave:1sg
 ‘Although I washed my face, I didn’t shave.’
- b. *fə-tsa-qəi ba-haŋuəlu, ə-lə tca-na-wa.*
 clothes-this:one-CL old-although DIR-look CON-good-very
 ‘Although this piece of clothing is old, it still looks very good.’

In terms of cross-clause coreference, there do not seem to be either accusative or ergative syntactic restrictions on control of the zero anaphor of the second clause. Compare the following two examples:

- (5.92) a. *khuə-le: fiə-qə-ŋike mi-the:-(wu)*
 dog-DEF:CL DIR-go-after person-that:CL-AGT
u-tcu-wu.
 DIR-see-3U
 ‘When the dog went down, that person saw (it).’

- b. *mi-the: fi-a-qə-ŋike khuə-le: u-tcu.*
 person-that:CL DIR-go-after dog-DEF:CL DIR-see
 ‘When that person went down, (s/he) saw the dog.’

In the first example, the noun phrase representing the single direct argument of the first clause is coreferential with the zero pronoun representing the undergoer of the second clause. This would not be possible in a language with an accusative syntactic pivot for this construction unless the second verb was passivized. In the second example, the noun phrase representing the single direct argument of the first clause is coreferential with the zero pronoun representing the actor of the second clause. This would not be possible in a language with an ergative syntactic pivot for this construction unless the second verb was anti-passivized. (See LaPolla 1993, Van Valin & LaPolla 1997, Ch. 6 for the concepts used here and for evidence of a parallel situation in Chinese.)

5.6. The structure of narratives

In the stories recorded there is a clear pattern found where certain particles, such as /-tɕu/ and /-stun/ regularly appear at the end of a segment of text, and then a marker of summary, result, or change of scene, such as /tu/ starts a new segment, as in the following, from the story “An Orphan”, where two vertical bars mark the new segment:

- (5.93) “*ha qu me-tchi-wa, maha-ŋi-ŋuəŋi qa*
 EXCL afraid NEG-want-DTV night-ADV-TOP 1sg
 ?*ũ gul zu-lu-a:-wa,*”
 2sg companion DIR-come-1sg:PRS-EMPH
 jə-kui-tcu.
 say-INF:HS-PART
 || *tu hala fie-zei, fie-zei-ŋi da-qə-kəi,*
 RESULT INT DIR-cry DIR-cry-ADV DIR-go-INF:HS

da-qə-kəi-tu. (T3:16-19)
 DIR-go-INF:HS-LNK
 ‘‘Ha, don’t be afraid, at night I will come be your companion’’,
 (he) said. || Then/after/that (the boy) went on his way,
 crying, crying.’

The particle /tu/ or /fiɑ-tu/ is very frequent in the texts other than in this construction as well, marking a sort of transition. It is glossed as RESULT because the action described in the clause that follows it is often the result of the action or situation described in the clause that precedes it (and it was translated as ‘result’ in Chinese), but it can mark other types of transition as well. For example, in the following text segment, from ‘‘The Orphan’’, it is marking a transition similar to a change of paragraph:

- (5.94) *kapəts tu-ŋuəŋi fiɑ-tsəi*
 orphan DEF:one:CL-TOP INT-this.manner
mo-qu-ke: zi-kəi.
 NEG-afraid-INDEF:CL exist-NAR
 || **tu** *the-maha-ŋuəŋi tciu səsə:’wu ŋiantci*
 RESULT that-night-TOP †(then) exist:REDUP:all together
ganphai-tu-pŭ-kəi-stu. (T3:99-102)
 arrange-DIR-do-NAR-PART
 ‘In this way the orphan was not afraid (lit.: ‘There was the orphan who was not afraid’). That night they all got together and arranged what to do.’

Another pattern, the ‘‘tail-head’’ construction commonly found in Tibeto-Burman languages, is for a verb to end a segment, either with the evidential marking or with the evidential marking followed by one of the segment-final particles mentioned above, and then be repeated at the beginning of the next segment, followed by the linker /-tu/ (not the same function as the independent segment-initial particle /tu/), as in (5.94), from the story ‘‘Uncle Snake’’.

- (5.95) ‘‘... *qa the: sətsim ha-ŋuə-la,*’’
 1sg 3sg wife DIR-COP-INDTV:1sg

jə-kui-tcu.

say-INF:HS-PART

- || *fi-a-kə jə-kəi-tu, fi-la qhal*
 INT-thus say-INF:HS-LNK INT momo(a.kind.of.bread)
a-guə u-lu-kui, . . . (T4:8-11)
 one-basketful DIR-give.as.gift-INF:HS
 “‘I will become his wife’”, she said. || Having said that, she
 was given a basketful of momo, and . . .’

We also find markers of discourse deixis in the Texts, using the demonstrative pronouns, as in the following two segments:

- (5.96) *tʃi pe-tu ctəp le-ŋi*
 male/son become-LNK seven-year exist-ADV
ləyz a:-su-wa. the-wu hatʃi-p
 book DIR:INDTV-study-DTV that-ABL eleven-year
le-ŋi qa ta:-me'z-wa. (T6:241-243)
 exist-ADV 1sg DIR:INDTV-see-DVT
 ‘If it is a son, send him to school when he is seven years old.
 After that, when he is eleven, have him come look for me.’

- (5.97) *tə-χsa ma-γzə-kəi-ʂə, fi-la tce-zei-kəi-stū.*
 DIR-understand NEG-able-NAR-LNK there CON-cry-NAR-PART
fi-a-tu, tsu-ŋuəŋi, pie-le: ha-lə-jə-kui-stū. (T4:36-8)
 INT-RESULT here-TOP pig-DEF:CL DIR-come-REP-NAR-PART
 ‘(She) was not able to understand, and so continued to cry.
 Therefore, here (= at this point in the story) the pig came out.’

In (5.96) the distal demonstrative pronoun is used without a classifier, the only time this can be done, and is followed by the ablative marker, marking a temporal relation between two parts of the story, where the demonstrative is referring to the previous action, parallel to English *after that*. In (5.97) the locative proximal deictic pronoun is used to mark a point in the story, much like the use of English *here*, as in *Here I would like to mention ...*

Much more work needs to be done on discourse structure and other aspects of the grammar; these few comments are only a first step.

Texts

Text 1
The Creation of the World

zəp-le: ɲi-ke: pe-ji
earth-DEF:CL WH-INDEF:CL become-CSM

- 1 qe^hlotʂu-ɛɑ, mutu-la mujuqũ z₂guə-zi we-i,
 in.the.past-LOC heaven-LOC sun nine-CL exist-HS
- 2 zəp-le: ə-tchəqha-z-əi. mə ɲɑ ɣlu
 earth-DEF:CL DIR-burn-CAUS-HS older.brother COM younger.sister
- 3 jə-tʂ-ɲuən_i, zuamə-φu o-z₂gu-ta i-pi-χua-ɲi,
 two-CL-TOP cypress-tree one-CL-LOC DIR-hide-because-ADV
- 4 fiə-mu-xtəu-wei. steke-ta mi pe^hzə-s
 DIR-NEG-burn-HS later-LOC people raise(child)-NOM
- 5 ɲuə-χua-ɲi, mə ɲɑ ɣlu lə-zi
 COP-because-ADV older.brother COM younger.sister DEF-CL
- 6 i-dz_i-təi, ɲutəuku dzuaɤl e-xʂe fiəi-bi-ɲi,
 DIR-discuss-3pl each stone.mill one-CL DIR-carry.on.back-ADV
- 7 ɤu-q-ta-wu fiə-ɣlu, dzuaɤl jə-xʂe
 mountain-head-LOC-ABL DIR-roll stone.mill two-CL
- 8 e-tʂetup-tu, ɲizzi oqpi pə-s, dzuaɤl
 DIR-bump.into-LNK 3dl one:family do-NOM stone.mill
- 9 jə-xʂe fiə-ɣlu-s-ta, qhuat
 two-CL DIR-roll-NOM-LOC as.it.happens
- 10 e-tʂetup-wei, fiə-tsəi-ɲike, mə ɲɑ
 DIR-bump.into-HS INT-this.manner-after older.brother COM
- 11 ɣlu lə-zi oqpi fiə-pə-i.
 younger.sister DEF-CL one:family DIR-do-HS
- 12 ə-jə-p pe-ɲi, ɣlu-le: mi qes
 one-two-year become-ADV younger.sister-DEF:CL people form

- 13 ma-ŋyɔ̌ ke: i-ci. mə-le: tə-khueq,
 NEG-COP INDEF:CL DIR-release older.brother-DEF:CL DIR-angry
- 14 duaɣl-le:-wu sə-xte-ŋi tətɛi-la da-ɰũ.
 scythe-DEF:CL-INST DIR-chop-LNK everywhere-LOC DIR-throw(away)
- 15 steke la-s-ka, tətɛi-la-wu mufũ tə-la-ji,
 later DEF:one-day-LOC everywhere-LOC-ABL smoke DIR-come-CSM
- 16 fiɑ-tsəi-ŋike, mi lu-ji.
 INT-this.manner-after people come-CSM

Narrator: Huang Chenglong 黃成龍
 Born 1968
 Recorded 1994

The Creation of the World

Long, long ago, there were nine suns in the heaven which burned the earth. Because a brother and younger sister hid in a great cypress (that honored the gods), they were not burned to death. Later, in order to propagate descendants, the brother and sister talked it over and decided that each would carry a stone mill on his or her back and roll it down from the mountain peak. If the two stone mills joined together, the two could get married. As it happened, when the two stone mills rolled down (to the river bank) they joined together, and so the brother and sister married. After a few years, the younger sister gave birth to a monster not of human form. The older brother was so angry he used a curved knife/scythe to chop it into pieces and scattered them wildly everywhere. The next day when they got up, they saw the smoke of cooking fires everywhere. And henceforth there was humankind.

- 14 tə-na-wei, gue:¹-ta kə ʁza-ka zəm fi-a-tshuə-ŋi,
DIR-good-HS road-LOC go time-LOC song DIR-sing-ADV
- 15 zəm tu-χsu-ŋi lu-ji.
song DIR-jump/dance-LNK come-CSM
- 16 thizzi-ŋuəŋi qe:¹-ta apə mupitha thizzi oqpi
3dl-TOP before-LOC god Mupitha 3dl one:family
- 17 pə-z mo-ku-χua-ŋi, ha-l-ŋi mutu-la
do-CAUS NEG-willing-because-ADV DIR-look-ADV heaven-LOC
- 18 tə-lə-ŋi tse-i, thəpakta, ŋile-steke
DIR-look-LNK see-HS as.a.result 3plREFL-behind
- 19 a-stu-χan phuxsu doqu-z-ək
one-thousand-kind wild.animals frighten-CAUS-INF
- 20 tətəi-la du-fu-wei,
everywhere-LOC DIR-flee-HS
- 21 fi-a-tsəi-ŋi, pite phu-ka zi-m
INT-this.manner-ADV now forest-LOC exist-NOM
- 22 phuxsu pe-wei. themle zəpəq-ta i-pə-l-ŋike,
wild.animals become-HS 3pl earth-LOC DIR-arrive-come-after
- 23 e-tsequa de-tshe-ŋi lu-zu-la-ha ʁopu
DIR-remember DIR-wrong-ADV China.fir-seed-DEF:one-pl mountain
- 24 ti-wi-s-ta de-se-ku, tshəma we-tç
DIR-high-NOM-LOC DIR-sow-NAR thorn exist-GEN
- 25 səf-zu-la-ha-ŋuəŋi ʁopu fi-e-gi-s-ta
tree-seed-DEF:one-pl-TOP mountain DIR-short-NOM-LOC
- 26 de-se-ku, fi-a-tsəi ŋuə-χua-ŋi,
DIR-sow-NAR INT-this.manner COP-because-ADV
- 27 fi-e-gi-s-ta-ŋuəŋi tshəma tə-ç-jy ŋuə.
DIR-short-NOM-LOC-TOP thorn DIR-grow-ASP COP

28	thizzi 3dl	zɑ-kə earth-LOC	bəl-dzə-wa-χua-ŋi, do-able-very-because-ADV	lu China.fir		
29	te-x-ŋi ¹⁰⁴ DIR-cut-ADV	tɕiɕua house	tə-ɦi, DIR-build	tshəma thorn	ɦa-xte-ŋi DIR-cut.down-ADV	
30	zə land	tə-zge, DIR-open	zɕmə humankind	tɕhe-tɕ want-GEN	zɕuə grain	i-ɦi-ji. DIR-plant-CSM

Narrator: Huang Chenglong 黃成龍
Born 1968
Recorded 1994

The Legend of the Origin of All Things Mutsit̚su and Tugant̚su

(The goddess) Mutsit̚su and (the mortal man) Tugant̚su wanted to come down to the earth. The god Mupitha said to them, “If you want to go down to the earth, then go.” Just before Mutsit̚su and Tugant̚su left, Mupitha gave them three bushels of China fir seeds and instructed them to plant them on low mountains. He also gave them three bushels of seeds for thorned bushes, and instructed them to plant them on high mountains. He also gave them a hundred kinds of livestock, which they drove before them, and a thousand kinds of birds and beasts, which followed behind them. When they parted, Mupitha said to them, “When you are on the road, do not look back at heaven.”

Mutsit̚su and Tugant̚su were extremely happy. The whole way they sang and danced as they walked. Because the god Mupitha had opposed them becoming one family before, they deliberately looked back at heaven, and the result was that they frightened the thousand kinds of birds and beasts following them, causing them to flee everywhere. In this way these animals became the wild animals now dwelling in the forests. After Mutsit̚su and Tugant̚su arrived on the earth, they misremembered (what Mupitha had told them to do) and sowed the China fir seeds on high mountains and the thorny bushes on low mountains. As a result, the low areas grew full of brambles and thorns. (However,) because they were very able, they cut down the China firs and built houses, and they hacked through the brambles and thorns, opening up wilderness land, and planted the grain needed by humankind.

Text 3
An Orphan
kapətʂ kou
 orphan INDEF:one:CL

- 1 qe:¹-qe:¹-tu fiəla kapətʂ kou ŋuə-kəi-təu,
 before-before-LNK INT orphan INDEF:one:CL COP-NAR-PART
- 2 ep lə me-z̥i ew lə me-z̥i ke:
 father also NEG-exist mother also NEG-exist INDEF:CL
- 3 ŋuə-kəi-təu, tu fiəla ʂkup-le:-ŋuəŋi
 COP-NAR-PART RESULT INT orangutan-DEF:CL-TOP
- 4 fiə-tsu kapətʂ tou dzə kantçi-kui-təu,
 INT-here orphan DEF:one:CL eat think/want-NAR-PART
- 5 kapətʂ lou dzə kantçi:-tu, fiəla, kapətʂ
 orphan DEF:one:CL eat think/want-LNK INT orphan
- 6 tou ɡəs-ta fiə-xtʂə-pa:-jə-tu
 DEF:one:CL night-LOC DIR-get.dark-become:PRS-REP-LNK
- 7 qu-kəpə-kəi-ʂ, təu-la kə ɛza-ka, ze
 fiə-afraid-HABIT-NAR-LNK home-LOC go when-LOC cry
- 8 fiə-zei-ŋi kə-kəpə-kəi-təu, tu fiəla da-qa
 DIR-cry-ADV go-HABIT-NAR-PART RESULT INT DIR-go
- 9 da-qa-tu ɡue:¹-ta fiə-qa,
 DIR-go-LNK road-LOC DIR-go
- 10 ɣa-le:-ŋa e-tʂepe-kəi-təu. ɣa-le:-wu
 needle-DEF:CL-COM DIR-encounter-NAR-PART needle-DEF:CL-AGT
- 11 tə-ke¹-l-kui-təu, “ha, ŋi:-pe-wa,¹⁰⁵ ŋi:-pe-wa,”
 DIR-ask-NAR-PART EXCL WH-become-Q WH-become-Q
- 12 jə-tu. fiə kapətʂ tou ha-sə-kəi-ʂə,
 say-LNK INT orphan DEF:one:CL DIR-make.sound-NAR-LNK
- 13 “hi! ʂkup-te:-wu maha qa dzə la:,”
 EXCL orangutan-DEF:CL-AGT night 1sg eat come:PRS

14	jə-ʂə, say-LNK	“qa 1sg	təu-la home-LOC	o-zũ-ŋi DIR-sit-ADV	qa 1sg	ou-stu one:CL-alone
15	je live/stay	qu-a-wa,” afraid-1sg-EMPH		jə-kui-təu. say-NAR-PART	tu RESULT	
16	χa-le:-ŋuəŋi, needle-DEF:CL-TOP	“ha EXCL	qu afraid	me-təhi-wa, NEG-want-DTV	maha-ŋi-ŋuəŋi night-ADV-TOP	
17	qa 1sg	ʔũ-gul 2sg-companion	zu-lu-a:-wa,” DIR-come-1sg:PRS-EMPH		jə-kui-təu. say-NAR-PART	
18		tu RESULT	fiala INT	fie-zei, DIR-cry	fie-zei-ŋi DIR-cry-ADV	da-qə-kəi, DIR-go-NAR
19	da-qə-kəi-tu, DIR-go-NAR-LNK	fiala INT	qusap-te:-ŋa scissors-DEF:CL-COM			
20	e-tʂepe-kəi-təu, DIR-encounter-NAR-PART			qusap-te:-wu scissors-DEF:CL-AGT		
21	“a EXCL	ʔũ 2sg	ŋiŋi-pe-wa? what-become-Q	ŋi-χua-ŋi WH-because-ADV	kə-zei-n-a?” thus-cry-2sg-Q	
22	jə-kui-təu. say-NAR-PART	fiala INT	“qa 1sg	təu-la home-LOC	ou-təi one:CL-EXC	
23	me-za-wa, NEG-exist:1sg-EMPH	ʂkup-te: orangutan-DEF:CL	qa 1sg	dza:,” eat:PRS		
24	jə-kəpə-ʂə, say-HABIT -LNK	“maha-ŋi night-ADV	fio-lu-kəpə-wa,” DIR-come-HABIT-EMPH			
25	jə-kui-təu. say-NAR-PART	“a: EXCL	ke:-jə INDEF:CL-EXC			
26	ma-ŋuə-ta NEG-COP-if	zə matter	me-w, NEG-exist	maha night	qa 1sg	ʔũ 2sg
27	gul companion	zu-lu-a:-wa,” DIR-come-1sg:PRS-EMPH	jə-kui-təu, say-NAR-PART	“ʔũ-gul 2sg-friend		
28	zu-lu-a:-wa,” DIR-come-1sg:PRS-EMPH		jə-kui-tu. say-NAR-LNK			

44	e-tʃepe-kəi-tɕu, DIR-encounter-NAR-PART		noʊu-le:-ŋa crow-DEF:CL-COM		
45	e-tʃepe-kəi-tu, DIR-encounter-NAR-LNK		“ha! ʔũ ɳi-χua-ɳi EXCL 2sg WH-because-ADV		
46	kə-zei-n-a?” thus-cry-2sg-Q	jə-kui. say-NAR	tu RESULT	χaiʃə ‡(still.is)	“qa fiata 1sg INT
47	ep lə me-zɪ father also NEG-exist		əw lə me-zɪ, mother also NEG-exist		
48	kapətʃ kou-jə orphan DEF:one:CL-EXC		ma-ɳua-ʃə, NEG-COP:1sg-LNK	tu RESULT	
49	fiata INT	gəs-ta-ɳuənɪ night-LOC-TOP			
50	je qu-a-wa, live/stay afraid-1sg-EMPH	ʃkup-le:-ɳuənɪ orangutan-DEF:CL-TOP	qa dza:-wa,” 1sg eat:PRS-EMPH		
51	jə-kui-tɕu. say-NAR-PART	“ha, ta ke: EXCL if INDEF:CL	ɳuə-ta, zə me-w, COP-if matter NEG-exist		
52	qa-ɳuənɪ maha 1sg-TOP night	zu-lũ-ɳi, DIR-come-ADV	ʔũ-gul 2sg-companion		
53	i-jə-la-wa,” DIR-live-INDTV:1sg-EMPH		jə-kui-tɕu. say-NAR-PART		
54	xsə new(again)	da-qa DIR-go	da-qə-jə-kəi, DIR-go-REP-NAR	fiata INT	
55	da-qə-kəi-tu, DIR-go-NAR-LNK	χsutsqha-le:-ŋa stomach-DEF:CL-COM	e-tʃepe-kəi, DIR-encounter-NAR		
56	χsutsqha-le:-ŋa stomach-DEF:CL-COM	e-tʃepe-kəi-tu, DIR-encounter-NAR-LNK	χsutsqha-le:-wu stomach-DEF:CL-AGT		
57	tə-ke-l-kui, DIR-ask-NAR	“ha! ʔũ ɳi-χua-ɳi EXCL 2sg WH-because-ADV	kə-zei-n-a?” thus-cry-2sg-Q		
58	jə-kui, say-NAR	“ɳi-χua-ɳi WH-because-ADV	kə-zei-n-a?” thus-cry-2sg-Q	jə-kui-tu. say-NAR-LNK	

- 59 kapətʂ tou he-z_gue-kəi, “qa-ŋuən_i
orphan DEF:one:CL DIR-answer-NAR 1sg-TOP
- 60 ep lə me-zə-i əw lə
father also NEG-exist-CSM mother also
- 61 me-zə-i, gəs-ŋ_i fi-a-xtʂəp-ŋ_iaufu
NEG-exist-CSM night-ADV DIR-get.dark-LNK(as.soon.as)
- 62 ʂkup-le: qa dzə-la:,” jə-kəpə-ʂə, “qa
orangutan-DEF:CL 1sg eat-come:PRS say-HABIT-LNK 1sg
- 63 qu-a-wa,” jə-kui. “ha! ke:-ji
afraid-1sg-EMPH say-NAR EXCL INDEF:CL-EXC
- 64 ma-ŋyə-ta, zə me-w-wa,
NEG-COP-if matter NEG-exist-EMPH
- 65 qa-ŋuən_i ?ũ-gul ha-ŋyə-la-wa,
1sg-TOP 2sg-companion DIR-COP-INDTV:1sg-EMPH
- 66 maha-ŋuən_i qa ?ũ-gul zu-lu-a:-wa,” jə-kui.
night-TOP 1sg 2sg-companion DIR-come-1sg:PRS-EMPH say-NAR
- 67 fi-a-tsa-tau ŋuə-tu, fi-la fie-zei fie-zei-ŋ_i
INT-this:one-time COP-LNK INT DIR-cry DIR-cry-ADV
- 68 da-qə-jə-kəi, da-qa da-qa-tu fi-la
DIR-go-REP-NAR DIR-go DIR-go-LNK INT
- 69 thəl-le:-ŋ_a e-tʂepe-kəi-stu,
stone.pestle-DEF:CL-COM DIR-encounter-NAR-PART
- 70 thəl-le:-ŋ_a e-tʂepe-kəi-tu,
stone.pestle-DEF:CL-COM DIR-encounter-NAR-LNK
- 71 “ha! ?ũ ŋ_i-χua-ŋ_i kə-zei-n-a?” jə-kui,
EXCL 2sg WH-because-ADV thus-cry-2sg-Q say-NAR
- 72 tə-ke^l-kui. “fi-a, qa-ŋuən_i ep lə me-zə-i
DIR-ask-NAR EXCL 1sg-TOP father also NEG-exist-CSM
- 73 əw lə me-zə-i, fi-a-xtʂəpa:
mother also NEG-exist-CSM DIR-get.dark:PRS

74	ququ, afraid	pəs today	lə also	fia-xtšəp-ja, DIR-get.dark-REP	škup-le:-ŋuəŋi orangutan-DEF:CL-TOP
75	maha night	qa 1sg	dzə-la:,” eat-come:PRS	jə-kəpə-wa, say-HABIT-EMPH	jə-kui. say-NAR
76	fia-tu-ŋuəŋi, INT-RESULT-TOP	“ke:-ji INDEF:CL-EXC	ma-ŋyɔ̌-ta, NEG-COP-if	zə matter	me-w, NEG-exist
77	qa-ŋuəŋi 1sg-TOP	ʔü-gul 2sg-companion	zu-lu-a:, DIR-come-1sg:PRS	maha-ŋi night-ADV	qa 1sg
78	ʔü-gul 2sg-companion	zu-lü-la-wa,” DIR-come-INDTV:1sg-EMPH		jə-kui-təu. say-NAR-PART	
79		fia INT	tsa-tau-tu-ŋuəŋi, this:one-time-LNK-TOP	kapətš orphan	tou-ŋuəŋi DEF:one:CL-TOP
80	fia-tsa-χsa'wu INT-this:one-few:all	gul companion		fie-se-kei-stu. DIR-make-NAR-PART	
81	gul companion		fie-se-kəi-tu, DIR-make(friends)-NAR-LNK		
82	maha night	pe-k-kui, become-go-NAR	tsa-χui-tu this:one-time-LNK	fia-xtšəp-ji DIR-get.dark-CSM	maha night
83	i-pə-l-kui, DIR-arrive-come-NAR		qusap scissors	lə also	i-pə-l-kui, DIR-arrive-come-NAR
84	ətɕəɕtɕaɕ magpie	tou DEF:one:CL	lə also	i-pə-l-kui, DIR-arrive-come-NAR	noʊu crow
85	lə also	i-pə-l-kui, DIR-arrive-come-NAR		fia INT	χsutsqha, stomach
86	thəl, stone.pestle	jankhui stone.mortar	şəşə:'wu exist:REDUP:all		i-pə-l-kui-təu. DIR-arrive-come-NAR-PART
87	tsa-χui-tu, this:one-time-LNK		zɕmə meeting	a-la one-CL	fio-tsu-kəi, DIR-hold-NAR
88	kapətš orphan	tou-ŋuəŋi DEF:one:CL-TOP	ətɕi:-kũ heart-inside	kən very	fia-nə-kui, DIR-good-NAR

- 89 “fiə, pəmaha-ŋuən̩i qɑ gul la-hɑ
EXCL tonight-TOP 1sg companion DEF:one-pl
- 90 i-pə-l-jy, pəmaha-ŋuən̩i ʂkup-te:
DIR-arrive-come-ASP tonight-TOP orangutan-DEF:CL
- 91 mo-qu-a-wɑ, fiɑ-kə
NEG-afraid-1sg-EMPH INT-thus
- 92 mo-qu-ja-wɑ ike z̩i-kəi.” tha-χsa
NEG-afraid-CSM:1sg-EMPH thus exist-NAR that:one-few
- 93 i-pə-l-ku-tu, “maha t̩o-qu-n-pɑ,
DIR-arrive-come-NAR-LNK night NEG.IMP-be.afraid-2sg-DTV
- 94 do-t̩u-qu-n-pɑ, t̩ile tsa-χsə¹wu
DIR-NEG.IMP-be.afraid-2sg-DTV 1pl this:one-few:all
- 95 gul-pɑ-ʂ, ʂkup-le: i-me-pə-l-ŋi
companion-do-LNK orangutan-DEF:CL DIR-NEG-arrive-come-ADV
- 96 mɑ-ŋuə-t̩i. i-pə-l-tu,
NEG-COP-EXC DIR-arrive-come-LNK
- 97 t̩ile pəmaha tse: qəta:-wa,” jə-kui-t̩u.
2pl tonight this:CL beat.to.death:PRS-EMPH say-NAR-PART
- 98 tu ʂkup-le: lə mo-qu-ke:
RESULT orangutan-DEF:CL also NEG-afraid-INDEF:CL
- 99 fiɑ-lə-kəi, kapətʂ tou-ŋuən̩i fiɑ-tsəi
DIR-come-NAR orphan DEF:one:CL-TOP INT-this.manner
- 100 mo-qu-ke: z̩i-kəi.
NEG-afraid-INDEF:CL exist-NAR
- 101 tu the-maha-ŋuən̩i t̩iu ʂʂse:¹wu ŋiant̩i
RESULT that-night-TOP †(then) exist:REDUP:all together
- 102 ɡɑnphai-tu-p̩-kəi-stu, χɑ-le:-ŋuən̩i t̩ɑ-lə
arrange-DIR-do-NAR-PART needle-DEF:CL-TOP where-LOC
- 103 je-s ŋuə, t̩ɑ-lə t̩ɑ-lə
live/stay-NOM COP where-LOC where-LOC

104	nə-s sleep-NOM	ηυə, COP	tɕa-lə where-LOC	tɕa-lə where-LOC
105	ηiɣi what	ηυə-s COP-NOM	ηυə, COP	fiɑ-tɕəi INT-this:manner
106	gənpʰai-tu-pũ-kəi-tɕu. arrange-DIR-do-NAR-PART		ɣa-le:-ηυəŋi needle-DEF:CL-TOP	fiɑɑ INT
107	dzy-le:-kɑ door-DEF:CL-LOC		ə-tɕə-ŋi DIR-stab-ADV	fiɑɑ INT
108	dzy-le:-kɑ door-DEF:CL-LOC	zi-kəi, exist-NAR	qusəp-tou-ηυəŋi scissors-DEF:one:CL-TOP	
109	fiɑɑ INT	kəpətɕ-tou-piəna-lɑ orphan-DEF:one:CL-beside-LOC	nəɕ-te:-piəna bed-DEF:CL-beside	
110	thɑ there	fiɑ-nə-kəi, DIR-sleep-NAR	ɕtɕiɕtɕɑq-tou-ηυəŋi magpie-DEF:one:CL-TOP	fiɑɑ INT
111	mə-law-zɑɣuɑ fire-DEF:one:pile-inside		fiɑ-nə-kui-tɕu, DIR-sleep-NAR-PART	
112	noβu-le:-ηυəŋi crow-DEF:CL-TOP	fiɑɑ INT	ɕuətɕhɑ water.jar	zɑɣuɑ inside
113	fiɑ INT	tɕəi-ηυəŋi, this.manner-TOP	ɣsutsqʰɑ-le:-ηυəŋi stomach-DEF:CL-TOP	fiɑ-nə-kui, DIR-sleep-NAR
114	buzd-te:-qəpətɕɑ: plank.stairs-DEF:CL-head:LOC		fiɑ-nə-kui-tɕu, DIR-sleep-NAR-PART	
115	jankhui-le:-ηυəŋi stone.mortar-DEF:CL-TOP		buzd-le:-ku-tɑ plank.stairs-DEF:CL-base-LOC	
116	fiɑ-nə-kui-tɕu, DIR-sleep-NAR-PART	fiɑ INT	thəl-le:-ηυəŋi stone.pestle-DEF:CL-TOP	
117	buzd-le:-qəpətɕɑ: plank.stairs-DEF:CL-head:LOC		i-jə-kui-tɕu. DIR-live/stay-NAR-PART	
118		hi, EXCL	fiɑ-xtɕəp DIR-get.dark	ɕkup-te: orangutan-DEF:CL
				zə-lɑ-jə-kui, DIR-come-REP-NAR

- 119 tsou tɛymi-lou-ta zə-la-kui-tu,
this:one:CL child-DEF:one:CL-DAT DIR-come-NAR-LNK
- 120 dzy-la:-ɤa qe¹ ʂpaʂpa
door-DEF:CL-LOC before like/as
- 121 dzy-le:-ta dzeke i-ɕtɕi-kəi-tɕu,
door-DEF:CL-LOC (onomatopoeia) DIR-push-NAR-PART
- 122 dzy-le: i-ɕtɕi, ɣa-la-ha tha zɿ-kui-ŋiəu,
door-DEF:CL DIR-push needle-DEF:one-pl there exist-NAR-PART
- 123 ɣa-la-ha jəpə-le:-ta ə-tʂə-ŋiəufu
needle-DEF:one-pl hand-DEF:CL-LOC DIR-stab-LNK(as.soon.as)
- 124 saq-phi-ke: ə-ʂə-kui-tɕu, tu ɣaiʂə
blood-flow-INDEF:CL DIR-put-NAR-PART RESULT †(still.is)
- 125 tɕəu-la ə-ɤə ɕtɕaɕ tɕə-lu-kui-ʂə,
home-LOC DIR-go heart CON-come-NAR-LNK
- 126 ə-qa-jə-kui, ə-qa-ŋiəufu
DIR-go-REP-NAR DIR-go-LNK(as.soon.as)
- 127 kəpətʂ-tou nəʂ-ta:-ɤa mo-tha-jə-kui,
orphan-DEF:one:CL bed-DEF:CL-LOC grope.for-AUX-REP-NAR
- 128 ɣaiʂə tɕə-lə nə me¹z-kəi, kəpətʂ tou
†(still.is) where-LOC sleep seek-NAR orphan DEF:one:CL
- 129 nəʂ-ta:-ɤa-ŋuəŋi, kəpətʂ-tou me¹z kantɕi
bed-DEF:CL-LOC-TOP orphan-DEF:one:CL seek think/want
- 130 qusəp-te:-wu jəpə-le:-xʂe tu-tua-kui, tha-ɣui
scissors-DEF:CL-AGT hand-DEF:CL-CL DIR-cut-NAR that:one-time
- 131 tu, ɣtʂəp-ke: ŋuə-kui-ŋiəu, qusəp-te:-wu
RESULT black-INDEF:CL COP-NAR-PART scissors-DEF:CL-AGT
- 132 jəpə-le: tu-tua, sa tuetue-ke:-tɕi da-qa-jantɕi,
hand-DEF:CL DIR-cut blood dripping-INDEF:CL-ADV DIR-go-after
- 133 mə-law qhə¹qhə¹-kəi, mə-law i-ʂue-ŋi
fire-DEF:one:pile open-NAR fire-DEF:one:pile DIR-set.fire-ADV

- 134 ɲiɣi-la-ha kə-zɿ, ɑ-ʂ tse kantçi-kəi,
 what-DEF:one-pl thus-exist one-time see think/want-NAR
- 135 mə-law da-qhe¹ kantçi me-pe-ɲiaufu,
 fire-DEF:one.pile DIR-open think/want NEG-correct-LNK(as.soon.as)
- 136 xsə ɕtɕictɕaɣ-la-ha
 new(again) magpie-DEF:one-pl
- 137 da-ʂp-jə-kui-stu, tʂhəqtʂhaqtʂhəqtʂhaq-la-ha
 DIR-explode-REP-NAR-PART (onomatopoeia)-DEF:one-pl
- 138 da-ʂp-ɲiaufu mi: da-qə-kui, mi:
 DIR-explode-LNK(as.soon.as) eyes DIR-go-NAR eyes
- 139 da-qə-kui, fiɑ tsa-χui-tu,
 DIR-go-NAR INT this:one-time-LNK
- 140 mi: da-qa, mi: da-qə-tu, ʂuətʂhua-la:-ɓɑ
 eyes DIR-go eyes DIR-go-LNK water.jar-DEF:CL-LOC
- 141 sə-l-ɲiantçi, tsə-lo-qu ɲuə-ɲiantçi, quaha-lo-qu
 DIR-see-after water-DEF:one-CL COP-after face-DEF:one-CL
- 142 χuəla kantçi-kəi-wa, quaha χuəla kantçi
 wash think/want-NAR-EMPH face wash think/want
- 143 ʂuətʂhua-la:-ɓɑ su-tʂhu, noʊu-le-tçi
 water.jar-DEF:CL-LOC DIR-reach.out crow-DEF-CL
- 144 tha zɿ-i-jə-kui-stu, noʊu-le-tçi-wu
 there exist-REP-NAR-PART crow-DEF-CL-AGT
- 145 tshuaq tshuaq da-sə-zɿ, miɑuɓdzue-la:-ɓɑ
 peck peck DIR-make.sound-CAUS eye-DEF:CL-LOC
- 146 i-tshuete-kui-stu. fiɑ-tsa-χui-tu, miɑuɓdzue
 DIR-peck-NAR-PART INT-this:one-time-LNK eye
- 147 lə me-le-jy, japə e-xʂe lə me-wě-jy.
 also NEG-exist-ASP hand one-CL also NEG-exist-ASP
- 148 fiɑla saq tuetue-ke:-tçi du-φu-ɲi
 INT blood dripping-INDEF:CL-ADV DIR-run.away-ADV

- 149 ha-ɛ kantçi-kəi, du-φu-ŋi buzd-qə-ta
DIR-go think/want-NAR DIR-run.away-ADV plank.stairs-head-LOC
- 150 ha-ɛ kantçi-kei-tu, sə-qa, sə-qa-ŋiaufu,
DIR-go think/want-NAR-LNK DIR-go DIR-go-LNK(as.soon.as)
- 151 χsutsqha-la:-ɛa fie-tʃhʉe, χsutsqha-la:-ɛa
stomach-DEF:CL-LOC DIR-step.on stomach-DEF:CL-LOC
- 152 fie-tʃhʉe, da-ta buzd-le:-ta dziq fia-qə-i-stu.
DIR-step.on DIR-slip plank.stairs-DEF:CL-LOC floor DIR-go-HS-PART
- 153 dziq fia-qə-ŋiaufu tʃhə-la buzd-kuə-ta
floor DIR-go-LNK(as.soon.as) ground.floor-LOC plank.stair-foot-LOC
- 154 jankhui-le:-zαχua fia-qa, xsə thəl-le:
stone.mortar-DEF:CL-inside DIR-go new(again) stone.pestle-DEF:CL
- 155 qəpatʃa: ʃə, fia-la, thəl-le:-wu
head:LOC exist DIR-come stone.pestle-DEF:CL-AGT
- 156 fie-tçite fie-tçite, fie-tçite-ŋiaufu, fia-tsu
DIR-pound DIR-pound DIR-pound-LNK(as.soon.as) INT-here
- 157 ʃkup-te:-ŋuəŋi ŋi-qəti-ŋi
orangutan-DEF:CL-TOP DIR-beat.to.death-ADV
- 158 da-ɛu-kui-wa.
DIR-throw-NAR-EMPH

Narrator: Wang Lin 王林
Born 1966
Recorded 1996

An Orphan

Long ago, there was an orphan; he was one who had no father and no mother. There was an orangutan who wanted to eat this orphan. The orphan was always afraid when it got dark at night, and on his way home, he was crying and crying as he walked. He walked a while and met with a needle. The needle asked him, “What’s the matter?” The

orphan answered, "Aye! The orangutan is going to come eat me at night. I'm afraid to be at home by myself." The needle said, "Hah! Don't be afraid. At night I'll come be your companion."

Later, again he was crying, crying as he walked. He walked a while and met some scissors. The scissors asked him, "Ah, what's the matter with you? Why are you crying like this?" The orphan said, "At my home, there's only me alone. The orangutan is going to come down to eat me. He comes at night." The scissors said, "Ah, if that is all it is, no problem, at night I'll come be your companion."

After that, the orphan still was crying and crying as he walked. He walked a while and met a magpie. The magpie asked him, "Why are you crying like this?" The orphan answered, "At home, there's only me alone. I have neither father nor mother. I am one without parents. When it gets dark, the orangutan is going to eat me. I'm afraid to be at home alone." The magpie said, "Aye! You need not be afraid. At night I'll come be your companion."

Again he went on, and after walking a while he met a crow, and the crow said, "Hah! Why are you crying?" The orphan said, "I have neither father nor mother. I'm only an orphan. At night I am afraid (to be at home alone); the orangutan is going to eat me." The crow said, "Hah! If that's the case, there's no problem, at night I'll come be your companion."

Again, the orphan went on crying as he walked. He walked a while and came across a stomach, and the stomach asked him, "Hah! Why are you crying like this?" The orphan answered, "I have neither father nor mother. At night, as soon as it gets dark, the orangutan is going to come eat me. I'm afraid." The stomach said, "Hah! If that's all it is, there's no problem, let me come be your companion at night. I'll come be your companion."

The orphan still was crying, crying as he walked. He walked a while and also came across a stone mortar, the stone mortar asked, "Hah! Why are you crying like this?" The orphan said, "Ah, I have neither father nor mother. I'm afraid of when it will get dark. When it gets dark again today, the orangutan is going to come eat me." The stone mortar said, "If that's all it is, no problem, I'll come be your companion. Let me come be your companion."

At this time the orphan had made friends with these (things) mentioned. When night came, they all came. The needle came, and the scissors came, and the magpie came, and the crow came, and the stomach, the stone mortar and a stone pestle all came. After they came, they held a meeting. The orphan was extremely happy. "Tonight my companions have come. Tonight I'm not afraid of the orangutan." After these [things] had all come, they told him, "Don't be afraid tonight. If the orangutan comes, we will beat him to death."

The orangutan wasn't afraid, and still came. The orphan was not afraid.

That night everybody made a plan together, where the needle should stay, where (each of them) should sleep and what-not and it was all settled. The needle was above the door to stab (the orangutan) in the doorway, the scissors slept beside the orphan on the bed, the magpie slept in the fire pile, the crow slept in the water jar, the stomach slept at the head of the stairs, the stone mortar was at the foot of the stairs, and the stone pestle was at the head of the stairs.

When it got dark, the orangutan came towards the orphan, the same as before. When he pushed the door with a creak, the needle was there, and as soon as the needle pricked his hand, his hand was all covered with blood, but he still wanted to go in the room. Once he was in the room and going to look for the orphan in the bed, the scissors cut off his hand. It was dark and the scissors had cut off his hand, and blood was dripping down. Then he went over to the fire pile, thinking to light it, to see what thing it was! As soon as the orangutan wanted to touch the fire pile, the magpie inside the fire pile burst out with a lot of noise and (the ashes) got into the orangutan's eyes. The orangutan went to the water jar, wanting to get some water to wash his face. He looked around and saw the water jar and after a mouthful of water wanted to wash his face, but the crow was there and the crow came out and pecked his eyes. This time the orangutan had no eyes and no hand and was covered with blood. He wanted to escape covered with blood. As soon as he got to the head of the stairs he stepped on the stomach and slipped and rolled down the staircase and into the stone mortar at the foot of the stairs. Then the stone pestle pounded and pounded and pounded down on him, and in this way pounded the orangutan to death and then (they) threw him away.

Text 4
Uncle Snake
 upu bəs
 uncle snake

- 1 i-tse, pəs-ηuəŋi ʋoʋu ləmpə lie-tu, lie,
 DIR-look today-TOP ram's.horn flower carry-LNK bring
- 2 lie-tu, lie-ŋi, a:, upu-bəs-ηuəŋi,
 carry-LNK carry-LNK INT uncle-snake-TOP
- 3 “ʔü tsi-la-han qa e: de-mə-l-əs-te:-wu,
 2sg daughter-DEF:one-kind 1sg one:CL DIR-NEG-give-NOM-DEF:CL-LNK
- 4 qa-wu ʔü-jəpə-le: da-g-zə-wa,”
 1sg-AGT 2sg-hand-DEF:CL DIR-broken-CAUS:1sg-EMPH
- 5 ikə jə-kui-təu. fiə-kə jə-kui-tu,
 thus say-NAR-PART INT-thus say-NAR-LNK
- 6 tsi tci-χtʂa-le:-ηuəŋi, “ha, tatə ke:
 daughter most-small-DEF:CL-TOP EXCL father INDEF:CL
- 7 ηuə-k-ta, qa ŋi: ηuə lə əa:-ηyʊ, ʔü-jəpə-le:
 COP-INF-if 1sg what COP also INDTV-COP 2sg-hand-DEF:CL
- 8 da-g-zə-qəstə, qa the:-sətsim
 DIR-break-CAUS-not.as.good.as 1sg 3sg-wife
- 9 ha-ηyʊ-la,” jə-kui-təu.
 DIR-COP-INDTV:1sg say-NAR-PART
- 10 fiə-kə jə-kəi-tu, fiəla qhal
 INT-thus say-NAR-LNK INT momo(steamed.bread)
- 11 a-gyʊ u-lu-kui, “fiə, upu-bəs-te:-steke
 one-basketful DIR-give.as.gift-NAR EXCL uncle-snake-DEF:CL-behind
- 12 da-ʋə-n-ba,” jə-kui-təu. qhal
 DIR-go-2sg-DTV say-NAR-PART momo(steamed.bread)

- 13 a-gy̯ə̯ one-basketful fi̯ei-bi-ŋi, DIR-carry.on.back-LNK upu-bəs-te: uncle-snake-DEF:CL
- 14 t̥eiqə:ʰ before ʂua:m-ke: very.long-INDEF:CL
- 15 sei-k-kui, walk-go-NAR ŋi:-ŋuən̄i 3sgREFL-TOP fi̯a INT steke behind steke behind
- 16 fi̯e-zei DIR-cry fi̯e-zei DIR-cry fi̯e-zei-ke: DIR-cry-INDEF:CL tse:-steke this:CL-behind
- 17 da-qə-kəi-stũ. DIR-go-NAR-PART da-qa, DIR-go da-qa, DIR-go da-qa-tu, DIR-go-LNK
- 18 upu-bəs-te: uncle-snake-DEF:CL fi̯a INT qha'ʂue-law-ʂa stone.pile-DEF:one:CL-LOC i-pə-k- DIR-arrive-go-
- 19 tu, LNK u-t̥əu DIR-see ma-lə-jy-tu, NEG-able-ASP-LNK qha'ʂue-law stone.pile-DEF:one:CL ʂanʂa: crevice
- 20 fi̯a-qə-tu, DIR-go-LNK fi̯a-thu INT-there tsi-lou-ŋuən̄i girl-DEF:one:CL-TOP fi̯a INT
- 21 ʂuaʂa-la courtyard-LOC fi̯e-zei DIR-cry fi̯e-zei-ŋi DIR-cry-ADV tha there
- 22 z̥i-kəi-stũ, exist-NAR-PART qha'ʂue-law-piəna-la. stone.pile-DEF:one:CL-beside-LOC
- 23 fi̯a-tha-ʂui-tu, INT-that:one-time-LNK t̥eiqua-la inside-LOC ha-lə-ŋi DIR-come-ADV
- 24 fi̯ala INT t̥eiqua-la inside-LOC ʂoi-kə-m call-go-NOM he-ʂi-kui-t̥əu. DIR-send-NAR-PART
- 25 upu-bəs-te: uncle-snake-DEF:CL x̥sə god ŋuə-kui-ŋi, COP-NAR-ADV mi person t̥eiqua-la-ŋuən̄i inside-LOC-TOP
- 26 t̥əy-le:-ŋuən̄i chicken-DEF:CL-TOP ʂoi-kə-m call-go-NOM he-ʂi-kui-stũ. DIR-send-NAR-PART

- 27 “entɕi qutaq. entɕi qutaq.
uncle's.wife (sound.of.chicken) uncle's.wife (sound.of.chicken)
- 28 entɕi qutaq,” jə-tu,
uncle's.wife (sound.of.chicken) say-LNK
- 29 xsə sa jə-kui-tɕu. xsə sa jə-kui-tu,
three sound say-NAR-PART three sound say-NAR-LNK
- 30 thou tə-χsa ma-γzə-kəi-şə,
that:one:CL DIR-understand NEG-able-NAR-LNK
- 31 fiɑ: tɕe-zei-kəi-stũ.
INT CON-cry-NAR-PART
- 32 tu, tɕy-le: ə-qa-jə-kui, xsə
RESULT chicken-DEF:CL DIR-go-REP-NAR new(again)
- 33 khuə-le: ha-lə-jə-kui-stũ. khuə-le:
dog-DEF:CL DIR-come-REP-NAR-PART dog-DEF:CL
- 34 ha-lə-jə-kui-tu, fiɑla “fiɑŋũ fiɑŋũ
DIR-come-REP-LNK INT woof woof
- 35 entɕi qutaq, fiɑŋũ fiɑŋũ entɕi qutaq,”
uncle's.wife cluck woof woof uncle's.wife cluck
- 36 jə-jə-kui-stũ. tə-χsa ma-γzə-kəi-şə,
say-REP-NAR-PART DIR-understand NEG-able-NAR-LNK
- 37 fiɑla tɕe-zei-kəi-stũ.
there CON-cry-NAR-PART
- 38 fiɑ-tu, tsu-ŋuəŋi, pie-le: ha-lə-jə-kui-stũ.
INT-RESULT here-TOP pig-DEF:CL DIR-come-REP-NAR-PART
- 39 pie-le: ha-lə-ŋi “fiə'fiə' entɕi qutaq, fiə'fiə'
pig-DEF:CL DIR-come-LNK oink.oink uncle's.wife cluck oink.oink
- 40 entɕi qutaq, fiə'fiə' entɕi lantɕi lu-ɑ:-ji.”
uncle's.wife cluck oink.oink uncle's wife flower come-PRS-CSM
- 41 tu fiɑla tə-mə-χsa-kəi-şə, ə-mə-qa-kəi-stũ.
RESULT INT DIR-NEG-understand-NAR-LNK DIR-NEG-go-NAR-PART

- 42 fiɑ-thɑ-χui-tu, fiɑ, tɛiɣɑ-lɑ qodu-le:
 INT-that:one-time-LNK INT inside-LOC old.woman-DEF:CL
- 43 hɑ-lə-kui-stũ. mɑ:-le: hɑ-lə-kui-stũ.
 DIR-come-NAR-PART mama-DEF:CL DIR-come-NAR-PART
- 44 fiɑlɑ, bəs dzel-pə-tɛ-mɑ:-le: hɑ-lə-kui-stũ.
 INT snake feast¹⁰⁶-do-GEN-mama-DEF:CL DIR-come-NAR-PART
- 45 mɑ:-le: hɑ-lə-tu, fiɑ:, “qɑ-tsi
 mama-DEF:CL DIR-come-LNK INT 1sg-girl
- 46 ɲi:-le: zei-n-ɑ? zei me-tɛhe, qɑ
 what-DEF:CL cry-2sg-Q cry NEG-want 1sg
- 47 ɸoi-kə-m kən he-ɛɑ-ɲi, ʔũ
 call-go-NOM very(many) DIR-send:1sg-LNK 2sg
- 48 ə-mə-lɑ-n-ɣə, qɑ hɑ-lɑ-wɑ,”
 DIR-NEG-come-2sg-LNK 1sg DIR-come-EMPH
- 49 jə-kui-stũ. tu, fiɑ tsi-lou-ɲuəɲi, “qɑ
 say-NAR-PART RESULT INT girl-DEF:one:CL-TOP 1sg
- 50 tə-mə-χsɑ-wɑ,” jə-kui-stũ. fiɑ-tu,
 DIR-NEG-understand-EMPH say-NAR-PART INT-RESULT
- 51 “tə-mə-χsɑ-n-ɸɑ, qɑ-phusuluq-te: fiɛ-ge-n-bɑ,
 DIR-NEG-understand-2sg-if 1sg-clothing-DEF:CL DIR-hold-2sg-DTV
- 52 qɑ-phusuluq-te: tə-tsəqɑ-ɲi mi: fiɑ-tɣə-n-bɑ,
 1sg-clothing-DEF:CL DIR-grab-ADV eye DIR-close-2sg-DTV
- 53 qɑ-steke hɑ-zɛ-n-bɑ,” jə-kui-stũ. fiɑ
 1sg-behind DIR-follow-2sg-DTV say-NAR-PART INT
- 54 tsɑ-tau-ɲuəɲi ə-ɸ-ɸzɑ:-ɸɑ-ɲuəɲi ɣkupu-ɑ-tau
 this:one-time-TOP DIR-go-time-LOC-TOP a.kind.of.thing-one-CL
- 55 de-le-kui-stũ. tu,
 DIR-give-NAR-PART RESULT

- 56 fiala tɕiɕua ə-qa-kəi-tu, ɣaiʂə tsəusə-bəl ŋi-ke:
INT inside DIR-go-NAR-LNK †(still.is) marry-do WH-INDEF:CL
- 57 ŋuə-kui-ʂə, tɕiɕua-la upu-bəs-la-ha-ŋuəŋi
COP-NAR-LNK inside-LOC uncle-snake-DEF:one-pl-TOP
- 58 ɕi tʂhe¹⁰⁷-kəi-stü. qapə-la-ha fiɑ-tsəi-ŋuəŋi,
wine suck-NAR-PART old.man-DEF:one-pl INT-this.manner-TOP
- 59 tsi-lou-ŋuəŋi upu-bəs-le: zaʂue (sitsəm)
girl-DEF:one:CL-TOP uncle-snake-DEF:CL helpmate (wife)
- 60 pe-kui-wa.
become-NAR-EMPH

Narrator: Wang Lin 王林
Born 1966
Recorded 1996

Uncle Snake

Look, today the Snake (Uncle) is bringing ram's horn flowers.¹⁰⁸ He says (to the father), "If you don't give one of your daughters to me, I will chop off your hand." After Snake (Uncle) said this, the youngest daughter said (to her father), "Papa, it's better I do what I have to do and go become his (Snake's) wife, than for your hand to be cut off."

(The girl's family) gave her a basketful of momo (a kind of bread) (and said to her), "You go with Uncle Snake then." Uncle Snake went in front of the girl. The girl carried the momo and was crying and crying as she followed behind Uncle Snake. They kept going until they came to a pile of rocks, and then Uncle Snake disappeared. He had gone into the pile through a crevice in the rocks. The girl continued to cry in the courtyard beside the pile of rocks.

In fact, Uncle Snake was a god and he sent a chicken to call the girl. The chicken called, "Aunt-in-law" three times, but the girl didn't understand and still cried there.

Later, the chicken went in and a dog was sent out to call the girl to come inside. The dog also barked two times, but the girl still didn't understand, and still cried there.

In like manner a pig was sent to call her, and the girl still didn't understand and so didn't enter.

Finally, an old woman came out to call her (Snake's mother came out to call her), and said to the girl, "Child, what are you crying about? Don't cry. I've sent many to call you, but you haven't come in, so I came out myself." The girl said, "I didn't understand." The old mother-in-law said, "If you didn't understand, close your eyes and hold on to my clothes, and come with me." When they went in, she gave the girl something (skupu), and she went back inside. Inside it was as if a wedding was being held, and Uncle Snake and others were drinking wine. In this way, the girl became Uncle Snake's wife.

Text 5
The Story of a Lazy Man

lan-thə-m ke: mə'ŋ
lazy-AUX-NOM INDEF:CL story

- | | | | | | | |
|----|--|--------------------------------|---|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|----------------------|
| 1 | qe: ¹ -qe: ¹
before-before | ŋuə-tu,
COP-LNK | tsisatŋu
sisters | jə-zi
two-CL | | |
| 2 | ŋuə-kəi-wa,
COP-NAR-EMPH | tsisatŋu
sisters | jə-zi
two-CL | ŋuə-kəi-tu,
COP-NAR-LNK | | |
| 3 | sawu-le:-te:-te:-ŋuəŋi
older.sister-DEF:CL-GEN-DEF:CL-TOP | | | təiʊsə,
†(that.is) | | |
| 4 | sawu-le:
older.sister-DEF:CL | wutcupu-ŋuəŋi
husband-TOP | z mətŋi.
emperor | | | |
| 5 | (qe: ¹
before | ŋuə-tu,
COP-LNK | “juanɣuai”
emperor | ŋpə-k-təi-wa,
call-INF-3pl-EMPH | pitəi-ŋuəŋi
now-TOP | |
| 6 | “z mətŋi”
emperor | ŋpə ¹ ,
call:1pl | qe: ¹
before | ŋuə-tu,
COP-LNK | juanɣuai. ¹⁰⁹⁾
emperor | fiə-tu
INT-RESULT |
| 7 | satŋu-te:-te-tŋi-le:-ŋuəŋi
younger.sister-DEF:CL-GEN-man-DEF:CL-TOP | | | tŋi
son | ou
one:CL | |
| 8 | z i-kui,
exist-NAR | fiə-tu
INT-RESULT | kən
very | lan-thə-le:
lazy-AUX-DEF:CL | ŋuə-kəi-wa,
COP-NAR-EMPH | |
| 9 | lan-thə-le:
lazy-AUX-DEF:CL | | ŋuə-kəi-tu,
COP-NAR-LNK | fiəla
INT | | |
| 10 | mə:-le:-wu
Mama-DEF:CL-AGT | | a-s-məqə-ŋuəŋi
one-day-each-TOP | | | |
| 11 | fiətha
INT | ŋiu-ŋuəŋi
sheep.wool-TOP | a-s
one-day | pantəin-wu
half.catty-INST | pantəin
half.catty | |
| 12 | tə-tŋhə-ŋi
DIR-weigh-ADV | fiə-tsəi
INT-this.manner | de-lde-ŋi ¹¹⁰⁾
DIR-spin-ADV | ŋiu
sheep.wool | | |
| 13 | patŋ
ball | de-lde-ŋi
DIR-spin-ADV | fiəla,
INT | ŋiu
sheep.wool | patŋ
ball | |

- 14 de-lde-ŋi χaiʒə fiʌa-ŋuəŋi
DIR-spin-ADV †(still.is) INT-TOP
- 15 fiʌa tʃi-le: lan-thə-le:-ŋuəŋi, fiʌa tʃhaq-ta
INT son-DEF:CL lazy-AUX-DEF:CL-TOP INT market-LOC
- 16 sə-ɛ-ŋi ɕi topu-wa-le: ŋuə-kəi, ɕi topu-le:
DIR-go-ADV wine like-very-DEF:CL COP-NAR wine like-DEF:CL
- 17 ŋuə-kəi-tu, χaiʒə fiʌə sə-ɛ-ŋi ɕi
COP-NAR-LNK †(still.is) INT DIR-go-ADV wine
- 18 sə-tɕ-ŋi nu-lu-kəpə-kəi, fiʌ-tu
DIR-drink-ADV DIR-come-HABIT-NAR INT-RESULT
- 19 ma:-le:-tɕ-ŋuəŋi χaiʒə ɕi-ŋuəŋi χaiʒə
mama-DEF:CL-BEN-TOP †(still.is) wine-TOP †(still.is)
- 20 fiʌ-tʂəi pantɕin lie-kəpə-kui-wa.
INT-this.manner half.catty carry-HABIT-NAR-EMPH
- 21 fiʌ-tə sawu-le: tɕiu a! fiʌa
 INT-RESULT older.sister-DEF:CL †(then) EXCL INT
- 22 satʃu-le:-ta zə-lə-kəi, satʃu-le:-ta
younger.sister-DEF:CL-LOC DIR-come-NAR younger.sister-DEF:CL-LOC
- 23 zə-lə-kəi-tu, χaiʒə, a! satʃu-le:-ta
DIR-come-NAR-LNK †(still.is) EXCL younger.sister-DEF:CL-LOC
- 24 zə-lə-kəi-tu, ka-han ŋuə-tu.
DIR-come-NAR-LNK INDEF:one-kind COP-LNK
- 25 fiʌ-tu a-s-ɛa ŋuə-tu, sawu-le:-ŋuəŋi fiʌ-tha
INT-RESULT one-day-LOC COP-LNK older.sister-DEF:CL-TOP INT-there
- 26 pethau-pə-kui-wa, fiʌ-tu satʃu-le: tɕiu
chat-do-NAR-EMPH INT-RESULT younger.sister-DEF:CL †(then)
- 27 “qa-tɕ-tʃi-le: fiʌ-kə lan-tha, lan-thə-le:
1sg-GEN-son-DEF:CL INT-thus lazy-AUX lazy-AUX-DEF:CL
- 28 ŋuə-ʒ,” jə-ŋi fiʌ-kə pethiau-pu-kui. fiʌ-tu
COP-LNK say-ADV INT-thus chat-do-NAR INT-RESULT

- 29 a-s-ka-tu, tse: satʃu tʃi-le:-nuəŋi
one-day-LOC-LNK this:CL younger.sister son-DEF:CL-TOP
- 30 fiəla tʃiu-la, a-s-ka-tu, tʃhaq-ta
INT home-LOC one-day-LOC-LNK market-LOC
- 31 sə-kə ʃpaqta-ŋi fiə-ke dzy-le: wəsta
DIR-go pretend-ADV INT-thus door-DEF:CL behind
- 32 he-zɪ-kui-wa. fiə-tu sawu-le:
DIR-exist-NAR-EMPH INT-RESULT older.sister-DEF:CL
- 33 ŋa satʃu-le: fiəla ə-dzə-ŋi
COM younger.sister-DEF:CL INT DIR-face.to.face-ADV
- 34 pethiau-pə-kəi, fiəla pethiau-pə-kəi-tu, pethiau-pə-kəi-tu fiəla
chat-do-NAR INT chat-do-NAR-LNK chat-do-NAR-LNK INT
- 35 meʰx, fiəla pethiau-pə-kəi-tu, tʃi-le:-nuəŋi,
pitiful INT chat-do-NAR-LNK son-DEF:CL-TOP
- 36 satʃu-le: tʃi-le:-nuəŋi fiəla dzy-le: wəsta
younger.sister-DEF:CL son-DEF:CL-TOP INT door-DEF:CL behind
- 37 u-xʃuctɕu-kui. u-xʃuctɕu-kui-tu, fiəla tʃi-le:
DIR-listen-NAR DIR-listen-NAR-LNK INT son-DEF:CL
- 38 dze-kəi, tʃi-le: dze-kəi-tu, fiə-tu
discuss-NAR son-DEF:CL say-NAR-LNK INT-RESULT
- 39 tʃi-le:-nuəŋi tʃhaq-ta sə-mə-qa-tɕi
son-DEF:CL-TOP market-LOC DIR-NEG-go-NAR
- 40 nuəŋi dzy-le: wəsta xʃuctɕu-kui. “qa
INT door-DEF:CL behind listen-NAR 1sg
- 41 tʃi-le: lan-tha” jə-ŋi, fiə-tha-nuəŋi
son-DEF:CL laxy-AUX say-ADV INT-there-TOP
- 42 fiə-tha-han dze-kui.
INT-that:one-kind say-NAR
- 43 fiə-tu tʃi-le:-nuəŋi, fiə-tu “pəs-nuəŋi, a!
INT-RESULT son-DEF:CL-TOP INT-RESULT today-TOP EXCL

- 44 ma:-*ɲuən̩* qa pəs-*ɲuən̩* i-pə-l-jy, qa-*ɲuən̩*
 mama-TOP 1sg today-TOP DIR-arrive-come-ASP 1sg-TOP
- 45 pəs-*ɲuən̩* pənsə a-χən u-su-a-wa,” jə-kui.
 today-TOP ability one-kind DIR-learn-1sg-EMPH say-NAR
- 46 “ha! pənsə a-χən u-su-a-wa,” jə-kui.
 EXCL ability one-kind DIR-learn-1sg-EMPH say-NAR
- 47 “ha! qa-tɛ-tʃi *ɲi*yi pənsə u-su-n-a?” jə-kui.
 EXCL 1sg-GEN-son what ability DIR-learn-2sg-Q say-NAR
- 48 “ha! *ʔile* pəs tɛəu-la *ɲi*yi dze-jə-wa?” jə-kui,
 EXCL 2pl today home-LOC what say-CSM-Q say-NAR
- 49 “qa *fi*la tʃhə-zəkũ-ta kuantsə *fi*a-ka:-ka,
 1sg INT market-center-LOC restaurant INT-INDEF:one:CL-LOC
- 50 z*i*-s-ta-*ɲuən̩* qa ə-ma-ʃ, *fi*a-tu *ʔile*-*ɲuən̩*
 exist-NOM-LOC-TOP 1sg DIR-hear:1sg-LNK INT-RESULT 2pl-TOP
- 51 *fi*a-ka-han dze-ji, *fi*a-kə dze-ji-tu, *fi*ata qa
 INT-INDEF:one-kind say-CSM INT-thus say-CSM-LNK INT 1sg
- 52 ə-ma-ʃ, qa *fi*a-ka-han-*ɲuən̩* pənsə *fi*a-ka-han
 DIR-hear:1sg-LNK 1sg INT-one-kind-TOP ability INT-one-kind
- 53 u-su-a-wa, *fi*a-kə ə-m, *fi*a-kə *ʔile*-wu
 DIR-learn-1sg-EMPH INT-thus DIR-hear INT-thus 2pl-AGT
- 54 *fi*e-dze la-han-ne¹wu ə-m *ʃ*zə-tɛ,
 DIR-say DEF:one-kind-all DIR-hear able-NOM
- 55 *fi*a-ka-han u-su-a-wa,” jə-kui-tɛu. *fi*a-kə
 INT-INDEF:one-kind DIR-learn-1sg-EMPH say-NAR-PART INT-thus
- 56 jə-kui-tu, *fi*a-tu “*ɲi*yi *ɲi*yi *fi*e-dze:’” jə-kui,
 say-NAR-LNK INT-RESULT what what DIR-say:1pl say-NAR
- 57 sawu-le: *ɲa* satʃũ-le:, *fi*ata “*fi*a-kə dze
 older.siser-DEF:CL COM younger.sister-DEF:CL INT INT-thus say
- 58 *fi*a-kə dze qa a-ma-wa, tʃhaq-ta kuantsa
 INT-thus say 1sg DIR-hear:1sg-EMPH market-LOC restaurant

- 59 zɿ-s-ta a-ma-wa,” fi-a-kə jə-kui-tu.
 exist-NOM-LOC DIR-hear:1sg-EMPH INT-thus say-NAR-LNK
- 60 “a! ʔat ɲuə-k-ŋi, qa-tɛ-tʂi,” jə-kui.
 EXCL truly COP-INF-ADV 1sg-GEN-son say-NAR
- 61 fi-a-tu sawu-le:-tɛ, sawu-le: wutɕupu-ɲuəŋi
 INT-RESULT oldr.sistr-DEF:CL-GEN oldr.sistr-DEF:CL husband-TOP
- 62 juanɕuai-ɲuəŋi fi-a-ke ɲuə-kəi. fi-a-tu pitɛ-ɲuəŋi z-mətʂi,
 emperor-TOP INT-thus COP-NAR INT-RESULT now-TOP emperor
- 63 qe:¹ ɲuə-tu, z-mətʂi laɣ “juanɕuai” ʂpə-x-ʂ,
 before COP-LNK emperor DEF:one:kind emperor call-INF-LNK
- 64 fi-a-ke ɲuə, fi-a-tu “a! ʔatchi qa-tɛ-tʂi-le:
 INT-thus COP INT-RESULT EXCL truly 1sg-GEN-son-DEF:CL
- 65 pənsə a-ɣən u-su-k-ŋi, ke: ɲuə-tu, zə
 ability one-kind DIR-learn-INF-ADV INDEF:CL COP-if thing
- 66 ha-sa,” jə-kəi. fi-a-tu kə-jə-kəi-tu, fi-a
 DIR-make.sound say-NAR INT-RESULT thus-say-NAR-LNK INT
- 67 fi-a-tsa-ɣui, sawu-le:, sawu-le: wutɕupu-ɲuəŋi
 INT-this:one-time older.sister-DEF:CL older.sister-DEF:CL husband-TOP
- 68 sənzə bələ-s pe-kui-wa, sənzə bələ-s ka-han
 birthday do-NOM become-NAR-EMPH birthday do-NOM INDEF:one-kind
- 69 ɲuə-kui-tu, z-bə-ɲuəŋi xsə-zi zə-p-ŋi tɕaɸa-la
 COP-NAR-LNK yak-TOP three-CL DIR-buy-ADV cowpen-LOC
- 70 fi-a-zdzy-ŋi zɿ-zə-kui-tɕu. fi-a-tu tɕaɸa-la
 DIR-tether-ADV exist-CAUS-NAR-PART INT-RESULT cowpen-LOC
- 71 fi-a-zdzy-ŋi zɿ-zə-kui-tu, tha-han, fi-a-ɲuəŋi
 DIR-tether-ADV exist-CAUS-NAR-LNK that:one-kind INT-TOP
- 72 fi-a-tu satʂu-le:-tʂi-le:-wu “pənsə
 INT-RESULT younger-sister-DEF:CL-son-DEF:CL-AGT ability
- 73 u-su-a-ʂə” jə-m-le:-wu,¹¹¹ gəs da-qa-ŋi
 DIR-learn-1sg-LNK say-NOM-DEF:CL-AGT night DIR-go-ADV

- 74 tə-χquats-ηiantci, məq-ta tunɲtuŋ zɔ:pua-la ɣu
DIR-steal-after above-LOC cave cave-LOC mountain
- 75 da-χla-jə-s-ta fi-a-zdzy-ηi
DIR-cross-CSM-NOM-LOC DIR-tether-ADV
- 76 i-ci-kui-wa. ɣu da-χla-jə-s-ta
DIR-put-NAR-EMPH mountain DIR-cross-CSM-NOM-LOC
- 77 fi-a-zdzy-ηi i-ci-kui-tu. fi-a-la “sənzə bələ-ηuəŋi
DIR-tether-LNK DIR-put-NAR-LNK INT birthday do-TOP
- 78 fi-e-me-se” jə-kui. fi-e-me-se ka-han
DIR-NEG-allow say-NAR DIR-NEG-allow INDEF:one-kind
- 79 ηuə-kui-tu, sawu-le:-ηuəŋi
COP-NAR-LNK older.sister-DEF:CL-TOP
- 80 fi-a-la wutɕupu-le:-ta-ηuəŋi pethiau-fi-o-pũ-kə-kui,
INT husband-DEF:CL-LOC-TOP chat-DIR-do-go-NAR
- 81 “qa-satšũ-te:-tši-ηuəŋi fi-a-kə he-the,
1sg-younger.sister-DEF:CL-son-TOP INT-thus DIR-able
- 82 u-zmu-ηi i-tši-z dzə, u-xšuctɕu
DIR-dream-ADV DIR-represent-CAUS able DIR-listen
- 83 ə-m dzə, fi-a-kə, fi-a-kə ɣzə-wa,”
DIR-hear able INT-thus INT-thus able-EMPH
- 84 ikə jə-kui-stũ.
thus say-NAR-PART
- 85 fi-a-tu tse: juanɣuai-le:-ηuəŋi gue^t
INT-RESULT this:CL emperor-DEF:CL-TOP soldier
- 86 zɔi-zə-kəi-šə, gue^t he-ci-ηi
exist-CAUS-NAR-LNK soldier DIR-send-ADV
- 87 fi-a-tsəi-ηuəŋi “me^tzə-k tɕhe,” jə-tu.
DIR-this.manner-TOP seek-go want say-LNK
- 88 tə-me^tz-ηi da-tɕ-kə-kui, da-tɕ-kə ka-han ηuə-tu,
DIR-seek-ADV DIR-find-go-NAR DIR-find-go INDEF:one-kind COP-LNK

- 89 χαισə, da-tɕ-kə-ku-tu, fiɑ-tse:-ŋuən̩i, χαισə
†(still.is) DIR-find-go-NAR-LNK INT-this:CL-TOP †(still.is)
- 90 ŋi:-wu fiɑɑ fiɑ-zdzy-ŋi tə-χquats-ŋi
3sgREFL-AGT INT DIR-tether-ADV DIR-steal-ADV
- 91 fiɑɑ fiɑ-zdzy-ŋi tun̩tun̩ zɔ:pua i-ci
INT DIR-tether-ADV cliff.cave cave DIR-put
- 92 ŋuə-ku-tu. χαισə tha-χui ŋuə-tu, ŋi: lə
COP-NAR-LNK †(still.is) that:one-time COP-LNK 3sgREFL also
- 93 dzukũ-le:-kə-ɣ, tanta-ke:
knowledge-exist-INF-LNK bold/daring-INDEF:CL
- 94 zɿ-kəi-wɑ, tanta-ke:
exist-NAR-EMPH †bold/daring-INDEF:CL
- 95 zɿ-kəi-tu. fiɑ-thu-ŋuən̩i “qhua:
exist-NAR-LNK DIR-there-TOP river.valley
- 96 da-ɛə-ja, fiɑ-thu-ŋuən̩i ɕi-la: ataz-ɣɑ, a.
DIR-go-REP:1sg INT-there-TOP little-DEF:one:CL fast-HORT INT
- 97 qe:¹ a-s jə-s-ŋuən̩i. kɑ-zə da-tɕ fiə-si-ŋua
before one-day two-day-TOP INDEF:one-CL DIR-find DIR-allow-Q
- 98 fiə-me-si?” jə-ŋi fiɑ-kə
DIR-NEG-allow say-ADV INT-thus
- 99 ŋuə-kui-wɑ. fiɑ-tu, ɣpuθuɣ lou
COP-NAR-EMPH INT-RESULT bamboo.tube DEF:one:CL
- 100 tɕy-kəi-tu, ɣpuθuɣ lou-ɛɑ
carry-NAR-LNK bamboo.tube DEF:one:CL-LOC
- 101 hɑ-sə-m lə ŋi:
DIR-make.sound-NOM also 3sgREFL
- 102 ŋuə-kəi-wɑ, ke¹-əm lə ŋi: ŋuə-kəi,
COP-NAR-EMPH ask-NOM also 3sgREFL COP-NAR
- 103 he-zɣue-m lə ŋi: ŋuə-kəi, fiɑ-tu
DIR-answer-NOM also 3sgREFL COP-NAR INT-RESULT

- 104 η i: ha-sə- η i η i:
3sgREFL DIR-make.sound-ADV 3sgREFL
- 105 he-z.gue fi-a-ke: z*i*-kəpə-kəi. fi-a-tu,
DIR-answer INT-INDEF:CL exist-HABIT-NAR INT-RESULT
- 106 a-s- κ a η uə-tu, fi-a-tu, phawu-le:
one-day-LOC COP-LNK INT-RESULT older.sister-DEF:CL
- 107 wutcupu-le:- η uə η i, qe:¹ η uə-tu, “juan κ uai”, pitc- η uə-tu
husband-DEF:CL-TOP before COP-LNK emperor now-COP-LNK
- 108 “z*m*ət*ʃ*i” η pe:¹- η . fi-a-tu, “a, ζ i-la:
emperor call:1pl-LNK INT-RESULT, EXCL little-DEF:one:CL
- 109 ataz t*ç*he, fi-a-tu a:-khuai-tha- η we-tu,” jə- η iant*ç*i,
fast want INT-RESULT INDTV-fast-AUX-LNK exist-LNK say-after
- 110 fi-a-kə jə-ku-tu, “otsũqua- η uə η i da- κ dzə-m,
INT-thus say-NAR-LNK morning-TOP DIR-go able-NOM
- 111 uʃu dzə-mə:¹wu me¹z-i-kə t*ç*he,” fi-a-kə
fast able-NOM:all seek-go want INT-thus
- 112 jə-kui-wa. fi-a-tə, zət a-s ə- η -kəi, zət
say-NAR-EMPH INT-RESULT date one-day DIR-put-NAR date
- 113 ə- η -kəi- η i χ ai η ə, fi-la t*ç*et*ç*i-le: wu
DIR-put-NAR-ADV †(still.is) INT everywhere-DEF:CL all
- 114 phə ha- ϕ ə-s-ta-jant*ç*i, fi-a-tə- η uə η i “da- κ ə
message DIR-blow-NOM-LOC-after INT-RESULT-TOP DIR-go
- 115 dzə-m χ η uct*ç*u dzə-m fi-a-la-han-ne¹wu tsa
able-NOM hear able-NOM INT-DEF:one-kind-all here
- 116 zu-lũ, t*ç*ile- η uə η i z*m*u tsu-a:,
DIR-come 1pl-TOP meeting hold-PRS
- 117 zu-lũ t*ç*he-wa,” jə-kui-wa. fi-a-tu tse:
DIR-come want-EMPH say-NAR-EMPH INT-RESULT this:CL
- 118 mi-tse:- η uə η i fi-a-tha t*ç*hetsə-qu-ta sə-l- η i
person-this:CL-TOP INT-there cart-top-LOC DIR-look-ADV

- 119 sputhuş tou-ḅa-ḡuəḡi ke'l-jy, tə-ke'l-jantəi,
bamboo.tube DEF:one:CL-LOC-TOP ask-ASP DIR-ask-after
- 120 fīa-tu tə-ke'l-ḡi, tə-ke'l-jantəi, fīala
INT-RESULT DIR-ask-ADV DIR-ask-after INT
- 121 sputhuş tou-ḅa-ḡuəḡi mi fīala zməṡṡi-le:
bamboo.tube DEF:one:CL-LOC-TOP person INT emperor-DEF:CL
- 122 zmu-tsu la-s-ḅa-ḡuəḡi fīa-tha tṡhetsə-qu-ta
meeeting-hold DEF:one-day-LOC-TOP INT-there cart-top-LOC
- 123 sə-l-ḡi fīa-ke ke'l-kə-kui. fīa-tu,
DIR-look-ADV INT-thus ask-go-NAR INT-RESULT
- 124 “poquş-ḡuəḡi do-γzu-n-tu, tca-la zi? fīalə zi
livestock-TOP DIR-lose-2sg-LNK where-LOC exist there exist
- 125 fīalə zi-wa, ṡku-wu tə-χquatṡ-ḡi fīala
there exist-EMPH thief-AGT DIR-steal-ADV there
- 126 tuṡtuṡ zɔ:pa fīa-zdzy-ḡi zi-z. ḅu
cliff.cave cave DIR-tether-ADV exist-CAUS mountain
- 127 χla-ji-wa,” jə-ḡi fīa-kə dze-ku. fīa-kə
cross-CSM-EMPH say-ADV INT-thus say-NAR INT-thus
- 128 sṡəthuş-ta:-ḅa-ḡuəḡi ḡiḡi ha-sə fīa-kə
bamboo.tube-DEF:one:CL-LOC-TOP 3sgREFL DIR-make.sound INT-thus
- 129 ke'l-kə-ku, fīa-kə ke'l ka-han ḡuə-ku-tu,
ask-go-NAR INT-thus ask INDEF:one-kind COP-NAR-LNK
- 130 “a-ṡ tse-n-na-ṡ, fīa-the-wu, a, ṡku-wu
one-time look-2sg-IMP-LNK INT-that-ABL INT thief-AGT
- 131 tə-χquatṡ-kə, fīa-tha da-χla: jəsai-wa, fīala-ḡuəḡi tha
DIR-steal-go INT-there DIR-cross:PRS fast-EMPH INT-TOP there
- 132 zi-wa,” jə-ku. fīa-tu tsoqpi phawu-le:
exist-EMPH say-NAR INT-RESULT this:family older.sister-DEF:CL
- 133 tɔymi-le:, thoqpi-ḡuəḡi ha-qə-ḡi ḡi:-tɔ
child-DEF:CL that:family-TOP DIR-go-ADV 3sgREFL-GEN

- 134 fi^{la} gue¹-^ŋa tha-han he-ci-^ŋi tə-me¹z-s-ta,
INT army-COM that:one-kind DIR-put-ADV DIR-seek-NOM-LOC
- 135 kətchi tha zⁱ-ku, fi^a-t^{sa}-^χui,
truly there exist-NAR INT-this:one-time
- 136 tse:-^ŋu^ŋi, a, satʂu¹-le: tʂi-le:-^ŋu^ŋi
this: CL-TOP INT younger.sister-DEF:CL son-DEF:CL-TOP
- 137 minjy-t^{ei}əu-kau^{la}. fi^a-tu phawu-le: wut^əpu-^ŋa
†(reputation-then-higher) INT-RESULT older.sister-DEF:CL husband-COM
- 138 ^ŋi^{yi} dzə-^ŋi ^ŋi^{yi} t^{ch}ə-t^ə fi^a-t^{sa}i
what eat-ADV what drink-GEN INT-this.manner
- 139 ə-^ʂ-jy ^ŋuə-^ŋi fi^a-t^{sa}i pə¹zə-kui-wa.
DIR-put-ASP COP-ADV INT-this.manner provide.for-NAR-EMPH
- 140 fi^a-t^{sa}-^χui-tu, tse:-t^ə-k^a¹¹² t^{ei}u t^əait^əyela.
DIR-this:one-time-LNK this:CL-GEN-LOC †(then solved)
-
- 141 fi^a-tu steke-la-^χui-k^a-tu, t^{ei}u^ʂə
INT-RESULT later-DEF:one-time-LOC-LNK †(that.is)
- 142 z^əmətʂi-le:-^ŋu^ŋi fi^a-tha
emperor-DEF:CL-TOP INT-there
- 143 nai-e-fən-k^a-t^ə-z^əmətʂi-ke: dzin-le:
other-one-place-LOC-GEN-emperor-INDEF:CL monk's.robe¹¹³-DEF:CL
- 144 do-^γz^u-k^əi-ha, z^əmətʂi jən-le:,
DIR-lose-NAR-PART emperor monk's.robe-DEF:CL
- 145 z^əmətʂi jən-le: do-^γz^u
emperor monk's.robe-DEF:CL DIR-lose
- 146 ka-han ^ŋuə-kui-tu, fi^a-tse:-wu fi^a-tha,
INDEF:one-kind COP-NAR-LNK INT-this:CL-AGT INT-there
- 147 fi^a-la-han ^ŋuə-kua-ji, a-lə-wu a-lə¹¹⁴
INT-DEF:one-kind COP-NAR-HS one-CL-AGT one-CL

148	pethiau-fiə-pu-ŋi chat-DIR-do-ADV	dzukũ knowledge	le exist	ka-han INDEF:one-kind
149	ŋuə-kua-ji, COP-NAR-HS	dzukũ knowledge	le-ku-tu, exist-NAR-LNK	fiə-tu INT-RESULT
150	dzukũ knowledge	de-l DIR-exist	ka-han INDEF:one-kind	ŋuə-ku. COP-NAR
				fiə-tse:-ŋuəŋi INT-this:CL-TOP
151	“me ¹ z-kə seek-go	tche, want	me ¹ z-kə seek-go	tche,” want
				jə-ku. say-NAR
				fiə-tu INT-RESULT
152	“tə-me ¹ z-ŋi DIR-seek-ADV	fiə-tse:-ŋuəŋi INT-this:CL-TOP	ə-zmu DIR-dream	ŋi: 3sgREFL
153	sə-tʃi DIR-represent	fiə-dzi-ŋi DIR-say-ADV	ə-m DIR-hear	dzə-m able-NOM
				fiə-ka-han INT-INDEF:one-kind
154	ŋuə-ʒə, COP-LNK	fiə-tse:-ŋuəŋi INT-this:CL-TOP	fiə-kə INT-thus	he-the-le: DIR-able-DEF:CL
				zɿ-wa,” exist-EMPH
155	jə-tu. say-LNK	fiə-tsoqpi-wu INT-this:family-AGT	phə message	he-kue-ŋi, DIR-take-ADV
156	phə message	he-kue-ŋi DIR-take-ADV	fiə-ka-han INT-INDEF:one-kind	tə-bələ-ku-wa. DIR-do-NAR-EMPH
157	fiə-tsa-χui-tu, INT-this:one-time-LNK	tsoqpi this:family	z-mətʃi emperor	jən-le: monk's.robe-DEF:CL
158	do-γzu-m DIR-lose-NOM	tsoqpi-ŋuəŋi, this:family-TOP	tse:-ŋuəŋi, this:CL-TOP	fiə-tse:-ŋuəŋi INT-this:CL-TOP
159	tʃautaula †(found)	da-tə-ku-kui, DIR-find-go-NAR		fiə-tsə-tse: INT-here-this:CL
160	da-tə-kə. DIR-find-go	da-tə-kə DIR-find-go	ka-han INDEF:one-kind	ŋuə-tu, COP-LNK
				χaiʒə †(still.is)
161	ə-pə ¹ z-kui-wa, DIR-provide.for-NAR-EMPH		ʒətɕian †time	ə-tin-tha-kəi, DIR-set-AUX-NAR
162	ə-tin-tha-jantɕi DIR-set-AUX-after	fiəla INT	ɕtɕə-s seven-day	ə-ʒ-kəi, DIR-put-NAR

- 163 “*ɕtɕə-s-ka-ŋuən̩i* *tse:* *z̩mət̩ʂi* *jin-ne:*
seven-day-LOC-TOP this:CL emperor monk's.robe-DEF:CL
- 164 *a-zə* *χqu* *fiatə* *u-z̩mu-ŋi* *i-t̩ʂi-s-le:*
one-little difficult INT DIR-dream-ADV DIR-sign-NOM-DEF:CL
- 165 *ŋuə-ʂ,* *fiata,* *ke:* *t̩ci-me'z̩-əs-ji* *ma-ŋuə-ta,*
COP-LNK INT INDEF:CL CON-seeK-NOM-EXC NEG-COP-if
- 166 *u-z̩mu-ŋi* *i-t̩ʂi-s* *z̩mət̩ʂi* *jin-le:* *ŋuə-ʂə*
DIR-dream-ADV DIR-sign-NOM emperor monk's.robe-DEF:CL COP-LNK
- 167 *a-zə* *χqu-ʂə,”* *jə-ŋi,* *fi-a-kə* *dze-jə-kui.*
one-little difficult-LNK say-ADV INT-thus say-REP-NAR
- 168 *fi-a-kə* *ʂət̩cian* *ə-ʂə-kəi-tu,* *ɕtɕə-s* *ŋa*
INT-thus time DIR-put-NAR-LNK seven-day COM
- 169 *ɕtɕə-jə* *ŋuə-ŋi,* *fiata,* *fi-a-tsə* *z̩mət̩ʂi-le:-ta-ŋuən̩i*
seven-night COP-ADV INT INT-this emperor-DEF:CL-DAT-TOP
- 170 *sə-dzi-ku-wa,* *sə-dze-tu,* *a-s-ka*
DIR-eat-NAR-EMPH DIR-eat-LNK one-day-LOC
- 171 *z̩mət̩ʂi-le:-ŋuən̩i,* “*a,* *qa-jin-le:-ŋuən̩i*
emperor-DEF:CL-TOP EXCL 1sg-monk's.robe-DEF:CL-TOP
- 172 *e:-wu* *nai-a-ʂpəq-ta* *do-quq* *ku-ʂ,”*
one:CL-AGT other-one-place-LOC DIR-move willing-LNK
- 173 *fi-a-tu* *fi-a-kə* *jə-ku,* *fi-a-tu,* *a-s-ka-tu,*
INT-RESULT INT-thus say-NAR INT-RESULT one-day-LOC-LNK
- 174 *fi-a-tu,* *stuaha* *χaiʂə* *ba* *kə* *t̩chə-kəpə-k,*
INT-RESULT rice/food †(still.is) big thus eat-HABIT-INF
- 175 *fi-a-tu,* *a-s-ka-tu,* *mautsha* *sei-jə-kə*
INT-RESULT one-day-LOC-LNK toilet relieve.oneself-REP-go
- 176 *ha-qə-kəi-tu.* *mautshə-le:* *da-t̩*
DIR-go-NAR-LNK toilet-DEF:CL DIR-find
- 177 *ma-lə-kəi,* *mautshə-le:* *da-t̩* *ma-lə-kəi-tu,*
NEG-able-NAR toilet-DEF:CL DIR-find NEG-able-NAR-LNK

- 178 fiala mautsha sei-kəi-wa, tu puŋi-le:-wu,
INT toilet relieve.oneself-NAR-EMPH RESULT cat-DEF:CL-AGT
- 179 puŋu-lapa: lou-wu, fiata,
cat-flower DEF:one:CL-AGT INT
- 180 ɛa-ŋuəŋi fiata mautshə-le:-qu-ta ɛa
roof.tile-TOP INT-there toilet-DEF:CL-top-LOC roof.tile
- 181 sə-zdzy la:-ɛa fiata zɿ-kui-wa. fiata-tu
DIR-put DEF:one:CL-LOC INT-there exist-NAR-EMPH INT-RESULT
- 182 tšekəzəŋla mi-tse-zə-ŋuəŋi, “hai! pefutsə, tšekə
†(this.person) person-this-CL-TOP INT †white.beard(cat) †(this
- 183 pefutsə mə¹ ke guo zuo ɣau sə,” jə-i-stu.
white.beard cat give 1sg do good thing) say-HS-PART
- 184 fiata-tu puŋu-le:-wu fiata zɿmətʃi
INT-RESULT cat-DEF:CL-AGT INT-there emperor
- 185 jin-le:-ta fiata-ɛdzɛ-jantɕi fiala
monk's.robe-DEF:CL-LOC DIR-bite-after there
- 186 u-zu-ŋi zɿ-kui-ha, fiata u-zu-ŋi
DIR-wait-ADV exist-NAR-PART there DIR-wait-ADV
- 187 zɿ-kui-tu, “a, zɿ ha-sa,¹¹⁵ tse: puŋu-le:-wu
exist-NAR-LNK INT thing DIR-make.sound this:CL cat-DEF:CL-AGT
- 188 qa-tɕ zɿ ha-sa, hi qa-tɕ ɣausə
1sg-GEN thing DIR-make.sound EXCL 1sg-GEN †good.thing
- 189 tə-bəl-ən-sə,” jə-ŋi, fiata ŋuə-jantɕi,
DIR-do-2sg-LNK say-ADV INT COP-after
- 190 fiala puŋu-le:-ta zə-zɿ-ŋiantɕi
there cat-DEF:CL-DAT DIR-bring-after
- 191 fiala ɛa-ŋuəŋi ɕtɕi-phi tə-ʃe. fiata-the-wu,
INT roof.tile-TOP seven-CL DIR-count INT-that-ABL
- 192 ɛa-ŋuəŋi tə-tʃhatʃ ŋuəŋi ɕtɕə-χtʃ, nai e-phi
roof.tile-TOP DIR-vertically TOP seven-row other one-CL

- 193 e- ϕ i η uə-tu ϵ t ϵ ə- ϕ i η alə-jant ϵ i z ϵ mət ζ i
one-CL COP-LNK seven-CL there-after emperor
- 194 jin-le: η a-thu tə- ζ uə-kəi-ha.
monk's.robe-DEF:CL INT-there DIR-hide-NAR-PART
- 195 η a-tu, tə- ζ uə ka-han η uə-kəi-tu,
INT-RESULT DIR-hide INDEF:one-kind COP-NAR-LNK
- 196 η a-tsa- χ ui-tu, z ϵ mət ζ i-le:- η uən ϵ i, “a,
INT-this:one-time-LNK emperor-DEF:CL-TOP INT
- 197 a-zə- η uən ϵ i ζ qu- ζ -un, qa nai-a- ζ paq-ta
one-little-TOP difficult-too-2sg 1sg other-one-place-LOC
- 198 do-quq ϵ u- η ϵ i, η ϵ i: η uə- η uəi?”
DIR-move willing-ADV what COP-Q
- 199 η ata tə-ke^l-kə-kui.
INT DIR-ask-go-NAR
- 200 η a-tha tə-ke^l-kə-kui-tu, “a, soqho- η ϵ i- η uən ϵ i,”
INT-there DIR-ask-go-NAR-LNK EXCL tomorrow-ADV-TOP
- 201 (“təp- η ϵ i” jə lə khuoji, η e-se,
tomorrow-ADV say also †(be.possible) DIR-allow
- 202 “soqho- η ϵ i” jə lə khuoji), “t ϵ ile-ta, a-s a-s
tomorrow-ADV say also †(be.possible) 1pl-LOC one-day one-day
- 203 la-han- ϵ ka,” η a-kə jə-kui-tu. “a,
DEF:one-kind-LOC that.manner say-NAR-LNK EXCL
- 204 η e-se.” tse:- η uən ϵ i, χ ai ζ ə “qa pəmaha η ϵ i:-le:
DIR-allow this:CL-TOP †(still.is) 1sg tonight what-DEF:CL
- 205 tə-sua, η a-tu ϵ i-la: i-t ζ i-s-ta-tu,
DIR-divine(v.) INT-RESULT little-DEF:one:CL DIR-sign-NOM-LOC-LNK
- 206 pəmaha i-t ζ i-la-wa. otsuqua- η uən ϵ i
tonight DIR-sign-INDTV:1sg-EMPH morning-TOP
- 207 thunt ζ ə tu-pu-n-pa,
notify DIR-do-2sg-DTV

- 208 da-ɛ dzə-m, ə-m dzə-m, sei dzə-me¹wu
DIR-go able-NOM DIR-hear able-NOM walk able-NOM:all
- 209 lu tche, fi-tsa-ha-ŋuəŋi i-pə-l tche-wa,”
come want INT-this:one-pl-TOP DIR-arrive-come want-EMPH
- 210 jə-kui. zmu tʂu-s-ŋuəŋi zmətʂi-le:-ta-ŋuəŋi
say-NAR meeting hold-NOM-TOP emperor-DEF:CL-DAT-TOP
- 211 fi-kə jə-kui-wa. fiata, “a, thuntʂə-tu-pŭ-ŋi
INT-thus say-NAR-EMPH INT EXCL notify-DIR-do-ADV
- 212 mi fiata da-ɛ dzə-m, de-sei dzə-m-le:¹wu
person INT DIR-go able-NOM DIR-walk able-NOM-all
- 213 lu-jə-kui.” fiata me¹ʂ-ta-s-ɛa zmu fi-tsu.
come-REP-NAR INT next-DEF:one-day-LOC meeting DIR-lead
- 214 tu fi-tsu ʂputhuʂ tou-ɛa,
RESULT INT-here bamboo.tube DEF:one:CL-LOC
- 215 fi-tsou-ɛa ke¹-əm lə ŋi:
INT-this:one:CL-LOC ask-NOM also 3sgREFL
- 216 ha-sə-m lə ŋi:-ŋuəŋi fi-ke
DIR-make.sound-NOM also 3sgREFL-TOP INT-thus
- 217 z-i-kəi-wa, fiata tca-la ʂə, tca-lə
exist-NAR-EMPH INT where-LOC exist where-LOC
- 218 maushə-le:-ŋuəŋi fiata ɛa-ŋuəŋi
toilet-DEF:CL-TOP INT roof.tile-TOP
- 219 ŋa-χtʂ, fi-tha ŋe-phi ŋuə
WH:one-row INT-there WH:one-CL COP
- 220 tə-ʂe-ŋiantci, fi-thu ʂə-wa, jə-kui.
DIR-count-after INT-there exist-EMPH say-NAR
- 221 fi-tse:-ŋuəŋi ŋim ha-qə-stun,
INT-this:CL-TOP notice(n.) DIR-go-PART
- 222 ŋim ha-qa, fi-tsa-χui, da-tə-kə-stun, tsa-χui
notice(n.) DIR-go INT-this:one-time DIR-find-go-PART this:one-time

- 223 ηυə-tu, fiɑ-tu tse:-wu ηim tə-s,¹¹⁶
COP-LNK INT-RESULT this:CL-AGT notice(n.) DIR-make.sound
- 224 fiɑ-tu zmətʂi tse:-ηυəηi mi χaisə
INT-RESULT emperor this:CL-TOP INT †(still.is)
- 225 kə-jə-ku, “qa ηiyi dzə-ηi ηiyi dzə,
thus-say-NAR 1sg what eat-ADV what eat
- 226 qa o-zũ-ηi o-zũ, qa tu-jũ-ηi tu-jũ.
1sg DIR-sit-ADV DIR-sit 1sg DIR-stand-ADV DIR-stand
- 227 fiɑ-tsəi-ηυəηi, fiɑ-tha, fiɑ-ke ha-ηue¹-wa.”
this.manner-TOP INT-there INT-thus DIR- COP:1pl-EMPH
- 228 jə-kui-ʂə, mi χaisə fiɑ-tsəi fiɑ-tse:-ηυəηi
say-NAR-LNK person †(still) INT-this.manner INT-this:CL-TOP
- 229 kənʂə tə-pə¹z-ηi fiɑ-ke ηυə-z-ku-i-ha.
†even.more DIR-provide.for-ADV INT-thus COP-CAUS-NAR-PART
-
- 230 fiɑ-tu nai ηυə-tu, zmətʂi nai-e: ηυə-tu,
INT-RESULT other COP-LNK emperor other-one:CL COP-LNK
- 231 gənkuo wətshi-ηυəηi gən phulu χaisə
parrot bird-TOP very expensive †(still.is)
- 232 paufu-le: ηυə-s ka-han ηυə-kua-ji, fiɑ-ke
retaliation-DEF:CL COP-NOM INDEF:one-kind COP-NAR-HS INT-thus
- 233 do-γzu-kəi-wa, genkuo iʂə wətshi ka-han
DIR-lose-NAR-EMPH parrot †(is) bird INDEF:one-kind
- 234 zi-ku-ʂə, fiɑ-ka-han zi-kui-tu,
exist-NAR-LNK INT-INDEF:one-kind exist-NAR-LNK
- 235 do-γzu-kəi. tu, fiɑ-tsu tse-xʂepi zmətʂi
DIR-lose-NAR RESULT INT-here this-side emperor
- 236 jin do-γzu-m-le:-wu fiɑ-tha the-xʂepi-ka
monk's.robe DIR-lose-NOM-DEF:CL-AGT INT-that that-side-LOC

237	khuə-ηuəŋi dog-TOP	tha there	da-l-zə-kui, DIR-look-CAUS-NAR	“fiə-tha-han INT-that:one-kind
238	do-γzu-n-tu, DIR-lose-2sg-LNK	qa-ta 1sg-DAT	fiə-ke: INT-INDEF:CL	zi-wa,” exist-EMPH
239	jə-kui. say-NAR	fiə-tu INT-RESULT	χaiʂə †(still.is)	ɑ-tau one-time
				tə-me ¹ z-ŋi DIR-look-ADV
240	mi-le: person-DEF:CL	tha there	i-pə-l-ŋi, DIR-arrive-come-ADV	fiə-tu INT-RESULT
241	ʂətɕian †time	ə-tin-tha-ŋi DIR-agree.on-AUX-ADV	fiə-tsəi INT-this.manner	
242	ə-pə ¹ z-kə-kui, DIR-provide.for-go-NAR	fiə-tu, INT-RESULT	ə-pə ¹ z-ŋi DIR-provide.for-ADV	
243	ka-han INDEF:one-kind	ηuə-tu, COP-LNK	ɑ, EXCL	fiə-tu, INT-RESULT
				χaiʂə, †(still.is)
244	“ɑ, EXCL	qa 1sg	tse: this:CL	tsəpau-le: inanimate.treasure-DEF:CL
				ma-ηyɕə-ʂə NEG-COP-LNK
245	χuopau-le: live.treasure-DEF:CL	ηuə. COP	χuopau live.treasure	ηuə-ʂə COP-LNK
246	fiə-ʂue-ŋi DIR-be.hungry-ADV	ɑ-ʂpa-la one-place-LOC	die-ʂe-kə DIR-die-INF	ɕu.” may
247	fiə-thə-ηuəŋi DIR-that-TOP	ʂətɕian-ηuəŋi †time-TOP	ɕtɕə-s-ηuəŋi, seven-day-TOP	“ɑ EXCL
248	tsə-s this-COMP	ɑz-ηuəŋi one:CL-TOP	ɕi-la: small-DEF:CL	ataz-ŋi fast-ADV
249	u-zmu DIR-dream	ŋɑ COM	u-tɕu-s-le: DIR-see-NOM-DEF:CL	
250	ə-mə-s DIR-hear-NOM		xu-tu, exist-LNK	
251	qa-tɕ-ηuəŋi 1sg-GEN-TOP	ɕi-la: small-DEF:CL	atazə-s-la: fast-NOM-DEF:CL	ɕɑ:-ηua, INDTV-COP:1sg

- 252 fɿa-tu, a, tʂentʂen qa tse: genkuo-le:
INT-RESULT EXCL †really 1sg this:CL parrot-DEF:CL
- 253 da-tɕə-s ka-han ŋuə-tu, fɿa-tha genkuo-le:
DIR-find-NOM INDEF:one-kind COP-LNK INT-there parrot-DEF:CL
- 254 da-tɕi-n-tu, qa-ŋike phin-tɕhi-phin-tsuo, ɕaiʂə
DIR-find-2sg-LNK 1sg-COM:thus †(equal-stand-equal-sit) †(still.is)
- 255 qa ŋiyi dzə-ŋi dzə, fɿata qa tu-jũ-ŋi
1sg what eat-ADV eat INT 1sg DIR-stand-ADV
- 256 tu-jũ, qa o-zu-ŋi o-zu, fɿata qa ŋiyi dzə-ŋi
DIR-stand 1sg DIR-sit-ADV DIR-sit INT 1sg what eat-ADV
- 257 ŋiyi dzə ɕaiʂə fɿa-tsəi ha-ŋue¹-wa,”
what eat †(still.is) INT-this.manner DIR-COP:1pl-EMPH
- 258 jə-ŋi ŋuə-kui-tu. mi ɕaiʂə fɿa-tu ʂətɕian-ŋuəŋi
say-ADV COP-NAR-LNK person †(still.is) INT-RESULT †time-TOP
- 259 ɕaiʂə fɿa-tu tə-me¹z-la-s-ka-tu,
†(still.is) INT-RESULT DIR-look-DEF:one-day-LOC-LNK
- 260 sei-kə ha-qə-kəi-wa. sei-kə
relieve.oneself-go DIR-go-NAR-EMPH relieve.oneself-go
- 261 ha-qə-kei-tu, fɿa-tu a-s-ka-tu, tha-han
DIR-go-NAR-LNK INT-RESULT one-day-LOC-LNK that:one-kind
- 262 sei-kə ha-qə-kei-tu. fɿala,
relieve.oneself-go DIR-go-NAR-LNK INT
- 263 kə¹-ta-ŋuəŋi kaijuan-ka ʂpə
Han.person-DAT-TOP †street.edge-LOC bamboo
- 264 me-we-m me-z_i,
NEG-exist-NOM NEG-exist
- 265 fɿata, kaijuan-ka ʂpə we-wu-ʂə,¹¹⁷
INT †street.edge-LOC bamboo exist-VIS-LNK
- 266 a-ɕtʂ a-ɕtʂ ta-han we-wu-tu, ʂpə
one-row one-row DEF:one-kind exist-VIS-LNK bamboo

267	i-phi-ŋi DIR-grow-ADV	a-χtɕ one-row	a-χtɕ one-row	ta-han DEF:one-kind	
268	we-ku-tu, exist-NAR-LNK		fi-a-tha INT-there	genkuo-le:-ŋuəŋi parrot-DEF:CL-TOP	
269	yzəifa wing	qə-ta-ŋuəŋi top-LOC-TOP	xʂul rope	lou DEF:one:CL	tə-χsə-ŋi DIR-tie-ADV
270	wet stick	lou DEF:one:CL	fi-a-ke INT-thus	tə-tʂhe-le: DIR-support-DEF:CL	
271	we-kui-wa, exist-NAR-EMPH	tu RESULT	fi-a-la INT	xʂul-le:-ŋuəŋi rope-DEF:CL-TOP	ʂpə bamboo
272	χqa-la among-LOC	ha-jə-kui. DIR-stick/be.caught-NAR		ha-jə-kui-tu, DIR-stick-NAR-LNK	
273	fi-a-la, INT	mautshə toilet	da-tɕ DIR-find	ma-lə-kəi-tu. NEG-able-NAR-LNK	
274	fi-a-la there	sei-kəi-wa, relieve.oneself-NAR-EMPH	tu RESULT	fi-a-la, INT	
275	sei-kəi-tu, relieve.oneself-NAR-LNK	genkuo-le: parrot-DEF:CL	zaxua-la inside-LOC	ctce'pctce'p-le: (birdcall)-DEF:CL	
276	tha there	sa-kui-ha, make.sound-NAR-PART	“tsa-χui this:one-time	tse: this:CL	genkuo-le: parrot-DEF:CL
277	qa-tɕ 1sg-GEN	za matter/affair	ha-sə-ʂə,” DIR-make.sound-LNK	jə-ŋi say-ADV	fi-a-la fi-a-ke INT INT-thus
278	zə-kəi. exist-NAR	fi-a-tu, INT-RESULT	fi-a-la, INT	the: 3sg	tə-tsəqa-jantɕi, DIR-grab-after
279	genkuo-le: parrot-DEF:CL	tə-tsəqa-jantɕi, DIR-grab-after	fi-a-la, INT	ʂpə-ŋuəŋi bamboo-TOP	
280	a-χtɕ one-row	a-χtɕ one.row	tə-ʂə-jantɕi, DIR-count-after	fi-a-the-wu, INT-that-ABL	
281	fi-a-tsəi INT-this.manner	ŋuə-jantɕi, COP-after	fi-a-thu INT-there	i-ɕi DIR-put	

- 282 *fi*-*t*sa-*χ*ui-*t*u, *a*, *fi*-*t*u, *z*mətʃi-*le*:-*ŋ*uəŋi
INT-this:one-time-LNK EXCL INT-RESULT emperor-DEF:CL-TOP
- 283 *t*u, “*a*, *q*a-*χ*uopau-*le*:-*ŋ*uəŋi *ʃ*kupa-*mo*-*ku*,
RESULT EXCL 1sg-live.treasure-DEF:CL-TOP disaster-NEG-willing
- 284 *χ*uopau-*le*: *ŋ*uə-*ʃ*ə *a*-*ʃ*pa-*la* *die*-*ʃ*e-*k*ə *ku*,
live.treasure-DEF:CL COP-LNK one-place-LOC DIR-die-go may
- 285 *fi*e-*ʃ*ue-*ŋ*i,” *j*ə-*ŋ*i, “*a* *a*ta*z*ə-*s*-*la*:
DIR-be.hungry-ADV say-ADV INT fast-NOM-DEF:CL
- 286 *d*zə-*ŋ*i *ka*-*han* *ŋ*uə-*ʃ*a, *q*a, *ʔ*ü *χ*ai*ʃ*ə *q*a *ŋ*i*ʔ*i
eat-ADV INDEF:one-kind COP-HORT 1sg 2sg †(still.is) 1sg what
- 287 *d*zə-*ŋ*i *ŋ*i*ʔ*i *d*zə-*t*ə, *fi*a-*t*səi-*ŋ*uəŋi *ŋ*i*ʔ*i
eat-ADV what eat-NOM INT-this.manner-TOP what
- 288 *ʃ*ət*ɕ*ian *fi*a-*t*sə-*ŋ*uəŋi *t*u-*w*u-*ŋ*i
†time INT-this-TOP DIR-discuss-ADV
- 289 *fi*a-*k*ə ə-*ʃ*ə-*k*əi-*ha*.”
INT-thus DIR-put-NAR-PART
- 290 *fi*a-*t*u *t*ʃekəzən*la* *χ*ai*ʃ*ə *ʃ*pu*tu*ʃ *lou*
INT-RESULT †(this.person) †(still.is) bamboo.tube DEF:one:CL
- 291 *he*-*t*ɕ*ɿ*-*ŋ*i, *fi*a-*t*u-*ŋ*uəŋi, *fi*a-*ka*:-*ka*
DIR-carry-LNK INT-RESULT-TOP INT-INDEF:one:CL-LOC
- 292 *stu*aha *t*əhə-*s* *fi*a-*ka*-*han*
food eat-NOM INT-INDEF:one-kind
- 293 *le*z *t*ə-*ka*-*s*-*le*: *we*-*ku*ai.
fate/destiny DIR-go-NOM-DEF:CL exist-NAR
- 294 *fi*a-*t*u, *fi*a-*t*sə *χ*uan-*t*chianme^t *fi*a-*t*se:-*ŋ*uəŋi,
INT-RESULT INT-this Huang Qianmen INT-this:CL-TOP
- 295 *χ*ai*ʃ*ə *gen*kuo-*le*:, *gen*kuo-*le*: *da*-*t*ə-*k*ə-*ku*ai-*stun*,
†(still.is) parrot-DEF:CL parrot-DEF:CL DIR-find-go-NAR-PART
- 296 *fi*a-*t*su-*ŋ*uəŋi *ŋ*i *ke* *guo* *san*-*jan*, *fi*a-*tu*
INT-here-TOP †(2sg give 1sg three-kind) INT-there

297	xsə-han three-kinds	thuntʂə notify	tu-p-zə-ku-ʂə, DIR-do-CAUS-NAR-LNK	fiə-tu INT-RESULT
298	z mətʂi-le: emperor-DEF:CL	ŋiʎi what	dzə-ŋi eat-ADV	ŋiʎi dzə, what eat
299	fiə-tu INT-RESULT	fiə-ka-han INT-INDEF:one-kind	ŋuə. COP	
300	χuan-tchianme¹-le: Huang-Qianmen-DEF:CL	tha-han that:one-kind	fiə-ke INT-thus	ŋuə-kuə-wa. COP-NAR-EMPH
301	--	fiə-tu INT-RESULT	z mətʂi-ŋuəŋi, emperor-TOP	“fiə-tse: INT-this:CL
302	da-tʂə-m-ŋuəŋi DIR-find-NOM-TOP	fiə-tha-ŋuəŋi, INT-there-TOP	qa-tsi-le:-ŋuəŋi, 1sg-daughter-DEF:CL-TOP	
303	qa-luq-te:-ŋuəŋi 1sg-seat-DEF:CL-TOP	ʔü 2sg	o-zu-n,” DIR-sit-2sg	
304	fiə-kə INT-thus	jə-ji say-CSM	ŋuə-wa. COP-EMPH	(fiə-tsu INT-here
305	fiə-tsu DIR-here	qa-wu 1sg-AGT	dze-tʂə say-NOM	kopu-le:-ŋuəŋi, root-DEF:CL-TOP
306	tʂiq inside	dze-s-ta-ŋuəŋi say-NOM-LOC-TOP	z mə-lə-sa name-DEF:one-CL	da-m-a, DIR-forget-1sg
307	fiə-lə INT	χuan-tchianme¹ Huang-Qianmen	z mə-w-wa. call-VIS-EMPH	χuan-tchianme¹ Huang-Qianmen
308	z mə-w call-VIS	ka-han INDEF:one-kind	ŋuə-w-tu.) COP-VIS-LNK	z mətʂi-le:-ŋuəŋi emperor-DEF:CL-TOP
309	tʂi-steke-lə most-back-LOC	ŋuə-tu, COP-LNK	fiə-ta INT	genkuo-le: parrot-DEF:CL
310	fiə-ka-han INT-INDEF:one-kind	ŋuə-w-tu, COP-VIS-LNK	fiə-tu INT-RESULT	z mətʂi-le:-tʂə emperor-DEF:CL-GEN

- 311 tsi-le:-ηuəŋi χuan-tchianme¹-ta ʏzə-s,
daughter-DEF:CL-TOP Huang-Qianmen-DAT marry-NOM
- 312 χuan-tchianme¹-ηuəŋi zmətʂi dzu-s, zmətʂi-le:
Huang-Qianmen-TOP emperor sit-NOM emperor-DEF:CL
- 313 tsi-le:-ηuəŋi χaiʂə
daughter-DEF:CL-TOP †(still.is)
- 314 fi-a-tha de-l-əs, fi-a-kə ηuə-ku-tu.
INT-there DIR-give-NOM INT-thus COP-NAR-LNK

Narrator: Yu Zelong 余澤龍
Born 1960
Recorded 1996

The Story of a Lazy Man

A long time ago there were two sisters. The husband of the older sister was the emperor (previously called /juənkuəi/, now called /zmətʂi/). The younger sister had a son who was very lazy. Every day the mother would weigh out half a catty of wool and spin yarn. The son liked to drink liquor and often went to a restaurant in town to drink. When he returned, he often brought back half a catty of liquor for his mother.

One day the older sister went to her younger sister's home and chatted with her. The younger sister told the older one, "My son is very lazy." One day the younger sister's son pretended to go to town but hid behind the door. The older and younger sister chatted inside and the son of the younger sister listened from behind the door. The two sisters spoke of the younger sister's son. This son had not gone to town, but was behind the door secretly listening. They said things like "My son is very lazy."

The younger sister's son then said to his mother, "I'm back. Today I learned an ability." The younger sister asked, "Son, what ability did you learn?" The son said, "What were you saying today at home? When I was in the restaurant in the center of town, I heard what you said (what you said, I learned to be able to hear it all)." The two sisters said, "What did we say?" The son of the younger sister said, "When I was in the restaurant in town, I heard you say this and that." The younger sister said, "That's really how it was, son."

The older sister's husband was emperor. The younger sister then said, "If my son has learned this kind of ability, it really is a good thing." One day, the older sister's husband was preparing for his birthday. He bought three yak and tethered them inside a cowpen. The son of the younger sister, the one who said "I have learned an ability", at night stole the yaks and crossed the mountain and tethered them in a mountain cave. The emperor could not proceed with his birthday (celebration). The older sister said to her husband (the emperor), "My younger sister's son has an ability. He can see in his dreams where something is. When he listens, he can hear." This emperor had soldiers, and sent his soldiers to look for the lost yaks. After this person had stolen the yaks, he tied them in a cave on the mountain. He himself knew, and he was relaxed and carefree. Almost at the river embankment, the person searching said, a little faster. See if it's possible to find [the yaks] a day or two ahead of time. [The one with an ability] brought a bamboo tube, and he himself asked on the bamboo tube and he himself answered (he asked himself and answered himself). One day, the older sister's husband (formerly called /juanɕuɑi/ [emperor], now called /z̥mətʃi/ [emperor]) said, "If one is able to go faster, then go a little faster. Those who can go tomorrow and can go fast must all go search." In this manner he selected a propitious day, and after the propitious day was selected, notified people everywhere. "Those who can go, and who can hear all come here. We will hold a meeting, and all must come here." On a cart this person [with an ability] used the bamboo tube to ask [the whereabouts of the yaks] on the day the meeting was held. On the cart he used the bamboo tube to ask where the emperor's livestock had been lost. There he said, "After a thief took the livestock, he drove them up on the mountain and tethered them in a mountain cave. Quickly now go over that mountain." Through the bamboo tube he himself answered and he himself asked. After asking, he said, "You see, that thief stole them. Quickly cross over that mountain. They are there!" This child of the older sister's family, this family's soldiers and the other people went to look, and when they went to look, the livestock really was there. At this time, as for this person, well! The younger sister's son's reputation went up greatly. Whatever the older sister's husband ate, he ate; whatever the emperor drank, he drank. It was discussed and agreed in advance to provide for him this way. Thus, this person's problems were solved.

Later, that time, the emperor of another place lost a "dzin" (also called a "jin." A monk's robe or "Huang Ma Gua"). After the emperor had lost the dzin, he was chatting with another person and learned about

(it). The emperor said, "(I) must have this person go search. This person can dream or hear other's words. This person has much ability." A person of this family took a message to him, and after taking him the message, he will find the emperor's dzin. After this person finds the dzin, the emperor will provide for him. He set a time, he set a time of seven days. "Within seven days he must find the emperor's dzin in his dreams. The difficulty is great."

For seven days and seven nights this person ate and drank at the emperor's. After eating, one day, the emperor said to him, "Ai! My dzin has been moved somewhere by someone." One day, the son ate too much and went to the toilet to relieve himself. There was a cat which had moved some roof tiles on top of the toilet and hidden the emperor's dzin among the tiles. When he went to look, he discovered the emperor's dzin. He said, "This brindled cat has done me a good deed," and took the dzin from the cat. He counted seven tiles, and stood up seven rows vertically; he hid the emperor's dzin there. At this time, the emperor said, "it will be a little difficult for you to find the dzin. I am willing to move to another place. How about that?" That person then said, "You come tomorrow" (we say "soqhun_i" [tomorrow], and it can also be said "təp_ni" [tomorrow]). "Tonight I'll try to divine [its whereabouts], all right? Tomorrow I'll notify you and notify those who can walk and who can hear to come. These people must all come." To organize a meeting, this is how he spoke to the emperor. The next day, a meeting was held. He used the bamboo tube and asked himself and answered himself, where is the dzin. This person had them go look, counting out which roof tile in which row of tiles on which toilet. The emperor's dzin was in fact there. After finding it, they notified the emperor, and the emperor said to him, "Whatever I eat, you eat; when I sit, you sit; when I stand, you stand." In the end, he was even better provided for.

--

There was another emperor who lost (had stolen) a very expensive kind of parrot, perhaps for revenge. After losing it, this emperor who had lost the dzin told this person who had lost the parrot, "A dog barks in that direction. You have lost this kind of bird, and I have there (in my place) one of this kind of bird." A person came here to search. When he went to search, those people set a time to feed this parrot. "This parrot of mine isn't a dead treasure, it's a living treasure. It might starve to death someplace. If you can dream of it a little faster, see or hear it, do it a little faster for me. If you can find the parrot, you may rise and sit with me (as my equal) and like me eat what I eat, stand when I stand, sit when I sit." The day he went to look for the parrot, he went to a place

where Han people live and went to relieve himself. Where the Han people live, each family grew bamboo. By the roadside there was row after row of bamboo trees. There was a rope tied around a small stick attached to the parrot's wing. The rope was wedged in the bamboo forest. This person couldn't find a toilet, so he went to relieve himself beside the bamboo forest. While relieving himself, he heard the parrot calling in the bamboo forest. He said, "This parrot has done a good thing for me," and he caught the parrot. After catching it, he counted the rows of bamboo and put the parrot there. The emperor said, "My living treasure might starve to death (it would be a disaster). It's a living treasure which may die someplace. If it could eat a little something as soon as possible, then like me, what I eat, you will eat." After this, they set a time (came to an agreement on it), and this person brought up the bamboo tube. He used the tube to eat (earn his living). Perhaps he had this kind of luck. This person was called Huang Qianmen. Huang Qianmen brought the parrot back and said to the emperor, "You must give me three things. These three things you must proclaim to the people." In the end, Huang Qianmen lived just like the emperor.

--

This emperor said, "The person who finds the parrot will marry my daughter and sit on my throne. (The Huang Qianmen I spoke of is the person I called "this person" before. When I was talking before, I forgot his name. This person's name is Huang Qianmen.) The emperor said, "To the person who finds the parrot I will marry my daughter," so Huang Qianmen married his daughter and became emperor.

Text 6
The Old Man of the Chen Family

tshəntɕa qapə
Chen.family old.man

- | | | | | | |
|----|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------|--|--|-----------------------------|
| 1 | qe'
long.ago | ɲuə-tu,
COP-LNK | tshəntɕa
Chen.family | qapə
old.man | ɲa
COM |
| 2 | e:
one:CL | ɲuə-tu,
COP-LNK | a-sə-ɕa-ɲi
one-day-LOC-ADV | khuə
dog | ɕe-k,
release-go |
| 3 | fiə-tu
INT-RESULT | khuə
dog | ɕe-kəi-tu, ¹¹⁸
release-NAR-LNK | | |
| 4 | khuə
dog | ɕe-kəi-tu,
release-NAR-LNK | a-sə-maqa
one-day-each | khuə
dog | tə-ɕi-ɲi
DIR-release-ADV |
| 5 | phantshə-ɕa
traveling.expenses-LOC | khuə
dog | tə-ɕi-ɲi
DIR-release-ADV | stuaha
food | təhə-m,
eat-NOM |
| 6 | fiə-tu,
INT-RESULT | a-s-ɕa-tu
one-day-LOC-LNK | ha-qə-kəi-tu,
DIR-go-NAR-LNK | iyi
anything | |
| 7 | de-me-zde-kəi,
DIR-NEG-hit-NAR | fiə-tu,
INT-RESULT | de-me-zde-kui-tu,
DIR-NEG-hit-NAR-LNK | | |
| 8 | zɔ:pu-le:
cave-DEF:CL | ʂqəl-la-ɲuəɲi
below-LOC-TOP | bəs-le:
snake-DEF:CL | | |
| 9 | u-tɕu-kəi-wa.
DIR-see-NAR-EMPH | “ha,
EXCL | pəs-ɲuəɲi
today-TOP | iyi
anything | lə
also |
| 10 | de-me-zde.
DIR-NEG-hit | fiə-ke
INT-thus | kə-ɕza-ɲi,
go-ought:1sg-ADV | fiə-kə
INT-thus | |
| 11 | xʂuɕtɕu-le:
empty.handed-DEF:CL | kə-qəsta,
go-not.as.good.as | u-tɕu-ja-ɲi
DIR-see-CSM:1sg-ADV | | |
| 12 | a-phau
one-shot | qhu-ʂa.”
shoot-HORT | jə-kəi.
say-NAR | | |
| 13 | a-phau
one-shot | u-qhu-kəi-tu,
DIR-shoot-NAR-LNK | fiə-tu
INT-RESULT | jautsan-le:
man.eating.demon-DEF:CL | |

- 14 ηυə-kəi, jautsan-le: ηυə-kəi-tu. fiə-tu
 COP-NAR man.eating.demon-DEF:CL COP-NAR-LNK INT-RESULT
- 15 ə-phau qhu-kəi-tu, jautsan-le:-ηυəηi
 one-shot shoot-NAR-LNK man.eating.demon-DEF:CL-TOP
- 16 gəz nə-qəti-kui. gəz nə-qəti-kui-tu. the:-ηυəηi
 strangle(n.) DIR-kill-NAR strangle(n.) DIR-kill-NAR-LNK 3sg-TOP
- 17 juanβuəi, (pitə-ηυəηi “zətətʃi” ʃpi-ʃ qə:¹-ηυəηi
 emperor now-TOP emperor call-LNK before-TOP
- 18 “juanβuəi” zmə, zətətʃi laχ-kə “juanβuəi”
 emperor call emperor DEF:one:kind-LOC emperor
- 19 ʃpu-ku-wə), fiə-tu, jautsan-le:-ηυəηi
 call-NAR-EMPH INT-RESULT man.eating.demon-DEF:CL-TOP
- 20 tə-pian-thə-ji ηυə-kui-wə. zətətʃi-le:-ηυəηi
 DIR-change-AUX-CSM COP-NAR-EMPH emperor-DEF:CL-TOP
- 21 “me¹z kə tche,” jə-ηi he-ci-kui. “ηiχua
 seek go want say-ADV DIR-send-NAR why
- 22 ηυə-ηi (hatu) tə-zdzi?” ʃpaqta fiə-pū-kəi, “ηiχi
 COP-ADV INT DIR-sick pretend DIR-do-NAR what
- 23 tə-zdzi-n?” jə-ηi, “zdzi fiə-tʃhup-ηi zdzi u-xʃu
 DIR-sick-2sg say-ADV sick DIR-cure-ADV sick DIR-recover
- 24 mə-lə, fiə-tu, zdzi u-xʃu mə-lə kə-han
 NEG-able INT-RESULT sick DIR-recover NEG-able INDEF:one-kind
- 25 ηυə-tu, ʔū ηiχi ηυə-s ηυə-ηua?” fiə-tu,
 COP-LNK 2sg what COP-NOM COP-Q INT-RESULT
- 26 tə-ke¹-kə-kui, zətətʃi-le:-wu, zətətʃi-le:-wu
 DIR-ask-go-NAR emperor-DEF:CL-AGT emperor-DEF:CL-AGT
- 27 tə-ke¹ kə-han ηυə-kui-tu, “fiə, qə tʃhəntə
 DIR-ask INDEF:one-kind COP-NAR-LNK EXCL 1sg Chen.family

- 28 qapə-tc spəl ɲa ɕtɕei:mi sə-dza-tu,
old.man-GEN kidney COM heart DIR-eat:1sg-LNK
- 29 dzə-wa,” jə-kui. fiɑ-tu, zmətʂi-le:-ɲuən̩i
able-EMPH say-NAR INT-RESULT emperor-DEF:CL-TOP
- 30 gueʰ he-ci-ɲi tshəntɕa qapə
army DIR-send-ADV Chen.family old.man
- 31 meʰz he-ci-kui-stū.
seek DIR-send-NAR-PART
- 32 he-ci-kui ja-tu, fiɑ-tu, tse:-ɲuən̩i
DIR-send INT-LNK INT-RESULT this:CL-TOP
- 33 tshəntɕa qapə tɕəu-tha-tɕ, tshəntɕa
Chen.family old.man save-AUX-GEN(goal) Chen.family
- 34 qapə-tc tʂi-ɲuən̩i tshəntɕhən,
old.man male/son-TOP Chen.Diqing
- 35 fiɑ-tu tshəntɕa qapə-ɲuən̩i suəsua
INT-RESULT Chen.family old.man-TOP divine(the.future)
- 36 γzə-jy, fiɑla tə-sua-ɲi dzukũ de-le,
able-ASP INT DIR-divine-ADV knowledge DIR-exist
- 37 fiɑ-kə suəsua γzə-ɲi “qa fiɑ-kə meʰz, fiɑtə-ɲuən̩i,
INT-thus divine able-ADV 1sg INT-thus seek INT-TOP
- 38 a, qa-tʂi, ʔũ-ɲuən̩i da-γzə-n, qa-ɲuən̩i
EXCL 1sg-son 2sg-TOP DIR-set.out-2sg 1sg-TOP
- 39 fantʂənʂə zmətʂi tsoqpi jəpa-q-ta-ɲuən̩i
†(anyway.is) emperor this:family hand-top-LOC-TOP
- 40 do-χlu ma-lə-jya, fiɑ-tha-s-ka
DIR-escape NEG-able-ASP:1sg INT-that:one-day-LOC
- 41 bəs-le: jopu-le: ʂqə-la
snake-DEF:CL cliff-DEF:CL below-LOC
- 42 u-tɕya-paqta fiɑta tse:-ɲuən̩i, fiɑ-tsoqpi-wu
DIR-see:1sg-LNK(after) INT this:CL-TOP INT-this:family-AGT

43	qa 1sg	me ¹ z-lə seek-come	təhe, want	qa 1sg	ʃpəl kidney	ŋa COM	ətci:mi heart
44	sə-mə-dzə-s-te:-wu, DIR-NEG-eat-NOM-DEF:CL-if		fata INT	tha-han that:one-kind		ŋuə-ʃ, COP-LNK	
45	fia-tsa-χui-ŋuəŋi, INT-this:one-time-TOP		tshəntitchin Chen.Diqing		ʔü 2sg	du-φu DIR-run.away	
46	dzə-tce ¹ wu able-AMP ¹¹⁹ :all	du-φu-n-pa, DIR-run.away-2sg-DTV			qa-ŋuəŋi 1sg-TOP	tsoqpi this:family	
47	jəpa-q hand-top	fia-mə-εə-ʃə DIR-NEG-go-LNK			ma-l-jya.” NEG-able-ASP:1sg		
48	ikə thus	jə-ŋi say-ADV	fiala INT	du-φu, DIR-run.away		tʃi-le:-ŋuəŋi son-DEF:CL-TOP	
49	du-φu-ŋi run.away-ADV	nai-e-tshin-εa other-one-village-LOC			i-pə-kəi-wa, DIR-arrive-NAR-EMPH		
50	nai-e-tshin-εa other-one-village-LOC		i-pə-kəi-tu, DIR-arrive-NAR-LNK				
51	fiala INT	da-qa DIR-go	da-qa DIR-go	da-qa-tu, DIR-go-LNK	fialə there		
52	ŋuə-tu, COP-LNK	da-qa-tu DIR-go-LNK	fiala INT	die-ʃe-m-le: DIR-die-NOM-DEF:CL			
53	zɿ-kui, exist-NAR	wutcupu-le:-ŋuəŋi husband-DEF:CL-TOP	die-ʃe-kui, DIR-die-NAR		wutcupu-le:-ŋuəŋi husband-DEF:CL-TOP		
54	die-ʃe-kui-tu, DIR-die-NAR-LNK	fia-tu, INT-RESULT	lokun sworn.brother	lokun sworn.brother			
55	phəŋjəu friend	fie-se DIR-make(friends)	ŋuə. COP	tca-la where-LOC	tsha-la-εa-ŋuəŋi village-LOC-LOC-TOP		
56	“fia-tsəi INT-this.manner	lokun sworn.brother		fie-se ¹ -ʃ, DIR-make(friends):1pl-LNK			

- 57 *fiə-tseɪ* *fiə-seʰ.*” *fiə-tseɪ-ŋuən̩i*
 INT-this.manner DIR-make(friends):1pl INT-this.manner-TOP
- 58 *fiə-se-kui-wa.* “*ha,* *tse:*
 DIR-make(friends)-NAR-EMPH EXCL this:CL
- 59 *fantsəŋsə* *tha-han* *shenzə* *bələ-s* *ŋuə,”* *ikə*
 †(anyway.is) that:one-kind birthday make-NOM COP thus
- 60 *jə-ŋi,* *fiə-ke:* *tə-bəl-kui.* *fiə-tu* *χu*
 say-ADV INT-INDEF:CL DIR-make-NAR INT-RESULT goods
- 61 *ŋa* *tha-han* *kuan-tha-m* *əzzi* *zɿ-kui.* *fiə-tu*
 COM that:one-kind manage-AUX-NOM a.few exist-NAR INT-RESULT
- 62 *tha-han* *afəʰali* *ma-tʃhə-tɕ* *laχuilai* *χu.*
 that:one-kind †(least.amount) NEG-lack-GEN †(take.back) goods
- 63 *fiə-tu-ŋuən̩i,* “*kuŋatsə* *ŋa* *stumpətʃe*¹²⁰-*ŋuən̩i,* *tsa*
 INT-RESULT-TOP close.relatives COM relatives-TOP here
- 64 *a-la* *tche,* *ʔü-ŋuən̩i* *a-ʃpa* *kə* *lə*
 DIR-come want 2sg-TOP one-place go also
- 65 *fiə-me-se,”* *jə-kui.* *fiə-kə* *jə-kui-tu,*
 DIR-NEG-allow say-NAR INT-thus say-NAR-LNK
- 66 *fiələ* *ə-la-kəi-wa.* *ə-la-kəi-tu,*
 there DIR-come-NAR-EMPH DIR-come-NAR-LNK
- 67 *χaiʃə* *fiəla-ŋuən̩i* *ə-la-kəi-tu,* *tʃi-ŋuən̩i* *tshənpe-khunpe.*
 †(still.is) there-TOP DIR-come-LNK son-TOP smart-capable
- 68 *fiəla-ŋuən̩i* *χaiʃə* *taulə* *tɕi* *kuo jue* *ʃəχəu*
 there-TOP †(still.is) arrive few CL month time/when)
- 69 *i-jə-ɕ* *pe-tu,* *χaiʃə* *fiə-tsa* *z mətʃi*
 one-two-month become-LNK †(still.is) INT-this emperor
- 70 *louqpi-wu* *meʰzə-kui-wa.* *z mətʃi* *tsoqpi-wu*
 DEF:one:family-AGT seek-NAR-EMPH emperor this:family-AGT

71	me ¹ zə-kui-tu, seek-NAR-LNK	“a! EXCL	qa-ηuəŋi 1sg-TOP	ma-k NEG-go
72	fiə-me-se, DIR-NEG-allow	ka:,” go:PRS	fiəla INT	
73	sətsim-le:-ta-ηuəŋi, wife-DEF:CL-LOC-TOP	“a! EXCL	qa 1sg	tha-han that:one-kind
74	ηuə-ξ, COP-LNK	qa-ηuəŋi 1sg-TOP	ma-k NEG-go	fiə-me-se-ξ, DIR-NEG-allow-LNK
				fiə-tu-ηuəŋi INT-RESULT-TOP
75	tʃi son	pe-tu become-LNK	ηuə-tu, COP-LNK	çtçə-p seven-years
				le-ŋi exist-ADV
76	ləyz book	ɑ:-su-k-wa. DIR:INDTV-study-go-DTV	tsi daughter	pe-tu, become-LNK
77	χaiʃə ‡(still.is)	iʃi anything	qa 1sg	me ¹ zə-lə seek-come
				me-tçi, NEG-want
78	nai other	tʃi son	pe-tu become-LNK	ʃəʔə ¹ sui ‡(twelve.years.old)
79	hani-p twelve-year	le-ŋi exist-LNK	fiə-tu INT-RESULT	qa ta:-me ¹ zə-lə-wa,” 1sg INDTV-seek-come-DTV
80	jə-jy. say-ASP	ηuəŋi TOP	sətsim-le:-ta-ηuəŋi wife-DEF:CL-LOC-TOP	ə-χte-jy, DIR-exhort-ASP
81	fiə-tu INT-RESULT	“z mə-ηuəŋi name-TOP	thankhemu Thankhemu	ə-ʃpə-n-pa,” DIR-call-2sg-DTV
				jə-jy, say-ASP
82	“thankhemu-ηuəŋi Thankhemu-TOP	fiə-tsəi INT-this.manner	ə-ʃpə-n-pa, DIR-call-2sg-DTV	fiə-tu INT-RESULT
83	ləyz book	u-su-ŋi DIR-study-ADV	çtçə-p seven-year	le-ŋi, exist-ADV
				kə-ηuə-tu thus-COP-LNK
84	i-pə-l-ŋi DIR-return-come-ADV	qa 1sg	ta:-me ¹ zə-wa.” DIR:INDTV-seek-DTV	fiə-tu, INT-RESULT
85	xsə new(again)	nai-e-fən-βa other-one-CL-LOC	χaiʃə ‡(still.is)	me ¹ zə-lə-m-ηuəŋi seek-come-NOM-TOP

- 86 steke-la ə-dza-lu-kui.
behind-LOC DIR-chase-come-NAR
- 87 ə-dza-lu-kui-tu, χaişə du-φu-ηi
DIR-chase-come-NAR-LNK †(still.is) DIR-run.away-ADV
- 88 kə-jə-kəi-tu, nai-a-şpaq-ta, χaişə
go-REP-NAR-LNK other-one-place-LOC †(still.is)
- 89 ηuəηi wutçupu die-şe-m-le:-ta, wutçupu
TOP husband DIR-die-NOM-DEF:CL-LOC husband
- 90 die-şe-m-le:-ta χaişə fi-a-ke:
DIR-die-NOM-DEF:CL-LOC †(still.is) INT-INDEF:CL
- 91 pe-ηi, qe:¹ şpaşpa fi-a-ke:
become-ADV before same.way INT-INDEF:CL
- 92 tu-tsu-jə-kəi. fi-a-ke: tu-tsu-jə-kəi-tu,
DIR-meet-REP-NAR INT-INDEF:CL DIR-meet-REP-NAR-LNK
- 93 fi-a-ηuəηi χu-pan-tha-luo, fi-la-han-ηuəηi,
INT-TOP goods-manage-AUX-perhaps INT-DEF:one-kind-TOP
- 94 χaişə thu ə-mə-la-z mo-ku-jə-kui.
†(still.is) there DIR-NEG-come-CAUS NEG-willing-REP-NAR
- 95 fi-a-thə ə-la-kəi-tu, xsə me¹zə-lə-m
INT-there DIR-come-NAR-LNK new(again) seek-come-NOM
- 96 i-pə-l-jə-kui “tşi pe-tu, qa me¹zə-lə
DIR-arrive-come-REP-NAR son become-LNK 1sg seek-come
- 97 tche-wa, tşi pe-tu, me¹zə-lə
want-DTV daughter become-LNK seek-come
- 98 me-tche-wa, tşi pe-tu, fi-la çtçə-p
NEG-want-DTV son become-LNK INT seven.years
- 99 le-ηi ləyz a:-su-ku, hodzy-p
exist-ADV book DIR:INDTV-study-go:EMPH ten-year

100	le-ŋi exist-ADV	qa 1sg	ta:-me ¹ z-lə-wa,” DIR:INDTV- <i>seek-come</i> -DTV	fi-a-kə INT-thus			
101	jə-kui-tu. say-NAR-LNK						
102	fi-a-tu INT-RESULT	thankhemu Thankhemu	ŋa COM	likhemu Likhemu	jə-ze two-CL	wu all	tʃi son
103	pe-kui, become-NAR	fi-a-tu, INT-RESULT	α-s-βa-ŋuəŋi one-day-LOC-TOP	da-γz-ŋi DIR-set.out-ADV			
104	χaiʃə, †(still.is)	fi-a-tha INT-there	“ep-te: father-DEF:CL	me ¹ z seek	ka:,” go:PRS:1sg		
105	jə-χua, say-because	“ep-te: father-DEF:CL	me ¹ z seek	ka:,” go:PRS:1sg			
106	jə-χua say-because	ŋuəŋi TOP	da-qa DIR-go	da-qa-kəi-tu, DIR-go-NAR-LNK			
107	ba-la:-βa flat.area.on.side.of.hill-DEF:CL-LOC	e-tʃepe-kəi. DIR-encounter-NAR	fi-a-tu INT-RESULT				
108	tʃhəntitʃin-ŋuəŋi Chen.Diqing-TOP	ep father	ŋuə-w, COP-VIS	ep-le: father-DEF:CL	me ¹ zə-k seek-go		
109	da-qə-kəi-tu, DIR-go-NAR-LNK	fi-ala INT	gue: ¹ -ta-ŋuəŋi road-LOC-TOP	e-tʃepe-kəi. DIR-encounter-NAR			
110	thankhemu-ŋuəŋi Thankhemu-TOP	tə-ke ¹ -l-kəi. DIR-ask-NAR	thankhemu Thankhemu				
111	tə-ke ¹ -l-kəi-tu, DIR-ask-NAR-LNK	“ʔũ 2sg	təa where	ka:-n-a?” go:PRS-2sg-Q	jə-kui, say-NAR	“ʔũ 2sg	
112	təa where	ka:-n-a?” go:PRS--2sg-Q	jə-kui-tu. say-NAR-LNK	“ha, EXCL	qa 1sg	ep father	
113	me ¹ z seek	ka:” go:PRS:1sg	jə-kui. say-NAR	“ʔũ 2sg	ep father	ŋiγi what	z-mə-wa?” call-Q

- 114 jə-tu, “qa-ep tshəntitchin ɲuə-ɲuə,”¹²¹ jə-ji.
say-LNK 1sg-father Chen.Diqing COP-VIS:1sg say-CSM
- 115 thankhemu fiə-tsə “ep lə tshəntitchin ɲuə,
Thankhemu INT-this father also Chen.Diqing COP
- 116 ʔũ qa ma-sun-ʂə,” ikə jə-kui, “qa
2sg 1sg NEG-consider-LNK thus say-NAR 1sg
- 117 ma-sun-ʂə” jə-kui-tu, nə-quaq-təə-i. hai
NEG-consider-LNK say-NAR-LNK DIR-fight-3pl-HS EXCL
- 118 nə-quaq-kei-tu, thankhemu-ɲuəɲi “a, ʔũ ɲa qa
DIR-fight-NAR-LNK Thankhemu-TOP EXCL 2sg COM 1sg
- 119 quəqua ma-qa¹, ʔũ ɲa qa quəqua ma-qa¹,
fight NEG-ought:1pl 2sg COM 1sg fight NEG-ought:1pl
- 120 ə-zə ə-zdz-ʂa,” jə-kui. ə-zə ə-zdz-tu, fiəla
one-CL DIR-rest-HORT say-NAR one-CL DIR-rest-LNK INT
- 121 ə-zə ə-zdz-ɲiantei, thankhemu-jə ba-kəi-ʂə, fiəla
one-CL DIR-rest-after Thankhemu-†(TOP) big-NAR-LNK INT
- 122 tə-ke¹-kui, likhemu tə-ke¹-kui-tu, fiəla
DIR-ask-NAR Likhemu DIR-ask-NAR-LNK INT
- 123 likhemu-ɲuəɲi “ɲi:tsəi ɲuə-zɑ:?” jə-kui-ʂə.
Likhemu-TOP WH.kind COP-CAUS:PRS:1pl say-NAR-LNK
- 124 thankhemu-ɲuəɲi, “ʔũ ɲa qa jə-ze wu tsəi-ɲuəɲi
Thankhemu-TOP 2sg COM 1sg two-CL all this.manner-TOP
- 125 tha-han ep me¹zɛ:¹, ep-te: kənti e:
that:one-kind father seek:1pl father-DEF:CL jointly one:CL
- 126 ɲuə-k-ɑ:¹-təi? ta, iətəi-ɲuəɲi kə-ʂa,”
COP-INF-PRS:1pl-Q INT together-TOP go-HORT
- 127 jə-kui. fiə-thu-ɲuəɲi, quəqua
say-NAR INT-there-TOP fight

128	a-χə-ηi DIR-stop-LNK		da-qə-kəi-ha. DIR-go-NAR-PART		
129		da-qa DIR-go	da-qa DIR-go	da-qə-tu, DIR-go-LNK	fiala INT
130	xsə-tçi-la:-ka god-house(temple)-DEF:CL-LOC		ə-wəi-jə-kəi DIR-stay/live-REP-NAR		ha, INT
131	ə-wəi-jə-kəi-tu, DIR-stay/live-REP-NAR-LNK		fi-a-tu INT-RESULT	“the: maha-ηuəηi 3sg night-TOP	tshəntca Chen.family
132	qapa old.man	ηa COM	tshəntitchin-tçə Chen.Diqing-GEN	kuantausəje, sword.and.bow	fiala-ηuəηi INT-TOP
133	fiala INT	xsə-tçi god-house	piena beside	tə-şuə-jə, DIR-hide-REP	fi-a-kə that.manner
134	səφũ-le:-piena tree-DEF:CL-beside	tə-şuə-jə DIR-hide-REP	ke: INDEF:CL	u-ẓmu-a-wa,” DIR-dream-1sg-EMPH	
135	jə-ji. say-HS	“ha, EXCL	ʔũ, 2sg	qa-tutş 1sg-younger.brother	
136	ηi:ke: WH-INDEF:CL	u-ẓmu-n-a?” DIR-dream-2sg-Q	jə-i-tu, say-HS-LNK	“a, EXCL	qa lə 1sg also
137	fi-a-kə INT-thus	u-ẓmu-a. DIR-dream-1sg	a, EXCL	ta, INT	ʔũ ηa qa a-qəs 2sg COM 1sg one-form
138	we-k-a:¹-tçi? exist-INF-PRS:1pl-Q		kuantausəje sword.and.bow	fi-a-tsəi-ke: INT-this.manner-INDEF:CL	
139	u-ẓmu-a-şə, DIR-dream-1sg-LNK	tshən-ηuəηi Chen-TOP	fi-a-tha INT-there	xsə-tçi-le:-piena-ηuəηi god-house-DEF:CL-beside-TOP	
140	zoḳu-piena-la courtyard-beside-LOC		wətshəi-le:-ta wild.prickly.ash-DEF:CL-LOC		fi-a-l-ηi DIR-look-ADV
141	fi-a-ke-ze INT-INDEF-CL	ẓi-jə exist-REP	kə thus	u-ẓmu-a-wa,” DIR-dream-1sg-EMPH	

- 142 jə-ji. fi-a-tu da-qə-kəi-tu,
say-CSM INT-RESULT DIR-go-NAR-LNK
- 143 ʁatʃi fi-ala gue:¹-le:-piena-ɲuəŋi
really INT road-DEF:CL-beside-TOP
- 144 səφ-lə-jin-tʃa we-s-ta-ɲuəŋi fi-ala
tree-DEF-few-CL exist-NOM-LOC-TOP INT
- 145 tsə-le: lu-ji, tsə fi-e-ɕpi-kei,
water(river)-DEF:CL come(flow)-HS water DIR-thirsty-NAR
- 146 a-i da-qə-kəi-tu, fi-a tsə fi-e-ɕpi-kəi-tu,
one-time DIR-go-NAR-LNK INT water DIR-thirsty-NAR-LNK
- 147 fi-ala ɣqatsəimi-le: fi-a-lə-kui.
INT spring.water-DEF:CL DIR-come-NAR
- 148 fi-a-tu-ɲuəŋi, thankhemu-ɲuəŋi tsə
INT-RESULT-TOP Thankhemu-TOP water
- 149 tə-me¹z-kəi-tu, fi-ala tsə da-tɕ-kəi,
DIR-see-2sg-NAR-LNK there water DIR-find-NAR
- 150 tsə da-tɕ-kəi-tu, ‘likhemu, ʔü-ɲuəŋi tɕhə
water DIR-find-NAR-LNK Likhemu 2sg-TOP drink
- 151 ə-ɣə-n, qa tuwa-le:-ɲuəŋi qe:¹
DIR-stop-2sg 1sg older.brother-DEF:CL-TOP before
- 152 sə-tɕ-la, fi-a-tu sə-tɕh-ɲi qa
DIR-drink-INDTV:1sg INT-RESULT DIR-drink-ADV 1sg
- 153 die-me-ʃa-tu, fi-ala-ɲuəŋi, ʔü lə
DIR-NEG-die:1sg-LNK INT-TOP 2sg also
- 154 ə-tɕhə-n-pa. nai qa die-ʃa-tu,
DIR-drink-2sg-DTV other 1sg DIR-die:1sg-LNK
- 155 ʔü tɕa-tɕhi-n-pa,” jə-kui-tɕu. fi-a-kə
2sg NEG.IMP-drink-2sg-DVT say-NAR-PART INT-thus

- 156 jə-kui-tu, tha-χui-tu, thankhemu sə-tɛ-kəi,
say-NAR-LNK that:one-time-LNK Thankhemu DIR-drink-NAR
- 157 sə-tɛ-kəi-tu fiala zawa-səpan-le:
DIR-drink-NAR-LNK INT stone-†stone.slab-DEF:CL
- 158 fia-que-ji-le: tu-tsu-kəi,
DIR-cover-CSM-DEF:CL DIR-encouter-NAR
- 159 fia-tu e:! tshəntɛa qapa ŋa tshəntitchin
INT-RESULT EXCL Chen.family old.man COM Chen.Diqing
- 160 kuantausəje fiala fie-le-ŋi sə-zə-kui
sword.and.bow INT DIR-pack-ADV exist-CAUS-NAR
- 161 ha, pana quəqua-s pana,
INT thing fight-NOM thing
- 162 kantchi, fia-tha sə-zə-kui-tu,
club INT-there exist-CAUS-NAR-LNK
- 163 tha-han, fia-la-χui-tu, thankhemu-ŋuəŋi tsə
that:one-kind INT-DEF:one-time-LNK Thankhemu-TOP water
- 164 o-qu sə-tɛ-kəi, fiala səpan-le: ɕa-la:
one-mouthful DIR-drink-NAR INT stone.slab-DEF:CL small-DEF:CL
- 165 tə-qe-kəi-tu. ɕa-la:-ji tə-tsi ma-lə-kəi,
DIR-lift-NAR-LNK small-DEF:CL-EXC DIR-lift NEG-able-NAR
- 166 fia-tu “likhemu lə ə-tɕhə-n qa-tutʂu ə-tɕhə-n,”
INT-RESULT Likhemu also DIR-drink-2sg 1sg-little.brother DIR-drink-2sg
- 167 jə-kui-sə, sə-tɛ-tu, fia-la-χui-tu,
say-NAR-LNK DIR-drink-LNK INT-DEF:one-time-LNK
- 168 jə-ze wu u-χsu, u-χsu-ŋi a-than
two-CL all DIR-jump DIR-jump-ADV one-trip
- 169 tə-tsi-kəi-tu, fiala ɕa-la:-ji
DIR-lift-NAR-LNK INT small-DEF:CL-EXC
- 170 tə-me-qe-kəi, ha, a-thən sə-tɛi-tɛ-ʂa, a-thən
DIR-NEG-lift-NAR EXCL one-time DIR-CON-drink-LNK one-time

- 171 sə-tɕi-tɕ-kəi, fɪa-la-χui-tu, sə-tɕ, ʂəpan
DIR-CON-drink-NAR INT-DEF:one-time-LNK DIR-drink stone.slab
- 172 tə-qe-ŋiəufu, fɪa-tha tʂhəntɕa qapə ŋa
DIR-turn.over-LNK(as.soon.as) INT-there Chen.family old.man COM
- 173 tʂhəntitɕhin-wu panə tə-ʂuə-jə, fɪa kuantausəje
Chen.Diqing-AGT thing DIR-hide-CSM INT sword.and.bow
- 174 fɪa-la-han fɪala i-le-ŋi ʂə-kui, fɪa-tu
INT-DEF:one-kind there DIR-pack-ADV exist-NAR INT-RESULT
- 175 tə-xtɕe-kəi, tə-xtɕe-ŋi he-tɕy-ŋi
DIR-take.out-NAR DIR-take.out-ADV DIR-carry-ADV
- 176 da-qə-kəi. a-i da-qə-kəi-tu, fɪala
DIR-go-NAR one-time DIR-go-NAR-LNK INT
- 177 gue:¹-guχu-la x sə-tɕi-le:-ɕa
road-upper.part-LOC god-house-DEF:CL-LOC
- 178 sin-le:-ta fɪa-l-ŋi ʂi-kui-wa,
lion-DEF:CL-LOC DIR-look-ADV exist-NAR-EMPH
- 179 fɪalə ʂi-kui-tu, ‘‘ha qa tʂhəntitɕhin
there exist-NAR-LNK INT 1sg Chen.Diqing
- 180 ŋa tʂhəntɕa qapə-tɕ fɪa sin ŋuə-n-ʂa
COM Chen.family old.man-GEN INT lion COP-2sg-LNK
- 181 qap fɪa-ɕu-n,¹²² sin ma-ŋuə-n-ʂa, tu
head DIR-throw-2sg lion NEG-COP-2sg-LNK RESULT
- 182 qap fɪa-tɕi-ɕu-n, tɕile dza:-n-ʂa,
head DIR-NEG.IMP-throw-2sg 1pl eat:PRS-2sg-LNK
- 183 ə-zə-n, nai tɕile-tɕ sin ŋuə-n-tu,
DIR-eat-2sg other 1pl-GEN lion COP-2sg-LNK
- 184 fɪala qap fɪa-ɕu-n, jə-kui. fɪala ŋuə-ŋi,
there head DIR-throw-2sg say-NAR there COP-ADV

185	qap head	fia-βu-kui, DIR-throw-NAR	qap head	fia-βu-kui-tu, DIR-throw-NAR-LNK	fialə there
186	ηuə-tu, COP-LNK	kuantausəje sword.and.bow	sin lion	tə-qətʃi-ŋi DIR-ride-ADV	
187	da-qə-kəi-wa. DIR-go-NAR-EMPH	sin lion	tə-qətʃi-ŋi DIR-ride-ADV		
188	da-qə-kəi-tu, DIR-go-NAR-LNK	fia-tu INT-RESULT	jautsan man.eating.demon		
189	pe-m become-NOM	fia-tu INT-RESULT	z mətʃi-le:-tə, emperor-DEF:CL-GEN		
190	fia-tse:-ηuəŋi, INT-this:CL-TOP	fata INT	thankhemu Thankhemu	ŋa COM	likhemu, Likhemu
191	the-wu that-ABL	tshəntə Chen.family	qapə, old.man	tshəntitʃin-ηuəŋi, Chen.Diqing-TOP	
192	tshəntə Chen.family	qapə-ηuəŋi old.man-TOP	qe:ʔ before	jitein †(already)	jautsan man.eating.demon
193	dzemi Dzemi	pe-m-le:-wu become-NOM-DEF:CL-AGT	ʃpəl kidney	ŋa COM	ətci:mi heart
194	ha-xtʃe-ŋi DIR-take.out-ADV	jitein †(already)	the-xʃepi-βa that-side-LOC	ə-βa-s-ta DIR-go-NOM-LOC	
195	fiala INT	tə-pian-tha-kəi, DIR-change-AUX-NAR	tha there	tə-pian-tha-ŋiantʃi, DIR-change-AUX-after	
196	gantsə saddle	χua-m sell-NOM	fiala there	zi-kəi. exist-NAR	
197	gantsə saddle	χua-m sell-NOM	tha there	zi-kəi-tu, exist-NAR-LNK	fiala INT
198	thankhemu Thankhemu	ŋa COM	likhemu-ηuəŋi Likhemu-TOP	fia-tha INT-there	meʔz-kə seek-go

- 199 ha-qa. tshəntitchin me¹z-kə ha-qə-kə-wa.
 DIR-go Chen.Diqing seek-go DIR-go-INF-EMPH
- 200 tshəntitchin me¹z ha-qa-tu, fiāla tshəntəa
 Chen.Diqing seek DIR-go-LNK INT Chen.family
- 201 qapə-ŋuəŋi fiāla tə-pian-tha, tə-pian-tha-tu,
 old.man-TOP there DIR-change-AUX DIR-change-AUX-LNK
- 202 fiāla gantsə-ŋuəŋi fiāla sin le-tue-ta fiā-şə-tə,
 INT saddle-TOP INT lion DEF-pair-LOC DIR-put-GEN
- 203 fiə-şu kə fiā-thə tə-bəl-ŋiantəi
 DIR-wash.clean thus INT-there DIR-make-after
- 204 gantsə ɣua-m fiālə ə-tə-kəi, fiā-tu
 saddle sell-NOM there DIR-stop-NAR INT-RESULT
- 205 thankhemu ŋa likhemu i-pə-k-tu, fiāla ʁə-men
 Thankhemu COM Likhemu DIR-arrive-go-LNK INT city-gate
- 206 fiə-tsu-ji-la:-ka fiāla, “ʔile tɕa: ka:-i-wa?”
 DIR-stand.up-CSM-DEF:CL-LOC there 2pl where:LOC go:PRS-2pl-Q
- 207 jə-tu, “tɕile tshəntitchin me¹z le¹-wa,”
 say-LNK 1pl Chen.Diqing seek come:1pl-EMPH
- 208 jə-kui. “a, gantsə pa:-ji-ŋua?” jə-kui-tu.
 say-NAR EXCL saddle buy:PRS-2pl-Q say-NAR-LNK
- 209 “a, tɕile sin-la:-ka ɣoşu-şə
 EXCL 1pl lion-DEF:CL-LOC fit-LNK
- 210 fiā-ş-şā. nai mo-ɣoşu-tu mā-pə¹-wa,”
 DIR-put-HORT other NEG-fit-LNK NEG-buy:1pl-EMPH
- 211 jə-ji. fiā-tu fiā-ş-kəi, fiā-ş-kəi-tu, qhuat
 say-HS INT-RESULT DIR-put-NAR DIR-put-NAR-LNK as.it.happens
- 212 tə-ş-ŋike tu te-qe me-tchi, fiā-tsəi
 DIR-grow-after RESULT DIR-reveal NEG-want INT-this.manner

213	tə-ʃ-ŋike DIR-grow-after	fiɑ-kə INT-thus	pe-kui, become-NAR	fiɑ-tu INT-RESULT	thankhemu Thankhemu	ŋɑ COM
214	likhemu-ŋuəŋi Likhemu-TOP	sin lion	tə-qtʃi-ŋi DIR-ride-ADV	kuantausəje sword.and.bow		
215	he-tɕy-ŋi DIR-carry-ADV		ə-qɑ-kəi. DIR-go-NAR			
216		ə-qɑ-tu, DIR-go-LNK	fiɑ-tu INT-RESULT	jautsan man.eating.demon	dzemi Dzemi	
217	wutɕupu-ŋuəŋi husband-TOP	fiɑlɑ INT	titau †tunnel	tə-xkue-ŋi DIR-dig-ADV		
218	fiɑ-tsəi INT-this.manner		ə-ʃ-jy-kui-wɑ, DIR-put-ASP-NAR-EMPH	fiɑ-tu INT-RESULT		
219	tʃhəntitʃin-tɕə Chen.Diqing-GEN		gue ¹ -ŋɑ army-COM	nə-qua-kui-ʃ, DIR-fight-NAR-LNK		
220	tʃi male/son	thankhemu Thankhemu	ŋɑ COM	likhemu Likhemu		
221	tʃhəntitʃin Chen.Diqing	ŋi:-epə-tɕ 3sgREFL-father-GEN		gue ¹ -ŋɑ army-COM		
222	nə-qua-kəi-wɑ, DIR-fight-NAR-EMPH		fiɑ-tu INT-RESULT	nə-qua-ŋi DIR-fight-ADV		
223	fiɑlɑ there	ŋuə-tu, COP-LNK	steke behind	ŋi:-epə-te:-tɕ 3sgREFL-father-DEF:CL-GEN		
224	gue ¹ -ŋuəŋi army-TOP		nə-qəti DIR-beat.to.death	da-s. DIR-finish		
225	nə-qəti DIR-beat.to.death	da-s-tu, DIR-finish-LNK	fiɑlɑ there	jautsan man.eating.demon		
226	dzemi Dzemi	fiɑ-tsoqpi-tɕ INT-this:family-GEN	zɕmətʃi emperor	fiɑ-tse:-wu INT-this:CL-AGT		

227	taitaula, ‡(catch)	tə-tsəqqa-ku, DIR-catch-NAR	fiə-tu INT-RESULT	tshəntitchin Chen.Diqing	lə also	
228	nə-χs-ku. DIR-tie.up-NAR	nə-χs-ŋi DIR-tie.up-ADV	fiə-the-wu, INT-that-ABL	thankhemu Thankhemu		
229	ŋa COM	likhemu-ŋuəŋi Likhemu-TOP	titau-ɓa tunnel-LOC	a-ɓũ-ŋi DIR-throw-ADV		
230	ŋissues nearly.dead	me-le:-tɕ-ŋuəŋi NEG-exist-GEN-TOP		sipe medicine	da-ctɕ-jə, DIR-feed-CSM	
231	sipe medicine	da-ctɕ-jə-ku-tu, DIR-feed-CSM-NAR-LNK	fiə-tu INT-RESULT			
232	nə-χs-ŋi DIR-tie.up-ADV	χaişə ‡(still.is)	ŋi:-ep-te:-ŋa 3sgREFL-father-DEF:CL-COM	fiəla INT		
233	əŋuə together	nə-χs-ŋi DIR-tie.up-ADV	i-ci-ku. DIR-put-NAR	fiə-tu INT-RESULT	ep-te:-ŋuəŋi father-DEF:CL-TOP	
234	fiəla there	ke ^l -jy, ask-ASP	şku-z orangutan-talk	pu-jy, ¹²³ do-ASP	fiə-tsəi INT-this.manner	
235	şku-z orangutan-talk	fiə-pu-ŋi, DIR-do-ADV	“hã, EXCL	qa 1sg	fiələ there	ə-χte DIR-exhort
236	la-han DEF:one-kind	tşi male/son	pe-ka:-ji,” become-INF:PRS-CSM	ikə-jə-ŋi thus-say-ADV	fiə-kə INT-thus	
237	ə-χte-ku, DIR-exhort-NAR	fiə-tu INT-RESULT	thankhemu Thankhemu	ŋa COM	likhemu-ŋuəŋi Likhemu-TOP	
238	χaişəχuijələjitian, ‡(also.recalled.a.little)		fiə-tsəi-ŋi INT-this.manner-ADV		ctɕũ thought(n.)	
239	zə-la-ŋi, DIR-come-ADV	a, EXCL	ep-te:-wu father-DEF:CL-AGT	fiə-tsəi INT-this.manner		
240	fiə-dzi-kui, DIR-say-NAR	şku-z orangutan-talk	fiə-dzi-ŋi DIR-say-ADV	“tşi male/son		

241	pe-ka:-ji, become-INF:PRS-CSM	tʃi male/son	pe-tu become-LNK	ɕtɕə-p seven-year	le-ŋi exist-ADV		
242	ləʏz book	ɑ:-su-wa, DIR:INDTV-study-DTV		the-wu that-ABL	hatʃi-p eleven-year		
243	le-ŋi exist-ADV	qa 1sg	ta:-me ¹ z-wa, DIR:INDTV-look-DVT		nai other		
244	steke-le:-ŋuəŋi behind-DEF:CL-TOP	likhemu Likhemu	ə-ʃp-ŋi, DIR-call-ADV		likhemu-ŋuəŋi Likhemu-TOP		
245	hotɕu-p ten-year	le-ŋi exist-ADV	qa 1sg	ta:-me ¹ z-lə-wa, DIR:INDTV-look-come-DTV			
246	tʃi male/son	pe-tu,” become-LNK	fiɑ-kə INT-thus	jə-kui-wa, say-NAR-EMPH			
247	fiɑ-tu INT-RESULT	ʃku-z orangutan-talk	pə-kəi. do-NAR	fiɑ-tu INT-RESULT			
248	ep-te:-ŋuəŋi father-DEF:CL-TOP	fiɑ-kə INT-thus	jə-kui-tɕu. say-NAR-PART		thankhemu-ŋuəŋi, Thankhemu-TOP		
249	“ʔü 2sg	ŋɑ COM	qa 1sg	ŋiʏi what	bəl-lə do-come		
250	hɑ-lə ¹ , DIR-come:1pl	qa-tutʃ,” 1sg-younger.brother		jə-kui, say-NAR	fiɑ-tu INT-RESULT		
251	fiɑ-kə INT-thus	jə-kui-tu. say-NAR-LNK	“ɑ EXCL	ʔü 2sg	ŋɑ COM	qa 1sg	ep father
252	me ¹ z seek	lə ¹ -ŋi,” come:1p-ADV	jə-kui, say-NAR	“ep father	me ¹ z seek	lə ¹ ,” come:1pl	
253	likhemu-ŋuəŋi Likhemu-TOP	kə-jə-kui. thus-say-NAR	fiɑ-lɑ-χui-tu, INT-DEF:one-time-LNK		ep-te:-tu, father-DEF:CL-LNK		
254	e! EXCL	fiɑ-ʃəŋi-kə-tɕi-jə, DIR-discuss-go-3pl-HS	“ta, INT	qa 1sg	ʔile 2pl	ep father	
255	ŋuə-k-ɑ,” COP-INF-1sg	ikə thus	jə-kui. say-NAR				

256	fi-a-kə INT-thus	jə-kui-tu, say-NAR-LNK		fi-a-ʂəŋi, DIR-discuss	
257	fi-a-ʂəŋi DIR-discuss	ka-han INDEF:one-kind	ŋuə-tu, COP-LNK	me'ʂ-ta-s-ɛa-ŋuəŋi next-DEF:one-day-LOC-TOP	
258	qəti-s, beat.to.death-NOM		fiata INT	tshəntitchin Chen.Diqing	
259	ŋa COM	thankhemu, Thankhemu	likhemu Likhemu	tsəzzi-ŋuəŋi these.people-TOP	
260	fiala there	jautsan man.eating.demon	dzemi Dzemi	wutcupu-le:-ŋuəŋi, husband-DEF:CL-TOP	
261	χaiʂə †(still.is)	z mətʂi-le: emperor-DEF:CL	ŋuə-kəi-ŋi, COP-NAR-ADV		
262	χaiʂə †(still.is)	qəti-s beat.to.death-NOM		ə-ʂ-jy, DIR-release-ASP	
263	jautsan man.eating.demon		dzemi Dzemi	tse:-wu this:CL-AGT	
264	χaiʂə †(still.is)	laupeci †ordinary.citizens	lə also	qusu very.many	ə-tʂən-tha, DIR-kill-AUX
265	gue' army	ŋa COM	tha-han, that:one-kind	tshenʂə dispute	qusu very.many
266	tə-qa-z-kui-wa. DIR-go-CAUS-NAR-EMPH		fi-a-tu INT-RESULT	qusu very.many	
267	tə-qa-z-ŋi DIR-go-CAUS-ADV		fi-a-ka-han INT-INDEF:one-kind	ŋuə-kui-tu. COP-NAR-LNK	
268	fi-a-tu INT-RESULT	tshəntitchin-ŋuəŋi Chen.Diqing-TOP	fi-a-tu INT-RESULT	tijikuojautchiu, †(first.demand)	
269	“soqho-ŋuəŋi tomorrow-TOP	tɕile 1pl	ʂe die	ɛze-jy, must-ASP	fiala-ŋuəŋi, that-TOP
270	ʔü-sətsim-le:-ŋuəŋi 2sg-wife-DEF:CL-TOP	tɕile 1pl	χaiʂə †(still.is)	tɕa: where:LOC	mi-le: person-DEF:CL

271	ηυə, COP	α-şə one-time	u-tçu DIR-see	tche, want	quaha-χupi face-appearance	lə also
272	u-mu-tçu-le, DIR-NEG-see-because		tçile 1pl	qəti kill		fiə-me-se.” DIR-NEG-allow
273	z mətşi-le:-ta-ηυəηi emperor-DEF:CL-DAT-TOP		fiə-kə INT-thus		jautçhiu-tu-pu-k-kui-stu. demand-DIR-do-go-NAR-PART	
274	fiə-tu INT-RESULT	wutşhu-pu-m-le-γlə-ta, help-do-NOM-DEF-pl-LOC			fiə-kə INT-thus	
275	jə-kui-tu, say-NAR-LNK		fiə-kə INT-thus		jə-kui-tu, say-NAR-LNK	
276	“mi person	χaişə †(still.is)	u-tçu DIR-see	fiə-se-wa,” DIR-allow-EMPH		jə-kui, say-NAR
277	“khuoji †(is.possible)	təp-ηi tomorrow-ADV		şe-βze-jə-u-ηi die-must-CSM-VIS-ADV		
278	α-ş one-time	u-tçu DIR-see		ηυə COP	lə also	khuoji,” †(is.possible)
279	jə-kui-şə. say-NAR-LNK	fiə-tu INT-RESULT	z mətşi-le:-ηυəηi emperor-DEF:CL-TOP		sətsim-le: wife-DEF:CL	
280	fiə-tha INT-there	me ¹ ş-ta-s-ka next-DEF:one-day-LOC	z mu meeting		tsu-s-ta-ηυəηi hold-NOM-LOC-TOP	
281	sətsim-le: wife-DEF:CL		tşhetsə-quə-ta-ηυəηi cart-top-LOC-TOP		he-tçhi-kəi, DIR-bring-NAR	
282	fiə-tha-ηυəηi, INT-there-TOP	tshəntitchin-ηυəηi, Chen.Diqing-TOP		“a! EXCL	otsuqua-ηi-ηυəηi morning-ADV-TOP	
283	tçile-tç 1pl-GEN	jautçhiu demand	tçiuşə, †(that.is)	ηiuxuan-ηυəηi bezoar-TOP		α-tç, one-catty
284	the-wu, that-ABL	kanthan †charcoal	mudzu-ηυəηi charcoal-TOP	α-w one-pile	phə blow(burn)	
285	tche-wa, want-DTV	tçile 1pl	tu-jü-ηi DIR-stand-ADV	za: exist:PRS	?ile-wu 2pl-AGT	tçile 1pl

- 286 tchanpi-pa:-j-jə-ʂ qətia:-i ji, fiə-thu-ŋuəŋi,
 †shoot-do:PRS-2pl-say-LNK kill:PRS-2pl say INT-there-TOP
- 287 tɕile putu-la-ŋuəŋi kanthan a-w phə
 1pl front-LOC-TOP charcoal one-pile blow(burn)
- 288 tche-wa,” jə-kui-tɕu. fiə-tu χaiʂə “khuoji
 want-DTV say-NAR-PART INT-RESULT †(still.is) †(is.possible)
- 289 fie-se,” jə-kui-ʂə, zmətʂi-le:-ŋuəŋi kə-jə-kui.
 DIR-allow say-NAR-LNK emperor-DEF:CL-TOP thus-say-NAR
- 290 fiə-tu ŋiuxuan i-se-kui, fiə-tu zmu tsu
 INT-RESULT bezoar DIR-burn-NAR INT-RESULT meeting hold
- 291 χaiʂə ŋuəŋi mi jautsan dzemi-le:
 †(still.is) TOP person man.eating.demon Dzemi-DEF:CL
- 292 lə ha-l-kəi, zmətʂi lə ha-l-kəi,
 also DIR-come-NAR emperor also DIR-come-NAR
- 293 zmu-tsu thontʂə-tu-pŋ-ŋi fiata
 meeting-hold †notify-DIR-do-ADV INT
- 294 ha-lə-kui, ha-lə-kui-tu fiata
 DIR-come-NAR DIR-come-NAR-LNK INT
- 295 tha-s-ɛa-tu, fiə-thizzi-ŋuəŋi tchanpi-pu-tɕ, fiata
 that:one-day-LOC-LNK INT-3dl-TOP †shoot-do-GEN INT
- 296 qəti qəzdzi-jə-kui. fiə-tu qəti qəzdzi-jə-kui-tu,
 kill prepare-CSM-NAR INT-RESULT kill prepare-CSM-NAR-LNK
- 297 χaiʂə tha-han ŋuə-ku-wa, fiə-tu-ŋuəŋi, fiə-tha
 †(still.is) that:one-kind COP-NAR-EMPH INT-RESULT-TOP INT-there
- 298 tʂhetsə-məq iɕtɕi sə-l-ŋi zmətʂi-le: ŋa
 cart-top together DIR-look-ADV emperor-DEF:CL COM
- 299 zmətʂi sətʂim jautsan dzemi, fiə-tha
 emperor wife man.eating.demon Dzemi INT-there

300	sə-l-ŋi DIR-look-LNK	ʒi-tu. exist-LNK	fiala INT	tshəntitchin-wu Chen.Diqing-AGT			
301	ŋiuχuan-le-ste, bezoar-DEF-CL	kanthan-məq-ta charcoal-top-LOC	ŋiuχuan-le-ste bezoar-DEF-CL				
302	ʂə-ku-tu, put/place-NAR-LNK	fiala INT	fia-tsu INT-here	ʒmitʂi emperor			
303	sətsim-le: wife-DEF:CL	jautsan man.eating.demon	ŋuə-ku-ʂ. COP-NAR-LNK				
304	jautsan-le:-ŋuəŋi man.eating.demon-DEF:CL-TOP		dzə big.teeth	fia-lə-kəi-stun. DIR-come-NAR-PART			
305	“ha, EXCL	pəs-ŋuəŋi today-TOP	ʒmətʂi emperor	sətsim-le: wife-DEF:CL			
306	tɕiutɕin †(actually	ʂə COP)	mi-le: person-DEF:CL	ŋuə-ŋuə? COP-Q			
307	jautsan man.eating.demon	ŋuə, COP	?ile 2pl	a-ʂ one-time	i-tse-i-wa, DIR-look-2pl-DTV		
308	fia-tse:-wu INT-this:CL-AGT	laupeɕin †ordinary.citizens	ŋa COM	gue ¹ soldier	ŋa COM	tha-han that:one-kind	
309	qusu very.many	sunʂə loss	tə-qa-ʒə-ʂ, DIR-go-CAUS-LNK	fia-tse:-ŋuəŋi INT-this:CL-TOP	?ileile 2plREFL		
310	i-tse-i-wa,” DIR-look-2pl-DTV	jə-kui-stu. say-NAR-PART	fia-kə INT-thus	jə-kui-tu, say-NAR-LNK			
311	“a! EXCL	ʒat truly	ŋuə” COP	jə-ŋi, say-ADV	“ʒat truly	ŋuə” COP	jə-j. say-CSM
312	fia-the-wu, INT-that-ABL	“ʒmətʂi emperor	nə-qəti, DIR-kill	fia INT	ʒmətʂi emperor	taipu, †capture	
313	tə-tsəqa, DIR-capture	fialə INT	fie-me-se, DIR-NEG-allow	ʒatɕhi truly	ŋuə, COP	kə thus	
314	fia-kə INT-thus	thauluan †discuss	fia-qə-ŋi,” DIR-go-ADV	jə-kui-stun. say-NAR-PART			

- 315 *fiələ* *ke-ŋuə-kui-tu,* *fiə-lə-χui-tu*
 INT thus-COP-NAR-LNK INT-DEF:one-time-LNK
- 316 *tɕiu* *tshəntitchin* *ŋɑ* *thankhemu,* *likhemu* *fiətə* *tɕiu*
 †(then) Chen.Diqing COM Thankhemu Likhemu INT †(then)
- 317 *tsoqpi* *ŋɑ* *phinfaŋla,* *fiə* *zə*
 this:family COM †(redressed) INT affair
- 318 *fiə-qə-zə-k-wa,* *zə* *fiə-qə-z-ŋi*
 DIR-go-CAUS-INF-EMPH affair DIR-go-CAUS-ADV
- 319 *fiə-ke* *ŋuə-tu,* *χaişə* *fiələ*
 INT-thus COP-LNK †(still.is) INT
- 320 *tɕiu* *akha,* *tɕiu-lə* *lu-k.* *təu-lə*
 †(then) slow home-LOC come-INF home-LOC
- 321 *lu-kə:-tu,* *χaişə* *me'χ,* *sətsim* *lə-han,*
 come-INF-LNK †(still.is) pitiful wife DEF:one-kind
- 322 *thankhemu* *ŋɑ* *likhemu-tɕ* *mɑ:* *ŋɑ*
 Thankhemu COM Likhemu-GEN mama COM
- 323 *lə-han* *me'z* *kə-tɕi,* *me'z*
 DEF:one-kind seek go-3pl seek
- 324 *kə-tu,* *χaişə,* *fiələ* *tə-me'z-ŋi* *dzu-ŋuəŋi*
 go-LNK †(still.is) there DIR-seek-ADV guest-TOP
- 325 *xsə-s* *da-ɕtɕ-k-wa,* *tə-me'z-ŋi,* *dzu* *xsə-s*
 three-day DIR-host/feed-INF-EMPH DIR-seek-ADV guest three-day
- 326 *da-ɕtɕ-kə:-tu,* *χaişə* *da-ɕtɕ-kə-ŋi,*
 DIR-host/feed-go-LNK †(still.is) DIR-host/feed-go-LNK
- 327 *xsə-s* *da-ɕtɕ-ŋi* *xsə-s-ɔɑ* *tɕiu*
 three-day DIR-host/feed-ADV three-day-LOC †(then)
- 328 *i-me-tɕi-pə-l,* *fiətə* *yzə-s-ta-s-ɔɑ*
 DIR-NEG-CON-arrive-come INT four-day-DEF:one-day-LOC
- 329 *da-tɕ-kə-tu,* *fiələ* *tsi*
 DIR-find-go-LNK there woman

- 330 su-γdu:-la zə-m fiə,-kəzzi pe-kui,
DIR-left.over-LOC exist-NOM INT-INDEF:two:CL become-NAR
- 331 fiə-tu fiə-ke pe-kui-tu, a! fiəla
INT-RESULT INT-thus become-NAR-LNK EXCL INT
- 332 sə-xşə-s-ta zə-m fiəla
DIR-be.last-NOM-LOC exist-NOM INT
- 333 tsəzzi-ηuəηi thankhemu ηa likhemu-tə ma:
this:two:CL-TOP Thankhemu COM Likhemu-GEN mama
- 334 ləzzi-ηuəηi do-qu-kəi, ‘ha!, təile
DEF:two:CL-TOP DIR-afraid-NAR EXCL 1pl
- 335 tsoqpi, təile-apə lə tse-ze
this:family 1pl-grandfather also this-CL
- 336 jəpəq-ta die-şə-jy, fiə! ?ile
hand-LOC DIR-die-ASP:EVID EXCL 1pl
- 337 ep-te: lə tsoqpi ηa quəqua-s-ta-ηuəηi
father-DEF:CL also this:family COM fight-NOM-LOC-TOP
- 338 die-şə-jə-ka:-ji, me-z-i-jy, qa-tşi-ηa
DIR-die-REP-INF:PRS-CSM NEG-exist-ASP:EVID 1sg-son-COM
- 339 tha-han ho-jy-ηi, təal kə ma-n-jy-a,
that:one-kind DIR-set.out-ADV where:LOC go NEG-know-ASP-1sg
- 340 χaişə təile tsoqpi jəpa-q şə ʁza:”
†(still.is) 1pl this:family hand-top die must
- 341 təau-zəbə-kə-ηi,
think.to.oneself-INF-ADV fiə-ke zəbotəu-kəi,
INT-thus think-NAR
- 342 etci:miq-ta-ηuəηi, etci:miq-ta fiə-ke zəbotəu
heart-LOC-TOP heart-LOC INT-thus think
- 343 ka-han ηuə-kəi-tu, fiəla γzə-s-ta-s-ka
INDEF:one-kind COP-NAR-LNK INT four-day-DEF:one-day-LOC

344	zə-la-tu, DIR-come-LNK	“sə-xşə-s-ta DIR-be.last-NOM-LOC	fiala INT	ɲuə-tu, COP-LNK	tsa here
345	a-ş one-time	u-lu DIR-come	tche-wa,” want-EMPH		
346	jə-tu, say-LNK	ku mountain	nə-qua-kəi-wa, DIR-overturn-NAR-EMPH		
347	ku mountain	nə-qhua-ɲi DIR-overturn-ADV	fia-ka-han INT-INDEF:one-kind		
348	ɲuə-jə-tu, COP-HS-LNK	hai! EXCL	me-tchi NEG-want	fia-tha INT-there	
349	wutşhu-fio-pu, help-DIR-do	thankhemu Thankhemu	ɲa COM	likhemu-tə Likhemu-GEN	
350	şaşəu †assassin	he-ci-ɲi, DIR-send-ADV	wutşhu-pu-m-le-yle helper-do-NOM-DEF-pl		
351	he-ci-ɲi DIR-send-ADV	ɲuə-tu, COP-LNK	fiala INT	“tsa here	
352	u-lu DIR-come	tche, want	sə-xşə-s-ta DIR-last-NOM-LOC	zə-m exist-NOM	
353	ləzzi-ɲuəɲi DEF:two:CL-TOP	tsa here	a-ş one-while	i-le DIR-bring	
354	tche-wa,” want-DTV	jə-kui-wa, say-NAR-EMPH	fia-tu INT-RESULT	i-tchi-kəi, DIR-bring-NAR	
355	i-tchi-kəi-tu, DIR-bring-NAR-LNK	fiala INT	kəntau immediately	fiala INT	
356	fusan-tu-pu-ɲi help.up ¹²⁴ -DIR-do-ADV	fa clothing	tə-ləla-kəi-wa, DIR-change-NAR-EMPH		
357	fa clothing	tə-ləla-ɲiau DIR-change-LNK	kəntau immediately		
358	ɲuə-ɲi COP-ADV	fia-tsəizzi-ɲuəɲi INT-this:two:CL-TOP	fiala INT	ma: mama	ɲa COM

- 359 *fi*a-l*a*-han, thankhemu *ŋ*a likhemu ma:
 INT-DEF:one-kind Thankhemu COM Likhemu mama
- 360 *la*-han-*ŋ*uə*ŋ*i fa tə-lə*l*a-*ŋ*iaufu
 DEF:one-kind-TOP clothing DIR-change-LNK(as.soon.as)
- 361 *k*əntau *χ*ai*ʂ*ə *fi*a-kə tə-bəl-kui-wa.
 immediately †(still.is) INT-thus DIR-do-NAR-EMPH

Narrator: Yu Zelong 余澤龍
 Born 1960
 Recorded 1996

The Old Man of the Chen Family

Long ago there was an old man named Chen and another person. Every day they went hunting. They made a living hunting. One day they went up the mountain to hunt but didn't get a single animal. In a mountain cave they saw a snake and said, "Today we didn't get anything. It looks like we'll have to return empty-handed. It's better to kill [this snake] we've just seen with one shot." After they shot it once, [it turned out that] this wasn't a snake at all, but was an evil demon that ate people. He strangled it to death. She was the wife of the emperor (today we say /z*m*ət*ʂ*i/, before we said /j*u*ən*k*u*a*i/ for 'emperor'), and had changed into an evil demon who ate people. ... The emperor said "Go find her", and sent people to find her. (After they found her) this evil demon who ate people pretended to be sick. The emperor asked, "What illness do you have? The doctor can't cure it. What will you do?" The evil demon who ate people answered, "If I eat the kidney and heart of Old Man Chen, I can be cured."

The emperor sent soldiers to find Old Man Chen. Old Man Chen's son was called Chen Diqing. Old Man Chen could foretell people's future. He divined his own future and said to his son Chen Diqing, "They are looking for me, son. Hurry and leave. I cannot escape. Because that day in the mountain cave I saw a snake, this snake (evil demon who eats people) will come looking for me. Only by eating my kidney and heart can its illness be cured. Chen Diqing, you hurry and escape. I cannot run away." The old man's son, Chen Diqing, ran away and arrived at another village. It happened that when he arrived at the other village, there was a woman whose husband had just died. He made friends there. The widow's family and friends made him stay

there. "You cannot go anyplace." So he stayed there. He was both smart and capable.

A couple of months passed and the emperor's family was again looking for him. He said to his wife, "I must go. I will go. (When our child is born) if he is a boy, make him go study when he is seven. If it is a girl, don't look for me. If it is a boy, have him come look for me when he is twelve. Give him the name "Thankhemu". At seven have him go study and after he returns, have him come look for me." Later the people of another village came to look for Chen Diqing and Chen Diqing fled.

He arrived at another place and met another widow whose husband had just died, and again stayed at the widow's. Again some people came looking for him and he said to the widow. "If our child is a boy, have him come look for me. If it is a girl, you/she needn't look for me. If you give birth to a boy, have him go study at seven, and at ten come look for me. (His name should be Likhemu)."

Thankhemu and Likhemu were both boys. One day each said "I will go find my father", and they set out to go find their father. After walking a while, the two met each other in a river valley. Thankhemu asked Likhemu, "Where are you going?" Likhemu said, "I'm going to find my father." Thankhemu further asked, "What is your father's name?" Likhemu said, "He's called Chen Diqing." Thankhemu said, "My father is also called Chen Diqing. You aren't to be considered me." In this manner, the two started to fight. After fighting a while, Thankhemu said, "Let's not fight. Let's rest a minute." After resting a while, Thankhemu, who was older than Likhemu, asked Likhemu, "Now what shall we do? Both of us are looking for our father (Chen Diqing), and our father is perhaps one person. Let's go together." So the two of them stopped fighting and went together.

After walking a while, they put up at a temple. "Last night I dreamed I saw Old Man Chen and Chen Diqing's sword and bow hidden under a tree by the temple." Thankhemu said. Likhemu said, "I dreamed the same." Thankhemu said, "We both saw the sword and bow in our dreams. Could it be the same? We dreamed the sword and bow were on a wild prickly ash tree beside the temple courtyard." They went on again for a while, and in fact there were some trees beside the road. The two of them were very thirsty. Thankhemu went to look for some water. After finding water, Thankhemu said to Likhemu, "Likhemu, don't drink. Let me, your older brother, drink first. If I don't die after drinking, then you drink. If I die, then don't drink." Thankhemu then drank. When he drank the water he encountered a stone slab cover. Eh! Old Man Chen and Chen Diqing's sword and bow were put there, a thing for fighting, a club, was there. Thankhemu drank a mouthful of water and lifted the stone slab. He could only lift it a little bit.

“Likhemu, you drink too.” Likhemu drank also, and the two of them together again lifted the stone slab. They still could only lift it a little way. The two drank a mouthful of water again and they turned over the stone slab, and then they saw Old Man Chen and Chen Diqing’s sword and bow hidden inside and took them out. They went on again for a while, carrying the sword and bow, and then there was a lion looking down at them from within a temple above the road. The two of them said, “If you are (my) Chen Diqing and Old Man Chen’s lion, then nod your head. If not, don’t nod your head. If you are going to eat us, then eat us. If you are our lion, then nod your head.” The head was nodded. Thankhemu and Likhemu rode on the lion and went on. After Old Man Chen’s heart and kidney had been taken out by the evil demon who ate people, he became a person who sold horse saddles (by the gate to the city). When Thankhemu and Likhemu went out to find their father, they saw the old man there selling horse saddles. When Thankhemu and Likhemu arrived at the city gate, Old Man Chen asked them, “Where are you going?” The two of them answered, “We’re going to find Chen Diqing.” The old man also asked, “Will you buy a saddle?” They said, “If it fits our lion, we will buy it. If not, we won’t.” They tried it and it fit just right, so they bought it. Riding a lion and carrying the sword and bow, Thankhemu and Likhemu entered (the city).

The husband of the evil demon who ate people had already prepared a pit as a trap there. They fought with Chen Diqing’s army, and Thankhemu and Likhemu fought with their own father’s army. Later Chen Diqing’s soldiers were beaten to death. After that the man-eating demon and the emperor captured Chen Diqing and tied him up. After Thankhemu and Likhemu were captured, they were thrown into the pit. They were almost beaten to death. After feeding them some medicines, they were tied up together with their father. Their father asked the two of them (using pantomime) “The matter I instructed my wives about, did they really have sons?” Thankhemu and Likhemu recalled the past a bit. Their father used pantomime and said, “Can it really be that [my wives] gave birth to sons? If it was a son, at seven have him go study, and at eleven come look for me. Afterwards that [second] child, call him Likhemu, and at ten have him come look for me.” Thankhemu then said, “Little brother, what have the two of us come to do?” Likhemu answered, “We came to find our father.” Thus their father said, “I am your father.”

They then had a discussion. The husband [the emperor] of the evil demon who ate people [dzemi], had already determined to beat Chen Diqing, Thankhemu and Likhemu to death the next day. The evil demon who ate people [dzemi] had already killed many ordinary people and soldiers. Their dispute had continuously escalated. Chen Diqing made a demand. “Tomorrow we must die. Because we still have not

seen your wife (haven't had one look at her face). It won't do to execute us like this." The emperor said, "Tomorrow they must die. They may have a look (at my wife)." The next day when they had a meeting, the emperor brought his wife out on a cart. Chen Diqing said further to the emperor, "Tomorrow our demand is to bring half a catty of bezoar and some charcoal and set a fire. We will be standing and you will shoot us. In front of us, use charcoal and set a fire." The emperor agreed to this as well. The demon who ate people [dzemi] and her husband [the emperor] notified everybody that they planned to shoot and execute Chen Diqing and his two sons. That day, the emperor and his wife, the demon who ate people, stood on the cart and watched. Chen Diqing put/burned a piece of the bezoar on top of the charcoal. The emperor's wife, the demon who ate people, grew long canine teeth. Chen Diqing said, "Ha!, today see if your emperor's wife is human or not. She's a man-eating demon. You all look! This thing caused the loss of many soldiers and ordinary citizens. Look for yourselves!" He said, "It is true! It is true! Kill the emperor, capture the emperor. This can't be allowed, it is true, you should go discuss this." Thus they did this (the emperor was arrested and beaten to death). Thus Chen Diqing, Thankhemu, and Likhemu were acquitted [their case was reversed/obtained justice]. The three of them, father and sons, slowly returned home.

After returning home, Thankhemu and Likhemu went to find their mothers. In order to find them, they invited guests for three days. After three days of inviting guests, their mothers still had not returned. On the fourth day, they found them. At this time their mothers had already become the last two people. Thankhemu and Likhemu's mothers were afraid. "This family of ours, our grandfather died at the hands of this person, and is no longer with us. Your father also fought with this person and perhaps is dead. Our sons also went to find their father and we don't know where they've gone. Can it be that we will all die at this person's hands?" That is what they thought in their hearts. On the fourth day they returned and the two of them said, "The last few come in." (The result is that) the mountain peak has toppled. Thankhemu and Likhemu sent out an assassin. "You must come here. Those last two people, bring them in." The assassin brought in the two. They were brought in and immediately had their clothes changed, and these two were Thankhemu and Likhemu's mothers.

**English-Qiang glossary
arranged by semantic field**

NATURAL PHENOMENA

sky mutup ~ mutu (mu < PTB *muw).

day breaks (vi.) mutu su (mutu = 'sky').

night falls (vi.) fiα-xtsəp ~ xtsəp (DIR + 'dark').

sun məsi / məsaq / mujuq.

rise (of the sun) məsi ətsu ('sun' + 'shine').

set (of the sun) məsə ə-χt̚ ~ məsi ə-χt̚ ('sun' + DIR + χt̚ə 'disappear, descend').

become dusk fiə-ful (< phul 'unclear, dusky').

sun (vt., vi.) məsi şkue ('sun (n.)' + 'bake').

shine (vi.) ə-tsu.

solar eclipse khuə-wu mujuq sə-dzi ('dog' + AGT + 'sun' + DIR + 'eat').

moon ci-şue ('moon/month' + 'bright'; ci possibly < PTB *s-la).

lunar eclipse khuə-wu cişue sə-dzi ('dog' + AGT + 'moon' + DIR + 'eat').

moonlight şuaq (= 'light').

star ɛdzə.

meteor / falling star ɛdzə do-tshu ('star' + DIR + 'fall').

light şuaq.

bright şue / şuex.

shiny, shining tə-şue (DIR + 'bright').

dark xtsəp / mo:tcu.

obscure, dark mo:tcu (mo: possibly < PTB *muk ~ *muŋ).

shadow şuaq (= 'light').

wind moʁu.

blow (of the wind) moʁu we (= 'there is wind') / moʁu ɛu ('wind' + 'blow'(?))—cognate

verb, from last syllable of 'wind').

stop blowing (of the wind) moʁu mə-wɛ-ji (= 'wind' + NEG + 'exist' + CSM).

storm (vi.) moʁu we (= 'there is wind').

whirl (vi., of the wind) ɛlaş.

whirlwind moʁu ɛlaş ('wind' + 'whirl').

dry up by the wind tu-juku-z (DIR + 'dry' + causative suffix).

rain (n.) me:ʔ.

rain (vi.) me:ʔ ɛe ('rain' + 'release, fall').

get wet (from the rain) inni (< i-ni.e DIR + 'wet').

stop (of the rain) me:ʔ mə-ɛɛ-ji ('rain' + NEG + 'release, fall' + CSM).

drizzle buz me:ʔ ('dirt/soil' + 'rain').

raindrop ɛtcy.

drip (vi.) tshu.

drop (CL) tsə.

rainbow tsəqtşə ɛuə ('rainbow' + 'to be bent') / tsəqtşə we ('rainbow' + 'exist').

cloud zdam.

disperse (of clouds) zdam fi-qatşhe ('cloud' + DIR + 'disperse').

rosy clouds, rosy sunset stu tə-ɛi ('oil' + DIR + 'release'; used for colored clouds morning or night).

fog, mist zdə-qhu ~ zdo-qhu ('cloud' + 'descend').

spread (of fog) zdəqhu ɛe ('fog' + 'release/descend') / zdəqhu do-qhu ('fog' + DIR + 'descend (of fog)').

dew dzəq.

- dewdrop** dzəq ɕɛy ('dew' + 'raindrop').
- fall (of dew)** dzəq de-we ('dew' + DIR + 'exist').
- sleet (vi.)** qhats.
- frost** me¹-x ('rain' + 'form (of frost)').
- snow** pe.
- snow (vi.)** pe ɕe ('snow' + 'release, fall').
- melt (of snow)** (pe) fiɑ-l ('snow' + DIR + 'melt').
- hail** zu.
- hail (vi.)** zu ɕe ('hail' + 'release, fall').
- lightning (n.)** su(ə)-qua ('tooth' + 'lightning').
- lightning (vi.)** suə-qua ('tooth' + 'lightening').
- thunder (n.)** me¹-gɥ ('rain' + 'thunder').
- thunder (vi.)** me¹gu / sa (sa = 'to make loud noise').
- be struck by lightning** me¹gɥ fiɑ-qa ('lightning' + 'go down (DIR + 'go)').
- fine day, nice day** mə χqa ('sky/heaven' + 'clear').
- cloudy day, rainy day** mə ɛəi ('sky/heaven' + 'bad').
- drought** mə tə-χqa ('sky' + DIR + 'clear').
- seven sister stars** tsi-satɕɥ ɕtɕə-tɕ ('older sister' + 'younger sister' + 'seven' + CL).
- south wind** moɕu su-ɕu (= 'wind blows down-river' (relative to Ronghong village)).
- north wind** moɕu nu-ɕu (= 'wind blows up-river' (relative to Ronghong village)).
- east wind** moɕu to-ɕu (= 'wind blows up' (relative to Ronghong village)).
- west wind** moɕu fiə-ɕu (= 'wind blows down' (relative to Ronghong village)).
- air** məs (= 'breath').
- earth (the earth)** zəp (zə = 'field, land, ground').
- surface of the earth** ləχ (not natural ground, but altered in some way, such as bottom floor of house, etc.).
- land, ground** zə.
- earthquake** zə te¹m ('earth/land' + 'shake').
- crack, split (vi.)** da-tɕɑ.
- soil, dirt** buzɥ.
- mud** matɕɑ.
- mire** maha.
- stone** zɑwɑ / χ¹tu (χ¹tu < PTB *r-luŋ).
- rock** zɥuət.
- pebble** χqɑŋi.
- sand** tsə-ɕɑ ('water' + 'sand') / ɕats (< Ch. shā, shāzi).
- hill, mound mountain** ɛopu.~ɕu
- climb a hill** dəde.
- peak** ɕu-q ('mountain' + 'head').
- halfway up a mountain** ɕu e-dzue ('mountian' + 'one' + 'half').
- foot of a hill** je-kuə ('cliff' + 'base').
- slope of a hill** xepi.
- loess** x¹ɛx-buzɥ ('loess' + 'soil/dirt').
- ravine, valley** χot ~ χotɕ.
- landslide** ɕu do-tshu ('mountain' + 'fall down' (DIR + 'fall')).
- hill without vegetation** sa¹.

cliff jaq.
cave, hole, crack zɔ:pu.
water tsə (< PTB *tsə).
freeze (vi.) tsəpa zu-pu ('ice' + DIR + 'form(v.)').
ice tsəpa (cf. tsə 'water').
flow (vi., of water) (tsə) lu ('water' + 'come').
wash down (vi., of water) sə-la (DIR + 'come'; = 'come down').
soak, flood (vi.) inni (< i-ŋie DIR + 'wet').
flood (n.) suəm (cf. suə 'sea').
flood (vi.) suəm sə-la ('flood (cf. suə 'sea')' + 'come down (DIR + 'come)').
float (vi.) tə-q-ta.
sink (vi.) hā-q-ta.
clear (of water) (tsə) qə'q ('water' + 'clear').
muddy ma-qə'q (NEG + 'clear').
dirt in water tsə-χs ('water' + 'shit').
waterfall tsə hio-χu ('water' + 'fall down').
sea, lake suə.
flow like a wave (vi.) χtate.
rise (of the tide) tsə tə-wa ('water' + 'become big (DIR + 'big)').
ebb (of the tide) tsə hā-χtsa ('water' + 'become small (DIR + 'small)').
river, stream tsə / xsəts (large river) (tsə = 'water'; xsə-ts = 'god' + 'water').
river valley qhua:.
river-bed tsə-χuə ('tsə = 'water').
embankment tsə qhats.
dredge a river tsə cə ('water/river' + 'release/do').
pond tshəthəŋ (< Ch. chítáng).

puddle tan(tan) (< Ch. tǎn).
spring ɛŋis.
ditch, gully, gorge tsə-χu ('water' + 'mountain valley' (<χotʂu)).
foam, froth (n.) matʂhəs.
foam (vi.) matʂhəs tə-la ('foam' + 'come up (DIR + 'come)').
gold χqu ~ squ.
silver ŋuə (< PTB *d-ŋul).
copper, bronze χa. (possibly < PTB *kar)
iron somu.
rust zəxtʂ.
rust (vi.) təlqhua (= 'alter / change form').
steel kaŋχu (< Ch.).
tin χtsə.
coal mei (< Ch. méi).
soot mu-ku-təhuʂ (mu = 'fire'; muku = 'fireplace'; təhu = 'soot').
kerosene meijo (< Ch. méiyóu).
gasoline zdue:' (= 'oil').
mildew, mold phəm.
dust spəl.
get dusty (vi.) spəl de-we ('dust' + DIR + 'exist').
powder fen (< Ch. fěn).
fire mə (< PTB *mej).
burn (vi.) phu-x-təu (phu = 'blow', can be used alone for 'burn').
on fire, to catch fire (vi.) zəm de-we ('fire disaster' + DIR + 'exist').
there is a fire mə de-we ('fire' + DIR + 'exist').
fire disaster zəm.
a s h təu-xu-buzu ('ash' + 'smoke(?)' + 'dirt').
become ashes (vi.) təu-xu-buzu pe ('ash' + 'smoke(?)' + 'dirt')

+ 'form/become') / de-we-das
(DIR + 'exist' + 'finish').

smoke (n.) mu-ϕy ~ mu-xu
(‘fire’ + ‘smoke’).

smoke (meat) (vt.) tchəu-tha (<
Ch. (Sichuan dialect form for
‘to smoke meat’) + AUX).

flame mə-zda (mə = ‘fire’, zda
= ‘cloud (?)’).

vapor, steam lue.

congeal (vi.) tə-g (DIR +
‘congeal’).

stop up (a hole), fill (in land)
xtʂə.

stop the flow of water tsə xtʂə
(‘water’ + ‘stop up’).

water gate tsulpi.

level up (vt.) sə-phin-tha (DIR +
‘level (< Ch. pǐng)’ + AUX).

enjoy coolness ʂuaqqa zi (‘cool
shade’ + ‘exist’).

ANIMALS (Wild)

fur xupa (= ‘feather’).

tail sikue.

wag the tail sikue phete (‘tail’ +
‘shake/pat’).

claw (n.) pa⁴χ.

claw (vi.) gigi.

hoof tʂuəχ (cf. tʂuəwa ‘shoes’
and tʂuə ‘wear (shoes)’).

horn zəq.

chew the cud dzu-z (‘grass’ +
‘eat (< dzə)’).

h e r d wu (with number
pronounced a-w(u) ‘one
herd’).

flock ʂpu.

herd together a-wu pe / a-wu
ŋuə (‘form a herd’ / ‘is a
herd’).

copulate (of animals) b ə l
(euphemistic term; = ‘do’).

**give birth to the young (of
animals)** tʂuə i-çi (‘child’ +
DIR + ‘release/do’).

hide, skin (n.) zəpi.

excrement jimi / χʂə.

nest zəbaha.

beasts (wild animals) phuxʂu
(phu < phə ‘tree/forest’ +
xʂu ‘roedeer’).

dragon zəbu ~ zəbə.

tiger χu (< Ch. hǔ).

lion sin ~ siŋgi (< Tibetan <
Sanskrit siŋga) / sətʂə (< Ch.
shīzi; former used mostly
by older people, latter by
younger people).

roar (as lion), howl (as wolf)
zdə.

leopard sə (< PTB *sik).

wolf la (< Ch. láng).

jackal ʂpeçi (ʂpe cf. Tib spjaŋ-
khu).

fox zəgue.

fox, wildcat tue:¹.
weasel tʂoqu.
elephant ja:ku ~ jaku (= ‘bracelet’).
deer zdu.
roedeer, barking deer xʂu.
musk, river deer, roedeer ju-xʂu (ju < jy ‘female roedeer’; xʂu = ‘roedeer’).
roedeer (female) jy-mi (mi = female animal suffix).
wild boar pie-χu (‘pig’ + ‘tiger (?)’).
bear tci.
bear gall tci-xtʂ (‘bear’ + ‘gall’).
monkey kuasa.
ape, orangutan ʂkuəp ~ ʂkup.
badger tʂukʏ.
porcupine wəitsə (< Ch. wèizi (cìwèi)).
rabbit zətʂhaq.
rabbit (male) zətʂhaq-zdu (‘rabbit’ + male gender marker for small animals).
mouse, field mouse zexʏ.
mole zə-puku (zə = ‘field, earth’).
mountain goat ʂkuəi.
land otter ɣzəɕ (possible to eat this animal, but quite oily).
otter tsə-ɣz (‘water’ + ‘land otter’).
squirrel lubəi (lu = ‘China fir tree’).
silver monkey khuə-hi: (khuə = ‘dog?’).

BIRDS

bird wə.
fly (vi.) la (da-la).
wing ɣzəi-fa (‘fly’ (cf. Mawo gzi) + ‘clothing’ (?)).

feather xupa (= ‘fur’).
moult (vi.) xupa-kuə (‘feather’ + ‘throw, cast away’).
beak zdekʏ.
peck (v.) tshuete.
gizzard dzual.
egg (in general) wə-s (‘bird’ + nominalizer).
hawk χtu.
owl wufu.
swallow (n.) jantʂhaquətsi (= ‘long forked stick’).
crow no-ku (‘black’ (?) + ‘goose’).
magpie tʂeictʂaɕ (onomatopoeic form).
sparrow wətʂhi (wə = ‘bird’).
pigeon wu-ʂpu / ŋuʂpu / gugʏ (wu < wə ‘bird’ + ‘flock’; ŋu form possibly related to ŋukʏ bu ‘deaf’; gugʏ is onomatopoeic form; wu-ʂpu / ŋuʂpu refers to wild pigeons, gugʏ to those raised by the family).
woodpecker lukua-tshuete-m (‘China fir tree’ + ‘peck’ + agentive nominalizer).
parrot ginguo ~ gənkuo.
pheasant wu-lu (wu < wə ‘bird’).
crane jugʏ.
bat (animal) pie-ʂpala / pi-ʂpala (‘pig’ + ‘change’ (< ʂpata’)).
cuckoo kuput ~ kupət (onomatopoeic form).
hunt khuə-ɕe (‘dog’ + ‘release’) / xʂu-qhu-k (‘roedeer/wild animal’ + ‘hit/shoot’ + ‘go’).
set a snare xʂul le (of a trap made of hemp rope; ‘rope’ + ‘insert/install’) / χansu le (of a trap made of metal wire).

catch (vt.) gigi.
shoot qhu (soqhu qhu ‘shoot a gun’).
gun soqhu.

ANIMALS (Domestic)

livestock ketʂe.
rear (vt.), breed (vt.) peʔz.
kill tʂə.
remove fur xupu khue (from animals; ‘fur’ + ‘scrape, shave’).
butcher (vt.) tʂu-tʂu.
castrate ʁue.
castrated animal toʁu.
ox xʂe-x / zə (‘cow’ + castrated male marker / zə is stud male; also wild cow).
cow xʂe-mi (‘cow’ + female gender marker).
calf xʂe-tʂuə ~ xʂe-tʂu (‘cow’ + ‘child’).
cow manure xʂe-χʂ (‘cow’ + ‘manure, excrement’).
buffalo tsuə-z (‘water’ + ‘wild cow (< zə)’).
common yellow cow soʁu.
common yellow cow, male soʁu-zə.
common yellow cow, female ŋuə / soʁu-ŋuə / ŋuə-mi (ŋuə < PTB *ŋwa).
wild cow zə.
yak zɛbə (= ‘dragon’).
pianniu (a cross between a bull and a yak) xiɛ.
tend cattle xʂe ɕtɕy (‘cow’ + ‘release/graze’).
fight (of bulls), gore (vt.) tʂitʂi.
tie up a cow xʂe zdzy (‘cow’ + ‘tie up’).
pierce the nose of a cow ɕtɕy ʂə (‘nose’ + ‘pierce’).

nose ring of cow jə.
pig pie (< PTB *p(w)ak).
pig (male) pie-ci.
sow piejmi (‘pig’ + female gender marker).
breeding boar, sire pig tɕotʂo.
shoat, piglet (male) pie-ɕy.
half-grown pig pie-tɕatsə (‘pig’ + ‘family’ (< Ch. jiāzi 家子)).
root (vt., of pigs) ɣlə (= ‘turn over’).
pig’s bristles tsum-pha ~ tson-pha (< Ch. zōng).
tend pigs pie ʁuakɣ (‘pig’ + ‘tend’).
pig feed pie-st (‘pig’ + ‘food/rice’).
sheep, mountain goat tshe.
drive (sheep) (tshe) we.
sheep (wool sheep) ŋowu ~ ŋo:wu.
goat (male) dze.
goat (female) tshe-mi (‘sheep’ + female gender marker).
kid ŋowu-zdue (‘wool sheep’ + diminutive for sheep).
lamb tshe-zdue (‘mountain sheep’ + diminutive for sheep).
wool, fleece tshe-fy (‘mountain sheep’ + ‘fur’ (fy < xupa ~ ɸupa)) / ŋiu (wool of wool sheep).
sheepskin tsha:pi (‘sheep’ + ‘skin’ (< zɛpi)).
horse wə (possibly < PTB *s-raŋ ~ *m-raŋ; cf. Mawo dial. ʁu < *raŋ).
mare wə-mi (‘horse’ + female gender marker).
horse dung wə-χʂ (‘horse’ + ‘manure, excrement’ (< χʂə)).

ride (a horse) tsa / qatʃhe.
horse feed paha (= ‘dried grass’).
ass, donkey dzawa.
dog, hunting dog khuə (< PTB *kwəy).
dog, male khuə-zdu (‘dog’ + male gender marker for small mammals).
dog, female, bitch khu-mi / khuə-miaha (‘dog’ + female gender marker).
bark (vi.) te.
dog feed khu-st (‘dog’ + ‘food/rice’) / seŋiaɯ (< Ch. siliào).
cat puŋu.
cat (male) puŋu-zdu (‘cat’ + male gender marker for small mammals).
meow (vi.) mjau.
chicken tɕy:.
cock jy-pi (‘chicken’ (< tɕy:) + male gender marker for flying birds).
chicken dung tɕy:-χʂ (‘chicken’ + ‘manure, excrement’).
cockscorn jy-pi-qulu (‘chicken’ (< tɕy:) + male gender marker for flying birds + ‘point’).
crow (vi., of cock) se.
cock’s tail tɕy: sikue (‘chicken’ + ‘tail’).
hen (before or after laying eggs) jy-miaha (‘chicken’ (< tɕy:) + female gender marker).
chick tɕy:-tʂu (‘chicken’ + ‘child’).
lay eggs wəs khe^t (wəs = ‘egg’).
hatch (sit on eggs) tɕy: le (‘chicken’ + ‘insert’).
hatch (come out of egg) wəs phe(te) (‘egg’ + ‘shake, pat,

scratch’) / tɕy: le (‘chicken’ + ‘exist’).
scratch for feed (chicken) phete (‘shake, pat, scratch’).
duck jats (< Ch. yāzi).
quack (vi.) qa qa.
tend ducks jats buəɰy (‘duck’ (< Ch.) + ‘tend’).
goose bu (possibly < PTB *ŋa).
remove feathers xupa stue (‘feathers’ + ‘pull out’).
clip the wings yzəifa tua (‘wing’ + ‘cut’).

INSECTS

insect, maggot, worm, riceworm bəl (bə < PTB *bu).
crawl (of insects) sei (= ‘walk’).
metamorphosis zɕɛpi ŋa-bue (‘skin’ + DIR + ‘throw, cast away’).
silkworm buqtʃhu.
bee bə (< PTB *b(y)a).
stinger of a bee/wasp ji.
sting (vt.) i-tʂue (DIR + ‘sting’).
honeycomb, beehive bət (bə = ‘bee’ + tɕi ‘house’?).
honey bə-χʂ ~ bə-xʂ (‘bee’ + ‘excrement’).
wasp, yellow jacket tʃhuəɰi.
hornet biaŋ.
butterfly, moth xtʃampha.
caterpillar soqhu ~ suqhu.
firefly butʃhuqu / dum.
fly, blue-bottle fly bəiχa.
mosquito, gnat, wriggler bunqutsə (there are no big mosquitos in the Qiang areas).
bite (vt., of mosquito) sa tʃhe (‘blood’ + ‘suck’).

mosquito bite (n.) tə-pha (DIR + 'swell').
spider tʂhəʂ.
spider's web tʂhəʂ-dzu ('spider' + 'net').
spin a web (of spider) dzu bəl ('net/web' + 'do').
ant, termite tɕukhu.
snail zum-me:¹.
earthworm ləχ-bəl ('ground/earth' + 'worm').
centipede de:¹.
grasshopper tʂho-χsu (χsu = 'jump').
snake (thick) bəs.
snake (thin) bəyi.
red-spotted lizard ʂqu-tʂhe ~ ʂqu-tʂhi (= 'stutter'; ʂqu = 'mouth').
leech məχuan (< Ch. mǎ-huáng).
bedbug buqtɕhu (= 'silkworm').
louse, tick xtʂe (possibly < PTB *srik).
nit xtʂutsy.
flea tsun.
intestinal worm bəl-qhua (bəl = 'worm').
insect which eats wood or bamboo bətʂ.

FISH, FROGS, & TURTLES

frog (green), toad dzupi ~ dzuəpi.
frog (black) dzuəpi ŋiq ('frog' + 'black').
turtle wukuəi (< Ch. wūgūi).
fish ɛzə.
swim (vi.) tsu ɛlu ('water' + 'swim') / ɛzə-la (of fish; 'fish' + 'fly (v.)').
fish scale dze.

fish spawn ɛzə-wəs ('fish' + 'egg').
fish (with a rod) ɛzə ɛue (ɛzə = 'fish (n.)').
fishing rod jy ke¹ (< Ch. yú-gān).
fishing hook jy kəu (< Ch. yú-gōu).
catch fish with net or hands ɛzə gi ('fish' + 'grab/catch').
fishing net jy ɛuan (< Ch. yúwǎng).

PLANTS

grow (vi.) tə-ʂ.
creep (vi.) ha-tʂha.
seed zuə ~ zu.
sprout (n.) tʂhoq.
sprout (as from seed) tʂhoq tə-ʂ
 ('sprout (n.)' + 'grow').
young shoots ʂə-q ('grow' +
 'head').
tree, shrub sə-f ('wood' +
 'forest' (f < phə)).
forest phə.
seedlings of a tree tshen miəu
 (< Ch. qīngmiáo).
root kopu.
tree trunk ʂəq (= 'body').
bark səf zəpi ('tree' + 'skin').
branches zəji.
tree-fork, a forked stick jan
 tʂha quə tsi (< Ch.)
resin, colophony luz (lu = 'fir
 tree').
pine tree ɕpie-ɸ ~ ɕpie-f ('pine'
 + 'tree/forest').
pine cone ɕpie-lu-quʂ ('pine' +
 'fir' + ?).
fir tree lu / luku.
poplar tree ɛzu-fy.
cypress tree zuamə-ɸu.
willow tree sə:¹.
birch tree zdzəs.
tree stump zeke.
leaf xtʂapa (used for all types
 of leaves, including those of
 vegetables).
shade (vt., of leaves) ə-xtʂ.
tree shade (n.) ʂuaq (= 'shadow').
flower (n.), pollen lampa ~
 lapa.
bud (n.) lampa tʂhuqu.
petals of a flower efi.
thorn tshəma.

bloom (vi.) pa.
flowers falling/wilting ɛue.
bamboo ʂpə.
vine kum.
sunflower mu-n-tuq (mu =
 'sun').
dandelion məq maha ('top,
 above' + 'evening'/'mire').
moss tsə-χaf ('water' + 'grass').
bracken məxl.
fennel χoɕian (< Ch. húi-
 xiāng).
grass, thatch rushes χaf.
azalea ɛofy.
**sheeporn flower, morning
 glory** zeke lampa.
cotton miəχu (< Ch. mián-
 huā).
grains dzə-s ('eat' + instru-
 mental nominalizing suffix).
rice shoots, sprouting grain ʂəq
 (= 'sprouts').
rice (in field or hulled) qhə:¹.
ear of grain, ears of wheat
 ɕtəəq / dzəpat (ɕtəəq < PTB
 *sni; cf. 'seven', 'heart', Tib.
 sŋi-ma; q is secondary,
 possibly < qə 'head').
glutinous rice tɕiumi (< Ch.
 jiūmǐ ('wine rice')).
long white rice qhə:¹-xs ('rice' +
 'new').
rice husk kha.
wheat ɛlə.
buckwheat dzuaɛa.
tares pə.
wheat bran fəts (< Ch. fūzi).
gluten of wheat gə:¹.
wheat flour bolu.
spiked millet kutsə (< Ch.
 gūzi).
sorghum, glutinous millet ʂpa.
corn jima (< Ch. yùmǐ).
flax, hemp su.

hemp seed su-zuə ('hemp' + 'seed').

barley nəz.

highland barley dzə.

tsamba dzu.

oats wəmə.

wheat straw paha (= 'horse feed').

vegetables kuşu.

sweet potato xoŋsau (< Ch. hóngháo).

potato jajəŋu (< Ch.).

cabbage tɕyan-cin-pe (< Ch. juǎnxīnbái).

Chinese cabbage patshai (< Ch. báicài).

spinach po-tshai (< Ch. bōcài).

rape seed plant tshət / tsə.

pumpkin, bottle gourd pakua (< Ch.).

winter melon toŋkua (< Ch. dōngguā).

cucumber xuaŋkua (< Ch. huángguā).

young cucumber kekua (< Ch.).

turnip lup (< Ch. lúobo).

carrot xolumpau (< Ch. hú-lúobo).

bean, pea, soybean də (said by Sun (1988:58) to be an old loan from Chinese, but said by Huang Chenglong to be a native word).

pea/bean shoots/sprouts də-şəq ('bean' + 'sprout').

soybean təutəu (< Ch. dòu).

hyacinth bean/lentil petəu (< Ch. biǎndòu, an older loan of same word as piantəu?—next item).

black-eyed pea, black bean, string bean, white bean piantəu (< Ch. biǎndòu).

horsebean xuthəʔ.

snow pea-pod də (= 'bean') / kuantəu (< Ch. wǎndòu).

peanut xuasen (< Ch. huāshēng).

chives tɕiu tshai (< Ch. jǐucài).

celery tɕhin tshai (< Ch. qīncài).

coriander jansui (< Ch. yánsuī).

onion dutsha.

garlic tɕi-c ('house' + 'garlic').

pepper xoitshu (< Ch. hǎijiāo).

ginger kuikua ~ kuika.

laminaria, kelp taipei (< Ch.).

lettuce khuma tshai (tshai < Ch. cài).

fungus, mushroom mujū.

grass mushroom se:ʔ-mujū ('willow' + 'fungus / mushroom').

fruit zuə / səimi.

bear fruit zuə u-dzu.

pear pie səimi ('pig' + 'fruit').

prune tshəp ki səimi.

grape kulumi.

jujube zuantsəʔ.

walnut xathi (< Ch. hétáo).

apple phiŋkuo (< Ch. pínggǔo).

red bayberry buzu səimi ('dirt/earth' + 'fruit').

strawberry xaf-səimi ('grass' + 'fruit').

herb, medicine sipe.

danggui (a kind of medicinal root) teiquaki.

fritillary (Fritillaria thunbergii) bulb qupki.

rhubarb suaki.

FARMING

- plant (vt.), sow seeds** phie.
field zəp ~ zə (= 'earth').
plant a field zə phie ('field' + 'to plant').
weed (vt.) χα ste ('grass (< χaf) + 'get rid of').
gather night soil χξə tɕy ('excrement' + 'pick up').
fertilize jimi ɓlie ('fertilizer (dry manure or grass stalks)' + 'use, apply').
graft (vt.) tɕa tɕe pə (< Ch. jiē zhī (in reverse order) + 'to do').
plow (n.) tuq.
plow-share gu:.
plow (a field) lə (= 'to turn over, roll up'; used with xɕe 'cow (pianniu)': xɕe lə 'plow the fields').
edges of a field zə-piəna ('field' + 'side/vicinity').
irrigate tsə ɕuə ('water' + 'irrigate').
water (vt.) tsə qhutu ('water' + 'to spread, sprinkle').
pick tshu-(tshu) (reduplicate for repeated action).
harvest (vt.) ku.
thresh (vt.) zɕe.
winning tray tshotɕu.
sieve (n.), sieve (vt.) se (native word, not loan).
flour sieve zɕbu.
soak (vt.) stə.
mill (n.) dzua-ɓl ('grind' + 'stone (< ɓlu)').
grind (vt.) dzue.
grind, rub fine (vt.) khe¹.
shell (vt.), peel (vt.) qe¹qe¹ (= 'open out, separate').
pound, hit zɕete.

- peel with a peeler** sue (< Ch. xuē).
climb (a tree) dide.
garden tsekɕ.
vegetable garden kuɕɕ tsekɕ ('vegetable' + 'garden').
store (grains) (vt.) ə-ɕɕə (DIR + 'to put, place').
mow / cut grass (vt.) jimi gue ('fertilizer grass (grain stalks)' + 'to cut').
bind, tie up (grain stalks etc.) dzuedzue.
grain stalk rack jimi-laqua.
hang (vt.) (on grain stalk rack) ju.

FOOD

- food, provision** zɕuə.
meal (CL) zdzi (e-zdzi).
breakfast ɕtɕes (possibly < *s-thə-s [causative prefix-eat-instrumental nominalizer] 'what is fed').
noon meal, lunch dza:.
evening meal, dinner j e s (possibly 'good to eat' + instrumental nominalizer] 'what is good to eat').
cooked rice, food stuaha.
cooked rice (dry or drained) ɕkum.
rice gruel, congee ɕzɕem.
corn gruel, corn meal porridge maha.
rice water mithan (< Ch. mǐ-tāng).
burnt rice that adheres to sides of pot kupa (< Ch. gūobā).
steamed or baked bread qhal.
round dumpling kuque / pautsə (< Ch. bāozi).

noodle(s) ɕpies.

thin vermicelli that has been hung to dry ɕpies / kuamin (< Ch. guàmiàn).

dregs (of solids or liquids) tʂatsə (< Ch. zhāzi).

flour bolu.

dishes of food kuʂu (= 'vegetables').

soup than (< Ch. tāng).

pork pie-pies ('pig' + 'meat' ('pig' + 'meat')).

meat pie-s ('pig' + 'meat' (< PTB *sya); now used for all kinds of meat).

fat meat piexu ~ piefu ('meat' + 'fat' (?)).

lean meat tshaxə (xə < xa).

roast pork with skin pies-phuxtəu ('meat' + 'roast').

pig's feet pie-dzoqu ('pig' + 'foot').

stomach (pork) kuibua / xutsqha.

brain (as food) qəpatʂ (= 'head').

beef xʂe-pies / zɔbə-pies / soʔu-pies (pianniu meat / yak meat / cow meat).

beef stomach zɔguə-xqa ('grain' + 'transport').

tail sikue.

mutton tshə-pies / ŋo:wu-pies (mountain goat meat / wool-sheep meat).

egg wə-s ('bird' + nominalizer).

kidney ʂpəl.

bean curd de-zdz.

bean-thread fənthiautsə (< Ch. fěntiáozi).

dried fungus mak-ŋuku (ŋuku = 'ear').

leftover kuʂu-hogu-j ('vegetables' + 'left over' + CSM).

fried bread-stick jəuthiau (< Ch. yóutiáo).

small round soft cake of pounded glutinous rice, grass jelly ŋianfə¹ (< Ch. miànfěn; made of potatoes).

pastry, cake pintsə (< Ch. bǐngzi).

bean paste təutʂa (< Ch. dòu-shā).

melon seed kuatsə (< Ch. guāzǐ).

ingredients thiau niu (< Ch. tiáoliào).

oil zdue 'animal oil' / zdue:¹ 'plant oil' / ŋama 'butter' (< Tib).

press out oil zdue:¹ thə ('plant oil' + 'squeeze').

lard pie-zdue ('pig' + 'animal oil').

salt tshə (< PTB *tsa).

soy sauce təujəu (< Ch. dòuyóu).

vinegar tshu (< Ch. cù).

sugar, candy matha (< Ch. máháng).

white sugar pethan (< Ch. báitáng).

black salted beans təuʂ (< Ch. dòuchǐ).

cornstarch təufən (< Ch. dòufěn).

bunge prickly ash peel (pericarpium zanthoxyli; sometimes called wild pepper; used for numb hotness) tshəi.

boiled water tsə tu-xʂə-l ('water' + 'come to a boil (DIR + 'boil (vi.))' + 'come (?)') / khaiʂue (< Ch. kāishǔi).

wine, liquor (made by Qiang; not filtered) ci.
liquor (made by Chinese) kə¹-ci ('Han' + 'liquor'; Chinese-made white liquor).
brew wine ci s̺qu ~ ci χqu ('liquor' + 'boil').
sweet fermented rice qhə¹-ci ('rice' + 'liquor').
distiller's yeast tchoχu (possibly < Tibetan).
milk papə (= 'breast').
cigarette t̺ijan (< Ch. zhīyān).
smoke (cigarettes) (vt.) t̺she (= 'suck').
be addicted to jin le (jin < Ch. yīn + 'exist').

FOOD PREPARATION

cook (rice) stuaha bəl ('cooked rice' + 'do') / qhə¹ s̺qu ('uncooked rice' + 'boil') / qhə¹ tsə ('rice' + 'steam').
wash rice qhə¹ χuəla ('rice' + 'wash') / thau-tha (< Ch. táo + AUX).
sort out vegetables kuşu staqa ('vegetables' + 'select').
large shallow basket (worn on back) peilantsə (< Ch. bēilánzi).
cut (with downward motion), cut into slices, threads or dice qhua.
cut with a rolling action khukhu.
cut with sideward motion ku.
chop, to mince tshua.
cut in two ji-dzue pə ('two' + 'sections' + 'do').
chopper tshetəŋ (< Ch.).

cutting board bet (large cutting board) / t̺shafən (like small table < Ch.) / tegu (block of wood).
chop firewood sə gue¹ ('firewood' + 'chop').
firewood splitter duakl.
kindling (for a fire) tshuχ̺supi.
firewood sə.
charcoal muk̺u-t̺ehuş ('fireplace' (possibly < 'fire' + 'base')) + 'ash') / mut̺eu ~ mudzu ('fire' + 'ash'; small, used in making steel) / kanthan (large; < Ch.).
smother (charcoal) χethan (< Ch. hēitàn 'black charcoal') / paithan (< Ch. báitàn 'white charcoal'; use water).
make a fire mə phə ('fire' + 'blow').
light a fire dzue.
burn (firewood) sə ət̺ə ('firewood' + 'add').
bellows phete (= the verb phete 'blow').
kitchen range tsul.
fire hole in a kitchen range sə-ət̺ə-sta ('firewood' + 'add' + 'place (-s nominalizer + LOC)').
stove χolutsə (< Ch. hǔolúzi).
brazier χophen (< Ch. hǔopén).
fire tongs sə-ste ('firewood' + 'pick up with chosticks').
frying pan dzə.
lead cooking pan la qua.
lid for cooking pan qut̺ə.
food-turner t̺shantsə (< Ch. chǎnzi) / səpi (flat; has handle).
fire kettle tshue.
steamer tsentsə (< Ch. zhēngzi).

heat up a pan tə-si (DIR + ‘hot’ = ‘become hot’).
soot of a pan ɛlan̩i.
scour a pan kupa-khue (‘burnt rice (< Ch. gūobā)’ + ‘scrape’).
stir wəte.
mix tsaqa.
knead (dough) n̩ethe (< Ch. niě).
mix (dough) sə-xtsue.
roll into a ball with the hands ɣlu (= ‘to roll’).
wrap (dumplings) quəgue.
pound (garlic) tɕiɕ qhua (use back of knife; ‘garlic’ + ‘cut’).
put in (ingredients) ə-ɛũ (DIR + ‘to place’).
sprinkle (vt.) se.
pour over qhutu.
soak stə.
rise (vi., of bread) fa-tha (< Ch. fā + AUX).
strain (strain away liquid) ʂa.
filter, to strain (strain away solid) tʂa.
crack an egg wəs pie.
cook (a few dishes) tʂhuətʂhue.
boil (vi.), (vt.), stew (vt.) ʂqu.
boil for a long time lə.
boil (water; vt.) tshu.
boil (of water) tsə tu-ɣsu (‘water’ + ‘come to a boil’).
cook on a griddle, fry in fat or oil ɕe.
pop (of oil, etc.) da-ʂp (= ‘split apart’).
deep-fry tʂa-tha (< Ch. zhá + AUX).
steam (vt.), smoke tsə.
roast phuxtɕu.
roast in hot ashes tshu.
warm, to roast, to bake ʂkue.

half-cooked ɣapət.
warm up leftovers sesi (‘hot’ + ‘hot’).
render fat tʂhə.
cook soup than bəl (‘soup (< Ch. tāng)’ + ‘to do’).
taste tse.

EATING AND STORAGE UTENSILS

set the table tʂuats əʂ (‘table (< Ch.)’ + ‘to place’).
dish out rice stuaha ju (‘rice’ + ‘to spoon’).
rice ladle za.
cover (n.) quətɕ.
tray pe (< Ch. pén).
dish phantsə (< Ch. pánzi).
dip (vt.) ə-stɕ.
bowl ɛua-tʂa (‘bowl (< Ch. wǎn)’ + Qiang word for ‘bowl’).
chopsticks wets ~ wet-tsə (wet = ‘stick’; tsə < Ch. zi).
pick up with chopsticks ste.
spoon (n.) thiakəʔ (< Ch. tiáogēng).
ladle, spoon (vt.), pour (tea) ju.
large open-mouthed jar ʂuə tʂhua.
gourd used for a ladle tsukɕu.
bottle phintsə (< Ch. píngzi).
cork (vt.) sə-xtʂə.
hot water bottle pauwenphin (< Ch. bǎowēnpíng).
tea tʂha (< Ch. chá).
teapot tʂhaɣɕu (< Ch. cháhú).
infuse tea tʂha phau-tha (< Ch. chá pào (‘tea’ + ‘infuse’) + AUX).
cup peitsə (< Ch. bēizi).

large earthenware jar without handle, shaped like an upside-down pear qap (ei qap) ('liquor' + 'jar').
cooking utensils stuaha-bəl-əs ('rice' + 'to do' + instrumental nominalizer).
blowing pipe for kindling xothonj (< Ch. hǔotǒng).

CLOTH AND CLOTHING

cloth ba:.
cotton cloth mianpu (< Ch. miánbù).
printed cotton ba:-lampā ('cloth' + 'flower(y)').
thin silk ɣua.
wool tshe-fy ('sheep' + 'fur' (fy < xupa ~ φupa)).
foreign woolen cloth ɳitsə (< Ch. nízi).
spin (yarn) (vt.) lete.
weave (vt.) tətci (< PTB *tak).
loom tce.
weaver's shuttle ɣazɥ.
make clothes fā jəj ('clothing' + 'to sew').
cut tua.
cutout in sewing qhəqhə.
sew jəj.
torn (of clothes) depi.
patch (vt.) ʂpetc.
needle ɣa (< PTB *kap).
eye of needle ɣa zɔpu ('needle' + 'hole').
thread a needle ba:-tʂhəl dɑ-ʂ ('thread' + DIR + 'place').
thimble tintʂen (< Ch. dǐng-zhēn).
thread ba:-tʂhəl (ba: = 'cloth').
spool puju.
wind thread ɣu.
sew on a button dzu.
make a button hole fiə-phe.
border (garment, shoes) (vt.), embroider ʂɑ.
woollen thread maucian (< Ch. máoxiàn).
knit (vt.), weave a net kepi.
knitting needle kepi-s ('knit' + instrumental nominalizer).
brush (n.) ʂuatsə (< Ch. shuāzi).

brush (vt.) ʃua-tha (< Ch. shuā + AUX).
wash (clothes) fa χuəla ('clothing' + 'to wash').
wooden stick for washing clothes ɤduaʃ (ɤdua = 'hammer').
wash clothes with stick dzete (= 'hit').
shrink (vi., of clothes) tə-watsi (= 'become short (DIR + 'short')').
put on clothesline, sun (clothes) (vt.) pha.
dye (vt.) sə.
clothes fa ~ fua / guə-s ('to wear' + instrumental nominalizer).
wear (clothing) guə (< PTB *gwa).
wear (shoes) tʃuə (cf. tʃuəχ 'hoof' and tʃuəwa 'shoes').
wear (pants) de.
undress da-qe.
change clothes ləla (= 'exchange').
hang (clothes) ɤuə ɤue.
naked sta ɛi pau (sta = 'buttocks'; cf. 'barefoot' for ɛi).
woollen sweater χʃufu.
leather, fur zɛpi (= 'skin, hide').
fur garment phikuatsə (< Ch. píguāzi).
collar jinin (nin < Ch. líng).
sleeves juqu (ju = 'hand' (?)).
waist belt dzəidzi.
fasten the waist belt dzu dzu.
trousers, pants doqu.
trousers' seat doqu thunpa (doqu = 'trousers').
skirt tsulwa.
wear a skirt tsulwa ɤu.
button (n.) kata.

buttonhole kata-zop ('button' + 'hole (< zɔ:pu)').
snap button (n.) gan khəu (< Ch. ànkòu).
button (vt.) ə-tsu.
unbutton (vt.) fiə-phe.
pocket pau pau (< Ch. bāo-bāo).
hat tawa.
wear (a hat) ta.
head scarf ʃəpat.
scarf baq.
head wrapping thoθo.
leg wrappings (leggings) cyde.
handkerchief ʃəuphatsə (< Ch. shōupàzi).
apron wəiwəi (< Ch. wéi-qún)).
shoes tʃuəwa (cf. tʃuəχ 'hoof' and tʃuə 'wear (shoes)').
tie (shoelace), make a knot tu tu.
untie (shoelace) phe¹ phe¹ (can be pronounced phe¹z).
long boots cyets (< Ch. xuēzi).
socks ɤuats (< Ch. wàzi).
sheepskin vest lənkuats (< Ch.).
belt for carrying baby on the back tɛymi-bie-s ('child' + 'carry on back' + instrumental nominalizer).
carry on one's back bie.
mourning apparel se¹-fu (Qiang mourning apparel is white).
barefooted dzoq(u) pa ɛi (dzoqu pa = 'foot' + 'sole (palm of foot)').
necklace pio lu.
earring nupal (nɤ < nɤkɤ 'ear' (?)).
pierce the ear lobe ʃə.
bracelet ji-de (ji = 'hand').

ring ji-sa ('hand' + CL for joints and sections).

umbrella tʃhuə-sa.

put up an umbrella tʃhuəsa ta (ta also used for 'to wear a hat').

walking stick kueiphatsə (< Ch.).

carry a walking stick kueiphatsə tɕə-tɕi.

tobacco pipe jan tu (< Ch. yāndǒu).

BUILDINGS AND STRUCTURES

cattle pen xʃe-tɕaɕe ('cattle' + 'pen').

pigsty, hogpen piə-tɕaɕe ('pig' + 'pen/sty').

stable wə-tɕaɕe ('horse' + 'pen, stable').

manger wə-tʃu (wə = 'horse').

kennel khuə-nəʃ ('dog' + 'bed').

chicken nest tɕy:-zɕbaha ('chicken' + 'nest').

bird's nest zɕbaha.

beast's cave zɕopu (= 'hole, cave').

house tɕi-ɕua (tɕi alone also = 'house' < PTB *kʃim; ɕua is possibly an old classifier for house (it still is used as such in some other dialects), cf. tɕi-sa 'room' < 'house' + 'joint, classifier for sections').

dwell (vi.) le (= 'to exist in a container of some type').

move (house) pan-tha (< Ch. bān + AUX).

watch the house dzy gə' ('door' + 'to guard').

storey sa (classifier for rooms, stories, and for joints and sections).

ground floor tʃhə.

upper storey tɕy.

second floor of house ji-sa ('two' + CL; same form as 'two rooms').

third floor of house xʃə-sa ('three' + CL for rooms, stories, sections).

storehouse ʃpə.

room tɕi-sa ('house' + classifier for rooms, stories, sections).

kitchen tʃhufan (< Ch. chufáng; the Qiang don't have separate kitchens; the cooking is done in the fireplace in the middle of the main (= 2nd) floor).

toilet mausə (< Ch. máocè).

corridor phetɕi / tsəulan (< Ch. zǒuláng).

roof qə-sta ('head' + 'place').

ceiling ɕuan pan (< Ch.).

beam taɣy.

pillar tsu.

wall qhats (qha = 'stone').

climb over a wall didi.

corner kuokuo (< Ch. jiǎo).

staircase, ladder (wooden) bu-zd ('board' + 'ladder').

ladder (to the roof) zdə.

railing jəpə-gigi-s ('hand' + 'grab' + instrumental nominalizer).

window zɔ:kum (zɔ: < zɔ:pu 'hole').

door dzy.

knock at the door dzy zɛte ('door' + 'hit, knock').

open a door dzy zɛge ('door' + 'open').

close a door dzy ha-qua ('door' + DIR + 'close').

door frame dzoqpu.

doorway, an entrance dzoqpu-q (dzoqpu = 'doorframe').

step over the doorsill da-ɕua.

door bolt ɕlatʃhua.

bolt (a door) (ɕlatʃhua) del (< DIR + le 'insert').

lock (n.) dzɔɕu.

key quəsəɕu.

lock (vt.) sua.

steps luts-qha (qha = 'stone').

courtyard ɕuaɣ.

platform, level area dzəq

well (n.) tsuək ~ tsəkyə ('water' + 'pit').

drying terrace (on roof of house) or yard tɕepi.

bamboo fence tsekypɪ.

fireplace mugy.

fireplace rack səi mi.

mill house dzuaɕl ('grind' + 'stone (< ɕlu)').

build a house, pile up a wall ɣɬie.

lay the foundation of house ləthe.

roof (vt.) tɕi-sa-buzɕ zdzye ('room (< 'house' + CL for rooms)' + 'earth, dirt' + 'put roof together').

lime ʃəɣui (< Ch. shíhūi).

cement ʃuinɪ (< Ch. shǔnǐ).

lumber panpan (< Ch. bǎn).

set up pillars tsu le ('pillar' + 'insert, move across').

paint, spread on (vt.) mə ma.

fence in pə.

collapse, fall on its own weight da-qhua.

clean / tidy up (room, house) suəʃyɛ.

broom tolu.

dust basket tsotɕu.

sweep the floor dzudzu.

splash water tsə se ('water' + 'splash, sprinkle').

dust cloth məma-s ('to wipe' + instrumental nominalizer).

wipe (vt.) məma (< Ch. (?)) / tsha-tha (< Ch. cā).

feather duster xʃe-sikue ('cow, cattle' + 'tail').

dust (vt.) phete.

water-drawing bucket tsə kut (tsə = 'water').

fetch water tsə bie ('water' + 'carry on back').

polish (vt.) fiɑ-tshə-tha (DIR + 'wipe (< Ch.)' + AUX).
leak (v.) zə.

FURNITURE

furniture pana (= 'things').
arrange / place (furniture) ə-ʂ.
table tʂuats (< Ch. zhuōzi).
cupboard ɕuan kui (< Ch. wǎngù).
chair jəts (< Ch. yǐzi) / dzuə-s (< 'sit' + nominalizer, used for any thing to sit on).
stool, wooden bench pante (< Ch. bǎndēng).
closet kuitsə (< Ch. gùizi).
drawers tʂhəu-tʂhəu (< Ch. chōu(tí)).
box qhuəʂ.
trunk ɕantsə (< Ch. xiāngzi).
bed bede / nə-s ~ nə-ʂ (< 'sleep' + instrumental nominalizer).
bed plank bu (= 'wooden board').
set up a bed bede-e-ze bəl ('bed' + 'one' + CL + 'to do').
mirror mi:-laŋɥ (mi: = 'eye').
look in a mirror mi:-laŋɥ tse ('mirror, lens' + 'look').
lamp muwu (mu < mə 'fire'; originally meant the burning of pine cones, now can refer to any kind of lamp).
turn on the light muwu de-zɥge ('lamp, light' + DIR + 'open').
turn off the light muwu ə-qua ('lamp, light' + DIR + 'close').
wick lian-χutsə (< Ch.).
candle latʂu (< Ch. làzhú).

picture lampə (= 'flower').
bedding tʂhuanpə (< Ch. chuángpu).
make the bed nəp phəpha ('bed' + 'to spread').
mattress zutsə (< Ch. rùzi).
mattress made of rice-stalks butshu.
mat sits (< Ch. xízi).
blanket tʂan (< Ch. zhàn).
quilt quatʂhi.
cover (with quilt) guə (= 'to wear').
spread (vt.) phəpha.
fold up tə-ɕtɕi.
pillow nəkɥ.
lay on a pillow ə-ʂ (DIR + 'to place').
hang (a mosquito net) ɕue.

TOOLS

thing panə.
matter zə.
method, way panfa (< Ch. bànfǎ).
tools panə (= 'things').
scissors quəsaɸ.
cut with scissors tua.
knife xtʂepi ~ xtɕepi.
back of a knife tuopi (< Ch. dāobēi).
sheath, scabbard tuoɕau (< Ch. dāoshāo (dāoqiào)).
grindstone ɸlu-s (ɸlu = 'stone').
sharpen a knife su.
handle ji (= 'hand' (?)).
scrape (vt.) khue.
peel (vt.) sue.
split (wood) (vt.) qheʔ.
prick (vt.) ə-tʂɥ (DIR + 'to prick').
pierce (vt.) da-tʂhuan-tha (DIR + < Ch. chuān + AUX).

hammer (n.) ɛdua (< PTB *m-twa).
hammer (vt.) dze.
axe stei.
chop with an axe khe.
pincers tɕhiantɕə (< Ch. qiánzi).
pincer (vt.) xtɕe.
chisel (n.) ɛzu (cf. zu ‘to chisel’).
chisel (vt.) zu.
saw (n.) səqa.
saw (vt.) khə¹.
file tshuotɕə (< Ch. cuòzi).
awl or drill tsantsə (< Ch. zuànzi).
awl ɛəŋitɕy.
bore a hole tɕitɕi.
plane (n.) thuiɸau (< Ch. tuībào).
plane (vt.) thui-tha (< Ch. + AUX).
shavings pəuɕua¹ (< Ch. bàohuār).
hook (n.) tinniu (< Ch. dīngniǔ).
hook (vt.) fiə-tɕua.
nail (n.) tintɕə (< Ch. dīngzi).
nail (vt.) zəzi.
screwdriver luosətəu (< Ch. lúosīdāo).
screw (n.) luosə (< Ch. lúosī).
screw in (a screw) quətɕue (= ‘to turn’).
carrying pole tuə-s (‘carry’ + instrumental nominalizer) / piantan (< Ch. biǎndàn).
roll (v.) ylu.
shovel, spade (n.) tɕshuantsə (< Ch. chǎnzi).
spade (vt.) tɕshuan-tha (< Ch. chǎn + AUX).
hoe (n.) tɕye.
hoe (vt.), dig (with tools) phiphi.

dig (with hands) phe¹.
sickle set / duaɸl (the latter is a heavy curved knife used for chopping wood).
sickle with teeth used to cut grain crops kaset (also smaller than set and duaɸl).
stick wet.
beat (with a stick) dzete.
whip (n.) piantsə (< Ch. biānzi).
whip (vt.) zə-dzi.
ropes, cordage jəl.
string, rope (n.) dzəu / xɕul (‘rope for traps’) / tɕəɕuen (< Ch.).
twist ropes dzəu bəl (‘rope’ + ‘to do’).
pail ɕuət.
hand bucket thoŋ (< Ch. tǒng).
crossbar at the top of a Chinese bucket ji (= ‘handle’ = ‘hand’ (?)).
basket lantsə (< Ch. lánzi).
small hand basket puky.
whistle (n.) ɕtɕyl.
m a t c h e s janɕu (< Ch. yánghuǒ).
torch ɕuap (cf. ɕue ‘bright’ and ɕuəq ‘light’; -p possibly < paha ‘straw’).
flint ɛlu-fi ~ ɛlu-phi (‘stone’ + ‘white’; this is the white stone used for decoration and to invest spirits in).
light a match khe.
straw paha.
board bu.
wire thiesə (< Ch. tiěsī).
gunpowder mu-dzu (‘fire’ + ‘powder’).
wood sə (< PTB *sik).
tile ɛua (< Ch. wǎ).
lacquer ləts (< Ch. (?)).

ivory jaku (< Ch. yǎgǔ).
kiln jautsə (< Ch. yáozi).
winnowing shallow basket se.
net ɕuanɕuan (< Ch. wǎng).
sawdust tɕymutsə (< Ch.).
repair bəl (= ‘to do’) / ɕiu-tha
 (< Ch. xiū + AUX).
pierce with a fork ə-tɕ.

TRADE AND BUSINESS

trade (n.) təts.
do business təts pə (‘trade’ + ‘to do’).
buy pə.
sell ɕua.
it sells well ɕua-na (‘sell’ + ‘good’).
capital pə-tshe (< Ch. bēnqián).
earn money dzigu qupu (‘money’ + ‘earn’).
lose money in business tə-pei-tha (DIR + < Ch. péi+ AUX).
accounts tɕan (< Ch. zhàng).
record accounts tɕe qua.
put on credit kuatɕi (< Ch.).
collect debts xɕolɕ.
make a quotation or offer phu dze (‘price’ + ‘say’).
how much (asking for price) ŋawe.
haggle over prices phə dzidzi (‘price’ + ‘discuss’).
become wealthy dziku tu-qupu (‘money’ + DIR + ‘earn’).
get promoted tə-qa (= ‘go up (DIR + ‘to go’)').
get demoted fi-a-la (= ‘come down (DIR + ‘to come’)').
country market or fair tɕhaq (= ‘street’).
open stall (n.) thantsə (< Ch. tānzi).
buy vegetables or groceries kuɕu pə (‘vegetables’ + ‘to buy’).
settle a bill fi-a-sua (DIR + ‘compute’).
inn (hostel) je tɕi (‘live/stay (at)’ + ‘house’).
stay at an inn je (= ‘live/stay (at) (short term)’ / wəi).
pawnshop phutsə (< Ch. pùzi).

mortgage (vt.) ti-tha (< Ch. dǐ + AUX).
money dzigu ~ dziku (dzi said by Sun (1988:58) to be an old loan of Chinese qián).
price phu ~ phə.
paper money phioutsə (< Ch. piàozǐ).
coins (small change) ŋepi (< Ch. nièbì ‘nickel’ + ‘money’) (鏰幣).
dollar pi (epi) (< Ch. bì (幣)).
dime (ten fen) tɕo (otɕo) (< Ch. jiǎo).
cent fe¹ (a-fe¹) (< Ch. fèn).
spend money ʂə-tha (< Ch. shǐ (使) + AUX).
waste money ɣaɣə the (‘waste’ + ‘to use’).
lend (money) he-çi.
borrow(money) ha-xkù.
owe (money), debt ɕtɕy.
dun for (money, debt) ɕtɕy ŋuasi (ɕtɕy = ‘debt’; ŋua = ‘to loan, borrow’ (?)).
return a borrowed object or money he-w.
return a debt ɕtɕy he-w (‘debt’ + ‘return’).
return change (from purchase) (ha)-tʂə.
interest paq.
worth (be worth) lu.
tax (n.) khe¹ / sui (< Ch. shuì).
tax (vt.) khe¹ ʂa (‘tax’ + ‘to levy’).
pay tax sui ʂa (sui < Ch.).
unite tʂuə tʂuə.
scale tʂhə (< Ch. chènɡ).
weigh (vt.) tʂhətʂ (tʂhə = ‘scale’).
measure (rice) ɛzi.
measure (cloth) ɛzəɛzi.

catty tɕ (a-tɕ) (< Ch. jīn).
tael, ounce lu (o-lu) (< Ch. liǎng).
mace, 1/10 tael tɕhan (a-tɕhan) (< Ch. qián).
peck, a dry measure (316 c. in.) quat.
pint, 1/10 peck pu.
measure of 10.8 feet tʂan (a-tʂan) (< Ch. zhàng).
yard ma (a-ma) (< Ch. mǎ).
foot (measure) tʂ (a-tʂ) (< Ch. chǐ).
inch tshuen (e-tshuen) (< Ch. cùn).
Chinese mile (360 paces, 1/2 km.) li (e-li) (< Ch. lǐ).
Chinese measure of land area (240 square paces) mu (o-mu) (< Ch. mù).
fathom (length of outstretched arms) ze (e-ze).
handspan (thumb to middle finger) tu (a-tu; < PTB *twa).
handspan (thumb to forefinger) tʂhe (e-tʂhe).
handspan (thumb to curled forefinger) qu tche (o-qu tche) (qu = ‘mouth(ful)’).

TOWN AND ROAD

town, city ɛu ~ ɛo (= ‘mountain’) / tʂhaq.
city gate ɛo men (‘city’ + ‘gate’ (< Ch. mén)).
street tʂhaq.
go into town tʂhaq-ta kə (‘street’ + LOC + ‘to go’).
road, path gue:¹.
walk on foot sei.

build a road guə:¹ bəl ('road' + 'to do, make').

forked road guə:¹ etʂetəpe-sta ('road' + 'meet' + 'place').

bridge tshua.

temporary bridge tshua-stua (tshua = 'bridge').

village tshua (= 'bridge').

county ɕan (< Ch. xiàn).

Chengdu zdzyta (takes long a: instead of locative particle).

Mao County χquŋi(la) ~ ʂquŋi(la).

Wenchuan County qhusu(la).

Li County (Xue City) ʂatʂhə-l(a) (actually the name of the county town, Xue Cheng ('Xue City') but also used for the whole county).

Ronghong Village joχta.

Muyu / Moyu Village buja(la).

Guali Village quakla.

Wowo Village ʋoʋu(la).

Chibu Village tʂhəpa (pronounced tʂhəpa: including locative particle).

Matang Village tshoʋu(la) (can be pronounced tshoʋua: including locative particle).

Hexi Village χtəpa (pronounced χtəpa: including locative particle).

Xihu Village ɕəfʊ(ta).

Kawo Village qhoʋu(la) (= 'coffin').

Yadu Township jotʊ.

Ekou Village gufʊta.

Daguazi Village quazda.

Xiaoguazi Village ɕi-quazda (ɕi- < Ch. xiǎo 'little').

Luhua Village ʋlo-χua ('stone tower' + 'crooked').

Seergu Village se⁴gʊ.

Longba Village lunpaqpa.

Wasi Village waxs.

Luoda Village ʋlota.

TRAVEL

travel (vi.) ha-qa (= 'go out (DIR + 'go')').

traveller da-qa-m ('pass by (DIR + 'go')' + agentive nominalizer).

start on a journey ho-ju.

luggage panə (= 'thing(s)').

pack (luggage) ɕtəopʊ.

unpack (luggage) phe¹z.

pass by a place da-qa (= 'go by (DIR + 'go')').

guide (n.) qə-ʂə-m ('head' + 'lead' + agentive nominalizer).

reach destination i-pə-k (DIR + 'arrive' + 'go') / i-pə-l (DIR + 'arrive' + 'come').

go home tɕəu-la ipək ('home' + LOC + 'reach destination').

yoke ɕitʂʊ.

saddle gantsə (< Ch. ānzi).

sedan chair tɕautsə (< Ch. jiàozi).

carry a sedan chair tɕautsə tuə (< Ch. jiàozi + 'carry').

ride (a bicycle) tsa (= 'ride a horse') / qətʂi.

ride in a car tʂhetsə-ʋa dzu (car + LOC + 'sit').

automobile, car tʂhetsə (< Ch. chēzi).

have a holiday de-ɕe (DIR + 'release'; possibly a calque of Chinese fàngjià).

LANGUAGE AND COMMUNICATION

language zəwa.
pass on a message phə stə.
spoken words mele.
speak, say dze.
talk (vt.), say jə.
chat, gossip pethiau pə (< Ch. bǎitiáo).
ask ke¹.
answer (vt.) he-zəgue (DIR + ‘answer’).
whisper (vi.) hama-ŋi kə-jə (‘quiet’ + adverbial marker + thus + ‘say’).
be silent ʂquə-styɔ̃ (‘mouth’ + ‘to store’).
call (vi.), shout (vi.) ʁoi.
respond verbally hɑ-sɑ (= ‘make a sound’).
story ʂkupu-mele (‘gorilla’ + ‘words’).
tell a story ʂkupu-mele dze (‘story’ + ‘say’).
telephone (n.) tianχua (< Ch. diànhuà).
telephone (v.) ʁoi (tianχua ʁoi) (= ‘shout, call’).
letter, book ləyz.
message (oral) phə.
write (a letter/book) ləyz zə (‘letter’ + ‘to write’).
mail a letter ləyz stə (‘letter’ + ‘entrust to’).
read a book ləyz tse (‘book’ + ‘to look at’).
read aloud zdə.
recite lessons from memory ləyz bie (‘book’ + ‘carry on back’ (calque from Chinese?)).
teach, study su.

literate ləyz χsa (‘letter’ + ‘understand’).
illiterate ləyz ma-χsa (‘letter’ + NEG + ‘understand’).
diligent na-ji su (‘good’ + adverbial marker + ‘study’).
draw / paint a picture χua-tha (< Ch. huà + AUX).
newspaper pautʂə (< Ch. bàozhǐ).
read newspaper paotʂə tse (‘newspaper’ + ‘look at’).
paper ze:¹.
pen, writing brush zə-s (‘write’ + instrumental nominalizer) / pi (< Ch. bǐ).
ink (fluid) mə (< Ch. mò).
shape qəs.
sign (v., n.) suχhu / i-tʂi-(s) (becomes a noun with -s nominalizer).
trace jimi-gy (‘footprint’).
bundle (CL) pa (ɑ-pa; < Ch. bǎ).
paste, glue (n.) maha.
glue (vi.), paste, stick (vt.) məmə.
paste up ʂpe.

RELIGION

god apə xsə ('grandfather' + 'god').

deity (family god) tci-xs ('house' + 'god').

worship god, sacrifice (to the gods) xsə ctəə ('god' + 'feed; respect').

ghost, spirit du-gu-mi: (mi: = 'eye(s)').

incense fəts ~ fət ~ fut(s) (possibly < Tib. spos).

incense burner futs-ə-ʂə-s ('incense' + 'put, place' + instrumental nominalizer).

burn incense fut tsə ('incense' + 'burn').

temple xsə tci ('god' + 'house').

monastery xsə tci ('god' + 'house').

bodhisatva leme (< Tibetan).

tell the future suə suə (< Ch. suàn).

efficacious tʂe.

fate lez.

pagoda la-xse ('stone' + 'god').

auspicious jiqhua ce ('chest (bodypart)' + 'beautiful').

white stone ɤlu-phi ('stone' + 'white'; the white stone (a piece of flint) is invested with spirits).

FESTIVALS

Qiang Festival (held in Autumn; also used for Lunar New Year) (zme) dze.

Solar New Year's Day ɤəʔ dze ('Chinese' + 'festival').

observe the New Year dze ce ('festival' + 'release').

crack firecrackers ce (= 'release').

swear brotherhood or sisterhood; to pledge in a sworn brotherhood gul se (= 'make friends'; gul = 'friend').

adopt, raise pəʔz.

take a wife də.

take a husband ʃzə.

wedding or other set date zət.

groom, bride mi-xs ('person' + 'new'; calque from Chinese?).

remarry (of woman) ɲai-e:-ta ʃzə ('another' + 'one (+CL)' + goal marker + 'marry').

birthday senzə (< Ch. shēng-rì).

birthday mə (= 'one's symbolic animal').

celebrate birthday senzə bəl (< Ch. shēngrì + 'do').

dress a newly dead person fa ləla ('clothes' + '(ex)-change').

burial clothes lau-ji (< Ch. lǎo-yī (老衣)).

coffin qhoku.

put the dead into the coffin qhoku-ka le ('coffin' + LOC + 'put in').

watch the coffin containing the corpse gəʔgəʔ.

hold a funeral procession he-kue (= 'take out').

inter, to bury guele ~ kuele.

grave məp.

tombstone mopei (< Ch. mù-bèi).

cremation zɤə.

human nature, friendliness zen tshen (< Ch. rénníng).

make friends gul se ('friend' + 'make (friends)').

hail (v., to say hello) z mətʃi pə.

keep company gul pə ('friend' + 'do').

make a visit (to friends) g u l tse-k ('friend' + 'look at' + 'go').

welcome, to receive də.

receive (visitor), entertain ɛtɕə (= 'feed').

host/master tɕip (tɕi = 'house'; -p < PTB *pa 'male gender marker; formative suffix').

guest dzu.

send presents pana dzu ('things' + 'send').

gift, present u-lu-tɕ pana (DIR + 'send' + genitive/relative marker + 'thing').

treat (others to a meal, etc.) tɕip dzuə ('host/master' + 'sit').

invite guests to give a party dzu-ɕtɕ ('guest' + 'invite/feed').

see a visitor off ɕe (= 'release').

be a guest dzu pə-k ('guest' + 'do' + 'go').

set up a banquet ə-ʃ (= 'to place').

take a seat at a dinner table ə-zu (DIR + dzu 'sit').

start serving a banquet kuʃu əʃ ('vegetables' + 'to place').

thank for a gift zə ha-sa ('affair, matter' + DIR + 'make sound').

thank for an act of kindness zə ha-sa ('affair, matter' + DIR + 'make sound').

'excuse me' ma-tʃuə-s-ta ŋuə (NEG + 'pay attention' + nominalizer + LOC + copula).

'please have a seat' ə-zu-na (DIR + 'sit' + 'good').

'stop, don't trouble yourself to come out' ə-tɕə (= 'stop (walking)').

GAMES AND PLAY

play ɸzəla / ʃua-tha (< Ch. shuǎ + AUX; used more commonly than the native word ɸzəla).

toy ʃua thə-s ('play' + AUX + instrumental nominalizer).

somersault tantɕigugu.

shuttlecock tɕantsə (< Ch. jiànzi).

play the shuttlecock tɕantsə ɸue ('shuttlecock' + 'throw').

take a step da-ɸua.

play hide and seek e-wu e:-ipi-kə-bəl ('one' + agentive marker + 'one (plus classifier)' + 'hide' + 'go' + 'do').

cards phai (< Ch. pái).

play card game phai ɕe (phai < Ch. pái + 'release, play').

dice ʃqɑŋi (= 'stones').

play jacks, dice game ʃqɑŋi ɸue (ʃqɑŋi is seven stones thrown like dice; ɸue = 'throw').

ball pou tan.

play ball pou tan thə.

song, music zəm.

sing zəm tshuə.

whistle (n.) ɕtɕyl.

whistle (vt.) ɕtɕyl phə ('whistle (n.)' + 'blow').

flute tɕhəl.

play the flute tɕhəl phə ('flute' + 'blow').

gong χomu.
sound the gong χomu zete
 ('gong' + 'strike, beat').
drum zbu.
hit a drum zbu zete ('drum' +
 'strike, beat').
dance zəm χsutu ('song' +
 'jump').
movies tia-jin (< Ch. diàn-
 yǐng).
watch a movie tia-jin tse (= 'look at').
camera tʂauçan pə-s (< Ch. zhàoxiāng + 'do' +
 instrumental nominalizer).
take a photo mi:-lan̩ qu
 ('mirror, lens' + 'close') /
 tʂauçan pə / tʂauçan qu
 (tʂauçan < Ch. zhàoxiāng +
 pə 'do' or qua 'close').
win tu-qu.
lose fio-qu.

BODYPARTS

body pe'ʂen.
body hair xupa (= 'fur').
skin ze:pi ~ zepi.
wrinkle phutu.
mole, birthmark ʂpaimi.
bone zeke.
marrow zeke-ʂ (zeke = 'bone').
tendon, vein gə'.
fat (n.) tsha (< PTB *tʂa, used
 to refer to the fat of animals)
 / tʂini (used to refer to the
 fat of people).
blood sa.
bleed sa ha-la ('blood' + 'come
 out ('DIR + 'come')').
sweat (n.) xtʂu.
sweat (v.) xtʂu lu ('sweat (n.)' +
 'come').
body dirt khue.
callous, blister, corns on the feet
 tsuəq.
grow callous skin, raise a blister
 tsuəq sə'-ʂp.
pus ʂpə-sa (sa = 'blood').
breathe (in) məs e-xkɿ ('breath'
 + 'inhale').
breathe out məs he-çi ('breath'
 + 'exhale ('release out (DIR
 + 'release')')').
pant (v.) (məs) çiçi.
yawn (v.) laχɿ tə-la.
doze məzi pə / quəta.
head qə-patʂ ('head' + 'round').
top of the head qə-sta ('head' +
 'place').
dandruff zdadzi.
head hair qə-ŋɿ ('head' +
 'hair').
hair whorl zbə (= 'dragon').
bald-headed dzoq-patʂ ('hair' +
 'round').

back of the skull, occiput wulu-
χotɕ (χotɕ = ‘mountain
ravine’).

brain qə-ŋi (‘head’ + ‘brain’ <
PTB *nuk).

temple qacetɕ.

forehead zduxku.

face quaha.

eyebrow, eyelash mi:-xkam
(mi: = ‘eye(s)’).

eyes, eyeball mi: (< PTB *mik
~ myak).

eyelid miapi (‘eye’ + ‘skin (<
zɛpi)’).

white of the eye mi:-phiɕ (‘eye’
+ ‘white’).

secretion in the eye mi:-χɕ
(‘eye’ + ‘excrement’).

tears Ɂləq.

shed tears Ɂləq ci (‘tears’ +
‘release’).

cross-eyed mi:-daqhua (‘eye’ +
‘slanted, crooked’).

twitching of the eyelid mi:
χsutu (‘eye’ + ‘jump’).

have a sty qap sə-la (‘sty (=‘
jar’)’ + DIR + ‘come’).

ears ŋukɕ (ŋu possibly < PTB
*g/r-na).

ear lobe ŋukɕ-qulu (‘ear’ +
‘point’).

soft secretion of the ear ŋukɕ-
tshuɕ.

nose cɛɕy-tsu (cɛɕy < PTB *sna
‘nose’).

ridge of nose cɛɕy-tsu: (‘nose’ +
‘pillar’).

base of nose cɛɕyts-kopu (‘nose’
+ ‘root’).

nostril cɛɕyts-zo:pu (‘nose’ +
‘hole’).

mucus from the nose χa.

have a running nose χa lu
(‘mucus’ + ‘come’).

blow the nose χa sue (‘mucus’
+ ‘blow (the nose)’).

hard secretion from the nose
χa-kupa (‘mucus’ + ‘burnt
rice (that sticks to pan < Ch.
gūobā)’).

flat-nosed cɛɕyts-patɕ (‘nose’ +
‘round’).

mouth, opening of the mouth
ɕqu.

lips zdekɕ.

tongue zəq (q final probably
from qə ‘head, point’ (Liu
1984)).

tongue tip zəq-qulu (‘tongue’ +
‘point’).

root of the tongue zəq-kopu
(‘tongue’ + ‘root’).

fur on the tongue ɕqu ma (ɕqu =
‘mouth’).

saliva, spittle tɕua / tsə-s (tsə =
‘water’).

phlegm tshup-qha.

spit (v.) tɕua phə (‘saliva’ +
‘spit, blow’).

teeth ɕua (< PTB *swa).

incisors, front teeth ɕua-zdu
(‘tooth’ + male marker).

canine teeth dza.

tartar ɕua-χɕ (‘tooth’ + ‘excre-
ment’).

gums (of teeth) ɕua-z (ɕua =
‘tooth’).

lose one’s milk teeth ɕua ləla
(‘tooth’ + ‘(ex)change’).

protruding teeth dza qəpi
(‘canine teeth’ + ‘protrude’).

cheek tɛpi.

cheekbone tɛini.

sideburn, mustache, beard χots
(< Ch. húzi).

dimples cɛi-ɕpie (cɛi = ‘liquor’ (+
‘thirsty’? — if this is a calque
on Chinese jiǔwō it should

be ‘nest’, but ‘nest’ is z₁baha)).

chin dzo:.

freckles ŋitsə (< Ch.).

neck tʂuəke ~ tʂuki.

throat muwu.

Adam’s apple dzuqtchi-patʂ (patʂ = ‘round’).

shoulder, forearm jipi (ji = ‘hand, arm’).

armpit dz₁odz₁ə-ʂqəl / zdziχqa (ʂqəl = ‘under(neath)’).

hand japa (also ji in combination).

right-hand na-xʂe (‘right’ + ‘side’).

left-hand ɤua-xʂe (‘left’ + ‘side’).

arm lo-pu.

elbow la-kuəs.

wrist sa ɤua.

pulse of the wrist gə¹ (= ‘vein, tendon’).

back of the hand pewe (= ‘instep’).

palm la-xʂ.

finger, knuckles ji-saq (ji = ‘hand’; sa(q) = ‘section, joint’).

finger tips qulu (= ‘point, tip’).

finger nail ɤdz₁əs.

thumb ji-miaq (‘hand’ + female marker).

little finger tci-χtʂa (‘most’ + ‘small’).

middle finger z₁eky-ta-la (‘middle, between’ + DEF:one + CL for long thin objects).

lines of the palm ji-ləyz (‘hand’ + ‘letter, writing, book’).

fist ju-ʂpul (‘hand’ + ‘kidney’).

chest ji-qhua.

breast papə (= ‘milk’).

nipple papə-qulu (‘breast’ + ‘point’).

heart ɛtci:mi (ɛtci: < PTB *sniŋ; mi is secondary, and dropped in compounds).

lungs tshu (< PTB *tsjwap?).

stomach sikue.

waist ʂəq.

belly, intestines pə.

small intestine bitsi.

large intestine pə-po (‘intestine’ + ‘thick’).

navel pu-tʂy (pu = ‘belly’).

liver sa-χa (sa = ‘blood’).

gall bladder xtʂə.

kidneys ʂpəl ~ ʂpul.

pancreas χatʂy.

bladder tʂhəʂ.

backbone thosu.

buttocks stasta.

anus χʂu-z₁y (‘excrement’ + ‘hole’ (< χʂu-z₁o:pu)).

feces mi-χʂ (‘person’ + ‘excrement’).

defecate χʂə ju (‘excrement’ + ‘to move from one container to another (= ‘to spoon, pour (tea)’)).

urine bi.

urinate bi ɛe (‘urine’ + ‘release’).

expulsion of intestinal gas χʂə (= ‘excrement’).

expel intestinal gas χʂə ɛe (‘intestinal gas’ + ‘release’).

penis (common term) liaq.

penis (baby term) tcutcu.

testicles bə¹.

sperm, semen lieʂ.

have nocturnal emissions lieʂ sə-la (‘sperm’ + DIR + ‘come’).

vulva (common term) phoʂ.

vulva (euphemistic term) ɛpie.

sexual intercourse (common term) staχu (sta = ‘buttocks (?)’).

sexual intercourse (euphemistic term) bəl (= ‘to do’).

pregnant tçymi le (‘child’ + ‘exist (in a container)’).

give birth i-ci (DIR + ‘release’).

leg dua.

thigh duap (dua = ‘leg’; -p < po ‘thick?’).

kneecap zçguəç.

shinbone gə’.

calf of the leg dz i ç pu t ç (possibly ‘foot’ + ‘round’).

foot dzoqu.

heel jimi-patç (‘foot(print)’ + ‘round’).

instep pewe (= ‘back of hand’).

lower leg saq.

sole of the foot paq / dzoq-pa.

toe ji-saq (= ‘finger’).

toenail ɛdzəs (= ‘fingernail’).

point of the foot ji-saq-qulu (‘toes’ + ‘point’).

strength guəç.

voice, sound, noise qəi.

ribs χa:.

back tsup / jipi (upper back; = ‘shoulders’).

ACTIONS INVOLVING BODYPARTS

raise the head qəpatç ho-ku.

droop the head qəpatç fiə-quət.

turn the head ha-l.

turn around (the head) zə-l / da-l.

look (vt.) tse / lə.

open the eyes mi: da-tçə (= ‘crack/split’).

close the eyes mi: fiə-tçə.

blink (v.) mi: phəqphəq pə (mi: = ‘eye(s)’; pə = ‘to do’).

gaze fixedly or fiercely zçə-tçə.

look sideways pianχuə’ (< Ch.).

aim at zçuzda.

hear xçuətç (çtç < *st(front vowel) < *sn, ultimately < PTB *sna; cf. Mawo dial. khçust, Taoping dial. tçhy⁵⁵ ny⁵⁵ (data from Sun 1981a); compare also ‘rest’ and ‘painful’).

smell (vt.) çete.

open the mouth çqu da-qa.

close the mouth çqu fiə-mmə.

open the mouth a slit çqu dzaha (‘mouth’ + ‘slit open’).

purse the lips zdekü su-tçhu (‘lips’ + DIR + ‘extend, stick out’).

kiss (vt.) zde tçue pə (zde = ‘lips’; pə = ‘to do’).

eat dzə (dry foods; < PTB *dza) / tçə (liquid foods; = ‘drink’).

drink (vt.) tçə / suqu.

suck (vt.), smoke (cigarettes) tçhe.

bite (vt.), hold in the mouth ɛdzə.

chew (vt.) dzidzi.

gnaw at a bone ɛkəi (people or animals).

lick with tip of tongue ɛtç.

taste (vt.) ə-ç tse (‘one’ + ‘time’ + ‘look at’).

sip (vt.), suck (fingers) tçhe-xł (tçhe = ‘suck’).

swallow (v.) səɛzç.

choke with food sukutsu.

spurt (vt.) fiə-f (DIR + ‘to spit, blow (< phə(te))’).

spit (vt.), blow (vt.) phə(te).
drool tsəs lə¹ ('saliva' + 'drip, flow').
stick out the tongue zəq ho-tʃhu ('tongue' + DIR + 'extend, stick out').
tuck under the arm dz_odzə-sqal ('armpit' + 'under').
elbow (v.), nudge thə.
raise the hand ho-tʃhu (DIR + 'extend, stick out').
stretch out the hand su-tʃhu (DIR + 'extend, stick out').
clap the hands ləxʃ z_ete ('palm(s)' + 'hit, strike').
let loose of the hand de-ɕi (DIR + 'release').
shake hands ɸoʃəu pə (< Ch. wòshǒu + 'to do').
clench one's fist juʃpul zu-ku.
point (v.) tʃə-tha (< Ch. zhǐ + AUX).
hold with the hand, take in the fingers, carry in the hand(s), pick up, raise (vt.) tə-tsi.
carry, bring lie.
claw (v.), clutch zə-tʃua (< Ch. zhuā (?), but cf. tʃuə-tʃua 'twist, crush together in the hand').
gather together xʃol.
hold firmly zə-tʃhi.
bring (as a tray) tɕy (= 'carry').
bring (polite request) ha-xkue.
hold up in both hands i-tsi (same root as in 'hold with the hand, take in the fingers', and 'raise').
raise with the hands ho-tʃhu (= 'extend').
shoulder (a load), carry on the shoulders (two people) tuə.

raise by putting something under u-xʃu / tian-tha (< Ch. diàn + AUX).
transport ʃqa / pan-tha (pan-tha < Ch. bān + AUX).
feel, touch (vt.) sosu xʃtʃa.
put, place in/on ə-ʃ.
put down rudely da-ku (< kue 'throw').
pile up bə.
rub, wipe ʃaxʃa.
rub between the hands, rub, massage ɸliete.
rub on (oil) məmə.
press down fiə-tʃhe.
twist (v.), wring (a wet towel), pinch with the fingers, clutch, grasp with the hand, screw (v.), turn (doorknob) quə-tʃue.
crowded ɕtɕiɕtɕi (= 'fold' (?)).
squeeze (out) zə-tʃhi.
strangle zə-xʃ.
twist, sprain (v.) patəɸl.
twist, crush together in the hand (e.g. clothes) tʃuə tʃua (cf. zə-tʃua 'claw (v.), clutch').
scratch dze ɸe ('itch' + 'grab, scratch (< phe)').
push ɕtɕi / thui-tha (< Ch. tuī + AUX).
pull, drag (vt.) ʃe-xku.
pull at (a string) fiə-(ʃe)-xku.
pull out stue.
draw (lots) staqa (= 'select').
disperse (e.g. sand) se.
flay, peel (vt.), open out, separate qə'qə'.
separate, divide, divorce qala.
rip, tear (vt.) phi'phi' (< PTB *prak).
fold (vt.) ɕtɕiɕtɕi / zəɕtɕi.
hit, strike (vt.) dzete.
slap (vt.) qhəli.

pound, tap, strike, rap on (the head), skim, fish out, massage the back by pounding zete.
pick at, scrape (e.g. the nose) tʃutʃu.
pat (on the shoulder) tə-χʰi (< qhəli 'slap').
pat (on the table) phete.
pound, ram dze.
poke (vt.) ə-tʃ.
break into two ji-dzue fiə-p ('two' + 'sections' + DIR + 'to do').
shake stuəstua.
shake out fiə-φete (< phete).
pull out, take out (from pocket) χʰtʃə(χʰtʃe).
rummage (vt.) meʰz (= 'look for').
throw zɛgutu / kuəte ~ kue.
throw away da-ku (DIR + 'throw (< kuəte)').
take with the hand, receive, support, prop up fiə-ke.
embrace, hug (v.) tə-χua.
carry in the arms fiə-χua.
ward off ə-xtʃə (xtʃə = 'to stop up') / ta-tha (< Ch. dǎng + AUX).
prop up, stretch out tə-tɛ.
roll up ɣlə ~ ɣlu.
wrap (vt.) quəqua.
tie up, bind tə-χʃ.
fill up, load lələ.
carry in upper garment phələ-ta del (phələ is the part of the upper garment that comes across the chest).
shake open, spread by shaking da-qatʃhe.
lift open (a lid) tə-qe.
pry open tə-təhau-tha (DIR + < Ch. qiào + AUX).

cover from head down fiə-ʃ / fiə-que.
ladle (vt., water) tə-za (za = 'ladle (n.)').
scoop from one container to another ju.
line up, queue up phai-tha (< Ch. pái + AUX).
tread on tʃhuen (< Ch.).
stamp the feet dzoqu tshuate.
step across da-kuə.
limp (n.) tɛhəq-la.
run phu (possibly < PTB *ploŋ).
kick tʃhu.
kick (as a horse), kick back pəχʃu tʃhu.
kick off coverings quatɛi sə-ku ('quilt' + 'turn over').
cross the legs zə-pela.
bind the feet cɛte-de ('binding' + 'wrap').
sit (up) dzuə (said by Sun (1988:58) to be an old loan of Ch. zuò).
sit down ə-dzuə.
stand (up), get up tu-ju.
squat tuen-tha (< Ch. dūn + AUX) / fiə-gue (said by Sun (1988:58) to be an old loan from Chinese guì 'kneel').
stoop fiə-ku.
kneel, bow (vi.), prostrate and knock head on ground kuə-tshu (tshu = 'jump').
lean against ə-qhua (qhua = 'slanted').
lie down fiə-n (DIR + 'sleep').
lie flat on the stomach pun nu qu.
sleep face down pun nu qu-ŋi nə ('lie flat on stomach' + adverbial particle + 'sleep').

sleep on one's back mutu tə-l-
ŋi nə ('lie on back ('sky' DIR
+ 'look')' + adverbial
particle + 'sleep').

sleep on one's side e-xʂe da-l-
ŋi nə ('one' + 'side' + DIR +
'look' + adverbial particle +
'sleep').

slip (v.) ʎa.

stumble, fall down, slip and fall
da-ʎa (fall because ground is
slippery (ʎa = 'slip'; < PTB
*kla) / da-que (fall because
of tripping over rock, etc.).

jump ʂsutu / tshu.

crawl bə-tə pə ('bug' + genitive
particle + 'do').

rush on zu-ʂsu (DIR + 'jump').

run against ə-t.

**move or slip away or to one
side (v.)** de-xtse.

hide i-pi (i-pi / i-pi-k) (< PTB
*pak).

meet e-tʂepe.

**carry on the back (child or
objects)** bie.

GROOMING

wash face quaha ʂuəla ('face' +
'wash').

pan for washing face səlanphən
(< Ch. xǐliǎnpén) / tshiphen.

take a bath peʎʂen ʂuəla ('body'
+ 'wash').

wash the feet dzoqu ʂuəla
(('feet' + 'wash').

shampoo the hair qəpatʂ ʂuəla
(('head' + 'wash').

soap jits (< Ch. yízi).

washcloth, bath towel phatsə (<
Ch. pàzi).

toothbrush ʂuə-ʂuəla-s ('tooth'
+ 'wash' + instrumental
nominalizer).

brush one's teeth ʂuə ʂuəla
(('tooth' + 'wash').

rinse one's mouth ʂqu ʂuəla
(('mouth' + 'wash').

wipe the anus (after defecating)
tsha-tha (< Ch. cā + AUX).

make up (v.) dzə dzə.

comb (n.) quəsə ~ qusa ~ quə-
si ('head' (?) + 'comb' (?) <
PTB *si (?)).

comb the hair qəpatʂ kheʎʂ
(('head' + 'comb' (kheʎʂ <
kheʎ-kheʎ < PTB *kwi (?)).

dress up the hair tutu.

pigtail (tied with hemp) quxʂul.

pigtail (not tied with hemp)
dzoq / qutəu.

plait the hair (vt.) kepi.

**have a haircut (male), shave the
head** qəpatʂ khue ('head' +
'scrape, shave').

have a haircut (female) tua
(Qiang women don't
normally cut their hair).

shave the head bald kuəŋthəu
khue (< Ch. guāngtóu +
'scrape, shave').

shave beard ʂots khue ('beard'
< Ch. húzi) + 'scrape,
shave').

LIFE, DEATH, AND ILLNESS**life** suə.**whole life (one's whole life)** e-
še ('one' + 'die').**be born** zi-ji ('exist' + CSM)**give birth** i-ci (DIR + 'release')**living, to be alive** χsu (= 'to
jump' (?)).**raise (children)** pe'z.**watch (the children)** tse (= 'look at').**young in age** suəs me-le ('years/age' + NEG + 'exist').**grow up (vi.)** tə-wa (DIR + 'big (< ba)').**be grown up** tə-wa-ji (DIR + 'big (< ba)' + aspect marker (CSM)).**old of age, become old** da-p (DIR + 'old').**become tired** tə-tšhue ətəq mo-lu (DIR + 'move' + heart' + NEG + 'come' = 'not want to move').**rest** zdzə (< *na; cf. 'disease', 'hear', 'nose').**sleep** nə (also used for 'lie down') / məzi (fully asleep).**dream (v.)** u-z₂mu (DIR + 'dream'; < PTB *r-mang).**talk in sleep** məzi-q pə (məzi = 'sleep'; pə = 'to do').**fatigued** fiə-šu.**part from** qale.**die (vi.)** še (has special form for DIR prefix: die-še).**have maggots** bəl de-z₂i ('worm' + DIR (= become) + 'exist (animate refer-ent)').**corpse** z₂mu ~ z₂mə.**age** pə / suəs (= 'years').**year old** pə.**disease, illness, pain(ful)** zdzi (< *na; cf. 'hear', 'rest', 'nose').**ill** tə-zdzi (DIR + 'disease, be ill' = 'become ill').**infect** da-tsu.**not feel well** leme mo-lu ('spirit, energy' + NEG + 'come').**moan (v.)** tsəydz.**get well** u-xšy.**have headache** qəpatš zdzi ('head' + 'be painful, ill').**feel dizzy** qəpatš su ('head' + 'turn, spin').**eyesight blurred** mi: lampə tə-la ('eye(s)' + 'flower' + DIR + 'come').**deaf** ŋuky bu ('ear' + 'deaf'; bu < PTB *baŋ).**sneeze (v.)** i-səu pə (pə = 'to do').**have a stuffy nose** ətəyts mə-nə ('nose' + NEG + 'good').**remove teeth** suə stue ('tooth' + 'pull out').**have decayed teeth** bəl-wu suə dzə ('bug, insect' + agentive marker + 'tooth' + 'eat').**burp (v.)** qhup-tul.**nauseating** dowa-š-ke: ŋuə ('vomit' + 'think about' + DEF:CL + copula).**vomit (v.)** dowe.**have the mumps** tšueχ.**hoarse** qei ha-sə-mə-lə ('voice' + DIR + 'make sound (< sa)' + NEG + 'able (< dzə)').**nervous, palpitating heart** ətəi:mi χsutu ('heart' + 'jump').**heart disease** ətəi:mi-zdzi ('heart' + 'disease; be ill, painful').

have tuberculosis laupin (< Ch. láobìng).

strain, sprain (one's back, muscles) do-quǎ.

have indigestion pə-le: ma-nə-ke: ŋuə ('intestines' + DEF:CL + NEG + 'good (< na)') + INDEF:CL + copula).

have stomachache sikue qhə⁴qhə¹ ('stomach/belly' + 'be painful, hurt (only used for stomach pain)').

have diarrhea sikue zdzi ('stomach, belly' + 'disease; be ill, painful').

have dysentery, diarrhea kuə (tə)-ʂa.

feel numb tə-γzə (DIR + 'hot (peppery / spicy)').

have cramps gə¹ su ('tendon' + 'turn, spin').

shiver (v.), shudder (v.) leme xse ('spirit, energy' + 'move').

catch chill tə-nian-tha (DIR + < Ch. liáng + AUX).

have fever tə-si (DIR + 'hot' = 'become hot').

have the measles bu da-tʂu ('rash' + DIR + 'meet with').

have pockmarked face matsə (< Ch. mázi).

dropsy pə phəpha ('intestines, belly' + 'swell').

have asthma tshup tshu (tshu = 'cough'; cf. tshup-qha 'phlegm').

hysterical ʂentəin tshu (< Ch. shénjīng + 'meet with').

have cholera ʂa-χʂə da-tʂu ('blood' + 'stool(feces)' + 'meet with').

have leprosy dzu.

have lice xtʂe de-w ('lice' + DIR + 'exist').

have underarm odor tʂoqu-bəχtsi ('weasel' + 'smell bad').

have goose flesh pufu ha-la (hala = 'come out').

have piles (hemorrhoid) luku zdzi ('backside, read end' + 'illness, pain').

get a splinter tshəma ə-tʂə ('thorn' + DIR + 'to stick').

scald oneself fie-tʂi.

heal, close (of wound) zəmma.

grow into a scar jinpi quət ('wound' + 'cover (quə)').

whip mark jimi-ku (jimi = 'footprint'(?)).

wound, sore jinpi.

get wounded ʂan tu-tʂu (< Ch. shāng + DIR + 'to get (illness), suffer').

wrap a wound lələ.

have prickly heat zəfetsə (< Ch. rèfēizi).

have sores jinpi fio-p ('sores' + DIR + 'become')

have the itch, scabbies pie-dzu (pie = 'pig').

have nosebleed etəy-sa lu ('nose' + 'blood' + 'come').

constipation kaitʂu fio-p.

smallpox bu.

heal disease tʂhop.

examine the disease / see a doctor zdzi tse ('illness' + 'look at').

acupuncture jin tʂen (< Ch. yínzhēn).

make up a prescription phei-tha (< Ch. pèi + AUX).

medicine sipe.

dose of medicine fu (a-fu) (< Ch. fù).

pill sipe-patʂ ('medicine' + 'round').
liquid medicine sipe-than ('medicine' + 'soup (< Ch. tāng)').
make a decoction sipe ʂqu ('medicine' + 'boil').
take medicine sipe dzə ('medicine' + 'eat').
drink liquid medicine sipe tɕhə ('medicine' + 'drink').
medicinal plaster kaojau (< Ch. gāoyào).
apply a plaster kaujau ʂpe ('plaster' + 'to paste').
ointment jokau (< Ch. yào-gāo).
rub ointment jokau məma ('ointment' + 'rub').
poison duə.
hospital jikuən (< Ch. yīyuàn).

WARFARE

army gue¹.
bow lə (< PTB *d-liy).
crossbow qhuatəq.
slingshot phiphəntsə (< Ch.).
shoot an arrow or gun qhu.
gun soqhu.
bullet xtʂə.
shoot a gun soqhu qhu.
target zuə.
shoot the target zuə zda (zuə = 'target').
ambush (vt.) ipi (= 'to hide').
guard (vt.) gə¹gə¹.
surround (vt.) tɕhytɕhy.
win (in some contest) tu-qu.
be defeated fiə-qu.
truce fiə-tʂuə.

KINSHIP

name (n.), surname, clan name zuə (< PTB *r-miŋ).
be called, be named or surnamed zuə / ŋuə (ŋuə = copula).
regard as ŋuə (= copula).
count as ɕa-ŋu ('allow' + copula).
relatives kuə-ŋa-tsə (< 'older brother' + 'and' + 'sister'; refers to close relatives) / stuəm ~ stum (refers to relatives with the same surname) / tsoəʌlumi (refers to women from a family who have married into other families).
married relationships tɕhintɕia (< Ch. qīnjiā).
senior generation ʂuəs-le-m ('age, years' + 'exist' + agentive nominalizer).
great-grandfather jipa.
great-grandmother jima.
paternal grandfather (address term), maternal grandfather (address and quoting term) apa.
paternal grandfather (quoting term) apa / qapa (-pa < PTB *pa).
paternal and maternal grandmother (address and quoting term) utuma.
parents ma:-ŋa-tatə ('mother' + 'and' + 'father').
father (address term) tatə.
father (quoting term) tatə / ep.
mother (address term) ma:.
mother (quoting term) əw.

husband's or wife's mother
(address and quoting term)

khəstə.

paternal uncles upu.

father's elder brother (address
and quoting term), **mother's
sister's husband** ipi.

father's elder brother's wife,
mother's sister imi.

father's younger brother upu.

father's younger brother's wife,
elder brother's wife itci.

father's sister's husband atsa.

father's sister ŋiŋi.

wife's father (quoting term)

pukū.

mother's brother akua.

mother's brother's wife iŋpəi.

of the same generation e-peɪ
(‘one’ + ‘generation’ (< Ch.
bèi)).

husband wutəpu.

wife sətəsim.

brothers tuə-tuə-wa (< tuətʂ-
tuə-ba ‘younger brother’ +
‘older brother’ (‘brother’ +
‘big’)).

elder brother (address term) ku:
(< Ch. gē?).

elder brother (quoting term)
tuə-wa (‘brother’ + ‘big’ (<
ba)).

sister call brother mə.

brother call sister ɣlu.

younger brother (quoting term)
tuətʂu.

sisters tsi-satʂu (‘girl’ +
‘younger sister’).

elder sister tsəi (< Ch. jiě).

elder sister's husband atsa.

younger sister (quoting term)
satʂu.

**siblings of father's sisters; of
mother's brothers and**

sisters, cousins laupiau (<
Ch. lǎobiǎo).

**cousins on father's or mother's
s i d e** tuə-tuə-wa (=‘brothers’).

junior generation ʂuəs-me-le-m
(‘age, years’ + NEG + ‘exist’
+ agentive nominal-izer).

son tʂi (= ‘boy’).

son's wife tsuɣzu (tsu < tsi
‘girl/daughter’ + ɣzu < ɣzə
‘marry’(?)).

daughter tsi (= ‘girl’).

daughter's husband tʂi-mi
(‘boy/son’ + ‘person’).

brother's son or daughter dzi.

sister's child ʂpəts (male or
female).

grandchild zə-tʂu (< PTB *za +
tʂuə ‘child’).

great-grandson lə-tʂu (< PTB
*b-liy + tʂuə ‘child’).

family təə-lo-qpi (‘home’ +
DEF:one: + DEF:one-family).

sworn brothers lokun (< Ch.
lǎogēng (老庚)).

friend gul / tɑxu.

intimate friend gul.

neighbor məq-to-qpi (‘above’ +
‘DEF:one-family’) / thex-to-
qpi (‘that side’ + ‘DEF:one-
family’) / qəl-lo-qpi (‘below’
+ ‘DEF:one-family’).

villagers (same village) a-
tshəp.

family members o-qpi (‘one’ +
‘family’).

baby tsici.

child tɔymi / tʂuə (now used
mainly for the young of
animals, but appears in
some compounds referring
to humans).

boy, male, married man tʂi.

girl, female, married woman tsi.
young man ɕauχots (< Ch. xiāohǔozi) / ʂuəs-me-le-m ('age, years' + NEG + 'exist, have' + agentive nominalizer).
bachelor tokun (< Ch. dūgēn (獨根)).
unmarried young woman tsam.
pregnant woman tɕymi-le-m ('child' + 'exist (in container)' + 'agentive nominalizer').
widow kuamutsə (< Ch. kuǎmǔzi).
old man qapa (= 'paternal grandfather').
old woman qotu.
adult ba-tə-m (ba = 'big'; -m is agentive nominalizer).
first born tci-wa (< tci-ba; 'most' + 'big').
youngest child tci-χtʂa ('most' + 'small').
twins a-kuə ('one' + 'placenta').
single child tʂi-xtʂ (male) / tʂi-xtʂ (female).
orphan kap / kapətʂ.

TYPES OF PEOPLE

person, human being mi.
in-group tci-le-mi (3pl pronoun + 'person').
outsider tci-le-mi ma-ŋyɔ̌ (3pl pronoun + 'person' + NEG + copula).
stranger ma-sə-m mi (NEG + 'know, recognize' + animate nominalizer + 'person').
townpeople tʂhəŋsa-mi (< Ch. chéngshì + 'person').

countryfolk za-ka-bəl-əm ('earth, land' + locative particle + 'to do' + agentive nominalizer).
person from another province waisen-mi (< Ch. wàishěng + 'person').
foreigner waikue-mi (< Ch. wàiguó + 'person').
bald-headed person dzoq-patʂ ('hair' + 'round').
blind person (mi:) khəp (('eye') + 'blind').
blind mi: ɦa-khəp ('eye' + DIR + 'blind') / mi: mo-tɕu ('eye' + NEG + 'see').
one-eyed person mi: e-xʂe khəp ('eye' + 'one' + 'side' + 'blind').
person who wears glasses jantɕintsə-de-m (< Ch. yǎnjǐngzi + 'wear' + agentive nominalizer).
deaf person ɲukɥ pu ~ ɲukɥ-bu ('ear' + 'deaf').
deaf bu (< PTB *baŋ).
dumb person ɦua.
dumb qəi ha-sə-ma-l ('sound' + DIR + 'make a sound' + NEG + 'able').
harelipped person o-qu tɕhuetɕhue ('one' + 'mouth' + < Ch. quē).
person who stutters tɕetsə (< Ch. jiēzi) / ʂqu-tʂhi (ʂqu = 'mouth').
person with missing front teeth ʂuə-zo:pu ('tooth' + 'hole').
person with pockmarks matsə (< Ch. mázi).
lame person tɕhəqla / peitsə (< Ch. bǒzi).
lame tɕhəqla.
humpbacked tsupu.

- simpleton** he-me-the (DIR + NEG + 'able').
- mad person, crazy person** kuku-m ('curse, be crazy' + agentive nominalizer).
- Tibetan (name of ethnic group)** spe (= 'people of the grasslands').
- Tibetan language** spe-z ('Tibetan' + 'speech').
- Han (name of ethnic group)** kə¹.
- Han person (common derogatory term, literally 'rotten Han person')** kə¹-p-tsuqua ('Han person' + p + 'rotten').
- Han language** kə¹-z ('Han' + 'speech').
- rGyalrong (Jiarong; name of ethnic group)** tshəp.
- Qiang (name of ethnic group)** zme.
- Qiang language** z m e - z ('Qiang' + 'speech').
- Yi (name of ethnic group)** lolo.
- Hui (name of ethnic group; Moslems)** pie-pies ma-se-m (< 'pig'-'meat' NEG-know-NOM 'those who don't know pork') / χuitsə (< Ch. húizi).
- common people** pesi (< Ch. bǎixìng).
- poor people** ma-qə-m (NEG + 'wealthy' + agentive nominalizer).
- rich people** qəqə-m ('wealthy' + agentive nominalizer).
- work (vt.)** bəl (= 'to do').
- train** cunnian pə (< Ch. xùnliàn + 'to do').
- hire, to employ** ku (< Ch. gù).
- salary** cínshui (< Ch. xīnshǔi).
- master** tci-p ('house' + formative affix < PTB *pa).
- servant** kua-m ('help' + agentive nominalizer).
- officer** γzə.
- teacher** ləyz-su-m ('book, letter' + 'teach, study' + agentive nominalizer).
- student** cosen (< Ch. xuéshēng) / su-m ('teach, study' + agentive nominalizer).
- farmer** za-kə-bəl-əm ('field, land' + locative postposition + 'to do' + agentive nominalizer).
- hunter** qhu-m ('hunt' + agentive nominalizer).
- landowner** titsu (< Ch. dìzhǔ).
- herd, shepherd (v.)** ctəy
- cattle shepherd** xse-ctəy-m ('cattle' + 'herd, shepherd (v.)' + agentive nominalizer).
- pig tender** pie-ctəy-m ('pig' + 'herd, shepherd (v.)' + agentive nominalizer).
- butcher** pie-tşə-m ('pig' + 'kill' + agentive nominalizer).
- woodchopper** sə-gue-m ('wood' + 'chop' + agentive nominalizer).
- tailor** fa-jeji-m ('clothing' + 'sew' + agentive nominalizer).
- barber** qəpatş-khue-m ('head' + 'scrape, shave' + agentive nominalizer).
- carpenter** mutsan (< Ch. mùjiàng).
- blacksmith** dzy-m ('forge' + agentive nominalizer).
- forge (thing) out of iron** dzy.

mason tɕi-xlie-m ('house' + 'build (pile bricks)' + agentive nominalizer).

doctor zdzi-tʂhop-əm ('illness' + 'heal, cure' + agentive nominalizer (with epenthetic vowel)) / zdzi-i-tha-m ('illness' + 'heal, cure' < Ch. yī + AUX + agentive nominalizer).

household servant ɤ u a - m ('help' + agentive nominalizer).

cook stuaha-bəl-əm ('food, rice' + 'to do' + agentive nominalizer).

doorkeeper dzy-gə¹-m ('door' + 'to guard' + agentive nominalizer).

master of a trade səfə (< Ch. shīfù).

apprentice su-m ('teach, study' + agentive nominalizer) / thuti (< Ch. túdì).

merchant tətə-pə-m ('trading' + 'to do' + agentive nominalizer).

do business tətə pə ('trading' + 'to do').

shopkeeper χua-m ('sell' + agentive nominalizer).

assistant in a shop, waiter gul (= 'friend').

soldier gue¹.

military officer gue¹-γz ('army' + 'leader').

jail keeper, guard gə¹gə¹.

to guard gə¹.

monk χoʂan (< Ch. héshàng).

beggar wasi-m ('beg, demand' + agentive nominalizer).

thief, pickpocket (n.) ʂkuə (< *PTB r-kuw).

VERBS OF INTERACTION BETWEEN PEOPLE

beg (for money) wasi (= 'demand').

steal, pickpocket (v.) ʂquatʂ.

rob dzuədzue.

cheat phian-tha (< Ch. piàn + AUX).

joke (verbally, v.) dzactci-s dze ('laugh' + instrumental nominalizer + 'say').

brag (v.) χtuχtu.

argue tsən-tha (< Ch. zhēng + AUX).

criticize phəiphən pə (< Ch. pīpàn + 'to do').

ridicule sarcastically or in disguise ɤuakhu pu (< Ch. wākū + 'to do').

lie (v.) pianχu ctce (pianχu = 'lie (n.)').

make a mistake de-tshi (< Ch. cuò).

incite to contention qəz ɤue.

tease (vt.) dzactci-z ('to laugh' + causative suffix).

provoke ze-tha (< Ch. rě + AUX).

blame (vt.) kuai-tha (< Ch. guài + AUX).

upbraid xe.

scold, curse (v.) xe / ɤuɤu.

use bad words e¹-kan-tsə (< Ch. èrgānzi).

get scolded tuəptci.

quarrel zməmə¹.

act as peacemaker, persuade someone not to fight xʂe.

intercede fiə-tʂu.

advise tɕhuan-tha (< Ch. quàn + AUX).

- give in to** z_{an}-tha (< Ch. ràng + AUX).
- deal with negligently** məq-məq ('top, above' + 'top, above'; = 'sloppy').
- conceal** stuə.
- assume falsely** şpatə.
- offend people** tetsui pə (< Ch. dézuì + 'to do').
- hinder, to get in the way** mi-şkue-m ('(other) person' + 'pull' + agentive nominalizer) / bəl-əz_l-mo-ku ('to do' + causative suffix + NEG + 'allow').
- bully (vt.)** məq sə-lə ('top, above' + DIR + 'look').
- compel, force (vt.)** tchianphe pə (< Ch. qiángpō + 'to do').
- keep for oneself** tşan-tha (< Ch. zhàn + AUX).
- wedge in; to crowd into the line** tcha-tha (< Ch. chā + AUX).
- intercept, to stop (vt.)** fie-qe.
- crowd (v.)** tci-tha (< Ch. jǐ + AUX).
- tell tales of, to play trick on** suan-tha (< Ch. suàn + AUX).
- fight (vt.)** quə-quə (= reciprocal form of qua 'to hit').
- get beaten** zə-dzi.
- chase away** he-w.
- scram!** he-xtse.
- call 'help'** tə-kuə-l (DIR + 'help' + 'come').
- 'don't move'** tce-mexle (prohibitive prefix + 'move').
- consult** dzidzi (the NP representing the person consulted takes the comitative particle -nə).
- beg (for a favor)** tchiu-tha (< Ch. qiú + AUX).
- promise (vt.)** ku (= 'be willing').
- imitate** su (= 'study, teach').
- depend on** khau-tha (< Ch. kào + AUX).
- help (vt.)** kuə.
- protect** paufu pə (< Ch. bǎohù + 'to do').
- rescue (vt.)** tciu-tha (< Ch. jiù + AUX).
- beware of** i-tsi.
- look after** tşauku pu (< Ch. zhàogù + 'to do').
- attend (someone)** tshixou pə (< Ch. cìhòu + 'to do').
- requite (vt.)** pauta pə (< Ch. bàodá + 'to do').
- avenge a grievance** pautşhəu pə (< Ch. bàochóu + 'to do').
- meet with** tse (= 'to look at, see').
- meet (by chance)** e-tşipe ~ e-tşepe.
- summon (vt.)** do-koì (DIR + 'to call, yell').
- send** phai-tha (< Ch. pài + AUX).
- give command** minn_{in} pə (< Ch. mìnglìng + 'to do').
- lead (vt.)** ta-ctəy.
- cause (vt.)** bəl-əz_l (use -z_l ~ -əz_l suffix after verb, or if no verb, then 'to do' + causative suffix).
- wait for** zuly.
- hasten, to urge** tshui-tha (< Ch. cūi + AUX).
- give** də-l ~ de-l (< DIR + le; cf. 2sg form: delen).
- decline (refuse)** fie-qe-mo-ku ('accept' + NEG + 'willing').
- accept, seize and arrest** fie-qe.
- exchange (vt.)** ləla.

take the place of taithi pə (< Ch. dàitì + ‘to do’; usually use causative suffix on copula to express this meaning).

compensate pheì-tha (< Ch. péi + AUX).

hand down fiá-tshuan-tha (DIR + < Ch. chuán + AUX).

select (as) staqa.

hold a meeting z₁mu tsu (‘meeting’ + ‘hold (meeting)’).

meeting dismissed z₁mu tsu da-s (‘meeting’ + ‘hold (meeting)’ + DIR + ‘finish’).

sue kau-tha (< Ch. gào + AUX).

search the person səu-tha (< Ch. sōu + AUX).

detain tcyŋiu tu-pu (< Ch. jū-liú + DIR + ‘to do’).

release (from captivity) de-ci (DIR + ‘release’).

flee du-fu (DIR + ‘flee/run (< phu)’; possibly < PTB *ploŋ).

pursue dza.

murder mi qəti (‘person’ + ‘slaughter’).

overtake (in pursuit) ə-dza-k (DIR + ‘pursue’ + ‘go’).

use (vt.) sə-tha (< Ch. shǐ (使) + AUX).

waste (vt.) χαχə pə (‘waste’ + ‘to do’).

keep (vt.) ha-ŋ (DIR + ‘place’).

try (vt.) a-ŋ (‘one’ + measure word for actions; no auxiliary verb for this meaning, simply add this measure to imply doing tentatively).

prepare tšunpəi pə (< Ch. zhǔnbèi + ‘to do’).

put (things) away, hide (things) tə-ŋu.

look for me¹z.

forget (something), leave behind, forget to take da-m (< DIR + root).

compare pi-tha (< Ch. bǐ + AUX).

make up the proper amount tshou-tha (< Ch. còu + AUX).

succeed he-the.

fail he-me-the (DIR + NEG + ‘succeed’).

OK, acceptable fiə-se.

unable to sustain / resist ti-tha-ma-l (< Ch. dǐ + AUX + NEG + ‘able’).

mark / make a sign qhuə.

like, love (vt.) topu.

love (a child) (vt.), favor to excess ge.

spoil (a child) ge-tšy (‘love’ + ‘child’).

long for, want to (do something) ətək lu ~ ətəq lu (‘heart’ + ‘come’).

fascinated by, addicted to fi o-topu (DIR + ‘to like, love’).

laugh (at) (v.), smile (v.) dzactə.

anger (vt.) tə-khue-z₁ (DIR + ‘angry’ + causative suffix).

lose one’s temper phitchi fa-tha (‘temper (< Ch. píqì)’ + < Ch. fā + AUX).

weep, to cry zeì.

pity, piteous (vt.) ətci χqəs (‘heart’ + ‘pity’).

jealous, envy (vt.) qhu.

dislike (vt.) mo-topu (NEG + ‘to like, love’).

hate (vt.) χən-tha (< Ch. hèn + AUX) / qhu (= be jealous of, to envy).

tire of əβŋi (= ‘fatty’ (calque from Chinese?)).

fear (vt.), afraid (vi.), worried qu (‘have been frightened’ = do-qu (DIR + ‘be afraid’)).

opinion jitəian (< Ch. yìjiàn).

decision, resolution tşuji (< Ch. zhúyì).

intention jisə (< Ch. yìsī).

plan, device tciχua (< Ch. jìhuà).

know, be clear about, understand, remember dzukū le (‘knowledge’(?) + ‘exist (in a container)’).

comprehend χsa.

become aware of, enlightened təowu (< Ch. juéwù).

misunderstand de-tsha (DIR + ‘mistake’).

think about, worry, to put to heart zbotəu.

speculate, to guess tshai-tha (< Ch. cāi + AUX).

fancy, imagine fiə-yodzu.

believe ctəe.

make an effort to remember tşequa.

recognize, know (someone) sə(s).

recognize (on meeting someone, exchange chat) zmətşi pə.

want tche ~ tchi.

demand (vt.) wasi.

value, regard as rare ciχan (< Ch. xīhǎn).

ought to, should V-s ŋuə (verb + instrumental nominalizer + copula) / βze (auxiliary verb).

have to V-s ŋuə (verb + instrumental nominalizer + copula).

worthy of (doing), may do bəl-ji me-tchi (‘to do’ + exclusion particle + NEG + ‘want’; = ‘can do’).

willing (to), prefer ku.

not willing mo-ku (NEG + ‘willing’).

dare xşu.

capable of, know (how to) yzə.

pretend şpaqta pə / tşuan-tha (< Ch. zhuāng + AUX).

ability, capability pənsə (le) (< Ch. běnshì (+ ‘to exist’)).

**STATIVE VERBS
(ADJECTIVES)****cold** məpa.**cool** stu.**hot, warm** si.**hot (to the touch), sultry, stuffy
and hot** dzidzi.**stuffy** məs tə-çi-ma-l ('air' +
DIR + 'release' + NEG +
'able').**hungry** fiə-ʂue.**thirsty** (fiə)-çpi.**full, satiated** χə ~ tə-χə.**fatty, oily (of food)** əɲi.**drunk** çi-q tə-qa ('liquor' +
'head' + DIR + 'go').**itchy** dze.**comfortable (of person)**
çtçi:mi-q-ta-na-ke: ɲuə
(‘heart’ + ‘head’ + locative
postposition + ‘good’ +
INDEF:CL + copula; = ‘inside
the heart is a good one’).**busy, urgent, pressing** tçin-tha
(< Ch. jǐn ‘tight’ + AUX).**leisurely, unimportant** ma-tçin-
tha (NEG + ‘busy (< Ch.)’ +
AUX).**tickle** dzactçi qhu (‘laugh,
smile’ + ‘carve’).**frustrated** bəl-ʂqu (‘to do’ +
'difficult').**delicious** je.**it tastes bad** me-j (NEG +
'delicious (< je)').**sweet** tʂhə.**sour** tsue.**bitter** qha ~ qhaq (< PTB *ka).**hot (peppery)** γzə (= ‘numb’;
used for both numb-type
hotness and chili-type
hotness).**astringent** tsisti.**salty** dzə.**flavorless, insipid** ma-zə (NEG
+ ‘salty (< dzə)').**brittle, crunchy** qhapqhap.**soft, uncrisp, spongy, fluffy**
matʂə.**smell (vt.)** çete.**fragrant** xu.**fresh (of food)** çinçyan (< Ch.
xīnxiān).**smell bad, musty (of cereals),
rotten (of meat, etc.), rank
(smell of urine, fish)** bəχtʂi.**big** ba.**small, tiny** χtʂa / çi.**tall, high** ti-wi (DIR + ‘tall’, but
wi not used alone).**low, short (of height)** fiə-gi
(DIR + ‘short’, but gi not
used alone).**long** dzə (< PTB *s-riŋ (?)).**short (in length)** watsi.**thick (eg. thread)** po.**fine (eg. thread)** bətsi.**broad, wide** la.**narrow** tʂhitʂhi.**thick** lie.**thin** khikhi.**deep** tʂha.**shallow** ma-tʂha (NEG +
'deep').**round** patʂ / jyan-ti (< Ch. yuán
de).**upright** ə-γl (DIR + ‘roll, turn’;
= ‘turn/roll over’).**turn over (the wrong side),
reversed** fiə-γl (DIR + ‘roll,
turn’).**upside down** qə tə-tʂy (‘head’ +
DIR + ‘stand, vertical’).**slanted, inclined, sloping** ta-
qhua (DIR + ‘slanted’).**horizontal (n.)** χuantçi (< Ch.
héngzhe).

- vertical** tə-tsu.
straight stə.
steep xepi.
crooked qəwe.
level phin-(tha) (< Ch. píng; with -tha is adjective, without -tha is noun).
concave quətʂa.
convex tu-phuqu.
blurred u-tɕu-ma-l (DIR + 'see' + NEG + 'able').
good-looking ə-l-na (DIR + 'look (< lə)' + 'good').
ugly looking ə-l-ma-na (DIR + 'look (< lə)' + NEG + 'good').
giant ta-χə¹ (< Ch. dàhàn).
skinny die-ʂe-ʂ (DIR + 'die' + 'appearance' (used for cursing out someone)).
shabby, tattered garments baha (= 'poor, remote, out of the way').
clumsy and bulky, bulging pie-se ('pig' + 'oil').
nauseating, unsightly dowa-ʂ ('vomit' + 'think about, want to').
vexed leme mo-lu / ɕtɕi-kɕ ma-na ('spirit, energy' + NEG + 'come' / 'heart' + 'inside' + 'not' + 'good').
suitable qhuat (= 'just right').
angry tə-khue (DIR + 'angry').
sad ɕtɕi-kɕ ma-na ('heart' + 'base' + NEG + 'good').
grievous, sad ɕtɕi χqəs we ('heart' + 'pity' + 'exist').
glad, happy ɕtɕi-kɕ na ('heart' + 'base' + 'good').
self-satisfied qətsə-ma-l ('modest' + NEG + 'able').
detestable mei (< me NEG + jə 'good (to eat)' (?)).
- terrible, frightening** qu-s we ('be afraid' + instrumental nominalizer + 'exist').
bashful dzoxu.
embarrassed dzoxu-s we ('be bashful' + instrumental nominalizer + 'exist').
lose face, be disgraced quaha me-we ('face' + NEG + 'exist').
shameful dzoxu ma-χsa ('be bashful, ashamed' + NEG + 'know, understand').
distressed ɕtɕi:mi zdz(i) ('heart' + 'be ill, be painful').
patience ɕtɕi tse ('heart' + 'look at').
peaceful, quiet hama (of people) / ʂquap (of the surrounding environment).
free from anxiety qu me-tchi ('be afraid' + NEG + 'want').
grateful zahaasa.
difficult(y), tired ʂqu ~ χqu.
red, pink ɕpu.
yellow, orange color χaʂ.
blue lan-ti (< Ch. lán de).
white phiʂ ~ phi.
black ɕix ~ ɕiq (< PTB *nak; the final is secondary).
green χaf-zəu (χaf = 'grass').
grey phiaque.
colorful lapa (= 'flower').
loud sa.
soft voice qəi χtʂa ('sound' + 'small').
light (in weight) ʂzu.
heavy dzə.
loose de-phaʂ (DIR + 'loose', but phaʂ not used alone).
tight ə-χʂ (DIR + 'tight', but χʂə not used alone).
cram in tightly sə-xtʂ-təi (DIR + 'cram' + 'very').

taut tə-χs-təi (DIR + 'tie' + 'very').

dry juku.

wet (n.) matʂa (takes the copula or pe 'become' to be predicative).

moistening zə-zuən-tha (DIR + < Ch. rùn + AUX).

soft matʂʂa.

tender lən-tha (< Ch. nèn + AUX).

hard, tough (of meat, rice) ʂkuɕtɕu (tu-ʂkuɕtɕu = 'become hard').

tough, old, spoiled, bug-eaten (of vegetables) fiə-tʂuqa (if fruit on a tree, then ha-tʂuqa).

scorched, burned (of rice) ɕtɕap.

raw χatʂəq.

done, ripe fiə-m (DIR + 'done, ripe' < PTB *s-min).

cooked till tender fiə-m-təi (DIR + 'done, ripe' + 'very').

thin (of liquid) thanəʂ.

thick (of liquid) be.

sparse, not dense qha.

dense tchi.

smooth ɬatə (cf. ɬa 'slippery').

slippery ɬa.

wrinkled ə-tuə (of clothing) / phə-tuə (of skin).

scattered ɕiɕi (ɕi = 'release').

empty me-le (NEG + 'exist (in a container)').

full tə-sue.

overflowing ha-χtɕe.

hollow (of grain) zə-piaq (piaq < Ch. biān (?)).

solid (of grain) sə-p.

sharp tse.

dull me-tse (NEG + 'sharp').

pointed tsaq.

blunt ma-tsaq (NEG + 'pointed').

new xsə.

old ba.

steady wen-tha (< Ch. wěn + AUX).

unsteady stəstua.

torn de-pi.

chipped (of cup, etc.) o-qu do-tshu ('one' + CL (mouth) + 'fall out').

broken da-ɕe.

fragmentary nin-ti (< Ch. líng de).

orderly, regular, uniform, even khep.

disorderly (of things), uneven luan (< Ch. luàn; with -tha is adjective, without -tha is noun).

mildewed and spoiled (of wood) səptʂuqa.

strong, lasting zgue.

flimsy ma-gu (NEG + 'strong, lasting (< zgue)').

good na.

bad, not good enough, poor quality, ma-na (NEG + 'good').

of passing/indifferent quality, plain, second-rate tsa:n-ma-na ('too' + NEG + 'good', = 'not too good').

rare (n.) ɕiχan (< Ch. xīhǎn; takes the copula or pe 'become' to be predicative).

unusual (n.) ɕitchi (< Ch. xīqí; takes the copula or pe 'become' to be predicative).

strange (n.) tchikuai (< Ch. qíguài; takes the copula or pe 'become' to be predicative).

difficult ʂqu.

easy ze.

knotty (problem) (n.) mafan (< Ch. máfán; takes the copula or pe 'become' to be predicative).

rough (of road) sei-ma-na ('walk' + NEG + 'good').

expensive, valuable p h u - l u ('valuable' + 'cost').

cheap, worthless mo-fūlu (NEG + 'expensive (< phulu)').

worth, worthwhile χuasuan (< Ch. huāsuan).

clean kantsi (< Ch. gānjìng; although this is a loan word, it is used as an adjective in Qiang without an auxiliary verb or copula).

dirty ma-kantsi (NEG + 'clean').

early dzɑ.

late βla.

quick, fast ʃuʃu-(wa) / sei-dzə ('walk' + 'able') / khuai-tha-wa (< Ch. kuài + AUX + 'very').

slow basta.

accurate z u ə - sta ('target' + 'accurate').

bustling lau z e (< Ch. nàorè; although this is a loan word, it is used as an adjective in Qiang without an auxiliary verb or copula).

crowded with (people) tci-tha (< Ch. jǐ + AUX).

remote, out of the way baha (= 'poor').

safe qu-s me-we ('be afraid' + instrumental nominalizer + NEG + 'exist').

dangerous qu-s we ('be afraid' + instrumental nominalizer + 'exist').

harmful mei (< me NEG + jə 'good (to eat)' (?)).

harmless, unimportant qu me-tchi ('be afraid' + NEG + 'want').

advantageous bəl-əs je ('to do' + instrumental nominalizer + 'good (to eat)').

gay and extravagant, luxurious kən-na ('very' + 'good').

fat (of people) tə-phə / tshini we ('fat (n.)' + 'exist').

fatty (of meat) tsha we ('fat' + 'exist').

lean tsha me-we ('fat' + NEG + 'exist').

thin (of people) bəkei.

strong bedi.

weak ɦɑ-tə (become weak).

state of being well na-ji ɦuə ('good' + adverbial particle + copula).

famous mintchi le (< Ch. míngqì + 'exist').

correct pe.

wrong me-pe (NEG + 'correct').

poor ma-qe (NEG + 'rich').

rich qəqə.

lucky lez we ('luck' + 'exist').

unlucky lez me-wə ('luck' + NEG + 'exist').

temper phitchi (< Ch. píqì).

behavior, attitude thaitu (< Ch. tàidù).

bad-tempered, irritable phitchi ma-na ('temper' < Ch. + NEG + 'good').

impatient ctei:mi χsutu-wa ('heart' + 'jump' + 'very').

fierce, courageous, brave χən-tha (< Ch. hěn (狠) + AUX).

trustworthy, honest pənfən (< Ch. běnfèn).

cunning tɕiɑu-thɑ (< Ch. jiǎo + AUX).

designing jin-səkue (< Ch. yǐn + ‘tail’).

kind ɕtɕi:mi na (‘heart’ + ‘good’).

considerate ɕtɕi:mi ʂə (‘heart’ + ‘exist’).

strong character tʂutɕu ʂku (‘character’ + ‘hard (< ʂkuɕtɕu)’).

weak (of character) tʂutɕu mo-ʂku (‘character’ + NEG + ‘hard (< ʂkuɕtɕu)’).

bold, greedy for money ɕtɕi:mi ba (‘heart’ + ‘big’).

timid ɕtɕi:mi ɣtʂɑ (‘heart’ + ‘small’).

stubborn tʂutɕu ʂku (‘character’ + ‘hard (< ʂkuɕtɕu)’).

bold and aggressive tʂhoŋ-thɑ (< Ch. chōng + AUX).

clever, smart tʂhimpe.

quick, smart qə ɬɑ (‘head’ + ‘slippery’; calque from Chinese huátóu ‘slippery head’).

capable bəl-dzə (‘to do’ + ‘able’).

stupid pən-thɑ (< Ch. bèn + AUX).

foolish, dull, stupid, ignorant (n. or v.) ɣapau (< Ch. cáobāo; can take kən ‘very’, e.g. kən ɣapau le: ‘the very stupid person’).

cute topu-s we (‘to like, love’ + instrumental nominalizer + ‘exist’).

lively ɣsutu-dzə (‘jump’ + ‘able’).

good (of a child) zəwɑ-xʂuɕtɕu (‘speech, words’ + ‘listen’).

naughty, mischievous zəwɑ mo-xʂuɕtɕu (‘speech, words’ + NEG + ‘listen’).

spoiled (of child) məq tə-kɑ (‘top’ + DIR + ‘go’).

irritating, annoying (n.) tu p-tɕim.

proud tɕaukau pə (< Ch. jiāo-ào + ‘to do’).

modest qətsə.

generous japə ba (‘hand’ + ‘big’).

niggardly, miserly japə ɣtʂɑ (‘hand’ + ‘small’).

mad, out of one’s mind tu-ku (= ‘become mad’; DIR + ‘curse, crazy’).

unconscientious məq-məq (‘top’ + ‘top’).

careful, conscientious ɕtɕi tse (‘heart’ + ‘see’).

careless, headless ɕtɕi me-tse (‘heart’ + NEG + ‘see’).

mean-spirited dzuəʂ qhu (‘teaching (jiàoxùn)’ + ‘hate’).

act in a blushing manner dzəoɣu (= ‘be bashful, ashamed’).

childish tɕymi-qəs we (‘child’ + ‘form’ + ‘exist’).

taciturn mele tsan-dze-kə mə-p (‘words’ + ‘too’ + ‘say’ + thus + NEG + ‘to do’).

long-winded, garrulous, talkative mele dze-dzə (‘words’ + ‘say’ + ‘able’).

like to tell tales of others mi-wəstɑ-mi dze-kəpə (‘person’ + ‘behind’ + ‘person’ + ‘say’ + habitual aspect marker).

jokeful dzəɕtɕeis dze-dzə (‘joke (< ‘laugh’ + instrumental nominalizer)’ + ‘say’ + ‘able’).

diligent bəl-dzə ('to do' + 'able').

lazy ʂqə / lan-tha (< Ch. lǎn).

nervous ətci:mi χsutu-wa ('heart' + 'jump' + 'very').

in a hurry, hurried ataz (= 'quickly').

bewildered, in a fluster χuan-tha (< Ch. huāng + AUX).

slyly hama-ŋi.

quick ʃuʃu-wa ('fast' + 'very').

sluggish bastə (= 'slow').

clumsy jəpə mo-ku ('hand' + NEG + 'willing').

skillful jəpə ku ('hand' + 'willing').

TIME PHRASES

four seasons tsa q - su ə q ('spring/summer' + 'autumn/winter'; traditionally the Qiang only recognized two seasons).

spring-summer tsaq.

autumn-winter suəq.

year pə.

this year tsə-p ('this' + 'year').

next year eini.

year after next dze-p-ŋi (cf. 'day after tomorrow', 'day after day after tomorrow'; p < pə 'year'; ŋi = adverbial marker).

last year nə-p (cf. 'yesterday'; p < pə 'year').

year before last dzə-p (cf. 'day before yesterday'; p < pə 'year').

beginning of the year a-pə-tə fiə-lua: ('one' + 'year' + genitive marker + DIR + 'come' + PRS).

end of the year a-pə-tə fiə-tshu ('one' + 'year' + genitive marker + DIR + 'fall').

all year round a-p ('one' + 'year').

month ɕ(ə) (= 'moon').

first lunar month tʂə-ɕ / a-ɕ (both 'one' + 'moon/month').

this month tsa-ɕ (('this' + 'one') + 'moon/month').

last month qə:¹-la-ɕ ('before' + DEF:one + 'moon/month').

next month steke-la-ɕ ('after' + DEF:one + 'moon/month').

end of the month a-ɕ fiə-tshu ('one' + 'moon/month' + 'fall down (DIR + 'fall)').

first day of the lunar month t̥su-t̥cu ('one' + 'beginning' (< Ch. chū)).

day sə.

today pə-s (s = 'day').

tomorrow t̥əp-ŋi.

day after tomorrow sudzu-ŋi.

day after day after tomorrow dzusu-ŋi.

yesterday nə-s (cf. 'last year'; s = 'day').

day before yesterday dzə-s (cf. 'year before last'; s = 'day').

day before day before yesterday dzə-dzə-s ('day before yesterday' reduplicated).

this morning pəs-u-qua (pəs (= pəs) 'today' + 'morning' (< ətsqua)).

tomorrow morning t̥əpotsqua ('tomorrow' + 'morning').

this evening pə-maha ('today' + 'evening').

tomorrow evening t̥əp-maha ('tomorrow' + 'evening').

day after tomorrow evening sudzu-maha ('day after tomorrow' + 'evening').

yesterday evening nə(i)-maha ('yesterday' + 'evening').

day before yesterday evening dzəi-maha (cf. 'day before yesterday' + 'evening').

daytime ɕt̥cuχtu (ɕt̥cu < *ɕt̥cə < PTB *sni; u due to vowel harmony).

nighttime gəs.

whole day ɑ-s ('one' + 'day').

from morning till night ɑ-sə'wu ('one' + 'day' + 'all' (retroflex vowel on 'day' is part of 'all')).

whole night e-jə'wu ('one' + 'night' + 'all' (retroflex

vowel on 'night' is part of 'all')).

dawn, daybreak mu tu-su ('sky' + DIR + 'bright').

sunrise mujuq-ə-t̥su ('sun' + DIR + 'shine').

morning ətsqua ~ ɔtsuqua.

before noon dza:-t̥eiku ('midday meal' + 'before').

noon dza:-t̥chɑ-βɑ ('midday meal' + 'eat' + locative/temporal particle).

afternoon dza:-khui ('midday meal' + 'after').

sunset fiɑ-xt̥səp (DIR + 'dark' (= 'become dark')).

evening maha.

night je (< Ch. yè).

midnight panji (< Ch. bàn yè).

every other day ɑ-s-pe-ŋi ('one' + 'day' + 'become' + adverbial particle).

overnight e-je-pe-ŋi ('one' + 'night' (< Ch.)) + 'become' + adverbial particle).

hour, o'clock tian (< Ch. diǎn).

what day is today? (ask date) ŋɑ-ɕə-t̥c-ŋo-t̥cu ('how much' + 'moon, month' + genitive postposition + 'how much' + 'beginning' (< Ch. chū)).

what time is it? (ask time) ŋɑ-tian-pe-ji-ŋua ('how much' + 'hour, o'clock' (< Ch.)) + 'become' + CSM + Q).

week ɕiŋt̥ci (< Ch. xīngqī).

LOCATION PHRASES

place zə-p / zə-pəq (zə = 'land, earth, field').

be at a place, existential verb, to have z_i (animate referents only) / we (immovable referents) / le (location within a container) / ʂə (inanimate movable referents only) / xu (similar to ʂə but also takes nominalized clause).

not at (home) me-z_i (NEG + 'exist (animate referent)').

face (to the east) a-l (DIR (inside/toward the mountain) + 'look'; use of directional prefix relative to position of village).

face (to the south) sə-l (DIR (downriver) + 'look'; use of directional prefix relative to position of village).

face (to the north) nə-l (DIR (upriver) + 'look'; use of directional prefix relative to position of village).

face (to the west) tə-l (DIR (up) + 'look'; use of directional prefix relative to position of village).

front tci-qe:¹ ('most' + 'before, front').

central, middle z_eg_y ~ z_ek_y.

back steke.

location, place where something is z_i-s-ta / we-s-ta (both 'exist' + nominalizer + locative postposition).

inside tciqua / z_aχua (deeper inside than tciqua).

outside kua-la ('outer side' + locative postposition).

above məq-ta ('top' + locative postposition).

top (n.) qə-s-ta ('head' + 'place (nominalizer + locative postposition)').

below qəl-la ('below' + locative postposition).

underneath ʂqəl.

side, neighboring, next door, surrounding piəna.

both sides ji-xʂe ('two' + 'side').

around dz_uk_y-ta.

opposite the-xʂe ('that' + 'side').

east mujuq-ha-lə-s-ta / musi-ha-lə-s-ta (both 'sun' + 'come out (DIR + 'come')' + nominalizer + locative postposition).

west mujuq-ə-x_l-s-ta / musi-ə-x_l-s-ta (both 'sun' + 'go down (DIR + 'move')' + nominalizer + locative postposition).

south khi-la locational noun, 'downriver'.

north ŋi-la (locational noun, 'upriver').

left (side) kua.

right (side) na.

world z_emə-ʂ (the people of the world; z_emə = 'people').

home tɕəu-la.

everywhere, the whole floor / ground tɕetci-la.

along (the road) (gue:¹)-ta / -wu ('road' + locative or ablative postposition).

far guaha.

near gue-ŋi.

MOVEMENT**move** mexɬe.**stop** ə-χ (stop doing an activity) / ə-tɕə (stop walking).**start** əββe.**come** lu (imperfective) / la (perfective).**go** kə (unprefixed imperfective) / -kə prefixed imperfective or prospective (e.g. /daβ/ 'go out') / -qa prefixed perfective (e.g. /fiɑqa/ 'went down').**ascend** tə-β (DIR + 'go').**descend** fiɑ-β (DIR + 'go').**enter, advance (v.)** ə-β (DIR + 'go').**exit** hɑ-β (DIR + 'go').**return (v.) (come back)** i-pə-l (DIR + 'arrive' + 'come').**cross (v.), go around** dɑ-β (DIR + 'go').**retreat (v.)** hɑ-β (DIR + 'go') / he-thue (DIR + 'retreat (< Ch. tuì)').**turn around** ə-l (DIR + 'look').**turn a corner** zə-fie (DIR + 'turn').**go around in a circle** fie.**surround** itɕhye.**pace back and forth** zə-β dɑ-β (DIR + 'go' + DIR + 'go').**be (copula)** ŋuə.**resemble** a-qəs we ('one' + 'form' + 'exist').**appear** hɑ-la (DIR + 'come').**disappear** me-zɿi-ji (NEG + 'exist' + change of state particle).**lose (thing)** do-γzu.**change (v.)** pian-thɑ (< Ch. biàn + AUX); (changes of

state are often marked by the addition of a directional prefix rather than by use of this loan word).

QUANTIFIERS

all (e-ɣle) wu (e-ɣle ('one' + plural marker) often appears as r-coloring on vowel of previous syllable + wu, e.g. sə¹wu 'all day').

every (mi¹) wu (for people ('person' + 'all'; r-coloring is part of 'all')) / (as) maqa (for days, etc.).

very long (in time) kən a-ʂu pe ('very' + 'one' + CL + 'become').

whole (e-ze¹) wu (('one' + CL (with r-coloring from 'all') + 'all').

half dzue (e-dzue 'one' + 'half').

greater half ba-le-dzue ('big' + DEF + 'half').

smaller half ɣtʂa-le-dzue ('small' + DEF + 'half').

one and a half e-zi-ŋa-e-dzue ('one' + CL + 'and' + 'one' + 'half').

twice as much / many e-pei ('one' + < Ch. bèi).

two times odd e-pei ma-ɣtʂe ('one' + 'time' (< Ch. bèi) + NEG + 'stop').

increase (v.) tə-wa (< tə-ba; DIR + 'big').

count (v.) ʂiʂi.

calculate, to count suəsua (< Ch. suàn).

add tɕia-tha (< Ch. jiā + AUX).

subtract tɕian-tha (< Ch. jiǎn + AUX).

multiply ʂen-ji (< Ch. chéng).

divide tʂhu-ji (< Ch. chú).

zero lin (< Ch. líng).

one a / dzə / tʂi / tʂuə (see §3.1.5 for the uses of these different forms).

two jə / ŋi (< PTB *g-ni-s/k; ŋi only used in ha-ŋi 'twelve').

three ɣsə / si (< PTB *g-sum; si only used in ha-si 'thirteen').

four ɣzə (< PTB *b-lij ≠ *b-ləj).

five ɤua (< PTB *l/b-ŋa; cf. 'fifteen').

six ɣtʂu (< PTB *d-(k)-ruk).

seven ɕtɕə (< PTB *s-nis).

eight khe¹ (< PTB *b-r-gjat ≠ *b-g-rjat).

nine zɤuə (< PTB *d-kəw ≠ *s-gəw).

ten hotɕu ~ hodzu.

eleven ha-dzi ~ ha-tʂi ('ten' + 'one').

twelve ha-ŋi ~ ha-ŋi ('ten' + 'two').

thirteen ha-si ~ ha-si ('ten' + 'three').

fourteen ha-zɤ ('ten' + 'four').

fifteen ha-ŋuə ('ten' + 'five').

sixteen ha-tʂu ('ten' + 'six').

seventeen ha-ɕ ~ ha-ɕ ('ten' + 'seven').

eighteen ha-khe¹ ~ ha-khe¹ ('ten' + 'eight').

nineteen ha-gu ('ten' + 'nine').

twenty ju-su ('two' + 'ten').

twenty-one ju-su-tʂi ('two' + 'ten' + 'one').

twenty-two ju-su-jə ('two' + 'ten' + 'two').

twenty-three ju-su-xsə ('two' + 'ten' + 'three').

thirty xsu-su ('three' + 'ten').

forty ɣzu-su ('four' + 'ten').

fifty ɤo-su ('five' + 'ten')

sixty ɣtʂu-su ('six' + 'ten')

seventy ɕtɕu-su ('seven' + 'ten')

eighty khe-su ~ khe¹-su ('eight' + 'ten')

ninety z_lgu-su ('nine' + 'ten')

hundred khe (e-khe 'one hundred'; < PTB *r-gya).

hundred and one e-khe-ŋ_la-e: ('one' + 'hundred' + 'and' + '(one + classifier)').

thousand stu (a-stu 'one thousand'; < Tibetan stuŋ (?)).

ten thousand kuan (a-kuan 'one ten-thousand'; < Ch. wàn).

ten odd hodzu-ma-χtʂe ('ten' + NEG + 'stop').

the first one tci-qə¹-le: ('most' + 'front' + DEF:CL).

the last one tci-steke-le: ('most' + 'back' + DEF:CL).

champion kuantcyn (< Ch. guànjūn).

runner-up jatcyn (< Ch. yǎjūn).

numbering χauma (< Ch. hàomǎ).

more or less, about, approximately a:n ~ fi:a:n (appears after numeral expression).

decrease fi-a-χtʂa (= 'become small'; DIR + 'small').

handful a-pa (< Ch. bǎ).

some (number) a-ha ('one' + plural marker).

several əizi (< 'one' + 'two' + CL).

a little, some (quantity) a-za ~ a-zə (a = 'one').

a little while a-i ('one' + 'time').

alone e-ze ('one' + CL).

time (one time) ʂə (a-ʂ) / tau (< Sichuan dialect Chinese) / χui (a-χui 'one time'; < Ch. húi).

PRONOUNS

I/me (1st sg. pronoun) qa.

you (thou) (2nd sg. pronoun) ?ũ.

he, she, it (3rd sg. pronoun) the: (< the 'distal demonstrative pronoun' + lengthened vowel to represent the classifier) / qupu (used for close relations and as logophoric pronoun).

we/us (1st plural pronoun) tci-le (le < yle plural marker; no inclusive/exclusive distinction).

we/us two (1st dual pronoun) tciizzi (1pl pronoun + 'two' + classifier).

you (2nd pl. pronoun) ?i-le (le < yle plural marker).

you two (2nd dual pronoun) ?izzi (2pl pronoun + 'two' + classifier).

they (3rd pl. pronoun) them-le ~ themne (le < yle plural marker).

they/them two (3rd dual pronoun) thizzi (3pl pronoun + 'two' + classifier).

we all, all of us e-yle-wu ('one' + plural marker + 'all').

self, emphatic and reflexive pronoun qa-qəi (1sg), tciil-tciile (1pl), ?i-?i: (2sg), il-ile (2pl), ŋi-ŋi ~ ŋi: (3sg), ŋil-ŋile (3pl).

individual(ly) ŋutcuku.

other people mi (= 'person').

other (things or people) nai.

whoever sə (= 'who').

anything iyi (used with negative verb).

something ɲiɣi (used with positive verb; = ‘what’).
everyone, all zɿ-zɿ-me⁴wu (< ‘exist (animate)’ + reduplication + (animate nominalizer + plural marker + ‘all’)).
each one mi⁴wu (‘people’ + ‘all’).
one by one e-ze e-ze (‘one’ + CL + ‘one’ + CL).
possessive pronouns, mine qa-tɕ (1sg + genitive postposition).
yours (sg.) ʔũ-tɕ (2sg + genitive postposition).
his, hers the:-tɕ (3sg + genitive postposition).
ours tɕile-tɕ (1pl + genitive postposition).
yours (pl.) ʔile-tɕ (2pl + genitive postposition).
theirs themle-tɕ (3pl + genitive postposition).
this tse.
that the.
these tsa-ha (‘this’ + ‘one’ + plural marker).
those tha-ha (‘that’ + ‘one’ + plural marker).
here tsa / tsakua (adding kua implies larger area than tsa alone) / tsu (smaller area than tsa).
there tha / thakua (adding kua implies larger area than tha alone) / thu (smaller area than tha).
this side tse-xɕe (‘this’ + ‘side’).
that side the-xɕe (‘that’ + ‘side’).
this much, in this way tsei ~ tsəi (tse ‘this’ + adverbial marker (< ji)).

that much, in that way thei ~ thəi (‘that’ + adverbial marker (< ji)).
who? sə / sə-le: (le: = DEF:CL).
what? ɲiɣi.
which one? ɲiɣi-le: (le = DEF:CL).
where? tɕa-la ~ tɕa: (‘where’ + locative postposition (or lengthened vowel representing the postposition)).
which side? ɲiɣi-la:-kua (‘what’ + DEF:one + ‘side’).
when? ɲiɣi-lai (‘what’ + DEF + a-i ‘one’ + ‘time’) / tɕho:.
how (to do?) -manner- ɲi-ke: (WH-INDEF:CL).
how (in what way or form) ɲi-qəs (WH + ‘form’; this is the ‘how’ of pe⁴ʂen ɲiqəs we [body how have] ‘how is your health?’).
why? ɲiɣi-ɕuanɿ (‘what’ + cause marker).
how (good!) -degree- wa (= ‘very’; postverbal adverbial).
how much / how many ɲa-wu ~ ɲa-we (WH + ‘many’).
how long (in time) ɲi-kai (WH + INDEF + a-i ‘one’ + ‘time’).

ADVERBS AND PARTICLES

also lə.
also, in addition jə (postverbal particle).
all (e-ɣle)-wu (people) / ahe⁴-wu (objects).
again xsə (= ‘new’).
additionally nai (= ‘other’).
mutually (mutually help each other) e:-wu e:-ta (‘one’ +

agentive postposition + 'one' + dative postposition).
individually, separately ɲutɕuku.
only ma-ɲuə̯-ji (used after noun; NEG + copula + exception marker).
merely, scarcely, barely tɕi.
all together utʂuqu.
almost a-zə tɕa-tʂha.
previous qe:ʔ (= 'front, before').
next steke (= 'back, after').
temporarily a-zə (= 'a little').
now tsai ('this (< tse)') + 'one time (< a-i)').
that time thai ('that (< the)') + 'one time (< a-i)').
in the future steke-ɲi ('back' + adverbial particle).
later (fi) -tsəi-ɲike (INT-this:ADV-after).
first (tɕi)-qe:ʔ ('most' + 'front, before').
beforehand tɕi-qe:ʔ.
start early a-zə dzɕa-tɕ ('a little' + 'early' + genitive postposition).
continue tɕa-V.
finish (v.) da-s.
quickly, immediately atazɕ / ata-ɲi.
often, always, usually iɕtɕi-maqa ('together' + 'every').
then and only then tɕi (postposition used with negative verb to achieve this meaning).
already -ji ~ -jy (CSM).
recently tsu-ɲan-tɕi.
just now, just a while ago pə-tsa-ɲi.
formerly qe:ʔ-lotʂu-ka.
from childhood tɕaxtʂəstə-wu.

just right, in the nick of time, exactly qhuat.
too late me-zde-ji (NEG-'enough time'-CSM).
still, as before, more tɕa ~ tɕe ~ tɕə ~ tɕi (preverbal adverb).
very, rather, pretty, quite w a (postverbal adverb; used mostly with stative verbs) / ken ~ gen; (preverbal adverb, has wider use than wa.).
most tɕi (verbal prefix).
too (adj.), excessively tʂa n (placed before adj.) / -ʂ.
slightly, somewhat a-zə (= 'a little'; 'one' + CL).
progressive aspect, 'he is eating' root form of verb: the: tɕhə [3sg eat].
perfective aspect, 'have you eaten?' prefix+V (+ ji) (ji = change of state marker): ?ũ stuaha sə-tɕh-ji-n-a? [2sg food DIR-eat-ASP-2sg-Q].
experiential aspect dze (postverbal auxiliary verb).
inchoative aspect use directional prefix or change of state marker /ji/).
continuative aspect tɕa+V.
instantative aspect, 'as soon as (he eats, he vomits)'ɲike.....pə.
additive, 'V some more!' a zə ətɕi V.
really and truly katchi.
terminative, 'finish (eating the rice)' V-da-s.
partitive, '(ate two apples) out of (five)' N-ka (= locative postposition).
possibly, perhaps V-m la-han-ɲuə (verb + agentive nomi-

- nalizer + DEF:one + 'kind' + copula).
- largely** V-m tan ɲuə (verb + agentive nominalizer + appearance + copula).
- not (e.g. it is not good)** ma- ~ me- ~ mə- ~ mu- (verbal prefix).
- in unison, together** itci ~ ictci.
- have not (e.g. he has no money)** ma-ɣ (NEG + 'exist (inanimate object)').
- not yet (e.g. he has not yet come)** mə-tci-V (NEG + 'still, yet').
- negative imperative, prohibitive** tca-V.
- need not (e.g. you need not cry)** V-me-tchi (NEG + 'want').
- cannot (e.g. I cannot see)** V-ma-la (NEG + 'able (< dzə)').
- possessive marker (e.g. my book)** tɕ(ə) (genitive postposition).
- comparative degree marker (e.g. you are taller than him)** s(ə) (used in following structure: NP1 + NP2-s(ə) + adj.).
- empty-handed** j a p ə - x ɣ u ɕ u ('hand' + 'empty').
- face to face** utcu-s-ta ('to see' + instrumental nominalizer + locative postposition).
- as...as, same as (e.g. you are as tall as he is)** NP1 + ɲa + NP2 aqəs + adj.
- degree complement marker (e.g. he runs very fast)** V-dzə wa ('able' + 'very').
- secretly** hama-ɲi.
- seemingly** qes-we ('form' + 'exist').
- agentive marker (e.g. he was hit by his brother)** wu (same postposition as used for instrumental and ablative meanings).
- instrumental marker (e.g. to cut with a pair of scissors)** wu (same postposition as used for agentive and ablative meanings).
- side, inside, (locational particle)** kua (used in combination with demonstrative pronouns, e.g. tsakua 'here'; also seems to be morpheme aside from 'heart' in cteiku na 'happy' [heart-in good]).
- from** wu (ablative postposition; same form as agentive and instrumental postposition).
- horizontally** χuantchi (< Ch.).
- in place of (e.g. do it for him)** χuanɲi / -tɕ.
- vertically** tutsu ji.
- if** tu / ta / ɣə (all clause-final linkers).
- according to my view ...** qa itsi ɲike ɲua ɣa (1sg look LNK COP:1sg LNK).
- except for** ma-ɲuə tci (NEG-COP ADV).
- when (e.g. when I came)** kza-ka (time-LOC / lai (< DEF + 'one' + 'time')).
- before (e.g. before I came)** mo tɕu +V + tɕ.
- after (e.g. after I came)** V-ɲike (marks the action in the following clause as occurring after the action in the clause where ɲike appears).
- since (e.g. since you were born)** V-ɲike (= 'after').

just before (eg. just before he left) ɛza-ka.

cause, reason for, because wu / χuaŋi (postpositions used after clause representing the cause).

for the sake of (eg. for the sake of him) χua-ŋi (used after an NP).

since (eg. since you don't like it) tu (used clause-finally).

unless ma-ŋuə tu (NEG + COP + 'if').

although ha-ŋuə-lu (DIR + COP + 'come').

and ŋa.

even, including (eg. even he doesn't want to go) lə (= 'also').

both...and lə...lə (= 'also').

at the same time, while..., as... (eg. he eats while he runs) e xʂe...e xʂe.

at one time ... at another time (eg. at one time he says he is coming at another time he says he is not coming), sometimes ... sometimes ... (eg. sometimes he is naughty, sometimes he is good) ai ŋuəŋi...ai ('one time' TOP ... 'one time').

not only...but also metchi...təa...

either ... or ŋuaŋi ... ŋuaŋi (... TOP ... TOP).

either...or (interrogative) (eg. are you eating rice or eating noodles?) ... n-a ... n-a? (... 2sg-Q ... 2sg-Q).

the ... the (eg. the older he grows the smarter he becomes) a zə wu a zə.

Index to English glosses in glossary

- a little while 384
a little, some (quantity) 384
ability, capability 373
about, approxi-mately 384
above 381
accept 371
according to my view ... 387
accounts 351
accurate 377
act as peacemaker 370
act in a blushing manner 378
acupuncture 365
Adam's apple 359
add 383
additionally 385
additive, 'V some more!' 386
adopt, raise 355
adult 368
advance (v.) 382
advantageous 377
advise 370
'don't move' 371
'excuse me' 356
'please have a seat' 356
'stop, don't trouble yourself to
come out' 356
afraid (vi.) 373
after (eg. after I came) 387
afternoon 380
again 385
age 364
agentive marker (eg. he was hit
by his brother) 387
aim at 360
air 332
all 383, 385
all together 386
all year round 379
almost 386
alone 384
along (the road) 381
already 386
also 385
also, in addition 385
although 388
always 386
ambush (vt.) 366
and 388
anger (vt.) 372
angry 375
answer (vt.) 354
ant 338
anus 359
anything 384
ape, orangutan 335
appear 382
apple 340
apply a plaster 366
apprentice 370
apron 346
argue 370
arm 359
armpit 359
army 366
around 381
arrange / place (furniture) 349
as before 386
as...as, same as (eg. you are as
tall as he is) 387
ascend 382
ash 333
ask 354
ass, donkey 337
assistant in a shop, waiter 370
assume falsely 371
astringent 374
at one time ... at another time
(eg. at one time he says he is

coming at another time he says
 he is not coming) 388
 at the same time, while..., as...
 (eg. he eats while he runs) 388
 attend (someone) 371
 auspicious 355
 automobile 353
 autumn 379
 avenge a grievance 371
 awl 350
 awl or drill 350
 axe 350
 azalea 339
 baby 367
 bachelor 368
 back 360, 381
 back of a knife 349
 back of the hand 359
 back of the skull, occiput 358
 backbone 359
 bad 376
 bad-tempered 377
 badger 335
 bald-headed 357
 bald-headed person 368
 ball 356
 bamboo 339
 bamboo fence 348
 barber 369
 barefooted 346
 bark 339
 bark (vi.) 337
 barking deer 335
 barley 340
 base of nose 358
 bashful 375
 basket 350
 bat (animal) 335
 bath towel 363
 be (copula) 382
 be a guest 356
 be addicted to 343
 be at a place 381
 be born 364

be called, be named or
 surnamed 366
 be clear about, understand 373
 be defeated 366
 be grown up 364
 be silent 354
 be struck by lightning 332
 beak 335
 beam 348
 bean 340
 bean curd 342
 bean paste 342
 bean-thread 342
 bear 335
 bear fruit 340
 bear gall 335
 beard 358
 beast's cave 347
 beasts (wild animals) 334
 beat (with a stick) 350
 because 388
 become ashes (vi.) 333
 become aware of, enlightened
 373
 become dusk 331
 become old 364
 become tired 364
 become wealthy 351
 bed 349
 bed plank 349
 bedbug 338
 bedding 349
 bee 337
 beef 342
 beef stomach 342
 before (eg. before I came) 387
 before noon 380
 beforehand 386
 beg (for a favor) 371
 beg (for money) 370
 beggar 370
 beginning of the year 379
 behavior, attitude 377
 believe 373

- bellows 343
belly 359
below 381
belt for carrying baby on the back 346
beware of 371
bewildered, in a fluster 379
big 374
bind the feet 362
bind, tie up (grain stalks etc.) 341
birch tree 339
bird 335
bird's nest 347
birthday 355
birthmark 357
bitch 337
bite (vt.) 360
bite (vt., of mosquito) 338
bitter 374
black 375
black bean 340
black salted beans 342
black-eyed pea 340
blacksmith 369
bladder 359
blame (vt.) 370
blanket 349
bleed 357
blind 368
blind person 368
blink (v.) 360
blister 357
blood 357
bloom (vi.) 339
blow (of the wind) 331
blow (vt.) 361
blow the nose 358
blowing pipe for kindling 345
blue 375
blue-bottle fly 337
blunt 376
blurred 375
board 350
boddhisatva 355
body 357
body dirt 357
body hair 357
boil (of water) 344
boil (vi.), (vt.) 344
boil (water 344
boil for a long time 344
boiled water 342
bold 378
bold and aggressive 378
bolt (a door) 348
bone 357
book 354
border (garment, shoes) (vt.) 345
bore a hole 350
borrow(money) 352
both sides 381
both...and 388
bottle 344
bottle gourd 340
bow 366
bow (vi.) 362
bowl 344
box 349
boy 367
bracelet 346
bracken 339
brag (v.) 370
brain 358
brain (as food) 342
branches 339
brazier 343
break into two 362
breakfast 341
breast 359
breathe (in) 357
breathe out 357
breeding boar, sire pig 336
brew wine 343
bride 355
bridge 353
bright 331

- bring 361
 bring (as a tray) 361
 bring (polite request) 361
 brittle, crunchy 374
 broad, wide 374
 broken 376
 bronze 333
 broom 348
 brother call sister 367
 brother's son or daughter 367
 brothers 367
 brush (n.) 345
 brush (vt.) 346
 brush one's teeth 363
 buckwheat 339
 bud (n.) 339
 buffalo 336
 build a house 348
 build a road 353
 bullet 366
 bully (vt.) 371
 bundle (CL) 354
 bunge prickly ash peel
 (*pericarpium zanthoxyli*) 342
 burial clothes 355
 burn (firewood) 343
 burn (vi.) 333
 burn incense 355
 burnt rice that adheres to sides
 of pot 341
 burp (v.) 364
 bustling 377
 busy 374
 butcher 369
 butcher (vt.) 336
 butter 342
 butterfly 337
 buttocks 359
 button (n.) 346
 button (vt.) 346
 buttonhole 346
 buy 351
 buy vegetables or groceries 351
 cabbage 340
 cake 342
 calculate, to count 383
 calf 336
 calf of the leg 360
 call (vi.) 354
 call 'help' 371
 callous 357
 camera 357
 candle 349
 candy 342
 canine teeth 358
 cannot (e.g. I cannot see) 387
 capable 378
 capable of, know (how to) 373
 capital 351
 car 353
 cards 356
 careful 378
 careless, headless 378
 carpenter 369
 carrot 340
 carry 361
 carry a sedan chair 353
 carry a walking stick 347
 carry in the arms 362
 carry in the hand(s) 361
 carry in upper garment 362
 carry on one's back 346
 carry on the back (child or
 objects) 363
 carry on the shoulders (two
 people) 361
 carrying pole 350
 castrate 336
 castrated animal 336
 cat 337
 cat (male) 337
 catch (vt.) 336
 catch chill 365
 catch fish with net or hands 338
 caterpillar 337
 cattle pen 347
 catty 352
 cause (vt.) 371

- cause, reason for 388
cave 333
ceiling 348
celebrate birthday 355
celery 340
cement 348
cent 352
centipede 338
central 381
chair 349
champion 384
change (v.) 382
change clothes 346
charcoal 343
chase away 371
chat 354
cheap 377
cheat 370
cheek 358
cheekbone 358
Chengdu 353
chest 359
chew (vt.) 360
chew the cud 334
Chibu Village 353
chick 337
chicken 337
chicken dung 337
chicken nest 347
child 367
childish 378
chin 359
Chinese cabbage 340
Chinese measure of land area
(240 square paces) 352
Chinese mile (360 paces, 1/2
km.) 352
chipped (of cup, etc.) 376
chisel (n.) 350
chisel (vt.) 350
chives 340
choke with food 360
chop firewood 343
chop with an axe 350
chop, to mince 343
chopper 343
chopsticks 344
cigarette 343
city 352
city gate 352
clap the hands 361
claw (n.) 334
claw (v.), clutch 361
claw (vi.) 334
clean 377
clean / tidy up (room, house)
348
clear (of water) 333
clench one's fist 361
clever, smart 378
cliff 333
climb (a tree) 341
climb a hill 332
climb over a wall 348
clip the wings 337
close a door 348
close the eyes 360
close the mouth 360
closet 349
cloth 345
clothes 346
cloud 331
cloudy day 332
clumsy 379
clumsy and bulky, bulging 375
clutch, grasp with the hand 361
coal 333
cock 337
cock's tail 337
cockscorn 337
coffin 355
coins (small change) 352
cold 374
collapse 348
collar 346
collect debts 351
colorful 375
comb (n.) 363

- comb the hair 363
 come 382
 comfortable (of person) 374
 common people 369
 common yellow cow 336
 common yellow cow, female 336
 common yellow cow, male 336
 comparative degree marker (eg. you are taller than him) 387
 compare 372
 compel, force (vt.) 371
 compensate 372
 comprehend 373
 concave 375
 conceal 371
 congeal (vi.) 334
 conscientious 378
 considerate 378
 constipation 365
 consult 371
 continuative aspect 386
 continue 386
 convex 375
 cook 370
 cook (a few dishes) 344
 cook (rice) 343
 cook on a griddle 344
 cook soup 344
 cooked rice 341
 cooked rice (dry or drained) 341
 cooked till tender 376
 cooking utensils 345
 cool 374
 copper 333
 copulate (of animals) 334
 coriander 340
 cork (vt.) 344
 corn 339
 corn gruel, corn meal porridge 341
 corner 348
 corns on the feet 357
 cornstarch 342
 corpse 364
 correct 377
 corridor 348
 cotton 339
 cotton cloth 345
 count (v.) 383
 count as 366
 country market or fair 351
 countryfolk 368
 county 353
 courageous, brave 377
 courtyard 348
 cousins on father's or mother's side 367
 cover (n.) 344
 cover (with quilt) 349
 cover from head down 362
 cow 336
 cow manure 336
 crack 333
 crack an egg 344
 crack firecrackers 355
 crack, split (vi.) 332
 cram in tightly 375
 crane 335
 crawl 363
 crawl (of insects) 337
 crazy person 369
 creep (vi.) 339
 cremation 355
 criticize 370
 crooked 375
 cross (v.) 382
 cross the legs 362
 cross-eyed 358
 crossbar at the top of a Chinese bucket 350
 crossbow 366
 crow 335
 crow (vi., of cock) 337
 crowd (v.) 371
 crowded 361
 crowded with (people) 377

- cuckoo 335
cucumber 340
cunning 378
cup 344
cupboard 349
curse (v.) 370
cut 345
cut (with downward motion) 343
cut in two 343
cut into slices, threads or dice 343
cut with a rolling action 343
cut with scissors 349
cut with sideward motion 343
cute 378
cutout in sewing 345
cutting board 343
cypress tree 339
Daguazi Village 353
dance 357
dandelion 339
dandruff 357
dangerous 377
danggui (a kind of medicinal root) 340
dare 373
dark 331
daughter 367
daughter's husband 367
dawn 380
day 380
day after day after tomorrow 380
day after tomorrow 380
day after tomorrow evening 380
day before day before yesterday 380
day before yesterday 380
day before yesterday evening 380
day breaks (vi.) 331
daybreak 380
daytime 380
deaf 364, 368
deaf person 368
deal with negligently 371
debt 352
decision, resolution 373
decline (refuse) 371
decrease 384
deep 374
deep-fry 344
deer 335
defecate 359
degree complement marker (eg. he runs very fast) 387
deity (family god) 355
delicious 374
demand (vt.) 373
dense 376
depend on 371
descend 382
designing 378
detain 372
detestable 375
dew 332
dewdrop 332
dice 356
die (vi.) 364
difficult 376
difficult(y), tired 375
dig (with hands) 350
dig (with tools) 350
diligent 354, 379
dime (ten fen) 352
dimples 358
dip (vt.) 344
dirt 332
dirt in water 333
dirty 377
disappear 382
disease 364
dish 344
dish out rice 344
dishes of food 342
dislike (vt.) 372
disorderly (of things) 376

- disperse (e.g. sand) 361
 disperse (of clouds) 331
 distiller's yeast 343
 distressed 375
 ditch, gully 333
 divide 361, 383
 divorce 361
 do business 351, 370
 doctor 370
 dog 337
 dog feed 337
 dog, female 337
 dog, male 337
 dollar 352
 done, ripe 376
 door 348
 door bolt 348
 door frame 348
 doorkeeper 370
 doorway, an entrance 348
 dose of medicine 365
 doze 357
 drag (vt.) 361
 dragon 334
 draw (lots) 361
 draw / paint a picture 354
 drawers 349
 dream (v.) 364
 dredge a river 333
 dregs (of solids or liquids) 342
 dress a newly dead person 355
 dress up the hair 363
 dried fungus 342
 drink (vt.) 360
 drink liquid medicine 366
 drip (vi.) 331
 drive (sheep) 336
 drizzle 331
 drool 361
 droop the head 360
 drop (CL) 331
 dropsy 365
 drought 332
 drum 357
 drunk 374
 dry 376
 dry up by the wind 331
 drying terrace (on roof of house) or yard 348
 duck 337
 dull 376
 dull, stupid, ignorant (n. or v.) 378
 dumb 368
 dumb person 368
 dun for (money, debt) 352
 dust 333
 dust (vt.) 348
 dust basket 348
 dust cloth 348
 dwell (vi.) 347
 dye (vt.) 346
 each one 385
 ear lobe 358
 ear of grain, ears of wheat 339
 early 377
 earn money 351
 earring 346
 ears 358
 earth (the earth) 332
 earthquake 332
 earthworm 338
 east 381
 east wind 332
 easy 377
 eat 360
 ebb (of the tide) 333
 edges of a field 341
 efficacious 355
 egg 342
 egg (in general) 335
 eight 383
 eighteen 383
 eighty 384
 either ... or ... 388
 either...or (interrogative) (eg. are you eating rice or eating noodles?) 388

- Ekou Village 353
elbow 359
elbow (v.), nudge 361
elder brother (address term) 367
elder brother (quoting term) 367
elder brother's wife 367
elder sister 367
elder sister's husband 367
elephant 335
eleven 383
embankment 333
embarrassed 375
embrace 362
embroider 345
empty 376
empty-handed 387
end of the month 379
end of the year 379
enjoy coolness 334
enter 382
entertain 356
even, including (eg. even he
doesn't want to go) 388
evening 380
evening meal, dinner 341
every 383
every other day 380
everyone, all 385
everywhere 381
exactly 386
examine the disease / see a
doctor 365
except for 387
exchange (vt.) 371
excrement 334
existential verb, to have 381
exit 382
expel intestinal gas 359
expensive 377
experiential aspect 386
expulsion of intestinal gas 359
eye of needle 345
eyeball 358
eyebrow 358
eyelash 358
eyelid 358
eyes 358
eyesight blurred 364
face 358
face (to the east) 381
face (to the north) 381
face (to the south) 381
face (to the west) 381
face to face 387
fail 372
fall (of dew) 332
fall down 363
fall on its own weight 348
family 367
family members 367
famous 377
fancy, imagine 373
far 381
farmer 369
fascinated by, addicted to 372
fast 377
fasten the waist belt 346
fat (n.) 357
fat (of people) 377
fat meat 342
fate 355
father (address term) 366
father (quoting term) 366
father's elder brother (address
and quoting term) 367
father's elder brother's wife 367
father's sister 367
father's sister's husband 367
father's younger brother 367
father's younger brother's wife
367
fathom (length of outstretched
arms) 352
fatigued 364
fatty (of meat) 377
fatty, oily (of food) 374
favor to excess 372
fear (vt.) 373

- feather 335
 feather duster 348
 feces 359
 feel dizzy 364
 feel numb 365
 feel, touch (vt.) 361
 female 368
 fence in 348
 fennel 339
 fertilize 341
 fetch water 348
 field 341
 field mouse 335
 fierce 377
 fifteen 383
 fifty 383
 fight (of bulls) 336
 fight (vt.) 371
 file 350
 fill (in land) 334
 fill up, load 362
 filter, to strain (strain away solid) 344
 fine (eg. thread) 374
 fine day 332
 finger 359
 finger tips 359
 fingernail 359
 finish (v.) 386
 fir tree 339
 fire 333
 fire disaster 333
 fire hole in a kitchen range 343
 fire kettle 343
 fire tongs 343
 firefly 337
 fireplace 348
 fireplace rack 348
 firewood 343
 firewood splitter 343
 first 386
 first born 368
 first day of the lunar month 380
 first lunar month 379
 fish 338
 fish (with a rod) 338
 fish scale 338
 fish spawn 338
 fishing hook 338
 fishing net 338
 fishing rod 338
 fist 359
 five 383
 flame 334
 flat-nosed 358
 flavorless, insipid 374
 flax 339
 flay, peel (vt.) 361
 flea 338
 flee 372
 flimsy 376
 flint 350
 float (vi.) 333
 flock 334
 flood (n.) 333
 flood (vi.) 333
 flour 342
 flour sieve 341
 flow (vi., of water) 333
 flow like a wave (vi.) 333
 flower (n.) 339
 flowers falling/wilting 339
 flute 356
 fly (vi.) 335
 fly, 337
 foam (vi.) 333
 foam, froth (n.) 333
 fog, mist 331
 fold (vt.) 361
 fold up 349
 food 341
 food, provision 341
 food-turner 343
 foolish 378
 foot 360
 foot (measure) 352
 foot of a hill 332

- for the sake of (eg. for the sake of him) 388
forearm 359
forehead 358
foreign woolen cloth 345
foreigner 368
forest 339
forge (thing) out of iron 369
forget (something) 372
forked road 353
formerly 386
forty 383
four 383
four seasons 379
fourteen 383
fox 335
fox, wildcat 335
fragmentary 376
fragrant 374
freckles 359
free from anxiety 375
freeze (vi.) 333
fresh (of food) 374
fried bread-stick 342
friend 367
fritillary (*Fritillaria thunbergii*) bulb 340
frog (black) 338
frog (green) 338
from 387
from childhood 386
from morning till night 380
front 381
frost 332
fruit 340
frustrated 374
fry in fat or oil 344
frying pan 343
full 376
full, satiated 374
fungus, mushroom 340
fur 334, 346
fur garment 346
fur on the tongue 358
furniture 349
gall bladder 359
garden 341
garlic 340
garrulous, talk-ative 378
gasoline 333
gather night soil 341
gather together 361
gay and extravagant, luxurious 377
gaze fixedly or fiercely 360
generous 378
get a splinter 365
get beaten 371
get demoted 351
get dusty (vi.) 333
get promoted 351
get scolded 370
get up 362
get well 364
get wet (from the rain) 331
get wounded 365
ghost, spirit 355
giant 375
gift, present 356
ginger 340
girl 368
give 371
give birth 360
give birth i-°i (DIR + 'release') 364
give birth to the young (of animals) 334
give command 371
give in to 371
gizzard 335
glad 375
glue (n.) 354
glue (vi.) 354
gluten of wheat 339
glutinous millet 339
glutinous rice 339
gnat 337
gnaw at a bone 360

- go 382
 go around 382
 go around in a circle 382
 go home 353
 go into town 352
 goat (female) 336
 goat (male) 336
 god 355
 gold 333
 gong 357
 good 376
 good (of a child) 378
 good-looking 375
 goose 337
 gorge 333
 gossip 354
 gourd used for a ladle 344
 graft (vt.) 341
 grain stalk rack 341
 grains 339
 grandchild 367
 grape 340
 grass 339
 grass jelly 342
 grass mushroom 340
 grasshopper 338
 grateful 375
 grave 355
 great-grandfather 366
 great-grandmother 366
 great-grandson 367
 greater half 383
 greedy for money 378
 green 375
 grey 375
 grievous, sad 375
 grind (vt.) 341
 grind, rub fine (vt.) 341
 grindstone 349
 groom 355
 ground 332
 ground floor 347
 grow (vi.) 339
 grow callous skin 357
 grow into a scar 365
 grow up (vi.) 364
 Guali Village 353
 guard 370
 guard (vt.) 366
 guest 356
 guide (n.) 353
 gums (of teeth) 358
 gun 336, 366
 gunpowder 350
 haggle over prices 351
 hail 332
 hail (v., to say hello) 356
 hail (vi.) 332
 hair whorl 357
 half 383
 half-cooked 344
 half-grown pig 336
 halfway up a mountain 332
 hammer (n.) 350
 hammer (vt.) 350
 Han (name of ethnic group)
 369
 Han language 369
 Han person (common
 derogatory term, literally 'rotten
 Han person') 369
 hand 359
 hand bucket 350
 hand down 372
 handful 384
 handkerchief 346
 handle 349
 handspan (thumb to curled
 forefinger) 352
 handspan (thumb to forefinger)
 352
 handspan (thumb to middle
 finger) 352
 hang (a mosquito net) 349
 hang (clothes) 346
 hang (vt.) (on grain stalk rack)
 341
 happy 375

- hard 376
hard secretion from the nose 358
harelipped person 368
harmful 377
harmless 377
harvest (vt.) 341
hasten, to urge 371
hat 346
hatch (come out of egg) 337
hatch (sit on eggs) 337
hate (vt.) 373
have a haircut (female) 363
have a haircut (male) 363
have a holiday 353
have a running nose 358
have a stuffy nose 364
have a sty 358
have asthma 365
have cholera 365
have cramps 365
have decayed teeth 364
have diarrhea 365
have dysentery, diarrhea 365
have fever 365
have goose flesh 365
have headache 364
have indigestion 365
have leprosy 365
have lice 365
have maggots 364
have nocturnal emissions 359
have nosebleed 365
have not (e.g. he has no money) 387
have piles (hemorrhoid) 365
have pockmarked face 365
have prickly heat 365
have sores 365
have stomachache 365
have the itch, scabbies 365
have the measles 365
have the mumps 364
have to 373
have tuberculosis 365
have underarm odor 365
hawk 335
he, she, it (3rd sg. pronoun) 384
head 357
head hair 357
head scarf 346
head wrapping 346
heal disease 365
heal, close (of wound) 365
hear 360
heart 359
heart disease 364
heat up a pan 344
heavy 375
heel 360
help (vt.) 371
hemp 339
hemp seed 340
hen (before or after laying eggs) 337
herb, medicine 340
herd 334
herd together 334
herd, shepherd (v.) °t°y 369
here 385
Hexi Village 353
hide 334, 363
hide (things) 372
high 374
highland barley 340
hill 332
hill without vegetation 332
hinder, to get in the way 371
hire, to employ 369
his, hers 385
hit 361
hit a drum 357
hoarse 364
hoe (n.) 350
hoe (vt.) 350
hold a funeral procession 355
hold a meeting 372
hold firmly 361

- hold in the mouth 360
 hold up in both hands 361
 hold with the hand 361
 hole 333
 hollow (of grain) 376
 home 381
 honey 337
 honeycomb, beehive 337
 hoof 334
 hook (n.) 350
 hook (vt.) 350
 horizontal (n.) 374
 horizontally 387
 horn 334
 hornet 337
 horse 336
 horse dung 337
 horse feed 337
 horsebean 340
 hospital 366
 host/master 356
 hot 374
 hot (peppery) 374
 hot (to the touch) 374
 hot water bottle 344
 hour 380
 house 347
 household servant 370
 how (good!) -degree- 385
 how (in what way or form) 385
 how (to do?) -manner- 385
 how long (in time) 385
 how much (asking for price) 351
 how much / how many 385
 howl (as wolf) 334
 hug (v.) 362
 Hui (name of ethnic group) 369
 human nature, friendliness 355
 humpbacked 368
 hundred 384
 hundred and one 384
 hungry 374
 hunt 335
 hunter 369
 hunting dog 337
 husband 367
 husband's or wife's mother (address and quoting term) 367
 hyacinth bean/lentil 340
 hysterical 365
 I/me (1st sg. pronoun) 384
 ice 333
 if 387
 ill 364
 illiterate 354
 illness 364
 imitate 371
 immediately 386
 impatient 377
 in a hurry, hurried 379
 in place of (eg. do it for him) 387
 in that way 385
 in the future 386
 in this way 385
 in unison, together 387
 in-group 368
 incense 355
 incense burner 355
 inch 352
 inchoative aspect 386
 incisors, front teeth 358
 incite to contention 370
 inclined, sloping 374
 increase (v.) 383
 individual(ly) 384
 individually 386
 infect 364
 infuse tea 344
 ingredients 342
 ink (fluid) 354
 inn (hostel) 351
 insect 337
 insect which eats wood or bamboo 338
 inside 381

- instantative aspect, 'as soon as (he eats, he vomits)' 386
instep 360
instrumental marker (eg. to cut with a pair of scissors) 387
intention 373
inter, to bury 355
intercede 370
intercept, to stop (vt.) 371
interest 352
intestinal worm 338
intestines 359
intimate friend 367
invite guests to give a party 356
iron 333
irrigate 341
irritable 377
irritating, annoying (n.) 378
it sells well 351
it tastes bad 374
itchy 374
ivory 351
jackal 334
jail keeper 370
jealous, envy (vt.) 372
joke (verbally, v.) 370
jokeful 378
jujube 340
jump 363
junior generation 367
just a while ago 386
just before (eg. just before he left) 388
just now 386
just right, in the nick of time 386
Kawo Village 353
keep (vt.) 372
keep company 356
keep for oneself 371
kennel 347
kerosene 333
key 348
kick 362
kick (as a horse), kick back 362
kick off coverings 362
kid 336
kidney 342
kidneys 359
kill 336
kiln 351
kind 378
kindling (for a fire) 343
kiss (vt.) 360
kitchen 348
kitchen range 343
knead (dough) 344
kneecap 360
kneel 362
knife 349
knit (vt.) 345
knitting needle 345
knock at the door 348
knotty (problem) (n.) 377
know 373
knuckles 359
lacquer 350
ladder (to the roof) 348
ladle 344
ladle (vt., water) 362
lake 333
lamb 336
lame 368
lame person 368
laminaria, kelp 340
lamp 349
land 332
land otter 335
landowner 369
landslide 332
language 354
lard 342
large earthenware jar without handle, shaped like an upside-down pear 345
large intestine 359
large open-mouthed jar 344

- large shallow basket (worn on back) 343
 largely 387
 last month 379
 last year 379
 late 377
 later 386
 laugh (at) (v.) 372
 lay eggs 337
 lay on a pillow 349
 lay the foundation of house 348
 lazy 379
 lead (vt.) 371
 lead cooking pan 343
 leaf 339
 leak (v.) 349
 lean 377
 lean against 362
 lean meat 342
 leather 346
 leave behind, forget to take 372
 leech 338
 left (side) 381
 left-hand 359
 leftover 342
 leg 360
 leg wrappings (leggings) 346
 leisurely 374
 lend (money) 352
 leopard 334
 let loose of the hand 361
 letter 354
 lettuce 340
 level 375
 level up (vt.) 334
 Li County (Xue City) 353
 lick with tip of tongue 360
 lid for cooking pan 343
 lie (v.) 370
 lie down 362
 lie flat on the stomach 362
 life 364
 lift open (a lid) 362
 light 331
 light (in weight) 375
 light a fire 343
 light a match 350
 lightning (n.) 332
 lightning (vi.) 332
 like 372
 like to tell tales of others 378
 lime 348
 limp (n.) 362
 line up, queue up 362
 lines of the palm 359
 lion 334
 lips 358
 liquid medicine 366
 liquor 343
 liquor (made by Chinese) 343
 literate 354
 little finger 359
 lively 378
 liver 359
 livestock 336
 living, to be alive 364
 location, place where something is 381
 lock (n.) 348
 lock (vt.) 348
 loess 332
 long 374
 long boots 346
 long for 372
 long white rice 339
 long-winded 378
 Longba Village 353
 look (vt.) 360
 look after 371
 look for 372
 look in a mirror 349
 look sideways 360
 loom 345
 loose 375
 lose 357
 lose (thing) 382
 lose face, be disgraced 375
 lose money in business 351

- lose one's milk teeth 358
lose one's temper 372
loud 375
louse 338
love (a child) (vt.) 372
love (vt.) 372
low 374
lower leg 360
lucky 377
luggage 353
Luhua Village 353
lumber 348
lunar eclipse 331
lunch 341
lungs 359
Luoda Village 353
mace, 1/10 tael 352
mad person 369
mad, out of one's mind 378
maggot 337
magpie 335
mail a letter 354
make a button hole 345
make a decoction 366
make a fire 343
make a knot 346
make a mistake 370
make a quotation or offer 351
make a visit (to friends) 356
make an effort to remember 373
make clothes 345
make friends 356
make the bed 349
make up (v.) 363
make up a prescription 365
make up the proper amount 372
male 367
manger 347
Mao County 353
mare 337
mark / make a sign 372
married man 367
married relationships 366
married woman 368
marrow 357
mason 370
massage the back by pounding 362
master 369
master of a trade 370
mat 349
Matang Village 353
matches 350
maternal grandfather (address and quoting term) 366
matter 349
mattress 349
mattress made of rice-stalks 349
may do 373
meal (CL) 341
mean-spirited 378
measure (cloth) 352
measure (rice) 352
measure of 10.8 feet 352
meat 342
medicinal plaster 366
medicine 365
meet 363
meet (by chance) 371
meet with 371
meeting dismissed 372
melon seed 342
melt (of snow) 332
meow (vi.) 337
merchant 370
merely 386
message (oral) 354
metamorphosis 337
meteor / falling star 331
method, way 349
middle 381
middle finger 359
midnight 380
mildew, mold 333
mildewed and spoiled (of wood) 376
military officer 370
milk 343

- mill (n.) 341
 mill house 348
 mire 332
 mirror 349
 mischievous 378
 misunderstand 373
 mix 344
 mix (dough) 344
 moan (v.) 364
 modest 378
 moistening 376
 mole 335, 357
 monastery 355
 money 352
 monk 370
 monkey 335
 month 379
 moon 331
 moonlight 331
 more 386
 more or less 384
 morning 380
 morning glory 339
 mortgage (vt.) 352
 mosquito 337
 mosquito bite (n.) 338
 moss 339
 most 386
 moth 337
 mother (address term) 366
 mother (quoting term) 366
 mother's brother 367
 mother's brother's wife 367
 mother's sister 367
 mother's sister's husband 367
 moult (vi.) 335
 mound 332
 mountain 332
 mountain goat 335, 336
 mourning apparel 346
 mouse 335
 mouth 358
 move 382
 move (house) 347
 move or slip away or to one
 side (v.) 363
 movies 357
 mow / cut grass (vt.) 341
 mucus from the nose 358
 mud 332
 muddy 333
 multiply 383
 murder 372
 music 356
 musk, river deer, roedeer 335
 mustache 358
 mutton 342
 mutually (mutually help each
 other) 386
 Muyu / Moyu Village 353
 nail (n.) 350
 nail (vt.) 350
 naked 346
 name (n.) 366
 narrow 374
 naughty 378
 nauseating 364
 nauseating, unsightly 375
 navel 359
 near 381
 neck 359
 necklace 346
 need not (eg. you need not cry)
 387
 needle 345
 negative imperative 387
 neighbor 367
 neighboring, next door 381
 nervous 379
 nervous, palpitating heart 364
 nest 334
 net 351
 new 376
 newspaper 354
 next 386
 next month 379
 next year 379
 nice day 332

- niggardly, miserly 378
night 380
night falls (vi.) 331
nighttime 380
nine 383
nineteen 383
ninety 384
nipple 359
nit 338
noise 360
noodle(s) 342
noon 380
noon meal 341
north 381
north wind 332
nose 358
nose ring of cow 336
nostril 358
not (e.g. it is not good) 387
not at (home) 381
not feel well 364
not good enough 376
not only...but also 388
not willing 373
not yet (e.g. he has not yet come) 387
now 386
numbering 384
oats 340
obscure, dark 331
observe the New Year 355
of passing/indifferent quality 376
of the same generation 367
offend people 371
officer 369
o'clock 380
often 386
oil 342
ointment 366
OK, acceptable 372
old 376
old man 368
old of age 364
old woman 368
on fire, to catch fire (vi.) 333
one 383
one and a half 383
one by one 385
one-eyed person 368
onion 340
only 386
open a door 348
open out, separate 361
open stall (n.) 351
open the eyes 360
open the mouth 360
open the mouth a slit 360
opening of the mouth 358
opinion 373
opposite 381
orange color 375
orderly 376
orphan 368
other (things or people) 384
other people 384
otter 335
ought to, should 373
ounce 352
ours 385
outside 381
outsider 368
overflowing 376
overnight 380
overtake (in pursuit) 372
owe (money) 352
owl 335
ox 336
pace back and forth 382
pack (luggage) 353
pagoda 355
pail 350
pain(ful) 364
paint, spread on (vt.) 348
palm 359
pan for washing face 363
pancreas 359
pant (v.) 357

- paper 354
 paper money 352
 parents 366
 parrot 335
 part from 364
 partitive, '(ate two apples) out of (five)' 386
 pass by a place 353
 pass on a message 354
 paste 354
 paste up 354
 pastry 342
 pat (on the shoulder) 362
 pat (on the table) 362
 patch (vt.) 345
 paternal and maternal grandmother (address and quoting term) 366
 paternal grandfather (address term) 366
 paternal grandfather (quoting term) 366
 paternal uncles 367
 path 352
 patience 375
 pawnshop 351
 pay tax 352
 pea 340
 pea/bean shoots/sprouts 340
 peaceful 375
 peak 332
 peanut 340
 pear 340
 pebble 332
 peck (v.) 335
 peck, a dry measure (316 c. in.) 352
 peel (vt.) 341, 349
 peel with a peeler 341
 pen, writing brush 354
 penis (baby term) 359
 penis (common term) 359
 pepper 340
 perfective aspect, 'have you eaten?' 386
 person from another province 368
 person who stutters 368
 person who wears glasses 368
 person with missing front teeth 368
 person with pockmarks 368
 person, human being 368
 persuade someone not to fight 370
 petals of a flower 339
 pheasant 335
 phlegm 358
 pianniu 336
 pick 341
 pick at, scrape (e.g. the nose) 362
 pick up 361
 pick up with chopsticks 344
 pickpocket (n.) 370
 pickpocket (v.) 370
 picture 349
 pierce (vt.) 349
 pierce the ear lobe 346
 pierce the nose of a cow 336
 pierce with a fork 351
 pig 336
 pig (male) 336
 pig feed 336
 pig tender 369
 pigeon 335
 pig's bristles 336
 pig's feet 342
 pigsty, hogpen 347
 pigtail (not tied with hemp) 363
 pigtail (tied with hemp) 363
 pile up 361
 pile up a wall 348
 pill 366
 pillar 348
 pillow 349
 pincer (vt.) 350

- pincers 350
pinch with the fingers 361
pine cone 339
pine tree 339
pink 375
pint, 1/10 peck 352
pity, piteous (vt.) 372
place 380
plain, second-rate 376
plait the hair (vt.) 363
plan, device 373
plane (n.) 350
plane (vt.) 350
plant (vt.) 341
plant a field 341
platform, level area 348
play 356
play ball 356
play card game 356
play hide and seek 356
play jacks, dice game 356
play the flute 356
play the shuttlecock 356
plow (a field) 341
plow (n.) 341
plow-share 341
pocket 346
point (v.) 361
point of the foot 360
pointed 376
poison 366
poke (vt.) 362
polish (vt.) 349
pollen 339
pond 333
poor 377
poor people 369
poor quality 376
pop (of oil, etc.) 344
porcupine 335
pork 342
possessive marker (eg. my book) 387
possessive pronouns, mine 385
possibly, perhaps 387
potato 340
pound (garlic) 344
pound, hit 341
pound, ram 362
pound, tap, strike, rap on (the head) 362
pour (tea) 344
pour over 344
powder 333
prefer 373
pregnant 360
pregnant woman 368
prepare 372
press down 361
press out oil 342
pretend 373
previous 386
price 352
prick (vt.) 349
printed cotton 345
progressive aspect, 'he is eating' 386
prohibitive 387
promise (vt.) 371
prop up, stretch out 362
prostrate and knock head on ground 362
protect 371
protruding teeth 358
proud 378
provoke 370
prune 340
pry open 362
puddle 333
pull 361
pull at (a string) 361
pull out 361
pull out, take out (from pocket) 362
pulse of the wrist 359
pumpkin 340
purse the lips 360
pursue 372

- pus 357
 push 361
 put (things) away 372
 put down rudely 361
 put in (ingredients) 344
 put on clothesline 346
 put on credit 351
 put the dead into the coffin 355
 put up an umbrella 347
 put, place in/on 361
 Qiang (name of ethnic group) 369
 Qiang Festival (held in Autumn) 355
 Qiang language 369
 quack (vi.) 337
 quarrel 370
 quick 377, 379
 quick, smart 378
 quickly 386
 quiet 375
 quilt 349
 quite 386
 rabbit 335
 rabbit (male) 335
 railing 348
 rain (n.) 331
 rain (vi.) 331
 rainbow 331
 raindrop 331
 rainy day 332
 raise (children) 364
 raise (vt.) 361
 raise a blister 357
 raise by putting something under 361
 raise the hand 361
 raise the head 360
 raise with the hands 361
 rank (smell of urine, fish) 374
 rape seed plant 340
 rare (n.) 376
 rather, pretty 386
 ravine 332
 raw 376
 reach destination 353
 read a book 354
 read aloud 354
 read newspaper 354
 really and truly 386
 rear (vt.), breed (vt.) 336
 receive (visitor) 356
 recently 386
 recite lessons from memory 354
 recognize (on meeting someone, exchange chat) 373
 recognize, know (someone) 373
 record accounts 351
 red 375
 red bayberry 340
 red-spotted lizard 338
 regard as 366
 regular, uniform, even 376
 relatives 366
 release (from captivity) 372
 remarry (of woman) 355
 remember 373
 remote, out of the way 377
 remove feathers 337
 remove fur 336
 remove teeth 364
 render fat 344
 repair 351
 requite (vt.) 371
 rescue (vt.) 371
 resemble 382
 resin, colophony 339
 respond verbally 354
 rest 364
 retreat (v.) 382
 return (v.) (come back) 382
 return a borrowed object or money 352
 return a debt 352
 return change (from purchase) 352
 rGyalrong (Jiarong) 369
 rhubarb 340

- ribs 360
rice (in field or hulled) 339
rice gruel, congee 341
rice husk 339
rice ladle 344
rice shoots, sprouting grain 339
rice water 341
riceworm 337
rich 377
rich people 369
ride (a bicycle) 353
ride (a horse) 337
ride in a car 353
ridge of nose 358
ridicule sarcastically or in disguise 370
right (side) 381
right-hand 359
ring 347
rinse one's mouth 363
rip, tear (vt.) 361
rise (of the sun) 331
rise (of the tide) 333
rise (vi., of bread) 344
river 333
river valley 333
river-bed 333
road 352
roar (as lion) 334
roast 344
roast in hot ashes 344
roast pork with skin 342
rob 370
rock 332
roedeer 335
roedeer (female) 335
roll (v.) 350
roll into a ball with the hands 344
roll up 362
Ronghong Village 353
roof 348
roof (vt.) 348
room 347
root 339
root (vt., of pigs) 336
root of the tongue 358
rope (n.) 350
ropes, cordage 350
rosy clouds, rosy sunset 331
rough (of road) 377
round 374
round dumpling 341
rub 361
rub between the hands 361
rub ointment 366
rub on (oil) 361
rub, massage 361
rummage (vt.) 362
run 362
run against 363
runner-up 384
rush on 363
rust 333
rust (vi.) 333
sacrifice (to the gods) 355
sad 375
saddle 353
safe 377
salary 369
saliva 358
salt 342
salty 374
sand 332
saw (n.) 350
saw (vt.) 350
sawdust 351
say 354
scald oneself 365
scale 352
scarcely, barely 386
scarf 346
scattered 376
scissors 349
scold 370
scoop from one container to another 362
scorched, burned (of rice) 376

- scour a pan 344
 scam! 371
 scrape (vt.) 349
 scratch 361
 scratch for feed (chicken) 337
 screw (n.) 350
 screw (v.) 361
 screw in (a screw) 350
 screwdriver 350
 sea 333
 search the person 372
 second floor of house 347
 secretion in the eye 358
 secretly 387
 sedan chair 353
 see a visitor off 356
 seed 339
 seedlings of a tree 339
 seemingly 387
 Seergu Village 353
 seize and arrest 371
 select (as) 372
 self, emphatic and reflexive pronoun 384
 self-satisfied 375
 sell 351
 send 371
 send presents 356
 senior generation 366
 separate 361
 separately 386
 servant 369
 set (of the sun) 331
 set a snare 335
 set the table 344
 set up a banquet 356
 set up a bed 349
 set up pillars 348
 settle a bill 351
 seven 383
 seven sister stars 332
 seventeen 383
 seventy 383
 several 384
 sew 345
 sew on a button 345
 sexual intercourse (common term) 360
 sexual intercourse (euphemistic term) 360
 shabby, tattered garments 375
 shade (vt., of leaves) 339
 shadow 331
 shake 362
 shake hands 361
 shake open, spread by shaking 362
 shake out 362
 shallow 374
 shameful 375
 shampoo the hair 363
 shape 354
 sharp 376
 sharpen a knife 349
 shave beard 363
 shave the head 363
 shave the head bald 363
 shavings 350
 sheath, scabbard 349
 shed tears 358
 sheep 336
 sheep (wool sheep) 336
 sheephorn flower 339
 sheepskin 336
 sheepskin vest 346
 shell (vt.) 341
 shinbone 360
 shine (vi.) 331
 shiny, shining 331
 shiver (v.) 365
 shoat, piglet (male) 336
 shoes 346
 shoot 336
 shoot a gun 366
 shoot an arrow or gun 366
 shoot the target 366
 shopkeeper 370
 short (in length) 374

- short (of height) 374
shoulder 359
shoulder (a load) 361
shout (vi.) 354
shovel, spade (n.) 350
shrink (vi., of clothes) 346
shrub 339
shudder (v.) 365
shuttlecock 356
siblings of father's sisters 367
sickle 350
sickle with teeth used to cut
grain crops 350
side 381
side, inside, (locational particle)
387
sideburn 358
sieve (n.) 341
sieve (vt.) 341
sign (v., n.) 354
silkworm 337
silver 333
silver monkey 335
simpleton 369
since (eg. since you don't like
it) 388
since (eg. since you were born)
388
sing 356
single child 368
sink (vi.) 333
sip (vt.) 360
sister call brother 367
sister's child 367
sisters 367
sit (up) 362
sit down 362
six 383
sixteen 383
sixty 383
skillful 379
skim, fish out 362
skin 357
skin (n.) 334
skinny 375
skirt 346
sky 331
slanted 374
slap (vt.) 361
sleep 364
sleep face down 362
sleep on one's back 363
sleep on one's side 363
sleet (vi.) 332
sleeves 346
slightly 386
slingshot 366
slip (v.) 363
slip and fall 363
slippery 376
slope of a hill 332
slow 377
sluggish 379
slyly 379
small 374
small hand basket 350
small intestine 359
small round soft cake of
pounded glutinous rice 342
smaller half 383
smallpox 365
smell (vt.) 360, 374
smell bad, musty (of cereals),
rotten (of meat, etc.) 374
smile (v.) 372
smoke 344
smoke (cigarettes) 360
smoke (cigarettes) (vt.) 343
smoke (meat) (vt.) 334
smoke (n.) 334
smooth 376
smother (charcoal) 343
snail 338
snake (thick) 338
snake (thin) 338
snap button (n.) 346
sneeze (v.) 364
snow 332

- snow (vi.) 332
 snow pea-pod 340
 soak 344
 soak (vt.) 341
 soak, flood (vi.) 333
 soap 363
 socks 346
 soft 376
 soft secretion of the ear 358
 soft voice 375
 soft, uncrisp 374
 soil 332
 solar eclipse 331
 Solar New Year's Day 355
 soldier 370
 sole of the foot 360
 solid (of grain) 376
 some (number) 384
 somersault 356
 something 385
 sometimes ... sometimes ... (eg.
 sometimes he is naughty,
 sometimes he is good) 388
 somewhat 386
 son 367
 son's wife 367
 song 356
 soot 333
 soot of a pan 344
 sorghum 339
 sort out vegetables 343
 sound 360
 sound the gong 357
 soup 342
 sour 374
 south 381
 south wind 332
 sow 336
 sow seeds 341
 soy sauce 342
 soybean 340
 spade (vt.) 350
 sparrow 335
 sparse, not dense 376
 speak 354
 speculate, to guess 373
 spend money 352
 sperm, semen 359
 spider 338
 spider's web 338
 spiked millet 339
 spin (yarn) (vt.) 345
 spin a web (of spider) 338
 spinach 340
 spit (v.) 358
 spit (vt.) 361
 spittle 358
 splash water 348
 split (wood) (vt.) 349
 spoil (a child) 372
 spoiled (of child) 378
 spoken words 354
 spongy, fluffy 374
 spool 345
 spoon (n.) 344
 spoon (vt.) 344
 spread (of fog) 331
 spread (vt.) 349
 spring 333, 379
 sprinkle (vt.) 344
 sprout (as from seed) 339
 sprout (n.) 339
 spurt (vt.) 360
 squat 362
 squeeze (out) 361
 squirrel 335
 stable 347
 staircase, ladder (wooden) 348
 stamp the feet 362
 stand (up) 362
 star 331
 start 382
 start early 386
 start on a journey 353
 start serving a banquet 356
 state of being well 377
 stay at an inn 351
 steady 376

- steal 370
steam (vt.) 344
steamed or baked bread 341
steamer 343
steel 333
steep 375
step across 362
step over the doorsill 348
steps 348
stew (vt.) 344
stick 350
stick (vt.) 354
stick out the tongue 361
still 386
sting (vt.) 337
stinger of a bee/wasp 337
stir 344
stomach 359
stomach (pork) 342
stone 332
stool 349
stoop 362
stop 382
stop (of the rain) 331
stop blowing (of the wind) 331
stop the flow of water 334
stop up (a hole) 334
store (grains) (vt.) 341
storehouse 347
storey 347
storm (vi.) 331
story 354
stove 343
straight 375
strain (strain away liquid) 344
strain, sprain (one's back, muscles) 365
strange (n.) 376
stranger 368
strangle 361
straw 350
strawberry 340
stream 333
street 352
strength 360
stretch out the hand 361
strike (vt.) 361
string 350
string bean 340
strong 377
strong character 378
strong, lasting 376
stubborn 378
student 369
study 354
stuffy 374
stumble 363
stupid 378
subtract 383
succeed 372
suck (fingers) 360
suck (vt.) 360
sue 372
sugar 342
suitable 375
sultry, stuffy and hot 374
summer 379
summon (vt.) 371
sun 331
sun (clothes) (vt.) 346
sun (vt., vi.) 331
sunflower 339
sunrise 380
sunset 380
support, prop up 362
surface of the earth 332
surname, clan name 366
surround 382
surround (vt.) 366
surrounding 381
swallow (n.) 335
swallow (v.) 360
swear brotherhood or sisterhood 355
sweat (n.) 357
sweat (v.) 357
sweep the floor 348
sweet 374

- sweet fermented rice 343
 sweet potato 340
 swim (vi.) 338
 sworn brothers 367
 table 349
 taciturn 378
 tael 352
 tail 334, 342
 tailor 369
 take a bath 363
 take a husband 355
 take a photo 357
 take a seat at a dinner table 356
 take a step 356
 take a wife 355
 take in the fingers 361
 take medicine 366
 take the place of 372
 take with the hand, receive 362
 talk (vt.) 354
 talk in sleep 364
 tall 374
 tares 339
 target 366
 tartar 358
 taste 344
 taste (vt.) 360
 taut 376
 tax (n.) 352
 tax (vt.) 352
 tea 344
 teach 354
 teacher 369
 teapot 344
 tears 358
 tease (vt.) 370
 teeth 358
 telephone (n.) 354
 telephone (v.) 354
 tell a story 354
 tell tales of, to play trick on 371
 tell the future 355
 temper 377
 temple 355, 358
 temporarily 386
 temporary bridge 353
 ten 383
 ten odd 384
 ten thousand 384
 tend cattle 336
 tend ducks 337
 tend pigs 336
 tender 376
 tendon 357
 terminative, 'finish (eating the rice)' 386
 termite 338
 terrible, frightening 375
 testicles 359
 thank for a gift 356
 thank for an act of kindness 356
 that 385
 that much 385
 that side 385
 that time 386
 thatch rushes 339
 the ... the (eg. the older he grows the smarter he becomes) 388
 the first one 384
 the last one 384
 the whole floor / ground 381
 theirs 385
 then and only then 386
 there 385
 there is a fire 333
 these 385
 they (3rd pl. pronoun) 384
 they/them two (3rd dual pronoun) 384
 thick 374
 thick (eg. thread) 374
 thick (of liquid) 376
 thief 370
 thigh 360
 thimble 345
 thin 374
 thin (of liquid) 376

- thin (of people) 377
thin silk 345
thin vermicelli that has been
hung to dry 342
thing 349
think about 373
third floor of house 347
thirsty 374
thirteen 383
thirty 383
this 385
this evening 380
this month 379
this morning 380
this much 385
this side 385
this year 379
thorn 339
those 385
thousand 384
thread 345
thread a needle 345
three 383
thresh (vt.) 341
throat 359
throw 362
throw away 362
thumb 359
thunder (n.) 332
thunder (vi.) 332
Tibetan (name of ethnic group)
369
Tibetan language 369
tick 338
tickle 374
tie (shoelace) 346
tie up a cow 336
tie up, bind 362
tiger 334
tight 375
tile 350
time (one time) 384
timid 378
tin 333
tiny 374
tire of 373
to guard 370
toad 338
tobacco pipe 347
today 380
toe 360
toenail 360
toilet 348
tombstone 355
tomorrow 380
tomorrow evening 380
tomorrow morning 380
tongue 358
tongue tip 358
too (adj.), excessively 386
too late 386
tools 349
toothbrush 363
top (n.) 381
top of the head 357
torch 350
torn 376
torn (of clothes) 345
tough (of meat, rice) 376
tough, old, spoiled, bug-eaten
(of vegetables) 376
town 352
townpeople 368
toy 356
trace 354
trade (n.) 351
train 369
transport 361
travel (vi.) 353
traveller 353
tray 344
tread on 362
treat (others to a meal, etc.) 356
tree 339
tree shade (n.) 339
tree stump 339
tree trunk 339
tree-fork, a forked stick 339

- trousers, pants 346
 trousers' seat 346
 truce 366
 trunk 349
 trustworthy, honest 377
 try (vt.) 372
 tsamba 340
 tuck under the arm 361
 turn (doorknob) 361
 turn a corner 382
 turn around 382
 turn around (the head) 360
 turn off the light 349
 turn on the light 349
 turn over (the wrong side),
 reversed 374
 turn the head 360
 turnip 340
 turtle 338
 twelve 383
 twenty 383
 twenty-one 383
 twenty-three 383
 twenty-two 383
 twice as much / many 383
 twins 368
 twist (v.) 361
 twist ropes 350
 twist, crush together in the hand
 (e.g. clothes) 361
 twist, sprain (v.) 361
 twitching of the eyelid 358
 two 383
 two times odd 383
 ugly looking 375
 umbrella 347
 unable to sustain / resist 372
 unbutton (vt.) 346
 unconscientious 378
 underneath 381
 undress 346
 uneven 376
 unimportant 374, 377
 unite 352
 unless 388
 unlucky 377
 unmarried young woman 368
 unpack (luggage) 353
 unsteady 376
 untie (shoelace) 346
 unusual (n.) 376
 upbraid 370
 upper storey 347
 upright 374
 upside down 374
 urgent, pressing 374
 urinate 359
 urine 359
 use (vt.) 372
 use bad words 370
 usually 386
 valley 332
 valuable 377
 value, regard as rare 373
 vapor, steam 334
 vegetable garden 341
 vegetables 340
 vein 357
 vertical 375
 vertically 387
 very 386
 very long (in time) 383
 vexed 375
 village 353
 villagers (same village) 367
 vine 339
 vinegar 342
 voice 360
 vomit (v.) 364
 vulva (common term) 359
 vulva (euphemistic term) 359
 wag the tail 334
 waist 359
 waist belt 346
 wait for 371
 walk on foot 352
 walking stick 347
 wall 348

- walnut 340
- want 373
- want to (do something) 372
- ward off 362
- warm 374
- warm up leftovers 344
- warm, to roast, to bake 344
- wash (clothes) 346
- wash clothes with stick 346
- wash down (vi., of water) 333
- wash face 363
- wash rice 343
- wash the feet 363
- washcloth 363
- Wasi Village 353
- wasp 337
- waste (vt.) 372
- waste money 352
- watch (the children) 364
- watch a movie 357
- watch the coffin containing the corpse 355
- watch the house 347
- water 333
- water (vt.) 341
- water gate 334
- water-drawing bucket 348
- waterfall 333
- we all, all of us 384
- we/us (1st plural pronoun) 384
- we/us two (1st dual pronoun) 384
- weak 377
- weak (of character) 378
- wear (a hat) 346
- wear (clothing) 346
- wear (pants) 346
- wear (shoes) 346
- wear a skirt 346
- weasel 335
- weave (vt.) 345
- weave a net 345
- weaver's shuttle 345
- wedding or other set date 355
- wedge in 371
- weed (vt.) 341
- week 380
- weep, to cry 372
- weigh (vt.) 352
- welcome, to receive 356
- well (n.) 348
- Wenchuan County 353
- west 381
- west wind 332
- wet (n.) 376
- what day is today? 380
- what time is it? 380
- what? 385
- wheat 339
- wheat bran 339
- wheat flour 339
- wheat straw 340
- when (eg. when I came) 387
- when? 385
- where? 385
- which one? 385
- which side? 385
- whip (n.) 350
- whip (vt.) 350
- whip mark 365
- whirl (vi., of the wind) 331
- whirlwind 331
- whisper (vi.) 354
- whistle (n.) 350, 356
- whistle (vt.) 356
- white 375
- white bean 340
- white of the eye 358
- white stone 355
- white sugar 342
- who? 385
- whoever 384
- whole 383
- whole day 380
- whole life (one's whole life) 364
- whole night 380
- why? 385

- wick 349
 widow 368
 wife 367
 wife's father 367
 wild boar 335
 wild cow 336
 willing (to) 373
 willow tree 339
 win 357
 win (in some contest) 366
 wind 331
 wind thread 345
 window 348
 wine 343
 wing 335
 winnowing shallow basket 351
 winnowing tray 341
 winter 379
 winter melon 340
 wipe 361
 wipe (vt.) 348
 wipe the anus (after defecating) 363
 wire 350
 wolf 334
 wood 350
 woodchopper 369
 wooden bench 349
 wooden stick for washing clothes 346
 woodpecker 335
 wool 345
 wool, fleece 336
 woollen sweater 346
 woollen thread 345
 work (vt.) 369
 world 381
 worm 337
 worried 373
 worry, to put to heart 373
 worship god 355
 worth (be worth) 352
 worth, worthwhile 377
 worthless 377
 worthy of (doing) 373
 wound, sore 365
 Wowo Village 353
 wrap (dumplings) 344
 wrap (vt.) 362
 wrap a wound 365
 wriggler 337
 wring (a wet towel) 361
 wrinkle 357
 wrinkled 376
 wrist 359
 write (a letter/book) 354
 wrong 377
 Xiaoguazi Village 353
 Xihu Village 353
 Yadu Township 353
 yak 336
 yard 352
 yawn (v.) 357
 year 379
 year after next 379
 year before last 379
 year old 364
 yellow 375
 yellow jacket 337
 yesterday 380
 yesterday evening 380
 Yi (name of ethnic group) 369
 yoke 353
 you (2nd pl. pronoun) 384
 you (thou) (2nd sg. pronoun) 384
 you two (2nd dual pronoun) 384
 young cucumber 340
 young in age 364
 young man 368
 young shoots 339
 younger brother 367
 younger sister 367
 youngest child 368
 yours (pl.) 385
 yours (sg.) 385
 zero 383

Notes

1. In the stories the interjections often take the form of demonstrative pronouns, but are used as fillers rather than for their lexical content. This is common in Chinese as well, but I don't know if this is by chance or due to contact influence.
2. Other members of the Qiangic branch include Pumi (Prinmi), Muya, Ergong, Shixing, Namuzi (see Sun 1982, 1983, 1985). rGyalrong is often included in this group as well, though this categorization is less than certain (see LaPolla 2000b, 2003a).
3. Studies on the culture and history of the Qiang people include Zhuang 1937; Yan 1951; Graham 1958; Luo & Shi 1983; Ran, Li & Zhou 1984; Ren 1984; Ma 1984; Zhou & Liu 1993; Xu 1993; Li, Lin & Wang 1994; Meng, Gui & Lin 1994; and Wang 1997a, 1997b, 1998, 1999a, 1999b, 1999c, 2000, 2001a, 2001b.
4. These population figures are from Sun 1981a:177; Huang Bufan 1991:208 gives the total number of Qiang speakers as approximately one hundred thousand people. Neither author gives a source for these figures. According to the 1990 census (figures cited in Zhou & Li 1993), the total population of the Qiang people is one hundred ninety-eight thousand people (it had been 102,768 in the 1982 census). If Huang's number is correct, then only about half of the people of the Qiang nationality still speak the Qiang language fluently. This seems about right, as my understanding is that there are very few fluent speakers left in the majority of the southern Qiang areas. See also Lin 1990.
5. Having the animals within the same building was to prevent theft and to maintain warmth, but as this is a rather unhygienic arrangement, the government has been encouraging the Qiang to build separate pens for the animals.
6. Before 1949 the area was quite poor, and the main economic activity was opium growing and selling. Few Qiang people were able to attend schools or improve their livelihood. Their situation was not unlike the difficult situation the Akha people in northern Thailand still live in today.
7. The Qiang are sometimes mistakenly believed to be worshipping the white stone itself, but they are in fact worshipping the spirit invested in the stone.
8. Liu (1998b:1-3) gives a detailed history of the work done by the team in the 1950's. Fieldwork was carried out in 32 different Qiang-speaking areas, and a large amount of data was collected. Work on this data stopped for many years because of the disruption of the Cultural Revolution, although Liu and Sun have since the late 1970's tried to work up and publish the data (Liu's book, Sun 1981a, and many of the other relatively recent publications are based largely on the data collected in the 1950's).

9. This list was compiled by Yu-hung Chang, Anne Y. Hashimoto and Jerry Norman, and published by Princeton University. While this was not an ideal word list for Qiang, as it included many lexical items specific to Southeast China, it was chosen because it had both English and Chinese glosses, semantic numbering, an index, and more items than the standard lists used in China. A revised version of this list is also being used for the Qiang Dialect Atlas Project.
10. The form /ŋ/ is used instead of the standard IPA /ɲ/ simply to be consistent with other works on the language published in China (where this form is standard usage), and to have the palatal series consistently marked by the curl on the right.
11. The forms /kha/ and /xa/ do not appear in Qiang, though /k-/ and /kh-/ contrast in /kha/ ‘rice husk’ and /ka:/ ‘teeth of a sickle’, and /x-/ and /χ-/ contrast in /xa/ ‘scold (1sg)’ and /χa/ ‘sword’.
12. The analysis of the phonemic form of the prefix as /s-/ (rather than /s/) may seem odd from a Tibeto-Burman comparative perspective, but based on both internal evidence, and comparative evidence from other Qiang sub-dialects (e.g. cf. Mawo dialect /sɸi/, Ronghong dialect [ɸie] ‘thirsty’), this seems the only choice.
13. It is a puzzle why the second person pronoun has a glottal or zero initial (they don’t contrast) instead of /n/ or /ŋ/, as the rhyme /u/ would be a regular development from the usual Tibeto-Burman second person singular pronoun *nang. (PTB *n- has several reflexes in Qiang, but not usually [ʔ- ~ Ø].)
14. When r-coloring is added to /a/, it is usually pronounced [əʔ] or [aʔ], so we cannot determine whether there are separate /aʔ/(/əʔ/) and /a/ forms.
15. This example has been added to show that the final r-coloring contrasts with final /-l/.
16. Even though this is true, the forms of the second person pronouns, /ũ/ (singular) and /i-/ (plural) are written in this grammar with a glottal stop onset, purely to give them graphic bulk.
17. Here we are treating the glides that appear after the initial as part of the final rather than as part of an initial cluster because they do not form part of the syllable-final clusters (which are formed from initial clusters), even though historically the high-front glide has affected the initial consonant or cluster, palatalizing the initial, or in some cases (where the initial is /p/) palatalized the preinitial (e.g. *sɸie > [ɸie]). See the discussion of clusters later in this section, and also footnote 12.
18. In general, prefixes are preserved in the second syllable of two-syllable combinations (unless the entire complex initial is reduced), except in the case of the numerals (see §3.1.5) (and a few very old compounds such as [magu] ‘flimsy’, from /ma/ NEG + /zgue/ ‘strong’). This would be evidence that the numeral combinations were formed at a time when the prefixes were still productive, or at least were still not seen as integral to the root, and that other combinations (where the prefixes were preserved) developed after the prefixes had become fixed as part of an initial consonant cluster.

19. Even if the form does not become monosyllabic, there will still be a reduction in the number of syllables, e.g. in (2.5b), below, where three syllables reduce to two.
20. The lateral which occurs from the weakening of /dz-/ is somewhat retroflexed.
21. This contrasts with languages such as Dulong/Rawang and Jinghpaw, which generally have an iambic stress pattern, and so reduction is of the first syllable rather than the second syllable (basically a southern pattern within Tibeto-Burman, possibly due to Mon-Khmer influence). See Dai 1995, Dai & Xu 1995 on Jingpo initial syllable reduction.
22. There are several forms for ‘one’ and ‘ten’; see §3.1.5.
23. The words for ‘eight’ and ‘hundred’ can both be pronounced [khe] or [kheʰ], though in context there doesn’t seem to be a problem of ambiguity. It seems the r-coloring is in the process of being lost, at least in the speech of the younger people. This homophony might seem odd, but it also occurs in the Cantonese dialect of Chinese, when final /-k/ and final /-t/ both become glottal stop in rapid speech (i.e. baat³³ ‘eight’ and baak³³ ‘hundred’ both > baaʔ³³).
24. If more than two need to be expressed, an adverbial marker would need to be added, e.g. [tʂhetsə xəsə na-ŋi khuaiθa] (car new good-ADV fast) ‘good fast new car’.
25. In Chinese it is also the case that many nouns which are themselves measures do not take classifiers or measures, particularly those of units of time, such as *nián* ‘year’ and *tiān* ‘day’.
26. A stative verb (adjective) can also be followed by the definite marker, though the resulting form functions as a noun, not a verb.
27. One example of a non-natural referent that seems to have this structure is /soqhu qhu/ ‘to fire a gun’, but I am not clear on the origin of the term /soqhu/ ‘gun’. James A. Matisoff (p.c.) has suggested that the first syllable of /soqhu/ might be related to /somu/ ‘iron’.
28. The semantics of this noun are exactly that of Chinese *yuèliàng* ‘moon’ (< ‘moon’ + ‘bright’), but as it is an item of basic vocabulary and follows a general pattern of Qiang, and the pattern is also found in a number of other Tibeto-Burman languages (Xu 1997), it does not seem to be a calque on the Chinese.
29. In the case of ‘flower’, the form is sometimes pronounced [lpa], sometimes [lampɑ]; in general, [lampɑ] is used when referring to the actual flowers, and [lpa] is used when it is an adjective, ‘flowery’, modifying a noun. The form [lam] is not used alone for ‘flower’, so the gloss here is speculative.
30. This is an animal that is a cross between a common cow and a yak.
31. In some northern Qiang sub-varieties, such as the Qugu variety, the form /qupu/ is used more generally.
32. In one elicited example, given in (3.201b), the form [the:-xʂ-ta] ‘on that side’, with a long vowel, was said to mean a position farther away than that meant by [the-xʂ-ta], with a short vowel, but this does not seem to be a regular pattern.
33. Where the form of the verb has been altered by the addition of person or aspect marking, the original form of the verb is given at the margin.

34. Here the verb is glossed as having first person singular marking (/ -a/), though because the form of the prospective aspect marking (/ -a:/) incorporates that of the first person singular marking, there is no obvious difference between first person singular prospective aspect and third person singular (zero marking) prospective aspect forms of verbs. See §4.3.2 on person marking.
35. Given this situation, and the fact that an (in)definite marker plus classifier can form a complete noun phrase (see T3:63 for an example), plus the fact that cross-linguistically definite markers often derive from demonstrative pronouns, as in English, it seems likely that the definite markers (and locative markers) of Qiang also derive historically from demonstrative pronouns. The form /te/ is not very problematic in this regard, as it could easily be related to the contemporary distal demonstrative pronoun /the/ (both possibly < Proto-Tibeto-Burman *day; see Benedict 1972:19), but the origin of /le/ is more puzzling, as the only evidence for a /le/ or /la/ demonstrative pronoun other than that used for the definite marker is the form [fiɬa], which often appears as an interjection in the Texts and seems to mean ‘there’. (See also footnote 53).
36. Here the copula could have been used instead of the existential verb, but the sense would be of a state that was permanent or at least lasted a rather long time.
37. In fact one expression meaning ‘story’ is /ʂkup-mele/, literally ‘orangutan words’. (As far as I know, there are no orangutans in Sichuan, China, but the Chinese word for the type of animal involved in these stories, which matches the imagined form of the animal, translates as ‘orangutan’.)
38. Both ‘eight’ and ‘hundred’ can be pronounced either [khe] or [kheʰ]. Only the context can distinguish the two. See footnote 23.
39. As mentioned in §2.2.3, this expression appears as [wu], [le-wu], [ɣle-wu], [leʰwu], [-eʰwu], or [-ʰwu]. In the case of the latter form, the final vowel of the previous word becomes r-colored.
40. Although this form seems very similar to the form [o-u] given just above, this form is made up of the word ‘one’ plus the initial consonant of the word for ‘pile’ and so there is no vowel harmony, while [o-u] involves two vowels, and so there is vowel harmony.
41. It might be argued that there is only one topic in this example, as the expression /səkue zdzi/ ‘stomach hurts’ is predicated about the main topic, but within this predication the stomach is also a topic about which a predication is made, and an adverb such as [kən ~ gən] ‘very’ can appear between the second noun phrase and the verb, so it can also be said there are two topics. The second topic is a secondary topic, though, and can only take topic marking in a quoted clause, e.g. [the:-ŋuəŋi səkue-ŋuəŋi zdzi jə] (3sg-TOP stomach-TOP pain say) ‘(He) says his stomach hurts’. See LaPolla 1995a, LaPolla & Poa 2003, for discussion of this type of construction in Chinese.
42. [χumtʂi] and [khumtsi] are common Qiang names. They are derived from the name of the animal associated with the year of birth of the individual, plus a nominalizer /-m/, plus a suffix indicating whether the person is male (/tʂi/ = ‘male child’) or female (/tʂi/ = ‘female child’). In this case /χu/ means ‘tiger’,

and /khu/ means ‘dog’ (< /khuə/), so [χumtʂi] is a male child born in the year of the tiger, and [khumtʂi] is a female child born in the year of the dog ([χu-lu-m] ‘the one who came in the year of the tiger’, etc. is also possible). There are several other common ways of forming Qiang names: using the name (= number) of the month the person was born in, e.g. the name [khe¹tʂi] is derived from [khe¹-c] ‘August’ (< /khe¹/ ‘eight’ + /cə/ ‘moon, month’) plus the male child suffix, so [khe¹tʂi] is a male child born in August (the eighth month); using the age of one of the parents at the time of the child’s birth, e.g. [kʉasuetʂi] ‘son of a fifty-year-old’; using the name of the place where the mother gave birth, e.g. [jʉʉotsi] ‘girl born on the threshing ground’; using the weight of the child at birth, e.g. [wutʂin] (< Chinese *wǔjīn*) ‘five catty’; using one of the five elements, e.g. [tʂinsen] (< Chinese *jīnshēng*) ‘golden birth’; using a reference to the god who was prayed to in requesting the child be born, e.g. [xsə-lu-tʂi] ‘god-coming-son’. See Huang, Yu, & Huang 1992.

43. There is also use of non-actor person marking to show affectedness; see §4.3.2.
44. Here the vowel change is due to harmonizing with /ji/, and then the prefix harmonizes with the changed vowel.
45. Notice in (3.121) and (3.122) that 2nd person plus 1st person results in 1pl person marking, while 2nd person and 3rd person result in 3pl person marking.
46. Qiang only has native words for two seasons, one (/tsaq/) representing both Spring and Summer, the other (/suəq/) representing both Autumn and Winter.
47. The third person pronoun is translated as ‘s/he’ because there is no gender distinction, and except for those examples that are taken from the stories, there was no disambiguating context (Chinese, the working language, also has no gender distinction).
48. See LaPolla 1995d on the common development of ablative markers into instrumental and agentive markers in Tibeto-Burman languages.
49. Notice here how the verb is first reduced from /tʂhə/ to [-tʂ] and then an epenthetic vowel is inserted before the /-m/ suffix.
50. The Chinese measures *zhàng* in (3.177) and *lǐ* in (3.178) are equivalent to 3 1/3 meters, or 10.8 feet, and half a kilometer, or 1/3 of a mile, respectively.
51. In a kinship relation such as this, we would normally have causative marking on the verb (see §3.2.14), but in the exclusion construction, the verb is intransitive, and there is only one direct argument (here, ‘my sister’). Another example would be (i):

(i) *the:* *o-u-stu-tʂi* *me-z.i.*
 3sg one-CL-alone-EXC NEG-have/exist
 ‘There is only him alone.’

52. There does not seem to be any regularity as to when [tʂi] is used as opposed to [ji ~ jə], other than emphasis. That is, when the particle is emphasized, it is more likely to be pronounced [tʂi], but if it is not emphasized, it is often pronounced [ji] or [jə].

53. There is an interesting correlation between the two definite markers, /le/ and /te/, the demonstrative pronoun /the/ ‘this’ (also /tha/ ‘there’), and these locative particles /la/ and /ta/ (see also footnote 35).
54. This is a loan from Chinese, so the individual morphemes have not been given glosses. This is also the case with ‘1958’ below.
55. The two phrases [jautchiu] ‘demand’ and [tɕiu-ʂə] ‘just-is’ are Chinese. This is possibly a case of code-mixing in the telling of the story rather than loans.
56. Middle voice marking is found in a number of Tibeto-Burman languages (see LaPolla 1995b, 1996, 2003a), but passive marking is rare.
57. This pattern is similar to that found in Dulong and Rawang (see LaPolla 2000, 2003b), but unlike in Dulong and Rawang, the noun phrase representing the causer cannot take topic marking in this example. In ex. (4.8), where the inanimate causer is marked with the agentive marker, it would be possible to have the noun phrase representing the causee in sentence-initial position and marked by the topic marker.
58. While this structure is acceptable, most often if the causer is 3rd person and the causee is 1st or 2nd person, the direct causative is not used. Instead a quotative structure is used, as in (i):

(i) *the:* *qa-ta* *stuaha* *tə-bəl-i* *kə-ji.*
 3sg 1sg-LOC food DIR-make-NAR thus-say
 ‘He told me to make the food.’

59. In this example it would also be possible to use a directional prefix on the copula (i.e., [ha-ŋyɔ̃-zə]), if the person had already assumed the office. As it stands, with no directional prefix and prospective aspect marking on the verb, the sentence assumes the person has been chosen, but has not yet assumed office. That is, the prospective aspect is relative only to the becoming, not to the choosing.
60. This is a sufficient, but not a necessary condition for adjective status: except for /topu/ ‘like’, any verb that can take /-wa/ will be an intransitive state predicate verb, but a verb that cannot take /-wa/ may also be an intransitive state predicate verb (see §4.4.1).
61. It could be that the sense of plurality is involved in both types, as the reciprocal must involve more than one person.
62. Because of the semantic nature of adjectives as stative verbs, prospective aspect can only be used with an adjective if the continuative aspect marking is used together with it, marking the sense that a state will continue to exist or develop.
63. In the case of ‘potatoes’ in this example and ‘fish’ in (4.33a-b) below, number marking is not used (though it would be possible to add [ɑ-hɑ] ‘some, a few’) when the exact number of items is not relevant.
64. There is another verb /kə/ that means ‘walk, leave’, but does not undergo the changes that the form /kə/ ‘go’ undergoes when prefixed, e.g. /ə-kə/ ‘leave!’, /tɕɑ-kə/ ‘don’t leave!’.
65. The change of state marker /-ji/ is not used with the negative of this construction.

66. This distinction of actor vs. non-actor parallels the use of agentive and non-agentive (ergative and anti-ergative) marking on noun phrases (see LaPolla 1992a, 1995c), and makes the Qiang system quite different from many of the other Tibeto-Burman person marking systems, which mark person primarily, and not semantic role (they are hierarchical systems). For example, in Tangut or Dulong/Rawang, marking of a first person participant appears in a clause regardless of the semantic role of that participant (see LaPolla 1992b, 1994, 2003a for discussion of person marking).
67. In the Mawo dialect (Sun 1981:192), the form /sa/ is used for all persons and numbers in the non-actor paradigm: 1sg /sa/, 2sg /saŋi/, 3sg /saji/, 1pl /saʔ/, 2pl /satciŋi/, 3pl /satciji/. From the Mawo evidence it seems the actor marking, number marking, and non-actor marking were originally three different systems.
68. These are the maximum forms possible. As the non-actor marking is always optional, and the actor marking is sometimes optional, these are not necessarily the forms that appear in the examples throughout this grammar.
69. The non-actor person marking is optional in most cases.
70. The verb /le/ never appears alone without the directional prefix /də/ for the meaning ‘give’, therefore no unprefixated forms are given here. There are corresponding verbs [səle] ‘pack in’, [zəl(e)] ‘take, bring over here’, and [ile] ‘bring in, put in’, which leads one to assume there was originally a verb /le/ that meant some kind of change of possession or movement, with the four directional prefixes (movement away from the center vs. movement downstream (here used for down-in), movement toward the center vs. movement in) determining the meaning as ‘give’, ‘pack in’, ‘take’, or ‘bring’. This verb may in fact be the existential verb /le/, which can have a transitive use in reduplicated form (see §4.2.4), but which would possibly lose the reduplicated token when a prefix is added. The word /-sə/ ‘put’ may also be the existential verb /sə/ (which can also have the sense of transitive ‘put’ in reduplicated form) when it takes a prefix.
71. The two systems do not correspond one-to-one, as the Taoping dialect uses the cognate of the Ronghong ‘movement in’ prefix for marking movement up-river, and it seems the cognates of the prefixes for marking movement toward or away from the center are used for movement towards the mountain and towards the river respectively. See Nishi 1990 and Huang Bufan 1991, 1994 for broader comparative treatments.
72. The assignment of a verb to a certain class is not arbitrary; it is done on the basis of tests for each type. See Van Valin & LaPolla 1997, Chapter 3 for discussion.
73. One of the few exceptions to this found so far is the form [tiwi] ‘tall, high’. This form is made up of the root /-wi/ and the directional prefix [ti-], but the root cannot be used without the prefix. The combined form has the simple meaning rather than the change or state meaning.
74. There is a contrast between a nominalized adjective used with the verb /pe/ ‘become’, and the form of the adjective (intransitive stative verb) with the directional prefix, which gives it the sense of ‘become ADJECTIVE’: /tə-ŋiq/

[DIR-black] ‘become black’ vs. /ŋiq-ke: pe/ [black-INDEF:CL become] ‘become a black thing’.

75. Not all verbs can do this, even if the semantics might allow it; in some cases if the verb can take all of the directional prefixes, then the concrete directional sense will override the more abstract sense, e.g. [fiɔɣlu] ‘roll down’ has no connotation of agentiveness, because it can take all of the directional prefixes, and so the use of /fiə-/ here will be based on the actual direction of rolling.
76. For discussion of *Aktionsart* differences expressed using the directional prefixes, see Section 4.3.3.
77. See also the discussion in §4.3.3 on the use of reduplication with different directional prefixes on each token for marking a type of repeated action.
78. While logically it would seem the two could be used together, they aren’t. For example, if one wanted to express the meaning ‘don’t do it again/anymore’, the form would not be */tɕə-tɕə-bəl/, but would be [tɕə-bəl-jy] (NEG.IMP-do-ASP); for ‘don’t let him come again/anymore’ it would not be */çɑ:-tɕə-tɕə-lɑ/, but would be [tɕo-lu-z-jy] (NEG.IMP-come-CAUS-ASP).
79. Huang Bufan (2000) has suggested this suffix derives from /kə/ ‘thus’ + /pə/ ‘do’, but except for ‘come’ and ‘go’, generally two verbs are not used together in that way (/pə/ can immediately follow the main verb), and it is possible to have another word for ‘do’ in between /kə/ and /pə/, as in (i), so it would seem /pə/ does not mean ‘do’.

(i) *the: khuə çə-k-kə-bəl-pə.*
 3sg dog release-go-thus-do-habitual
 ‘He goes hunting.’

80. It is important to emphasize that these are the formal means of marking the associated speech-act types, not necessarily the only way of performing these speech acts. Almost any formal type can be used to perform any type of speech-act.
81. In some cases, such as the verbs for ‘eat’ and ‘drink’, the prefix usually used for the imperative is different from the prefix usually used for the other uses of the directional prefixes: [sə-z] ‘(S/he) ate.’ vs. [ə-z] ‘Eat!’ (both < prefix + dzə); [sə-tɕ] ‘(S/he) drank.’ vs. [ə-tɕ] ‘Drink!’.
82. The resulting form can appear to be the same as a question form, which also has [-nɑ] at the end of the clause (see §4.3.5.3), but it does not have the same origin, i.e. the imperative particle /nɑ/ does not involve person marking, as the question form /-n-ɑ/ does, and so can be added after 2sg/2pl marking, as in /ə-zə-n-nɑ/ (directional prefix + ‘eat’ + 2sg + polite imperative marker) ‘(Please) eat!’. It also can be used with the plural, whereas the question particle /nɑ/ cannot, and the imperative /nɑ/ has a falling rather than rising intonation.
83. The form /lɑ/ is glossed as ‘INDTV:1sg’, even though there is no non-first person form, because there is this first person plural form.
84. The form of the verb as [tu-pu] (i.e. with the [-u] vowel) is due to the fact that the unprefixed form of ‘to look after someone’ is [tɕauku pu] (< /tɕauku pə/, where

the vowel of the verb /pə/ becomes [-u] due to harmony with the final vowel of /tʃauku/. It is unclear whether the vowel of the prefix is due to harmony with the already harmonized vowel of the verb, or due to harmony with the final vowel of /tʃauku/.

85. The form /ʔəhã/ sounds like the English backchannel positive response, but its meaning is the opposite of that in English!
86. The form which results from /ŋuə/ + /ŋi/ is the same as the topic marker /ŋuəŋi/, and this may be the origin of the topic marker, but they are not felt to be the same thing in this context.
87. Compare Chinese yào (要) which has the same two uses.
88. This form of nominalized verb plus the copula is sometimes used for simple statements, and even in questions, with the meaning ‘it is the case that’, e.g.

(i) *dza:khui ləyz su-s ŋuə-ŋua?*
 afternoon book learn-NOM COP-Q
 ‘Is there class this afternoon?’

(ii) *dza:khui ləyz su-s ma-ŋuə.*
 afternoon book learn-NOM NEG-COP
 ‘There is no class this afternoon’

There are also examples of this form with only the nominalized clause without the copula:

(iii) *ŋiŋi-lai kə-s?*
 what-time go-NOM
 ‘What time (do we) go?’

89. /dzə/ is an adjective, and seems to be the same word as /dzə/ ‘long’; it is reduced to a somewhat retroflexed /-l/ after a prefix, such as the negative and continuative prefixes.
90. Cf. the systems in Hare and Sunwari discussed by DeLancey (1997), where perfective contexts yield an evidential interpretation, and imperfective contexts yield a mirative interpretation. See also Zeisler 2000 for discussion on the relationship of tense/aspect and interpretation as mirative or not.
91. The combination of inferential and hearsay marking is sometimes pronounced [kui] in stories, as in (4), but there is no difference in meaning between [kəi] and [kui] in that context.
92. This form contrasts with a direct quote, which would involve a 1st person pronoun and a full verb of speaking (i), and an indirect quote, which would involve third person forms (ii):

(i) “*qa cteimi zdza*” *jə.*
 1sg heart sick+1sg say
 ‘He said “I’m unhappy”.’

(ii) *the: cteimi zdzi jə.*
 3sg heart sick say
 ‘He said he’s unhappy.’

93. As the prohibitive prefix and the continuative prefix have the same form in some contexts, ‘still want to go out’ would have almost the same structure as ‘don’t go out’, but due to differences in stress and aspect, the pronunciation of the former would be a bit different: /ha-tçi-ɣɑ:/.
94. In this clause, [mi lewu wu qəs] functions as one argument with [qəs] as the head, and so the existential verb used is one for inanimate objects rather than animate beings.
95. Although the prospective aspect marking in these cases seems more like an irrealis marker, it is not used in all hypothetical, conditional, or unrealized situations; /-tu/ and /-ta/ are more common as conditional markers, and generally do not appear with the prospective aspect marking.
96. Cross-linguistic comparison points to the original Sino-Tibetan relative clause structure being of this type, that is, a clause directly modifying a noun without nominalization or relative marking, although most Sino-Tibetan languages have grammaticalized some sort of nominalizer or complementizer for relativization (see for example, DeLancey 1986, Genetti 1992).
97. It is an open question whether the /-s/ form here is a native innovation or an old loan from Tibetan. The lexical form in Qiang corresponding to Tibetan /sa/ is /zə/ ‘ground, earth’; the voiced initial makes it an unlikely source for the suffix. On the other hand, the uses of Tibetan /-sa/ and Qiang /-s/ are not completely the same: both can be used for locations, but Tibetan does not use this form for instrumentals. See Mazaudon 1978, DeLancey 1986 on the Tibetan relative formations.
98. Yoshio Nishi (personal communication) suggests the possibility that /-ta/ might be derived from a noun, and here might still be functioning as a noun head in a relative clause structure of the type discussed below.
99. Usually the comitative marker is not used to link verbs unless they are nominalized, but here the first verb is missing the marker of nominalization.
100. In this example, the vowel of the last verb could be pronounced [ə] or [ɑ]. While these two vowels are usually distinguished, especially in such cases where they can represent person marking, there are a number of cases where they are not carefully distinguished. Another example is [the: tawa fiɑ-ta] (3sg hat DIR-wear) ‘S/he put on a hat’, the final vowel of which, although phonemically /-ɑ/, could also be pronounced [-ə].
101. Notice in (5.59) that the person marking is plural, unlike in English, where the verb agreement in a disjunction of two singular noun phrases like this would be singular.
102. In this example and the following one, the verb takes the non-actor person marking to show the affectedness of the referent involved. If the referent involved were 2nd person, the form would be the same except for the person marking, which would then be /-san/ or /-sai/ for singular or plural respectively. There is no person marking in a subordinate clause marked by [-wu] or [-ŋi].
103. The particle /tu/ is also often used in narratives without the sense of a conditional, but more as a general linker of clauses (/ta/ is only used for

conditionals). See the Texts for examples. (Cf. the development of the use of the clause particle /na/ in Tibetan from a general marker of clause connectedness to a marker of conditionals, and the common use of *de-huà* 'if' in Chinese as a topic marker.) There is something of a contrast between /-tu/ and the clause-final marker /-ɣə/ discussed in §4.4, in that both are used for a broad range of meanings centered around the conditional, but /-ɣə/ is used only with a verb marked with prospective aspect marking, while /-tu/ appears with verbs without prospective aspect marking.

104. Here the verb [-x-] is a reduced form of /kheʹ/. The form [xte] at the end of this line is a reduced form of /xtexte/.
105. Here [-wa] is a form of the question marker /-ŋua/.
106. This 'feast' refers to the feast held two days after the new year, usually for the newly married man to visit his in-laws. /dʒe/ is the word for 'festival', particularly the new year festival.
107. The Qiang drink their home-made barley wine from large casks with straws, so the verb for 'suck' is used here instead of that for 'drink'. This verb is also used for 'smoke (cigarettes)'.
108. Ram's horn flower: among the Qiang this symbolizes true love. Whenever the ram's horn flower is in bloom, young men use the flower to express their feelings of love to their beloved.
109. The expression [ẓmətʃi] is from /ẓmə/ 'people' and /tʃi/ 'male, son', and here means the local leader, but when translating this term into Chinese, the term for 'emperor' (*huángdì*) was used, so I have followed that usage. Before 1949, the Chinese official system title *yuánwài* (pronounced [juanɣuɑi] by the Qiang) was used for local officials.
110. Here [delde] derives from /de-lede/. Although we would not normally expect a directional prefix on a habitual action, it seems the fact that this appears in an adverbial phrase ending with /-ŋi/ makes the prefix necessary.
111. In this clause, ["pənsə u-su-ɑ-ɣə" jə-m-le:-wu] 'the one who said "I have learned an ability"' is in apposition to [satʃu-le:-tʃi-le:-wu] 'the younger sister's son', clarifying which person is mentioned.
112. Here we would have expected a noun, such as /ẓə/ 'affairs, things', but it was left out by the speaker.
113. This object is either a monk's robe (*gāsā*) or a *Huáng Mǎ Guā* (a golden topcoat given by the emperor of China to people who had performed meritorious deeds for the emperor). Both [dzin] and [jən ~ jin] refer to the same object.
114. The expression [ɑ-l-wu ɑ-l] means 'one to the other' and gives the sentence a reciprocal sense.
115. The expression [ẓɑ hɑ-sɑ] is used to mean 'do something good for someone', and can be used as something like 'thank you'.
116. [ŋim təs] = 'notify'.
117. The visual evidential marker is used here to emphasize that this is common knowledge.
118. Here 'release dog' is an expression to mean 'go hunting'.

119. This syllable adds the meaning ‘as much as possible; completely’.
120. The expression [kuə-ŋɑ-tɕə] is literally ‘older brother’ + COM + ‘sister’, but here means close relatives. The expression [stumpətɕe] includes the word [stum ~ stuəm] ‘same-surname relatives’, and refers to a wider set of relatives. A third category of relatives is the [tsuəklumi], the females from a family who have married into other families.
121. Here the form [-ŋuɑ] is derived from /-u-ɑ/ (VIS + 1sg), which normally produces [-wɑ], but the initial is influenced by the initial of the copula.
122. [qap ɛu] ‘head throw’ is an expression for ‘nod the head’.
123. The expression ‘do orangutan talk’ means to use gestures instead of speech. As the vowel of ‘do’ harmonizes with the /u/ of /ɕku/, I have linked the parts with hyphens.
124. This word [fusan-pu] is a loan of Chinese *fú* ‘to support under the arm to help a person get up or walk’ plus possibly *shàng* ‘up’ or *chān* ‘support under the arm’.

References

- Aikhenvald, Alexandra Y.
2003 Evidentiality in typological perspective. *Studies in Evidentiality*, ed. by Alexandra Y. Aikhenvald and R. M. W. Dixon. Amsterdam & Philadelphia: John Benjamins.
- Benedict, Paul K.
1972 *Sino-Tibetan: A Conspectus*. James A. Matisoff, Contributing Editor. (Princeton-Cambridge Series in Chinese Linguistics, #2.) New York: Cambridge University Press.
- Benedict, Paul K.
1983 Qiang monosyllabization: a third phase in the cycle. *Linguistics of the Tibeto-Burman Area* 7.2:113-14.
- Chang Kun
1967 A comparative study of the southern Ch'iang dialects.¹ *Monumenta Serica* 422-44.
- Comrie, Bernard & Norval Smith
1977 *Lingua* descriptive studies: questionnaire. *Lingua* 42:1-72.
- Comrie, Bernard & Sandra A. Thompson
1985 Lexical Nominalization. *Language Typology and Syntactic Description*, ed. by Timothy Shopen, Vol. III, 349-398. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Dai Qingxia
1995 The variation of free morphemes in compound words in Jinghpo. *Linguistics of the Tibeto-Burman Area* 18.1:29-42.
- Dai Qingxia & Xu Xijian
1995 *Jingpoyu Cihuixue* (Jingpo Lexicology). Beijing: Central University of Nationalities Publishing Co.
- DeLancey, Scott
1986 Relativization as nominalization in Tibetan and Newari. Paper presented at the 19th Annual Conference on Sino-Tibetan Languages and Linguistics, Ohio State University.
- Dickinson, Connie
2000 Mirativity in Tsafiki. *Studies in Language* 24.379-421.
- Dixon, R. M. W.
1982 *Where Have All the Adjectives Gone? and Other Essays in Semantics and Syntax*. Berlin: Mouton.

1. The Chinese word pronounced [tchiang⁵⁵] is written as <Qiang> throughout most of this book, following the official Chinese Pinyin orthography, but in some sources, such as this one, it is transliterated as <Ch'iang>.

- Dixon, R. M. W.
1991 *A New Approach to English Grammar, on Semantic Principles*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Dixon, R. M. W.
1994 *Ergativity*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Dixon, R. M. W.
1995 Complementation clauses and complementation strategies. *Grammar and Meaning: Essays in Honour of Sir John Lyons*, ed. by F.R. Palmer, 175-200. Cambridge: University Press.
- Dixon, R. M. W.
2003 Evidentiality in Jarawara. *Studies in Evidentiality*, ed. by Alexandra Y. Aikhenvald and R. M. W. Dixon. Amsterdam & Philadelphia: John Benjamins.
- Evans, Jonathan P.
2001a *Introduction to Qiang Lexicon and Phonology: Synchrony and Diachrony*. Tokyo: ILCAA, Tokyo University of Foreign Studies.
- Evans, Jonathan P.
2001b Contact-Induced Tonogenesis in Southern Qiang. *Language and Linguistics* 2.2:63 - 110.
- Evans, Jonathan P.
2000 Southern Qiang verbal morphology and directional prefixes: Their syntactic, semantic, and lexical functions. Paper presented at the Tibeto-Burman Linguistics Workshop, March 30-31, 2000. Institute of Linguistics, Academia Sinica, Taipei.
- Genetti, Carol E.
1986 The Development of subordinators from postpositions in Bodic languages. Proceedings of the 12th Annual Meeting of the Berkeley Linguistics Society, 387-400.
- Genetti, Carol E.
1991 From postposition to subordinator in Newari. *Approaches to Grammaticalization*, ed. by E. C. Traugott & B. Heine, Vol. I, 227-55. Amsterdam & Philadelphia: Benjamins.
- Genetti, Carol E.
1992 Semantic and grammatical categories of relative clause morphology in the languages of Nepal. *Studies in Language* 16.2:405-427.
- Graham, David Crockett
1958 *The Customs and Religion of the Ch'iang (Smithsonian Miscellaneous Collection Vol. 135, No. 1)*. Washington, D.C.: Smithsonian Institution.
- Huang Bufan
1987 Qiangyu yuyin yanbian zhong paichi biyin de qushi (The tendency to lose nasals in the development of Qiang phonology). *Minzu Yuwen* 1987.5:19-26.
- Huang Bufan
1991 Qiangyuzhi (The Qiang branch). *HanZangyu Gailun (A General Introduction to the Sino-Tibetan Languages)*, ed. by Ma Xueliang, Vol. I, 208-369. Beijing: Beijing University Press.

- Huang Bufan
1994 Zang-Mianyu dongci de quxiang fanchou (The category of directionality in Tibeto-Burman verbs). *Zang-Mianyu Xin Lun (Recent Contributions to Tibeto-Burman Studies)*, ed. by Ma Xueliang, Hu Tan, Dai Qingxia, Huang Bufan, and Fu Ailan, 133-151. Beijing: Central Institute of Nationalities Press.
- Huang Bufan
2000 Qiangyu de ti fanchou (The category of aspect in the Qiang language). *Minzu Yuwen* 2000.2:8-16.
- Huang Bufan, Yu Xiaoping, & Huang Chenglong
1992 Qiangzu (The Qiang). *Zhongguo Ren de Xingming (The Names of the Chinese People)*, 492-508. Beijing: Chinese Academy of Social Sciences Press.
- Huang Chenglong
1992 Qiangyu fufuyin de yanbian (The evolution of the consonant clusters in the Qiang language). *Qiangzu Yanjiu* 1992.2:152-157.
- Huang Chenglong
1993 *Zhongguo Shaoshu Minzu Yuyan Dang'an: Qiangyu Ronghonghua (Phonetic Files on China's Minority Languages: The Ronghong Variety of the Qiang Language)*. Beijing: Nationalities Institute, Chinese Academy of Social Sciences.
- Huang Chenglong
1994 Qiangyu xingrongci yanjiu (Study on the adjectives of the Qiang language). *Yuyan Yanjiu* 1994.2:181-189.
- Huang Chenglong
1997 Qiangyu dongci de qianzhui (Verbal prefixes in the Qiang language). *Minzu Yuwen* 1997.2:68-77.
- Huang Chenglong
1998 Qiangyu yinjie ruohua xianxiang (Syllable weakening in the Qiang language). *Minzu Yuwen* 1998.3:59-67.
- Huang Chenglong
2000a Qiangyu de cunzai dongci (Existential verbs in the Qiang language). *Minzu Yuwen* 2000.4:13-22.
- Huang Chenglong
2000b The Qiang language. *UNESCO World Languages Report, China*. Institute of Nationalities Studies, CASS. (in Chinese and English).
- Huang Chenglong
2003 Qiangyu mingci duanyu de cixu (Word orders of nominal phrases in Qiang). *Minzu Yuwen* 2003.2:26-34.
- Institute of Nationalities, Chinese Academy of Sciences
1962 Qiangyu gaikuang (A brief description of the Qiang language). *Zhongguo Yuwen* 1962 (121):561-71.
- LaPolla, Randy J.
1992a Anti-ergative marking in Tibeto-Burman. *Linguistics of the Tibeto-Burman Area* 15.1:1-9.

- LaPolla, Randy J.
1992b On the dating and nature of verb agreement in Tibeto Burman. *Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies* 55.2:298- 315.
- LaPolla, Randy J.
1993 Arguments against 'subject' and 'direct object' as viable concepts in Chinese. *Bulletin of the Institute of History and Philology* 63.4:759-813.
- LaPolla, Randy J.
1994 Parallel grammaticalizations in Tibeto-Burman: Evidence of Sapir's 'drift'. *Linguistics of the Tibeto-Burman Area* 17.1:61-80.
- LaPolla, Randy J.
1995a Pragmatic relations and word order in Chinese. *Word Order in Discourse*, ed. by Pamela Downing & Michael Noonan, 299-331. Amsterdam & Philadelphia: Benjamins Pub. Co.
- LaPolla, Randy J.
1995b Reflexive and middle marking in Dulong/Rawang. ICSTLL 28, Charlottesville, VA, October 6-9. To appear in *Himalayan Linguistics*, ed. by George van Driem. Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter. (Also published in Chinese in *Zhongguo Minzu Yuyan Luncong (1) (Collected Essays on Chinese Minority Languages, 1)*, ed. by Dai Qingxia et al., 13-34. Central University of Nationalities Press, 1996.)
- LaPolla, Randy J.
1995c Ergative marking in Tibeto-Burman. *New Horizons in Tibeto-Burman Morpho-syntax (Senri Ethnological Studies 41)*, ed. by Yoshio Nishi, James A. Matisoff, & Yasuhiko Nagano, 189-228. Osaka: National Museum of Ethnology.
- LaPolla, Randy J.
1995d On the utility of the concepts of markedness and prototypes in understanding the development of morphological systems. *Bulletin of the Institute of History and Philology* 66.4:1149-1185.
- LaPolla, Randy J.
1996 Middle voice marking in Tibeto-Burman languages. *Pan-Asian Linguistics: Proceedings of the Fourth International Symposium on Languages and Linguistics*, Vol. V, 1940-1954. Mahidol University, Thailand.
- LaPolla, Randy J.
2000a Valency-changing derivations in Dulong-Rawang. *Changing Valency: Case Studies in Transitivity*, ed. by R. M. W. Dixon & Alexandra Y. Aikhenvald, 282-311. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- LaPolla, Randy J.
2000b Subgrouping in Tibeto-Burman: Can an individual-identifying standard be developed? How do we factor in the history of migrations and language contact? Paper presented at the 33rd International Conference on Sino-Tibetan Languages and Linguistics, Bangkok and Trang, October 2-6, 2000.

- LaPolla, Randy J.
2003a Overview of Sino-Tibetan morphosyntax. *The Sino-Tibetan languages*, ed. by Graham Thurgood & Randy J. LaPolla, 22-42. London & New York: Routledge.
- LaPolla, Randy J.
2003b Dulong. *The Sino-Tibetan languages*, ed. by Graham Thurgood & Randy J. LaPolla, 674-682. London & New York: Routledge.
- LaPolla, Randy J.
2003c Qiang. *The Sino-Tibetan languages*, ed. by Graham Thurgood & Randy J. LaPolla, 573-587. London & New York: Routledge.
- LaPolla, Randy J.
2003d Evidentiality in Qiang. *Studies in Evidentiality*, ed. by Alexandra Y. Aikhenvald & R. M. W. Dixon. Amsterdam & Philadelphia: John Benjamins.
- LaPolla, Randy J.
2003e English-Qiang glossary by semantic field. *Basic Materials on Minority Languages in East and Southeast Asia (Endangered Languages of the Pacific Rim series A03-004)*, ed. by Ikeda Takumi, 153-181. Suita: Faculty of Informatics, Osaka Gakuin University.
- LaPolla, Randy J. & Chenglong Huang
2002a Adjectives in Qiang. Paper presented at the International Workshop on Adjective Classes, Research Centre for Linguistic Typology, La Trobe University, August 12-17, 2002. To appear in *Adjective classes: a cross-linguistic typology (Explorations in Linguistic Typology 1)*, ed. by R. M. W. Dixon and Alexandra Y. Aikhenvald. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- LaPolla, Randy J. & Chenglong Huang
2002b The copula and existential verbs in Qiang. Paper presented at the Workshop on Copula Clauses and Verbless Clauses, Research Centre for Linguistic Typology, Institute for Advanced Study, LaTrobe University, September 4, 2002.
- LaPolla, Randy J. & Dory Poa
2003 Jiaodian jiegou de leixing ji qi dui Hanyu cixu de yingxiang (The typology of focus structures and their effect on word order in Chinese). *A Study on the Structure and Semantics of Focus*, ed. by Xu Liejiong and Haihua Pan, 57-78. Beijing: Beijing Foreign Studies University Press.
- LaPolla, Randy J. & Dory Poa
in press Texts in the Qugu variety of Northern Qiang. *Descriptive and Theoretical Studies in Minority Languages of East and Southeast Asia*, ed. by Kitano Hiroaki, 77-94. *Endangered Languages of the Pacific Rim Project* series. Suita: Faculty of Informatics, Osaka Gakuin University.
- Li Ming, Lin Zhongliang & Wang Kang
1994 *Qiangzu Wenxue Shi (The History of Qiang Literature)*. Chengdu: Sichuan Minzu Chubanshe.

- Lin Xiangrong
1990 Sichuan Sheng Aba Zangzu Zizhizhou shuangyu diaocha baogao (Report on the investigation of bilingualism in Aba Tibetan Autonomous Prefecture of Sichuan Province). *Zhongguo Shaoshu Minzu Shuangyu Jiaoxue Yanjiu Lunji (Collected Studies on Bilingualism among China's Ethnic Minorities)*, ed. by the Association for the Study of Bilingualism among China's Ethnic Minorities. Beijing: Minzu Chubanshe.
- Liu Guangkun
1981 Qiangyu zhong de Zangyu jieci (Tibetan Loan-words in the Qiang language). *Minzu Yuwen* 1981.3:19-28.
- Liu Guangkun
1984 Qiangyu fuyin yunwei yanjiu (A study on the consonant finals of the Qiang language). *Minzu Yuwen* 1984.4:39-47, 63.
- Liu Guangkun
1986 Qiangyu zhong de chang fuyin (The long consonants in the Qiang language). *Minzu Yuwen* 1986.4:35-36.
- Liu Guangkun
1987 Lun Qiangyu daici de 'ge' (On the 'cases' of Qiang pronouns). *Minzu Yuwen* 1987.4:50-58.
- Liu Guangkun
1997 Qiangyu fufuyin yanjiu (A study on the consonant clusters of the Qiang language). *Minzu Yuwen* 1997.4:25-32.
- Liu Guangkun
1998a Lun Qiangyu shengdiao de chansheng he fazhan (On the origin and development of tones in the Qiang language). *Minzu Yuwen* 1988.2:1-8.
- Liu Guangkun
1998b *Mawo Qiangyu Yanjiu (Studies on the Mawo dialect of the Qiang language)*. Chengdu: Sichuan Minzu Chubanshe.
- Liu Guangkun
1999 Lun Qiangyu dongci de rencheng fanchou (On the person category of Qiang verbs). *Minzu Yuwen* 1999.1:30-36.
- Luo Shize & Shi Fengchun, eds.
1983 *Mujiezhū yu Douanzhū ((The story of) Mutsitṣu and Tugantṣu)*. Chengdu: Sichuan Minzu Chubanshe.
- Ma Changshou
1984 *Di yu Qiang (The Di and the Qiang)*. Shanghai: Shanghai Renmin Chubanshe.
- Matisoff, James A.
1969 Verb concatenation in Lahu: The syntax and semantics of 'simple' juxtaposition. *Acta Linguistica Hafniensia* 12.1.
- Matisoff, James A.
1972 Lahu nominalization, relativization, and genitivization. *Syntax and Semantics*, Vol. I, ed. by J. Kimball, 235-57. New York: Academic Press.

- Matisoff, James A.
1974 Verb concatenation in Kachin. *Linguistics of the Tibeto-Burman Area* 1:186-206.
- Matisoff, James A.
1975 Rhinoglottophilia: The mysterious connection between nasality and glottality. *Nasalfest: Papers from a Symposium on Nasals and Nasalization*, ed. by Charles Ferguson, Larry M. Hyman, and John Ohala, 265-87. Stanford, California: Stanford University Language Universals Project.
- Matisoff, James A.
1973 *The Grammar of Lahu*. (University of California Publications in Linguistics, 75.) Berkeley & Los Angeles: University of California Press.
- Matisoff, James A.
1997 *Sino-Tibetan numerals and the play of prefixes*. (Pacific Linguistics B-114.) Canberra: Research School of Pacific and Asian Studies, Australian National University.
- Mazaudon, Martine
1978 La formation des propositions relative en tibétain. *Bulletin de la Societe Linguistique de Paris* 73:401-14.
- Meng Yan, Gui Xiuwen & Lin Zhongliang
1994 *Qiangzu Minjian Gushi Xuan (A Selection of Folk Tales of the Qiang)*. Shanghai: Shanghai Wenyi Chubanshe.
- Nishi, Yoshio
1990 Zhongguo jingnei Zang-mianyu zhishi fangxiang de dongci fujia chengfen (Verbal affixes for marking direction in Tibeto- Burman languages in China). *Minzu Yuwen Yanjiu Qingbao Ziliaoji* 1990:104-116, 103.
- Noonan, Michael
1985 Complementation. *Language Typology and Syntactic Description*, ed. by Timothy Shopen, 42-140. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Noonan, Michael
1997 Versatile nominalizations. *Essays on Language Function and Language Type in Honor of T. Givón*, ed. by Joan Bybee, John Haiman & Sandra A. Thompson, 373-394. Amsterdam/Philadelphia: John Benjamins.
- Overview of Aba Tibetan Autonomous Prefecture Editorial Board
1985 *Aba Zangzu Zizhi Zhou Gaikuang (Overview of Aba Tibetan Autonomous Prefecture)*. Chengdu, Sichuan: Sichuan Nationalities Press.
- Ran Guangrong, Li Shaoming, & Zhou Xiyin
1984 *Qiangzu Shi (The History of the Qiang People)*. Chengdu: Sichuan Minzu Chubanshe.
- Ren Naiqiang
1984 *Qiangzu Yuanliu Tansuo (Investigation into the Origins of the Qiang People)*. Chongqing: Chongqing Chubanshe.

- Sun Hongkai
1981a *Qiangyu Jianzhi (A Brief Description of the Qiang language)*. Beijing: Nationalities Press.
- Sun Hongkai
1981b Qiangyu dongci de quxiang fanchou (The category of directionality in the Qiang verb). *Minzu Yuwen* 1981.1:34-42.
- Sun Hongkai
1982 Qiangyu zhishu wenti chutan (A first look at the genetic position of the Qiang language). *Minzu Yuwen Yanjiu Wenji*, ed. by *Minzu Yuwen* Editorial Board, 189-224. Xining: Qinghai Minzu Chubanshe.
- Sun, Hongkai
1989 A preliminary investigation into the relationship between Qiong Long and the languages of the Qiang branch of Tibeto-Burman. *Linguistics of the Tibeto-Burman Area* 12.1: 92-109.
- Sun Hongkai
1983 Chuanxi 'minzu zoulang' diqu de yuyan (The languages of the 'ethnic corridor' region of western Sichuan). *Research on the Peoples of the Southwest*, No. 1:429-454.
- Sun Hongkai
1985 Liujiang liuyu de minzu yuyan ji qi xishu fenlei (The ethnic languages of the six rivers area and their genetic affiliations). *Minzu Xuebao* 3:99-274.
- Sun Hongkai
1988 Lun Qiangzu shuangyuzhi—jian tan Hanyu dui Qiangyu de yingxiang (A discussion of bilingualism among the Qiang people—with comments on the influence of the Chinese language on the Qiang language). *Minzu Yuwen* 1998.4:55-65.
- Van Valin, Robert D., Jr. & Randy J. LaPolla
1997 *Syntax: Structure, Meaning and Function*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Vendler, Zeno
1967 *Philosophy in Linguistics*. Ithaca: Cornell University Press.
- Wang Ming-ke
1992 The Ch'iang of Ancient China through the Han dynasty: Ecological frontiers and ethnic boundaries. PhD dissertation, Harvard University.
- Wang Ming-ke
1997a *Huaxia Bianyuan—Lishi Jiye yu Zuqun Rentong (On Chinese Boundary: Historical Memory and Ethnic Identity)*. Taipei: Yun-cheng Press.
- Wang Ming-ke
1997b Hanzu bianyuan de Qiangzu jiyi yu Qiangzu benzhi (The social memory and ethnicity of the Qiang on the Han's boundary) *Cong Zhoubian Kan Hanren de Shehui yu Wenhua—Wang Songxing Xiansheng Jinian Lunwenji (A View of Chinese Society and Culture from the Periphery: Essays in Memory of Sung-hsing Wang)*, ed. by

- Huang Yinggui & Ye Chunrong, 129-165. Taipei: Institute of Ethnology, Academia Sinica.
- Wang Ming-ke
1998 Women's dress of the Qiang: A case of fashioning ethnic identity. *Bulletin of the Institute of History and Philology*, 69.4: 841-85 (in Chinese).
- Wang Ming-ke
1999a From the Qiang barbarians to Qiang nationality: The making of a new Chinese boundary. *Imaging China: Regional Division and National Unity*. Taipei: The Institute of Ethnology, Academia Sinica.
- Wang Ming-ke
1999b *Primordial History: Brothers Stories of the Qiang. Time, Memory and History*. Taipei: The Institute of Ethnology, Academia Sinica (in Chinese).
- Wang Ming-ke
1999c Nüren, bujie yu cunzhai rentong: Minjiang shangyou de duyaomao gushi (Women, pollution and village identity: Stories of poison cats in the upper Min River Valley). *Bulletin of the Institute of History and Philology* 70.3: 699-738.
- Wang Ming-ke
2000 The Qiang and their history under China's policy of nationalities. *Zhongguo Dalu Yanjiu* 43.7: 1-19.
- Wang Ming-ke
2001a Historical facts, narratives, and mentalities. *Lishi Yanjiu* 5 (2001).
- Wang Ming-ke
2001b *Barbarians, the Han and the Rma*. Taipei: Sanmin Press.
- Wen Yu
1940 Lun Heishui Qiangyu zhong zhi final plosives (On the final plosives in the Hei-shui dialect of the Ch'iang language). *Studia Serica* 1:113-17.
- Wen Yu
1941 Chuanxi Qiangyu zhi chubu fenxi (A tentative classification of the Ch'iang languages in North-Western Szechuan). *Studia Serica* 2:38-71.
- Wen Yu
1943a Wenchuan Wasizu Qiangyu yinxi (Phonology of the Ch'iang language, Group I, Wa-gsod dialect). *Bulletin of Chinese Studies* 3:293-308.
- Wen Yu
1943b Verbal directive prefixes in the Jyarong language and their Ch'iang equivalents. *Studia Serica* 3.1:11-20.
- Wen Yu
1943c Wenchuan Luopuzhai Qiangyu yinxi (Phonology of the Ch'iang language, Group II, Lopu Chai dialect). *Studia Serica* 3.2:12-25.
- Wen Yu
1945 Lifan Houerku Qiangyu yinxi (Phonology of the Ch'iang language, Group IV: Hou-erh-k'u dialect). *Studia Serica* 4, suppl.

- Wen Yu
1947 On the origin of certain emphatic consonants in Ch'iang dialects. *Studia Serica* 6:209-15.
- Wen Yu
1950 An abridged Ch'iang vocabulary (Chiu Tzu Ying dialect). *Studia Serica* 9.2:17-54.
- Wen Yu
1951 Wenzhou Qiangyu cihui jianbian (Luopuzhai fangyan) [Concise Wenzhou Qiang lexicon (Luopu Zhai dialect)]. *Zhongguo Wenhua Yanjiu Huikan* 10.
- Xu Ping
1993 *Qiang Cun Shehui—Yi ge Gulao Minzu de Wenhua he Bianqian (Qiang Village Society—The Culture and Migrations of an Ancient Ethnic Group)*. Beijing: Zhongguo Shehui Kexue Chubanshe.
- Xu, Xijian
1997 YiMianyu mingci shuangyinjiehua yanjiu (A study on the disyllabification of nouns in Yi-Burmese languages). *Studies on Yi-Burmese languages*, ed. by the Editorial Committee of the International Yi-Burmese Conference, 245-262. Chengdu: Sichuan Nationalities Publishing House.
- Yan Gaozeng
1956 Xixia shi bu shi Qiangzu? (Were the Xixia Qiang?). *Lishi Jiaoxue* 1956:53.
- Zhou Xiyin & Liu Zhirong
1993 *Qiang Zu (The Qiang)*. Beijing: Minzu Chubanshe.
- Zhuang Xueben
1937 *Qiang Rong kaocha ji (Record of an investigation into the Qiang and Rong)*. Shanghai: Shanghai Liangyou Tushu Yinshua Gongsu.

Index to the grammar

- 3rd person indirect directive prefix 120
- ablative 114
- ablative postposition 93, 106, 109, 110, 113
- actor of a transitive or ditransitive verb 76
- actor person marking 88, 124
- added final consonant 45
- addition 103
- adjectives 44, 47
- adverbial 114, 119
- adverbial marker 110, 112
- adverbial noun phrase 41
- adverbial time phrases 110
- agentive 114
- agentive marker /-wu/ 74, 76, 78, 79, 80, 84, 86, 125, 226
- agentive noun 44
- agentivity 125
- alienable possession 97
- allative 114
- allative postposition 106
- ambitransitive 121
- animacy 125, 133
- animate referents 83
- antecedent of a reflexive/emphatic pronoun 58
- apposition structure 40
- attributive 90
- attributive copula clauses 81
- auxiliary verb 137, 138
- auxiliary verbs 136
- bathrooms 7
- Beds 6
- benefactive 91, 92, 114
- benefactive/recipient 114
- bilingualism 7
- calques 47
- cardinal numeral system 62
- case marking 51
- causative suffix 19, 20, 97, 119, 121, 124-125, 127, 158, 208
- causativized copula 127
- causativized ditransitive 126
- causativized intransitive 126
- causativized transitive 126
- ceramics 16
- change of state aspect marking 119
- Chen Yonglin 18
- Chinese (the Southwestern Mandarin dialect) 46
- citation form 122
- classifiers 65
- clausal complement 72
- cognition verbs 96
- comitative 114
- comitative structure 105
- comitative/conjunction marker /-ŋɑ/ 89, 90, 95, 123, 237
- comparative 114
- comparative construction 88
- comparative marker 88
- compound nouns 43
- compound verbs 136
- compounds 23, 31, 33, 34, 35, 36
- conjunction 114
- consonant clusters 24
- contrastive topics 73
- coordinated nouns 43, 70
- copula 138
- datave 107
- datave/allative marker 74, 83, 85
- definite marker 20, 37, 42, 44, 52, 59, 81, 90, 94, 100
- demonstrative plus classifier 39
- demonstrative pronoun 20, 41, 51-52, 59, 65, 69, 113
- denominal verbs 122
- deverbal nouns 43
- diminutive 49
- diphthongs 26, 29

- direct argument of an intransitive verb 74, 81
- directional auxiliary verbs 136
- directional prefix 23, 31, 32, 47, 119, 120, 121-122, 128, 132, 154-156, 158-159, 160-161, 164, 165-166, 173, 175, 179, 213-214, 229
- “double topic” construction 73
- dual pronouns 51
- elative 108, 114
- emphatic genitives 58
- emphatic pronouns 56
- epenthetic vowel 36
- equational clauses 81, 96, 139
- equative comparative construction 89
- exception 114
- exception construction 110
- exception marker 104, 105
- exclusion 104
- existential clause 97
- existential/locative verbs 97, 133, 135, 136
- extent of an action 103
- fertilizer 6
- final consonant 45
- final consonant clusters 30
- finals 23
- fireplace 6
- flow of action 79
- focus position 82, 85, 94
- free variation 37
- gender marking 48
- genitive 114
- genitive construction 91
- genitive marker 86, 91, 99, 100, 107, 112
- genitive phrase 20, 39, 41, 87, 99, 107
- goal 85, 114
- goal marker 85
- house 6
- hunt 9
- iconicity 46
- identificational copula clauses 81, 90
- ideophonic adverbials 21
- illative 108, 114
- imperative 135
- inalienable possession 97, 100
- inclusion 103
- indefinite marker 59, 90
- indefinite pronoun 55
- indirect directive 120, 136
- indirect quotes 50
- inessive 108, 114
- initial consonant weakening 31
- instrumental 114
- instrumental noun phrase 43
- instrumental postposition /-wu/ 94, 102
- instrumental referent 94
- interrogative morpheme 53
- interrogative pronouns 53, 55
- intonation 33
- intransitive verbs 121
- irregular verbs 136
- iteration 123
- Japanese 104
- kinship prefix 49
- kinship relations 100
- kinship terminology 49
- learned ability 137
- loan words 23, 27, 28, 36, 46, 123
- locational nouns 58, 106-107, 113
- locative 114
- locative adverbial phrase 71
- locative postposition 60, 93-94, 97, 106, 108, 110
- locative referent 106
- logophoric pronoun 50
- long vowels 25
- manner adverbial 127
- marked word order 78
- Matisoff 26
- Mawo dialect 32, 128, 142, 155, 223
- measure words 65
- middle voice 124
- modification of a noun 40
- multiple topics 71
- nasalization 26
- natural (physical) ability 137
- negation 136
- nominalizations 44
- nominalized adjective 40
- nominalized clause 56, 71, 101
- nominalized verbs 134
- nominalizing suffix 19, 43-44, 223, 225-226, 234- 235
- non-actor person marking 88, 125
- non-specific reference 51

- Northern Qiang 2
 noun 42
 noun plus a classifier 44
 noun plus verb combination 44-45
 number marking 52
 numerals 62
 obligation 137
 order of the adjectives 39
 ordinal numerals 64
 passive 79, 124
 perlative 110, 114
 permissive 124
 person marking 119, 123
 personal pronouns 50
 plural marking 28, 51, 52, 60, 69, 70
 plural pronouns 51
 possessed referent 97, 98
 possession 97, 98
 possession of a quality 99
 possessive structure 96
 possessive verb 99
 possessive/genitive pronouns 51
 possessor 97-98
 postpositions 70
 potential 137
 predicate noun 60
 predicate noun phrase 90
 price/value 102
 pronominal possessive prefixes 51
 pronoun-noun apposition
 constructions 51
 prospective aspect marking 119, 125
 Proto-Tibeto-Burman 23
 Qiang Dialect Map Project, 17
 Qugu 18
 r-coloring 28, 35
 recipient 85, 87
 recipient marker 86, 91
 reciprocal 19, 52, 123, 124, 127
 reciprocal pronouns 52
 reduplication of verbs 19, 123
 reflexive pronouns 56, 124
 reflexives 124
 relational morphology 70
 relative clause 20, 39, 40, 41, 99
 rhinoglottophilia 26
 rounding of vowels 34
 sortal classifiers 65
 sound symbolism 21
 source 92
 Southern Qiang 2
 standard of comparison 88
 storage 6
 stress 33
 structure of the noun phrase 39
 syllable canon 30
 temporal adverbials 53, 112
 temporal referent 110
 Tibetan 46
 Tibetan loans 46
 Tibetans 6
 Tibeto-Burman suffix *-pa* 45
 topic 71, 114
 topic marker 71, 73-74, 79, 82, 89, 91,
 112
 transitive verbs 121
 translative constructions 127
 triphthong 26
 TV 7
 undergoer 107
 undergoer of a ditransitive verb 84
 undergoer of a transitive verb 81
 utensils 16
 VCD 7
 verb 121
 verb complex 119, 120
 verbal action classifiers 68, 119
 verbs of possession/existence 98
 voiced-voiceless (aspirated) contrast
 in simplex-causative or
 intransitive-transitive pairs 128
 volitionality 80
 vowel harmony 35
 vowel loss 34, 35
 watchtowers 6
 white stone 6
 whole-part relationships 101
 willingness to perform an action 137
 word 31
 writing system 3

